

Alexander



Panchenko

MASTERING CHESS MIDDLEGAMES



Lectures from the All-Russian
School of Grandmasters

NEW IN CHESS

Mastering Chess Middlegames

Alexander Panchenko

Mastering Chess Middlegames

Lectures from the All-Russian School of Grandmasters

New In Chess 2015

© 2015 New In Chess

Published by New In Chess, Alkmaar, The Netherlands
www.newinchess.com

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission from the publisher.

Cover design: Ron van Roon
Translation: Steve Giddins
Supervisor: Peter Boel
Proofreading: René Olthof
Production: Anton Schermer

Have you found any errors in this book?
Please send your remarks to editors@newinchess.com. We will collect all relevant corrections on the Errata page of our website www.newinchess.com and implement them in a possible next edition.

ISBN: 978-90-5691-609-1

Contents

Preface

Foreword to the First Edition

Chapter 1 The attack on the king

Chapter 2 Defence

Chapter 3 Counterplay

Chapter 4 Prophylaxis

Chapter 5 Realising an advantage

Chapter 6 Equal positions

Chapter 7 The battle of the major pieces

Chapter 8 Two minor pieces against a rook

Chapter 9 Opposite-coloured bishops with many pieces on the board

Chapter 10 Same-coloured bishops

Chapter 11 Bishop versus knight

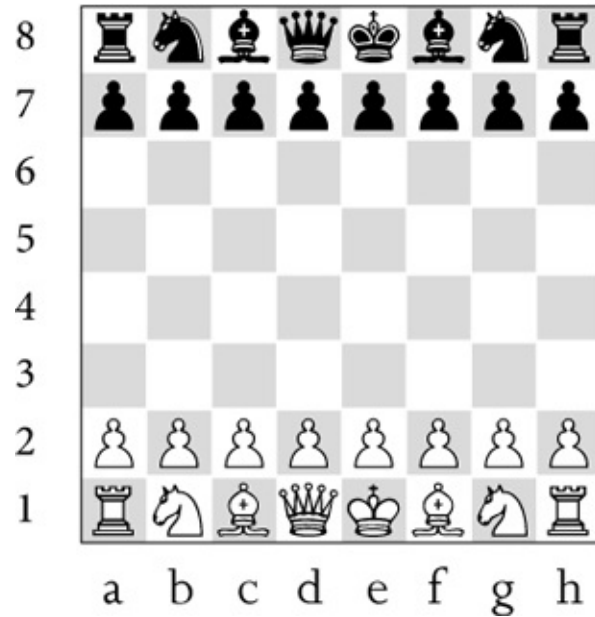
Chapter 12 Sample games and endings

Solutions

Index of Games

Explanation of Symbols

The chessboard with its coordinates:



□ White to move

■ Black to move

♔ King

♚ Queen

♖ Rook

♗ Bishop

♘ Knight

! good move

!! excellent move

? bad move

?? blunder

!?! interesting move

?! dubious move

± White stands slightly better

∓ Black stands slightly better

± White stands better

∓ Black stands better

+− White has a decisive advantage

−+ Black has a decisive advantage

= balanced position
∞ unclear
mate

Preface

1980. Alexander Panchenko won a strong Chigorin Memorial in Sochi, making his second GM norm. He was in a great mood, as the nicest prospects were opening up before him. Then everything changed...

Alexander Nikolaevich himself described this turning point in his life as follows: ‘At one moment, as my wife and I were having dinner with Yuri Balashov, Tikhomirova came over and asked to speak to me. Vera Nikolaevna explained that we needed to think about the younger generation and invited me to work as a trainer at the newly-opened All-Russian School of Grandmasters. To say that this suggestion came as a surprise would be to say nothing at all. I was just 27, and still a developing player. I was full of plans for my chess career.’

But he agreed and begun work.

He had a lot to learn before the first session of the school. He had to study books on teaching – Korchak, Makarenko, Sukhominsky and Uspensky. He also sought advice from experienced teachers and trainers.

Panchenko’s trainer in Chelyabinsk was Leonid Aronovich Gratvol, a teacher from heaven. Alexander Nikolaevich remembered how he taught and tried to follow his advice.

Eleven years of work at the All-Russian School of Grandmasters, a great deal of unworked material, tested schemes of study, etc. – all this continued the work of V. E. Golenishev, in preparing players to master level at sport. Viktor Evgenievich wrote some wonderful books – a programme of preparation from Fourth Category to First, books which were reprinted numerous times but are now hard to find.

Panchenko had to spend a great deal of time to prepare his lectures. In the pre-computer era, this was not so simple and it took time to collect material, think it over and prepare everything. Alexander Nikolaevich never plagiarised other people’s work, but did everything himself, from scratch.

From 1997, he worked in Kazan, leading a group of promising players, including A. Ilyin, M. Ackarov, T. Chitiskova, S. Shaidullina and the author of these lines; many of us became masters.

The chess part of these lectures is in this book, which you, dear reader, hold in your hands. But also the way Panchenko presented the material was important, so that his pupils could absorb it and employ it in their own games. In this, he was a great master. On the basis of the stories told by his pupils, Rublevsky, Sorokin, Scherbakov, Volzhin and others, and also my own impressions, we have tried to recreate this well-known trainer’s method of teaching chess.

The search for chess truth was his life’s work. Alexander Nikolaevich Panchenko gave his pupils systematic knowledge in all areas of the game, and taught them to understand the game correctly. He studied fundamental positional devices and ‘typical positions’. He had them solve studies and problems (he had an excellent card-index) and often had them play out positions on the chosen theme.

Panchenko had his method, which involved starting everything from the endgame, and only then using this as a basis for studying other aspects of the game: technique, tactical mastery, openings... he employed the ideas of Capablanca and Smyslov, that in order to understand the secrets of chess, one must start with the endgame.

M. Sorokin: ‘Sometimes, one had the impression that insufficient attention was given to questions of attack, creative play generally, and the intuitive sides of chess; especial attention was always

devoted to the technical side. This was despite the fact that Alexander Nikolaevich was himself an exceptionally sharp, all-round talent, who as well as many finely-judged defences, also carried out numerous sparkling attacks. He taught what was realistically possible and necessary to teach in a group situation: technique, the taking of practical decisions, but he also gave out serious individual work and gave precious advice on its organisation. He stressed individual work (or one-to-one with a permanent trainer) to develop the player's individual talent.'

One defining characteristic of his lessons was that one did not only listen, but also had to answer specific questions. After a lesson, he would often organise a competition to solve problems on the chosen theme, with points being counted up, and then mistakes analysed afterwards. The participants needed to show concentration and hard work, as it was not simple to absorb, understand and deeply feel a large quantity of professional-level information.

In studying the middlegame, Panchenko's signature tune was the defence of difficult positions and prophylaxis.

In non-chess terms, the main thing one remembers is the warmth and care he showed towards his pupils. He was interested not only in chess successes, but also devoted a great deal of attention to their general, non-chess development. I remember that after one not very successful tournament, he gave me a book by his favourite poet, Boris Pasternak, and advised me to read it and to understand what the author was saying. The cure worked.

D. Evseev told about another characteristic of Panchenko as a trainer: 'During lessons, the biggest comedian in the room was Alexander Nikolaevich himself. If a position involved one side having to wait passively, without undertaking anything, he coined the term "scratching his leg". Or: "It's better to win the queen than give mate." Of course, he meant this in the sense that it was, as a general rule, better to take material and secure a decisive advantage that way, than to calculate long and complicated variations, which might turn out not to be mating after all. But he was a sharp attacking player himself. Once, with obvious pleasure, he showed us his win over Igor Novikov in the semifinal of the USSR Championship (Pavlodar 1987), in which he carried out a beautiful attack, with many sacrifices. Thus, on move 38, instead of taking the queen with a decisive material advantage, he played a forcing variation leading to mate. In answer to the question that he had himself said that it was better to take the queen in such cases, he smiled and said 'Giving mate is more fun!'

Another device of Alexander Nikolaevich's was to tell little stories, about chess history, great players (with some of whom he had himself played – Petrosian, Polugaevsky, Geller, etc), about his chess school, trips abroad in Soviet times, and about life in general. It was clear that he loved to talk about days gone past. He would sink back into a certain tournament or game and re-live the experience. The connection with the past and with the chess heritage occupied a significant place in the preparation of his pupils. It is thus not surprising that classical examples occupy a central place in this book also.

In the first edition of this book the subject of attack appeared only in Chapter Four, under 'Playing with an advantage'. Now it has its own chapter, thanks to Alexander Nikolaevich, who read a lecture on the subject, covering the most beautiful games and ideas, from the time of the start of organised chess up to the period of Kasparov. All we had to do was choose the examples to use and organise the material, systematising it appropriately and adding a theoretical part.

The examples were computer-tested (an essential thing these days), but this had little influence on the assessments and conclusions drawn in the first edition. At the end of the book there is some additional material from the lectures. It presents schematically the different aspects of chess: defence, handling advantages and playing equal positions. If you think of a game of chess as an exam, as it often is, then this small test should help you pass with an excellent mark.

The book contains material passed down from generation to generation. Now every reader has the

opportunity to familiarise himself with the best theoretical work and practical advice on the subject of the middlegame. And you will be able to complete this course of instruction much quicker than many grandmasters.

Alexander Nikolaevich Panchenko was a Teacher with a capital T. He lives on in his pupils, and his working methods are preserved in this book.

*Artyom Timofeev,
International Grandmaster,
Winner of the Russia Cup,
And the Russian Championship Higher League*

Foreword to the First Edition

This book by Russia's Honoured Trainer and international grandmaster Alexander Panchenko is based on lectures given by the author at sessions of The All-Russian School of Grandmasters, which operated under his leadership from 1981 to 1992, and was devoted to preparing players of the top class.

The material from the lectures has been completely reworked for this book, on the basis of games played in recent years.

It should be pointed out that many well-known players studied under Panchenko, and went on to become grandmasters: M. Ulibin, R. Scherbakov, S. Volkov, S. Prudnikova, Y. Shumiakina, A. Galliamova and others, including the author of this Foreword.

In the theoretical section of the book, the main emphasis is on the technique of defence. As Panchenko said, 'It is impossible to become a strong player without being able to defend'. In this regard, he looks at the main methods and devices that players use to defend inferior positions, such as exchanging pieces and heading to the endgame, fighting against the most powerful enemy piece(s), defending the weakest squares, improving the worst-placed piece(s), deflecting the opponent from his main plan, sharply changing the character of the position, etc. Later, he examines the subject of counterplay, in place of passive defence.

Exploiting counterplay always involves some risk to the players and requires full concentration of the forces. The main task is to fight for the initiative at all costs, and in the process to make use of the principle of economy (only the minimum pieces needed for defence!) and to counterattack with the greatest possible number of forces, not being afraid to sacrifice. Panchenko considered that mastering the methods of defence and counterattack would reduce the number of games that a player lost. This theme is related to that of realising an advantage, where the author looks at the main factors which influence the player who has the advantage. He looks systematically at the effect of such things as weakened attention, marking time, thinking over obvious moves and time trouble, and he gives examples of instructive realisations of advantage, in which he highlights factors such as decisiveness, playing for pressure and realising material and positional advantages in the endgame.

The author does not dodge questions of playing equal positions, prophylaxis, and the battle between heavy pieces. He devotes special attention to the fight between two pieces and a rook, a subject which receives too little attention in chess literature, although it arises in practical play quite often. Studying the remaining chapters of the book – opposite-coloured bishops in the middlegame and the battle between knight and bishop, allows the players of such positions to acquire basic knowledge of how to conduct the middlegame battle.

The material is packed into the book, with many examples of the chosen subjects. The book is characterised by the originality with which it is constructed and the witty aphorisms it contains, many of which were invented by the author, and by the accurate formulations of the tasks involved.

From his great training experience, Panchenko also drew a large number of test positions for solving or playing out. He also indicates the time to be spent on each position, which will make many of the tests very hard for a lot of players.

I believe Alexander Panchenko's book will prove very interesting to chess players, and will be greeted with the same enthusiasm as his endgame textbook was upon its publication in 1997. The latter became the principal textbook for playing endgames, for a whole group of players.

*Sergey Rublevsky,
International Grandmaster,
Four-time Olympic champion*

Chapter 1

The attack on the king

Attacking is the player's main weapon. It is almost always beautiful, especially when it involves material sacrifices. In the romantic era of chess, combinational play dominated. Every player strove at all costs for the attack, for active play, not worrying about sacrifices. These were more often than not incorrect, because they did not arise naturally from the requirements of the position, but in those days, both players and spectators valued only the attack. In the 15-17th centuries, the level of defensive play was quite low, and thanks to the mistakes of the defender, attacks almost always succeeded. In the books and manuscripts of the time, one finds many attacks and sacrifices, mostly invented by the authors themselves.

At the end of the 19th century, the level of defensive technique rose noticeably. Even so, World Champion Wilhelm Steinitz outplayed his opponents in a sharp combinative style. In his games from those years, one can see a thorough preparation of the attack, a desire to keep the position closed until the right moment, and a love for retaining a material advantage. Steinitz thought seriously about the fact that certain laws exist for the conduct of a chess game, which should not be broken. The main one he insisted upon was rejection of the axiom that one should attack in any position. Steinitz instead offered a new rule of thumb, that attacks should be properly prepared and have a rational basis – premature attacks, not based on proper preparation, can be refuted with correct defence. Later on, Soviet and foreign players not only adopted this approach and added it to their armoury, but also added additional points, for example the minority attack (Steinitz only spoke of a pawn majority on the queenside), a pawn phalanx with e- and f-pawns, etc. Strong players stopped striving for an attack in any position and at any cost. The majority of them started to play well-prepared attacks.

This is what Chigorin wrote on this subject: 'Only with careful development of one's forces and cautious play can one bit by bit build up the advantage in position, and only then will one have the possibility to land a decisive blow against the opponent.' [*Novoe Vremya*, 28/01/1897]. Both earlier and nowadays, in the minds of both amateurs and professionals, the word 'attack' is associated with a mating attack on the king. What factors render an attack possible and even successful?

'The attack in chess is a systematic manoeuvre and combinational assault on the opponent's position, on the basis of an overall strategic plan, with the aim of breaking the opponent's resistance and winning the game.' (Panov)

For an attack to succeed, two preliminary factors must be present: 1) The opponent's position should contain weaknesses, which determine the direction of the attack (often, the king is itself the main weakness). 2) One must have a superiority in forces in that area of the board where the battle is raging. In other words, 'attack where the opponent is weak and you are strong' (S. Tarrasch). A well-founded attack rarely comes out of nothing. First, one needs to seize the initiative.

'The initiative means time and activity' (Capablanca). This allows us to pose a series of threats one after the other.

Initiative-attack-combination. These concepts are connected, and usually it is in the above order that they occur in the process of obtaining and realising an advantage in a game of chess. Let us see how this takes place.

The initiative is seized from the first moves of the opening. It creates the preconditions (king in the

centre, weak squares, diagonals, files, ranks, weakened pawn cover, etc), on the basis of which we can launch an attack. In the course of the attack, the enemy pieces are forced to take up unfavourable positions, after which we need to find the idea of the combination, based on certain motifs. The concluding combination converts non-material positional advantages (control of lines, space, etc.) into either a material gain or mate of the king. Such mate or large material gains ends the game, whilst in the event of a smaller gain, the play continues into the endgame.

Now let us examine the main devices and methods which a player can use in attacking the king.

When the opponent has not yet castled, it is important to understand if this circumstance can be exploited. An open king position in the middlegame restricts the scope of the pieces, and the defending side often has to accept material losses, in order to safeguard the king's position.

The attacker's task is to hold the enemy king in the centre and create direct attacking threats against it. The lack of connection between the rooks further complicates the defender's task. When all of one's pieces are directed against the king, then the principle that applies is to attack energetically, using all available means, so as to ensure success.

'An attack, once started, should be pursued through to the end.' (Capablanca)

Paul Morphy Ernest Morphy

New Orleans 1850

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙c4 ♙c5 4.b4 ♚xb4 5.c3 ♜a5 6.d4 exd4 7.0-0 ♜xc3 8.♘xc3 dxc3 9.♙a3 d6 10.♚b3 ♘h6 11.♚xc3 ♜f6



Black has kept some extra material, and if he manages to castle, everything will be excellent. But it is White to move...

12.e5!

By sacrificing a third pawn, Morphy prevents the black king from castling.

12...dxe5 13.♖fe1 ♙d7 14.♖ab1 0-0-0



15.♙a6!

Even if the king manages to run away, the attack continues, thanks to the great activity of the white pieces.

15...♘a5?

The sacrifice should have been accepted: 15...bxa6 16.♚b3 ♙g4 17.♚b7+ ♘d7 18.♖bd1+ ♘e8 19.♖xd8+ ♘xd8 (19...♘xd8? 20.♚xc7 ♙xf3 21.♖xe5+ ♘e6 22.♚c8+ ♚d8 23.♖xe6+-) 20.♚a8+ ♘d7 21.♖d1+ ♘d4 22.♚d5+ ♘c8 23.♚a8+, with a perpetual. Not 23.♘xe5 ♚b6.

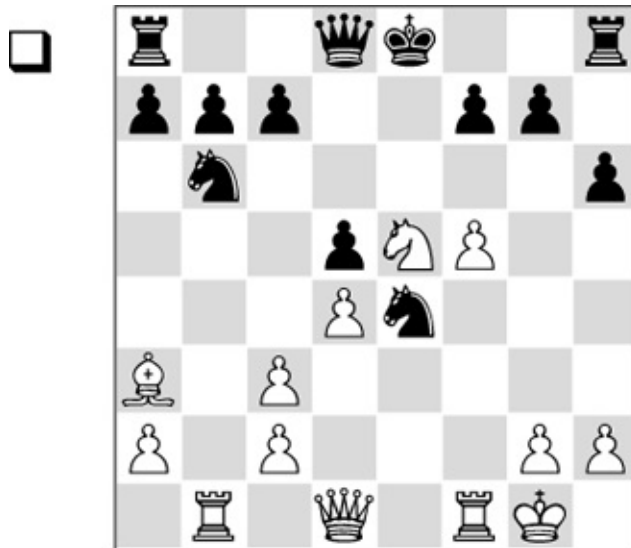
16.♖ec1!

Now White has a decisive attack.

16... ♖c6 17. ♘xa5 bxa6 18. ♘xa6+ ♔d7 19. ♖xc6 ♚f5 20. ♖xc7+! ♚e8 21. ♘c6+ ♔d7
22. ♖b8 ♚xc6 23. ♖e7+ ♚f8 24. ♖xd8+ ♚e8 25. ♖dxe8#

William Steinitz Szymon Winawer

Paris 1867



Black is behind in development and Steinitz punishes him decisively for this.

1.f6! g6

1... ♗xf6 is bad because of 2. ♖e2!; or 1... gxf6 2. ♖h5 ♖h7 3. ♖g4 ♗g5 4. ♖be1! fxe5 5. ♖xe5+ ♗e6
6. ♖g8+.

2. ♖g4 ♚c8

The threat was 3. ♖e6+! fxe6 4.f7+.

3. ♖xg6! ♚e6

3... fxf6 4.f7+ ♔d8 5.f8♖+, mating.

4. ♖g7 0-0-0 5. ♗xf7 ♗xc3

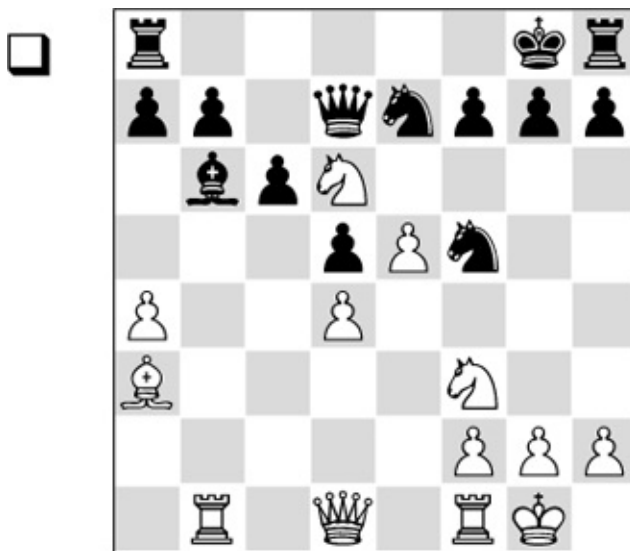
5... ♖dg8 6. ♗xh8 ♖xg7 7.fxf7+.

6. ♗xd8 ♖xd8 7.f7

And White won.

Mikhail Chigorin William Steinitz

Havana 1892 (1)



1. ♖xf7!

The king is drawn into the centre, where it comes under fire from the white pieces. The material factor takes second place. Also strong is 1.a5 ♕xa5 2.♖xb7± (Lasker).

1... ♖xf7 2.e6+ ♖xe6 3.♖e5 ♖c8

3... ♖e8 4.♖e1 ♖f6 5.♕xe7+! ♖xe7 6.♖f3+ ♖e6 7.♖f7+ ♖d7 8.♖g4+ ♖c7 9.♖f4+ ♖d7 10.♖d6+ ♖c8 11.♖xe7+-.

4. ♖e1 ♖f6 5.♖h5! g6

5... ♖g6 6.g4!.

6. ♖xe7+ ♖xe7

6... ♖xe7 7.♖h4+ g5 8.♖g4+ ♖f7 9.♖xe7+ ♖xe7 10.♖xg5+ with a quick mate.

7. ♖xg6+ ♖f6 8.♖xh8 ♖xd4

8... ♖xh8 9.♖e5 ♖c8 10.g4+-; 8... ♖d7 9.♖b3 ♖xh8 10.♖f3 ♖g8 11.♖e5 ♖g5 12.♖h6+ ♖g6 13.♖xf5+ ♖xf5 14.♖f8+-.

9. ♖b3 ♖d7 10. ♖f3 ♖xh8 11.g4 ♖g8 12.♖h6+ ♖g6 13. ♖xf5+

Black resigned in view of 13... ♖xf5 14.♖f8+.

Sacrifices are often needed to keep the king in the centre. Such play can be justified even if there is no mate. In order to coordinate his forces and beat off the threats, the defender will often be forced to return the material.

Max Euwe Salo Landau

Amsterdam 1939 (6)

1.d4 d5 2.c4 c6 3.♖f3 ♖f6 4.♖c3 dxc4 5.a4 ♖f5 6.e3 e6 7.♖xc4 ♖b4 8.0-0 ♖bd7

Better is 8...0-0.

9. ♖b3 ♖b6 10.e4! ♖g6

10... ♖xe4? 11.♖xe4 ♖xe4 12.♖xe6!; 10... ♖xc3 11.exf5.



In this position, White's e4-pawn is hanging and if it advances, then after 11.e5 ♖d5 Black has no real problem. But Max Euwe sees more deeply.

11. ♖xe6!?

'This sacrifice offers rich chances, although it is difficult to say with absolute certainty that it is correct' (Euwe).

11...fxe6 12.a5! ♖xa5 13. ♔xe6+ ♔d8

13...♙f8 14.e5 ♖e8 15.♚h3, and White wins back the piece.

14.e5 ♖e8

It was worth considering 14...♗e4 15.♗xe4 ♕xe4 16.♚f7!, and White retains an attack; 14...♗e8 15.♕g5+ ♙c8 16.♗a4 ♚c7 17.d5! ♙b8 18.d6 ♚c8 19.♚b3; but not 14...♗d5 15.♗xd5 cxd5 16.♕g5+ ♙c7 17.♖ac1+ and not 14...♕xc3 15.exf6 ♕b4 16.fxg7.

15. ♚h3 ♖xc3

Better is 15...♗g8.

16.exf6 ♖b4 17.fxg7

'This passed pawn plays a key role in the combinational possibilities in the position' (Euwe).

17... ♖d6 18. ♗e5!

The centralised king comes under a new wave of attack, as threats follow one after another.

18... ♖xe5

18...♚c7 19.♗xg6 hxg6 20.♕g5+ ♙c8 21.♚h8+–; 18...♗xe5 19.dxe5 ♕xe5 20.♖d1++–.

19.dxe5 ♖f7

19...♗xe5 20.♕g5+ ♙c7 21.♕f4 with the idea of g7-g8♚.

20. ♖d1 ♖d5 21.e6 ♗f6

21...♕xe6 22.♚xe6; 21...♗e5 22.♚xh7.

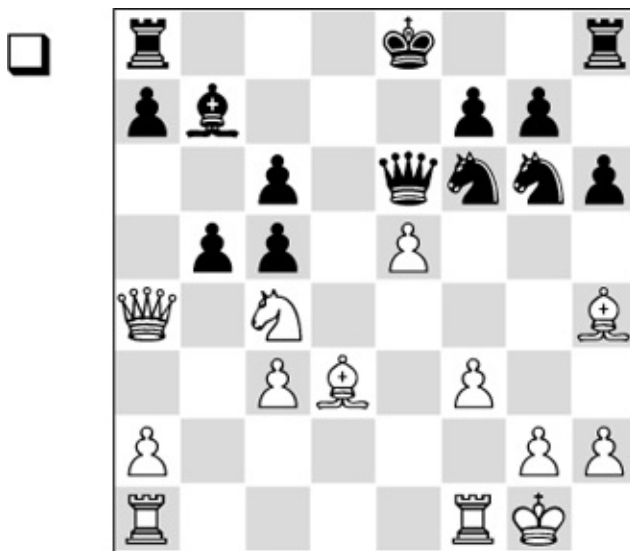
22. ♖g5 ♔e7 23. ♔c3

Black resigned.

The king being stuck in the centre is a favourable factor for the following unexpected combination.

Mikhail Tal Hans Hecht

Varna 1962 (9)



Black has created counterplay – he is forking queen and knight, and the bishop on h4 is hanging, but White finds a brilliant way out, exploiting the fact that the king has not castled.

1. exf6 bxa4

On 1...0-0 Tal gives 2. ♖ae1 (2. ♖c2!?) 2... ♙xe1 (2... ♙d5 3. ♖c2 ♗xh4 4. ♗a5!±) 3. ♖xe1 bxa4 4. ♗xg6 fxg6 5. ♖e7 ♖f7 6. ♗d6.

2. fxg7 ♖g8 3. ♗f5!!

The point of White's idea!

3... ♗xh4

3... ♙xc4 4. ♖fe1+ ♙e6 5. ♖xe6+ fxe6 6. ♗xg6+–.

3... ♙xf5 4. ♗d6+ ♗d7 5. ♗xf5 ♗xh4 6. ♗xh4±.

4. ♗xe6 ♗a6 5. ♗d6+ ♙e7 6. ♗c4! ♖xg7 7. g3



7... ♙xd6?

7... ♗xc4 8. ♗xc4 ♖d8 – Tal.

8. ♗xa6 ♗f5 9. ♖ab1 f6 10. ♖fd1+ ♙e7 11. ♖e1+ ♙d6 12. ♗f2 c4

12...h5.

13.g4 ♘e7 14. ♖b7 ♜ag8 15. ♙xc4 ♘d5 16. ♙xd5 cxd5 17. ♖b4 ♜c8 18. ♖xa4+–

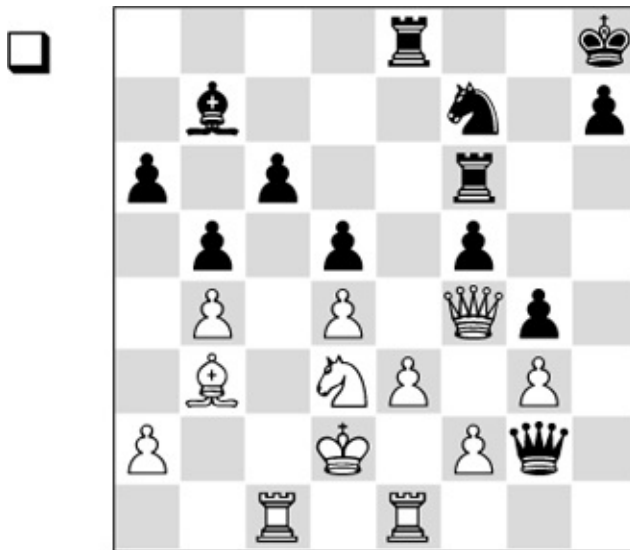
And White realised his advantage.

But one should not overestimate the significance of the king being in the centre. If it has a firm pawn group behind which to shelter, then it often feels perfectly comfortable there.

Vadim Milov

Viesturs Meijers

Zwolle 2003 (4)



White's position is better – the bishop on b7 is out of play and the dark squares are weak. But he is a pawn down. If White waits, Black will consolidate.

1.e4!!

White himself opens the position, with his king in the centre!

1...dxe4

Both 1... ♖d6 2.e5 ♘e4+ 3. ♖xe4 dxe4 4.exf6 exd3 5.f7, and 1... ♖xe4 2. ♗b8+ ♘g7 3. ♖g1! ♗h2 (3... ♗f3 4. ♙d1) 4. ♖h1 ♗g2 5. ♖cg1 ♗f3 6. ♙d1 are bad.

2. ♙xf7! ♜xf7 3. ♘e5 ♜g7

3... ♖fe7 4. ♘e3 ♖xe5 5.dxe5 ♗f3+ 6. ♗xf3 gxf3 7. ♘f4+–; 3... ♖xe5 4.dxe5 ♖d7+ 5. ♘e2 ♗f3+ 6. ♗xf3 exf3+ 7. ♘e3+–.

4. ♙e3!

The king feels absolutely fine here. There is a threat of winning the queen and it is hard to know what to recommend to Black – 4. ♖g1 e3+.

4... ♜xe5 5.dxe5 ♙f3+ 6. ♙xf3 gxf3 7. ♙f4 ♙g8 8.e6

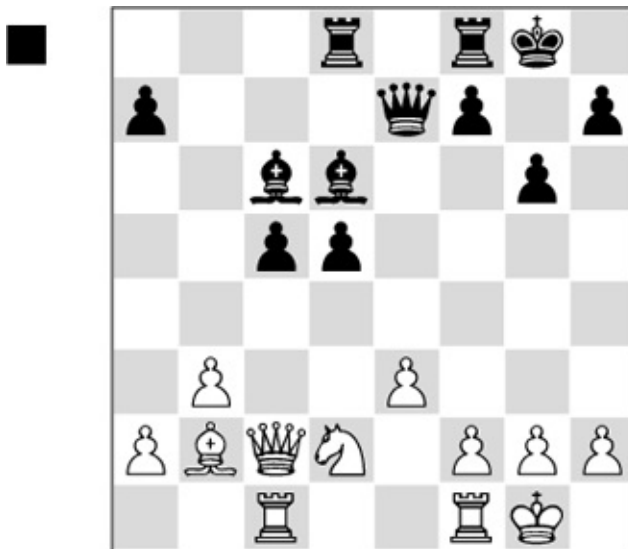
And White won.

Broken pawn cover

So as to break up the king's pawn cover, one needs to remove one of the pawns or pieces that protect him. The rules of chess make the king a relatively immobile piece, so he finds it hard quickly to quit the area where the action is going on, and thus he becomes an object for the enemy pieces to attack.

Aaron Nimzowitsch Siegbert Tarrasch

St Petersburg 1914 (5)



At first glance, White's position looks very solid – his king is castled, and he has no weaknesses. But Black has some powerful trumps – a mobile pawn centre and two strong bishops, pointing at the enemy king.

1...d4!

The introduction to a combination.

2.exd4

More tenacious are 2.e4 or 2.♖fe1.

2...♗xh2+!?

This now standard double bishop sacrifice was then a rarity in tournament play. The king is stripped of its pawn protection and later becomes a victim of the attack from the black queen, plus the rook which hurries to her aid. But a simpler win was 2...♗xg2! 3.♔xg2 (3.dxc5 ♖g5) 3...♗g5+ 4.♔f3 (4.♔h3 ♖h5+ or 4.♔h1 ♖f4) 4...♖fe8! 5.♖g1 ♖f4+ 6.♔g2 ♖e2.

3.♗xh2 ♗h4+ 4.♗g1 ♗xg2 5.f3

If 5.♔xg2, then 5...♗g4+ 6.♔h1 ♖d5 7.♖xc5 ♖h5+ 8.♖xh5 ♖xh5+ 9.♔g1 ♖g5+ 10.♔h1 ♖xd2+.

5...♖fe8!

5...♗g3 6.♘e4.

6.♘e4 ♗h1+ 7.♗f2 ♗xf1 8.d5

8.♖xf1 ♖h2+.



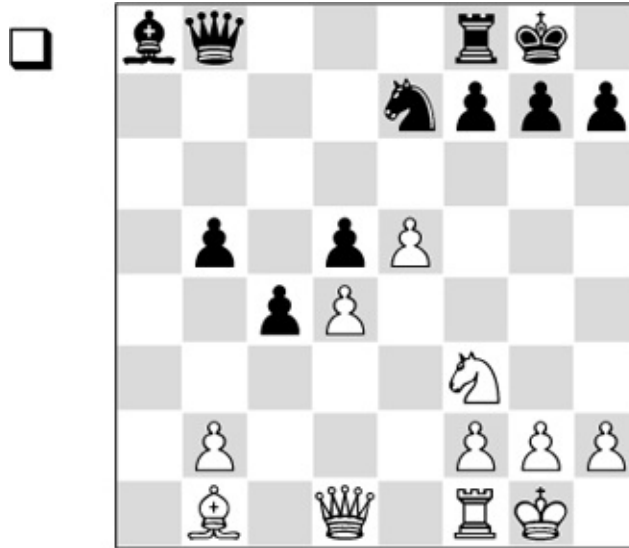
8...f5! 9. ♖c3 ♕g2+ 10. ♖e3 ♜xe4+! 11.fxe4 f4+

Simpler is 11... ♖g3+ 12. ♔d2 ♖f2+ 13. ♔d1 ♖e2#.

12. ♖xf4 ♜f8+ 13. ♖e5 ♕h2+ 14. ♖e6 ♜e8+ 15. ♖d7 ♘b5#

Carl Schlechter Heinrich Wolf

Ostend 1905 (19)



Black's position is worse. The bishop on a8 is out of play, his knight lacks a secure outpost and his queen is far from the kingside, at which all the white pieces are pointing.

1. ♘xh7+!

Another typical combination to destroy the king's pawn protection.

1... ♖xh7

1... ♔h8 2. ♖g5 g6 3. ♖f3 ♖f5 4. ♘xg6+–.

2. ♖g5+ ♖g6

2... ♔g8 3. ♖h5 ♜e8 4. ♖xf7+ ♔h8 5. ♖e6 or 2... ♔h6 3. ♖g4 ♖c8 4. ♖h4+ ♔g6 5. ♖h7+ ♔xg5 6. f4+ ♔g4 7. ♖h3#.

3. ♖g4

The queen and knight tandem are often sufficient to create decisive threats in such positions.

3...f5 4.exf6 gxf6

4... ♖xf6 5. ♗e6+ ♔f7 6. ♝xg7+ ♔xe6 7. ♖e1+.

5. ♗e6+ ♔f7 6. ♝g7+ ♔xe6 7. ♖e1+ ♔f5 8. ♔h7+ ♔g5 9. ♖xe7

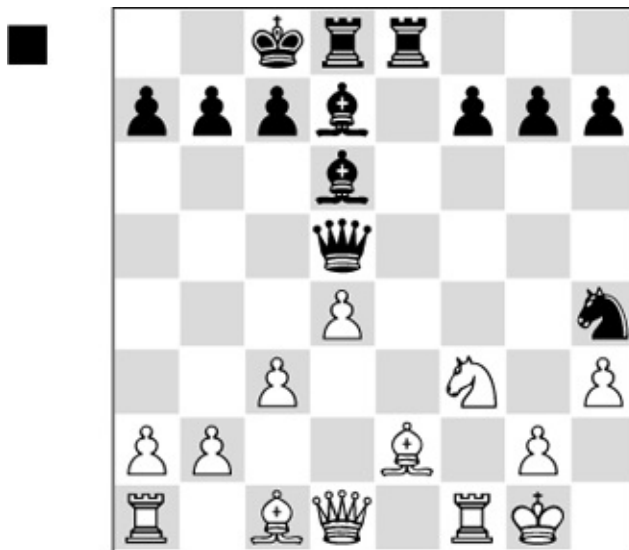
Simpler is 9.h4+ ♔g4 10.f3+ ♔g3 11.♝g7+.

9... ♖g8 10. ♖e3 b4 11. ♖g3+ ♔xg3 12. ♔xg8+

Black resigned.

William Steinitz Emanuel Lasker

London 1899 (27)



The players have castled on opposite sides. Black's task is to start an attack as soon as possible.

1... ♗xg2!! 2. ♔xg2 ♗xh3+! 3. ♔f2

3. ♔xh3 ♗h5+ 4. ♔g2 ♗g4+ 5. ♔h1 ♗h3+ 6. ♔g1 ♗g3+ 7. ♔h1 ♖e4 8. ♗g5 ♖g4-+.

3...f6!

The plan is to advance the kingside pawns, so as to increase the threats against the white king.

4. ♖g1 g5 5. ♗xg5 fxg5 6. ♖xg5 ♔e6 7. ♔d3 ♗f4 8. ♖h1

8. ♖h5 ♗g4; 8. ♖g7 ♗f5.

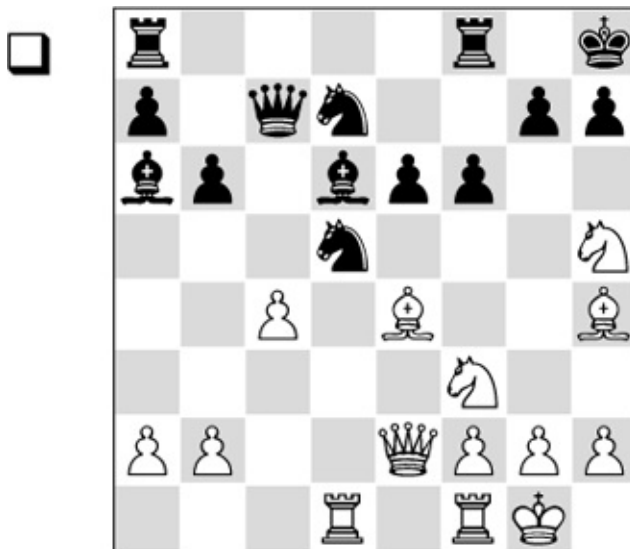
8... ♗xg5 9. ♗xg5 ♔f6+ 10. ♗f3 ♗f5 11. ♗xh7 ♔g6 12. ♔b5 c6 13. ♔a5 ♖e7 14. ♖h5

♗g4 15. ♖g5 ♔c2+ 16. ♔g3 ♗xf3

White resigned. Lasker won the first brilliancy prize, one of four such in his career.

Mikhail Tal Evgeny Vasiukov

Kiev 1964/65 (4)



We have a complicated middlegame battle. White finds an interesting tactical resource and complicates the position even further.

1. ♖xg7! ♔xg7

1... ♕xc4 2. ♗xe6 ♕xe2 3. ♗xc7+–.

2. ♖d4

The pin, open king and threat of a fork on e6 force Black to return the material.

2... ♖c5

2... ♗f4.

3. ♔g4+ ♔h8 4. ♖xe6 ♖xe6 5. ♔xe6 ♖ae8 6. ♔xd5 ♖xh2+ 7. ♔h1



After an exchange of blows, the black king remains weak and he has to go over to defence.

7... ♔f4

7... ♕xc4 8. ♔f5±; 7... ♔xc4! 8. ♔xc4 ♕xc4 9. ♖fe1±.

8. ♔h5! ♔xe4

8... ♖xe4 9. ♖d7.

9. ♖fe1

Better is 9. ♖de1.

9... ♖g6 10. ♖xg6 hxg6?

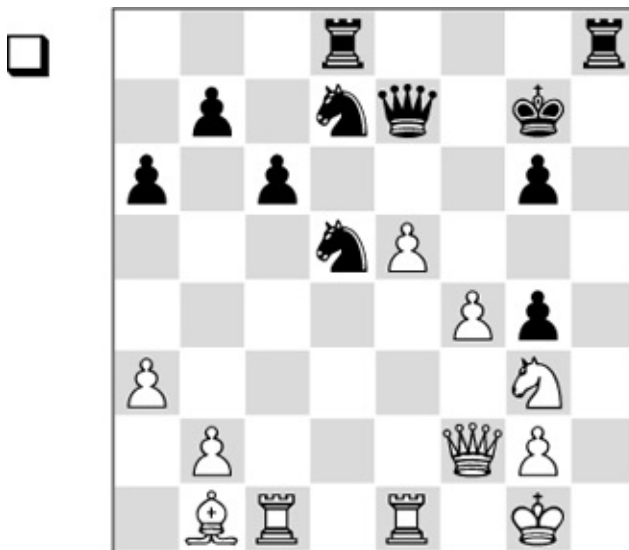
10... ♖xe1+=.

11. ♗xf6+ ♖g8 12. ♖xe8 ♖xe8 13. ♖xh2 ♗xc4

And White realised his extra pawn.

José Raul Capablanca Ilya Kan

Moscow 1935 (8)



The difference in the positions of the respective kings defines White's advantage. Energetic measures are needed, to underline this.

1.e6!

Preparing the subsequent decisive sacrifice.

1... ♗f8

On 1... ♗7f6 or 1... ♗7b6 there also follows 2. ♖xg6.

2. ♖xg6! ♖xg6 3. ♖c2+ ♖f6 4. ♖f5+ ♖g7 5. ♖xg4+ ♖h7



6. ♖f2?

White wins immediately with 6. ♖e5! ♖g7 (or 6... ♗f6 7. ♖h4+ ♗g8 8. ♖g5+) 7. ♖h5+ ♗g8 8. ♖g5.

6... ♖g7! 7. ♗xg7+

White had missed that he loses after 7. ♖h4+ ♜g8 8. ♖xd8 ♜d4+!

7... ♗xg7 8.e7 ♜e8 9.exf8 ♜+ ♜exf8 10.f5 ♜h4 11. ♜cd1 ♜f4+ 12. ♗g1 ♜g4

The threat was 13. ♜xd5 cxd5 14. ♘h5+.

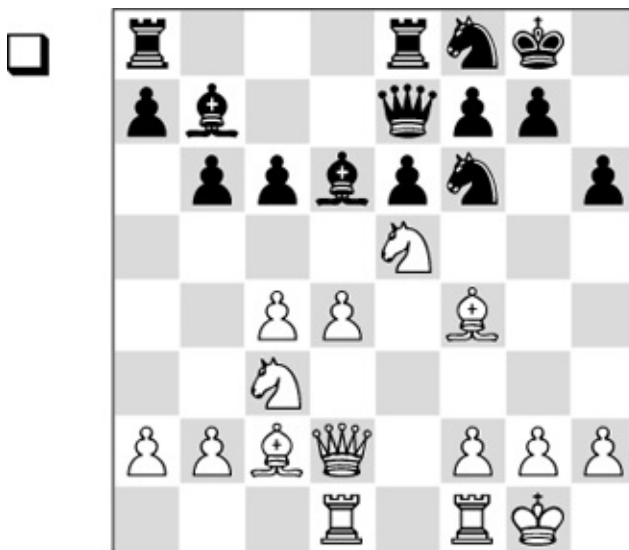
13. ♜d3 ♗f7 14. ♗f2 ♜h8 15. ♜b3! b5 16. ♞e4 ♜h6 17.g3! ♜g8 18. ♗f3 a5 19. ♜d3 a4
20. ♜d2

Black lost on time.

'No formation can ever be equally strong at every point, and the master deliberately and systematically directs his fire at the point where the opponent's resistance is weakest' (Em. Lasker). For example, in the starting position, the pawns on f2 and f7, defended only by the king, are the Achilles Heel of the position. A very simple-looking method of attack is the sacrifice of a piece for two pawns on an exposed rook's pawn, on h3 or h6.

Mikhail Botvinnik Veniamin Sozin

Novgorod 1929



Black has wrongly weakened his kingside and Botvinnik decides on a positional sacrifice. Usually, it is this advanced h-pawn that is the only weakness of such a kingside set-up.

1. ♞xh6!

A positional sacrifice.

1... gxf6 2. ♗xh6

For the sacrificed piece, White has two pawns, an exposed enemy king and the possibility of strengthening the attack by bringing his rook up along the third rank.

2... ♞xe5

The knight is dangerous.

3.dxe5 ♞g4

3... ♘6h7 4. ♘e4+.

4. ♗f4 f5 5.exf6 ♞xf6 6. ♜d3 e5 7. ♗h6 ♞6h7 8. ♜g3+ ♗h8 9. ♞e4 ♜ad8 10. ♞g5 ♜d7



11. ♖xh7

He could win with 11. ♖h3! ♔g7 (if 11... ♖d6, then 12. ♗xd6; or 11... e4 12. ♙xe4 ♗g7 13. ♗h5 ♖xe4 14. ♘xe4+-) 12. ♗h5 ♖ee7 13. ♘xh7 ♘xh7 14. ♙xh7 ♗xh7 15. ♗f5+-.

11... ♗xh7 12. ♙xh7 ♗xh7 13. ♗f6+ ♖g7 14. ♖d1 ♙c8 15. h4 ♖g8 16. ♗xe5 ♗f5 16... ♗xh4 17. ♖d4 ♗h6 18. ♖g6!.

White is slightly better.

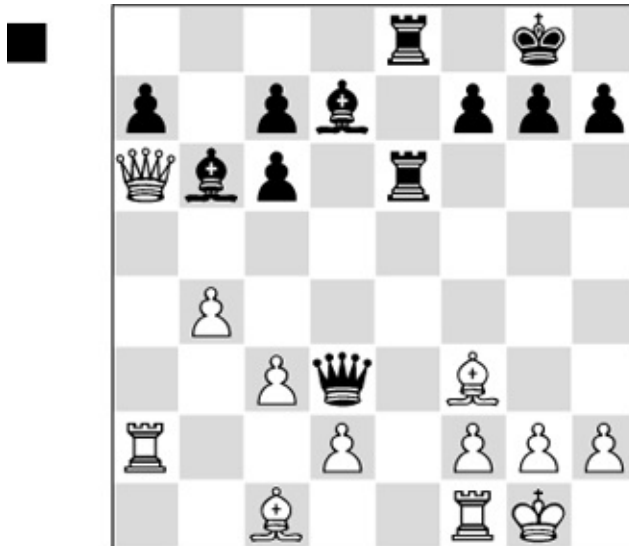
Eliminating defenders

In circumstances when we need to remove an enemy defensive piece, the most usual measure is to exchange it. But when the enemy king is under attack and every tempo is vital, sacrifices are also often the way. By eliminating the defender's piece, the latter's ability to resist in the crucial area of the board is significantly reduced and important defensive points fall into the hands of the attacker.

Louis Paulsen

Paul Morphy

New York 1857 (6)



Strategically, White does not stand badly. He has the more elastic pawn structure and his kingside is without weaknesses. But his two strongest pieces are far away from the scene of the future action and this factor alone gives Black the idea for a combination. There followed:

1... ♖xf3! 2.gxf3 ♖g6+ 3. ♖h1 ♘h3

The material investment is more than compensated for, and the poor white king has nowhere to run to.

4. ♖d1

More tenacious is 4. ♖d3 f5! 5. ♖c4+ ♘f8! 6. ♖h4 (6. ♖g1 ♖xg1+ 7. ♘xg1 ♖e1+) 6... ♘xf1.

4... ♘g2+ 5. ♖g1 ♘xf3+ 6. ♖f1 ♘g2+

6... ♖g2 wins.

7. ♖g1 ♘h3+

Simpler is 7... ♘e4+ 8. ♘f1 ♘f5.

8. ♖h1 ♘xf2 9. ♖f1 ♘xf1 10. ♖xf1 ♖e2 11. ♖a1 ♖h6 12.d4

Or 12. ♘g2 ♖f6 13. ♘h1 ♘g3 14. ♖xf6 ♖xh2+ 15. ♘g1 gxf6 16. ♖xa7 h5.



12... ♘e3!

0-1

Emanuel Lasker

Vasja Pirc

Moscow 1935 (19)

1.e4 c5 2. ♖f3 ♖c6 3.d4 cxd4 4. ♖xd4 ♖f6 5. ♖c3 d6 6. ♘e2 e6 7.0-0 a6 8. ♘e3 ♖c7 9.f4 ♖a5?

After this, Black falls seriously behind in development. Better is 9... ♘e7.

10.f5! ♖c4

Here too, 10... ♘e7 should have been preferred. But Black has the worse game if he tries to keep lines closed: 10...e5 11. ♘b3 ♘c4 12. ♘xc4 ♖xc4 13. ♖f3.

11. ♘xc4 ♖xc4 12.fxe6 fxe6

Black is also not to be envied after 12... ♘xe6.



Lasker effectively exploits his lead in development.

13. ♖xf6! gxf6 14. ♔h5+ ♕d8

Other retreats also fail to save the game: 14...♗d7 15.♞f7+ ♙e7 16.♘f5! ♜e8 17.♘xd6 ♖xd6 18.♞xe8 or 14...♗e7 15.♘f5+! exf5 (no better is 15...♗d7 16.♞f7+ ♖c6 17.♘d4+ ♖b6 18.♘b3+) 16.♘d5+ ♗d8 17.♙b6+ ♗d7 18.♞f7+ ♖c6 19.♞c7+ ♖b5 20.a4+ ♞xa4 21.c4+ ♞xc4 22.♜a5#.

15. ♞f7 ♘d7

Or 15...♙e7 16.♘f5! ♞c7 17.♘a4 ♜f8 18.♞xh7 ♖e8 19.♙b6 ♞d7 20.♞h5+ ♜f7 21.♘g7+ ♖f8 22.♞h8#.

16. ♞xf6+ ♕c7 17. ♞xh8 ♙h6 18. ♗xe6+! ♕xe6 19. ♕xa8 ♙xe3+ 20. ♕h1

Black resigned.

Harry Pillsbury Emanuel Lasker

St Petersburg 1895 (10)



White's defences are built on the knight at c3. For a relatively small sum, Black is able to remove it and open the white king up, seizing the initiative.

1... ♜xc3! 2.fxe6

On 2.bxc3 there would follow 2...♜c8! (2...♞xc3 3.♞f3 with drawing chances).

2... ♜a3 3.exf7+

3.bxa3 ♖b6+ 4.♔a1 ♕xd4+ 5.♜xd4 ♞xd4+ 6.♔b1 fxe6 7.♞e2 ♞e4+ 8.♔b2 ♜f2-+; 3.e7 ♜e8 4.bxa3 ♞b6+ 5.♔c2 ♜c8+ 6.♔d2 ♞xd4 7.e8♞+ ♜xe8 8.♞d3 ♞a5+ 9.♔c1 ♜c8+.

3... ♜xf7 4.bxa3 ♞b6+ 5.♞b5 ♞xb5+ 6.♞a1

6.♔c2 ♜c7+.

6... ♜c7

Also possible is 6...♞c4 7.♞g4 ♜e7.

7. ♜d2 ♜c4



8. ♜hd1

Better is 8.♜e1! with chances of perpetual check.

8... ♜c3 9.♞f5 ♞c4 10.♞b2 ♜xa3! 11.♞e6+ ♞h7 12.♞xa3

Or 12.♔b1 ♞xd4 13.♞f5+ g6 14.♞d7+ ♞g7.

12... ♞c3+

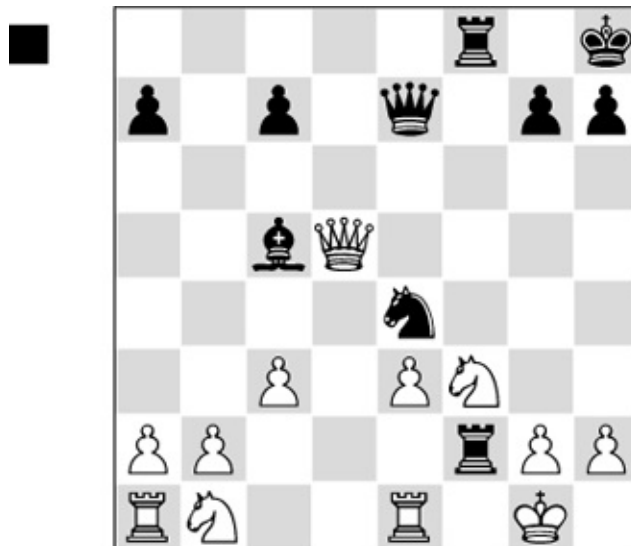
White resigned because of 13.♔a4 b5+ 14.♔xb5 ♞c4+ 15.♔a5 ♞d8+ 16.♞b6 ♞xb6#.

A defender can be not only eliminated, but also deflected from its task.

Amateur

William Steinitz

London 1869



Black stands very actively, with his rook having broken through to the second rank and his bishop x-raying the white king. The only thing stopping his initiative developing is the knight on f3.

1... ♖h4!!

Deflection.

2. ♗xh4

If 2... ♖xc5, then 2... ♜xg2+! 3. ♕h1 ♜xh2+; or 2... ♗bd2 ♖g4 3.g3 ♖h3-+.

2... ♜xe3 3. ♗g6+

3.h3 doesn't help, because of 3... ♜f1+ 4. ♕h2 ♜g1+ 5. ♕h1 ♗g3#; or 3.g3 ♜e2+ 4. ♕h1 ♜xe1+ 5. ♕g2 ♜g1+ 6. ♕h3 ♗f2#.

3... hxg6 4.g3



4... ♜e2+ 5. ♕h1 ♜xe1+ 6. ♕g2 ♜g1+ 7. ♕h3 ♗f2+ 8. ♕h4 ♜f4+ 9.gxf4

Or 9. ♕g5 ♜g4#.

9... ♜g4#

Attacking the weakest point

In a chess game, one tries to create strong points for oneself and weak points for the opponent. When attacking the king, we find the weakest point in the enemy's defence and direct our fire against that. The attacker's pieces occupy the weak point and create unpleasant threats close to the enemy king. In the following game, Black clearly misses his dark-squared bishop. How can we exploit this?

Mikhail Botvinnik

Paul Keres

The Hague-Moscow 1948 (10)



1. ♖c1 ♔b8

Or 1... ♖d7 2. ♖b4 ♖b8 3. ♗b5 ♖d8 4. ♗g5±.

2. ♖g5!

White forcibly breaks through to g7, the key point in Black's camp.

2... ♞bd7

2... ♞e8 3. ♞h5 ♞f6 4. ♞xf6+ ♞xf6 5. ♖xf6+–.

3. ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 4. ♞h5+ ♔g6

4... ♔h8 5. ♗g5 or 4... ♔f8 5. ♞xf6+–.

5. ♔e3

Or 5.f4+–. Black resigned.

Gustav Neumann

Joseph Blackburne

Dundee 1868



Black's position is better. The pawn on f3 serves as an outpost. If the g3-pawn is first exchanged and

then taken, the king will be completely on its own. Whether this was exactly Blackburne's chain of reasoning, we do not know, but he played very creatively.

1...hxg3

After 1...♙xb5 2.♖xb5+ c6 3.♗f5 ♘h6 4.♗h5 hxg3 5.hxg3 the position is complicated, but Black has the advantage.

2.hxg3 c6!?

Striving to attack at all costs. Objectively, this move loses, but this remarkable game would not have made the textbooks if Blackburne had played in some other way.

3.♖c7+ ♔d8 4.♖xa8 ♖f6!?

White wins with 6.♘e6+ ♙xe6 7.♗xe4.

6...♖xg3



White has an extra rook and two minor pieces!! But there is no defence. There followed...

7.♖e6+!

The threat, for example after 7.♙d2, was 7...♗h1+ 8.♔f2 ♗h2+ 9.♔g1 ♖h4 10.♘e6+ ♔c8-+.

7...fxe6 8.♗g6 ♖h2!!

A brilliant reply. 8...♗h1+ 9.♔f2 ♗xf1+ also won.

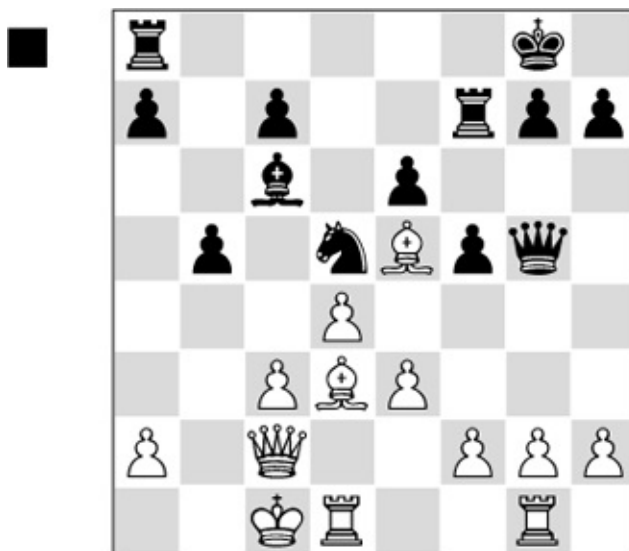
9.♖xf3 gxf3 10.♗xh2 ♔h4+ 11.♗g1 ♔h1+ 12.♗f2 ♔g2+ 13.♗e3 ♖f1+ 14.♗f4 ♔xg6-+ 15.♗xf3 ♖h2+ 16.♗f2 ♔xd7 17.♙f4 ♔f5 18.♗g3 ♔g4+ 19.♗xh2 ♔xf4+

0-1

Richard Teichmann

Mikhail Chigorin

Cambridge Springs 1904 (15)



White has the two bishops, so if the position opens up, the advantage will be fully on his side. Black's hope is to exploit the open position of the white king.

1... ♔e7!

Including the queen in the attack.

2. ♖df1

No better is 2. ♕b2 ♜b8 3.g4 b4 4.c4 ♘c3 5. ♖df1 ♘a4+ 6. ♕a1 b3! 7.axb3 ♜a3+ 8. ♜a2 ♜xb3-+.

2... ♕a3+ 3. ♖d2 b4 4.c4 ♗a4 5. ♕b1 ♘c3 6. ♕a1 ♜d8 7.g4 ♘e4+ 8. ♕e2

Or 8. ♗xe4 fxe4 9. ♜b1 ♜c3+ 10. ♕e2 ♗c2-+.



8... ♘c5! 9. ♕b1

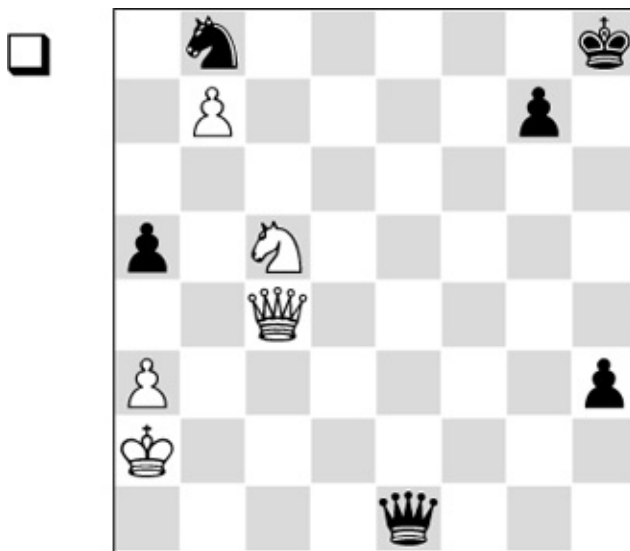
9. ♗b1 ♘b3!.

9... ♘xd3 10. ♕xd3 ♕xa2+ 11. ♕f3 ♗c2

José Raul Capablanca

David Janowsky

San Sebastian 1911 (5)



Black's position is worse. His h-pawn is only two squares away from promoting, but the weakness of the squares round his king and the passivity of his knight make him the defending side.

1. ♖e4!

An excellent square for the knight, from where it can work on two fronts.

1... ♔h7

1...h2 also loses, due to 2. ♖c8+ ♔h7 3. ♗h3+ ♔g8 (3... ♔g6 4. ♗e6+) 4. ♗e6+ ♔h8 (4... ♔f8 5. ♗d6+ ♔f7 6. ♘g5+) 5. ♗e8+ ♔h7 6. ♘g5+. More tenacious is 1... ♗h4.

2. ♗d3! g6

If 2... ♔g8, then 3. ♗d5+!. On 2... ♗h4 there would follow 3. ♘g5+ ♔h6 4. ♘f7+ ♔h5 5. ♗f5+ g5 6. ♘e5+–; or 2...h2 3. ♘g5+ ♔h6 4. ♘f7+ ♔h5 5. ♗f5+ ♔h4 6. ♗f4+ ♔h3 7. ♘g5+ ♔g2 8. ♗f3+ ♔g1 9. ♘h3#.

3. ♗xh3+ ♔g7



4. ♗f3! ♔c1

No better is 4... ♗h4 5. ♗c3+ or 4... ♘d7 5. ♗d3 ♘b8 6. ♗d4+.

5. ♗f6+ ♔h7 6. ♗f7+ ♔h6 7. ♗f8+ ♔h5 8. ♗h8+ ♔g4 9. ♗c8+

An attack on weak squares can continue even in the endgame.

Artyom Timofeev Semen Dvoirys

Belgorod 2010 (2)



White's position is better. His central pawns are far advanced and his king is taking part in the game. But Black wants to create counterplay with the moves ...b5-b4 and ...c5-c4, and he also has an extra exchange.

1.h4!

Based on the bad position of the black king.

1...gxh4 2. ♖h1 c4 3. ♗c2 b4 4. ♖xh4

Black's play is too slow – mate comes first!

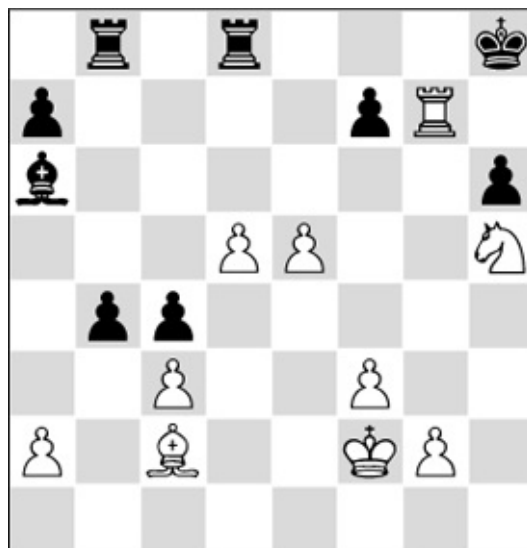
4...h6

4...bxc3 5. ♘f6+ ♔f8 6.d6 with the idea of 6... ♖b2 7. ♗g4, and mate is unavoidable.

5. ♖g4+ ♚h8

5... ♔f8 6.d6 and ♘f6.

6. ♖g7



6...bxc3

He also loses after 6...b3 7.axb3 cxb3 8.♙e4 b2 9.e6+- b1♚ 10.♜h7+ ♘g8 11.♞f6+ ♘f8 12.♜xf7#.

7.d6 ♜b2 8.♜h7+ ♚g8 9.♞f6+ ♚f8 10.♜h8+ ♚g7 11.♜xd8 ♜xc2+ 12.♚e3 ♚g6

Mate was threatened on g8.

13.d7 ♜d2 14.♜g8+ ♚f5 15.d8♚ ♜d3+ 16.♚xd3+ cxd3 17.♞e4

1-0

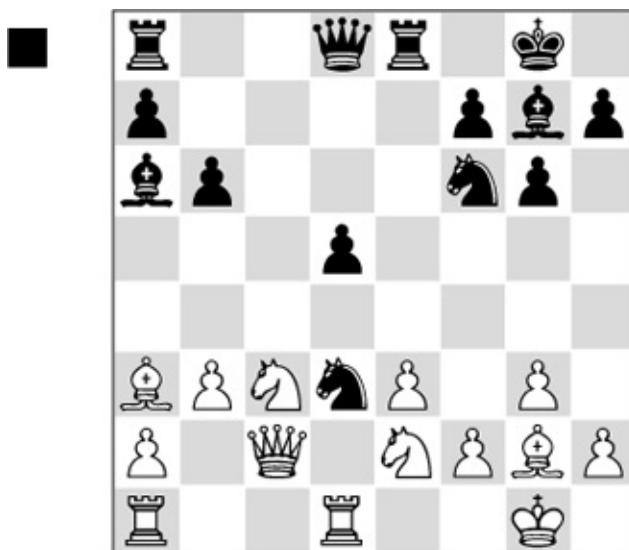
Playing on weakened lines

For an attack on the king to succeed, we need very active pieces. During the course of a game, the lines on the board (files, ranks and diagonals) become blocked with pawns and pieces. The attacker's job is to open them for attacking purposes, when the position of the enemy king will become more dangerous. The more pieces take part in the attack, the better – one must try to bring up all the reserves.

Robert Byrne

Robert Fischer

New York 1963/64 (3)



Strategically, Black's position is dangerous, but his pieces enjoy great activity. There followed:

1...♞xf2! 2.♚xf2 ♞g4+ 3.♚g1 ♞xe3 4.♚d2 ♞xg2! 5.♚g2 d4!

Opening the diagonal!

6.♞xd4 ♞b7+ 7.♚f1

7.♞g1 ♞xd4+ 8.♚xd4 ♜e1+ 9.♞f2 ♚xd4+ 10.♜xd4 ♜xa1 11.♜d7 ♜c8-+; 7.♞f2 ♚d7! 8.♜ac1 ♚h3 9.♞f3 ♞h6 10.♚d3 ♞e3+ 11.♚xe3 ♜xe3 12.♞xe3 ♜e8+ 13.♞f2 ♚f5!.

7...♚d7!



White resigned. «A bitter disappointment. The following variations remained in the notes: 8.♔f2 (8.♘db5 ♖h3+ 9.♙g1 ♕h6) 8...♖h3+ 9.♙g1 ♜e1+!! 10.♞xe1 ♕xd4» (R. Fischer).

Sometimes, a position is reached in which one of our own pieces prevents its colleague achieving the necessary activity on a certain line. In these cases too, we can sometimes use the idea of line-clearing.

Juan Corzo y Principe José Raul Capablanca

Havana 1913 (1)



It is hard to prefer either side. White has more space, but his rook on h1 is completely out of the game.

1...g5!!

Capablanca exposes a temporary drawback in White's position – the cramped position of his king. After the removal of the obstructing pawn on g6, Black's pieces achieve freedom.

2. ♖xg7+

White loses after 2.♘xg5 ♕xd4+ 3.♖xd4 ♘xg5 4.♞xe7?? ♘h3# or 2.fxg5 ♘xg5 3.♞xe7 ♘h3+ 4.gxh3 ♕xd4#, but in the second variation, after 3.♕xg7+ ♞xg7 4.♘xg5 ♖xg5 Black has only an insignificant advantage.

2... ♜xg7 3. ♘d4 ♕d7 4.f5

Better was 4.♔d3 f5 5.♙xe4 fxe4 6.f5 ♖e5 7.♘e6+ ♙xe6 8.fxe6.

4...♖e5 5.♖d3 ♜e8 6.♞e6+ fxe6 7.fxe6



7...♜xe6! 8.dxe6 ♗c6 9.♖f3+ ♖f4! 10.♖e3

Also bad is 10.♖xf4+ gxf4 11.h4 (11.♔d3 ♘c5!) 11...f3 12.♙d1? f2+ 13.♙h2 ♘g3 14.♙d2 ♘xh1 15.♙xh1 ♙xg2 16.♔xg2 f1♖+, but 12.♙e3 is stronger.

10...♖e7 11.b4 b6 12.b5 ♗b7 13.g3 ♞d2! 14.♖c3

14.gxf4 gxf4+; more tenacious is 14.♔g2 ♖xe3+ 15.♙xe3 ♘xc4 16.♙c3 ♔xg2 17.♙xg2 d5.

14...♞f3+ 15.♖f2 ♖f8!

And Black won.

Mikhail Botvinnik

Milan Vidmar

Nottingham 1936 (13)



White stands actively, but Black has no weaknesses. How can White develop his initiative?

1.f4!

Opens the f-file and the a2-g8 diagonal.

1...♜c8

1...g6 2.♔h6 ♙e8 3.♔a4 or 1...♘e4 2.♘xf7! ♙xf7 (2...♙xf7 3.♖xe6) 3.♙de1!+-.

2.f5 exf5 3. ♖xf5 ♔d6

More stubborn is 3... ♖c7, but after 4. ♖df1 Black is still not saving himself, eg. 4... ♟b6 5. ♖h4 ♟bd5 6. ♟xf7 ♖xf7 7. ♙xd5 ♟xd5 8. ♖xf7 ♙xg5 9. ♖xg5! or 4... a6 5. ♟xf7 ♖xf7 6. ♙xd5 ♟xd5 7. ♖xf7 ♙xg5 8. ♖e6!.



4. ♟xf7 ♖xf7

4... ♟xf7 5. ♙xd5+.

5. ♙xf6 ♟xf6

5... ♟xf6 6. ♖xf6 ♙xf6 7. ♖xc8+.

6. ♖xd5 ♟c6 7. ♖d6 ♟e8 8. ♖d7

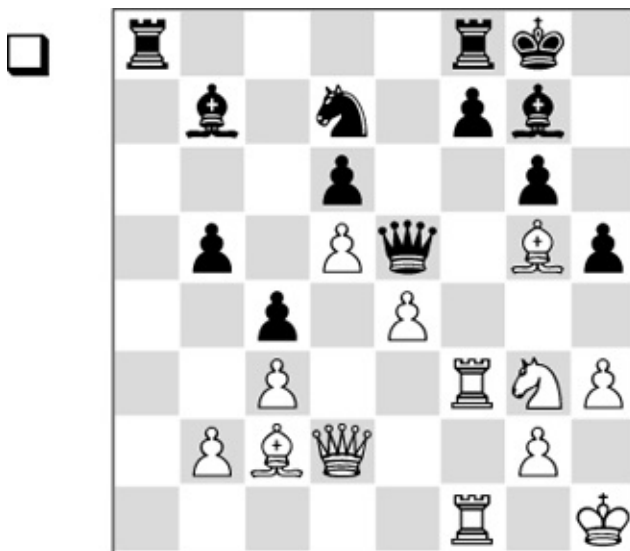
1-0

White won the beauty prize for this game.

In his first years of competitive play, Mikhail Tal was an ultra-sharp combinative player, who always strove for a sharp position, full of combinations and attack. In his view, many sacrifices did not need concrete calculation – it was enough just to look at the resulting position, to see that the sacrifice was correct. This is a questionable proposition, but analysis confirms the correctness of many of his decisions. We will show some examples of piece sacrifices, many of them intuitive, with the aim of seizing control of lines for attack.

Mikhail Tal Boris Spassky

Tilburg 1980 (7)



The black bishop on b7 is out of play. Its opposite number is also, but the latter has more prospects.

1. Nxe5!

A piece sacrifice to open lines for attack. On the kingside, the number of attacking pieces exceeds the number of defenders.

1...gxe5 2. Rf5 ♔e8 3.e5!

The point. Black cannot prevent penetration along the opened files and diagonals.

3...dxe5

3...dxe5 4. Qf6 ♘g6 5. Qxg7 ♖xg7 6. Rxe5 ♗h8 7. Qxg6! fxg6 8. ♗d4+-; 3...dxe5 4. Qf6!

4. Qh6 ♖a6 5. Qxg7 ♗xg7 6.d6! f6



7. Rg5+! ♔f7

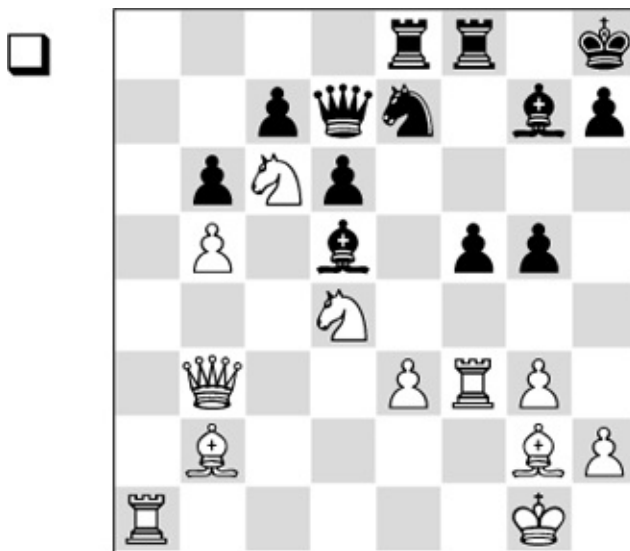
Equally disastrous is 7...♔h8 8. Rg3, mating.

8. Qg6+ ♔e6 9. Qf5+! ♔f7 10. ♗d1! ♖h8 11. Qg6+ ♔e6 12. Qxe8 ♖xe8 13. ♗xh5 ♖d8 14. Rg7 ♗xd6 15. ♗f7

Black resigned.

Vassily Smyslov Vladimir Liberzon

Riga 1968



White has an extra piece, but his queen and rook are both attacked.

1. ♖xf5!

Breaking the Gordian Knot.

1... ♜xf5

1... ♙xb3 2. ♙xg7+ ♘g8 3. ♗cxe7+ ♜xe7 4. ♙xf8 ♘xf8 5. ♜a8+; 1... ♗xf5 2. ♜xd5 ♙xb2 3. ♜af1+.

2. ♙xg7+ ♘g8

Weaker is the capture 2... ♘xg7 because of 3. ♜c3+ ♘g8 4. ♜xf5 ♜xf5 5. ♜f1 ♜e6 6. ♜f6.

3. ♜xf5! ♙xb3 4. ♜xg5 ♗g6

If 4... h6, then 5. ♗xe7+ ♜xe7 6. ♙xh6+ ♘h8 7. ♜h5! ♘g8 8. ♜f1+ or 5... ♜xe7 6. ♜a8+ ♜e8 7. ♙xh6+ ♘h7 8. ♜g7+ ♜xg7 9. ♙xg7 ♜xa8 10. ♙xa8 ♘xg7 11. g4±.

5. ♙h6 ♘e6

5... ♜xe3 6. ♜xg6+.



6.h4

The attack on the king continues.

6... ♘xe3+ 7. ♜h2 ♘c3 8. ♜f1 ♙c4 9. ♜f2 ♘e1 10. ♜gf5 ♙xb5

Better is 10... ♖e6.

11. ♖d2 ♜b1 12. ♖d5+ ♚h8

12... ♘g7 13. ♜f7+ ♘h8 14. ♖c3+ ♜e5 15. ♜xe5 dxe5 16. ♜xc7 with the idea of 17. ♖xe5+ and 18. ♜f8#.

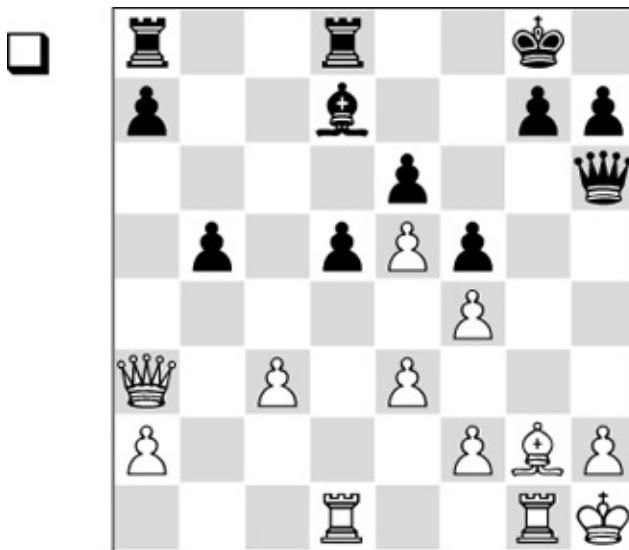
13. ♖c3+ ♜e5 14. ♜xe5 dxe5 15. ♜xc7

1-0

Efim Bogoljubow

Jacques Mieses

Baden-Baden 1925 (5)



1. ♚a6!

This move on the queenside is the introduction to a kingside attack!

1... ♚h5

Better is 1... ♜h4 2. ♜xd5! exd5 3. ♖xd5+ ♘h8 (3... ♘f8 4. ♜g5!! ♜h6 5.e6+-) 4. ♖xa8 ♜xa8 5. ♜b7 ♜d8 6.e6 ♜xf2.

2. ♖xd5!

Not 2. ♜xd5? exd5 3. ♖xd5+ ♘h8 4. ♖xa8 ♜xa8 5. ♜b7 ♜e8!.

2... exd5 3. ♜xg7+! ♜xg7 4. ♚f6+!

From a3 to f6!

4... ♚g8 5. ♜g1+ ♚g4 6. ♜xg4+ fxg4 7.f5! ♜dc8 8.e6 ♖c6 9. ♚f7+ ♚h8 10.f6 ♜g8

11. ♚c7 ♜ac8 12. ♚e5 d4+ 13. ♚g1 ♖d5 14.f7+ ♜g7 15. ♚xd5

Black resigned.

Creating barriers (the sacrifice on d5)

As well as the activity of his own pieces, the attacker can also concern himself with preventing defensive pieces coming to the aid of their king. This can be done by erecting a barrier. The difficulty of defending in such circumstances is shown by the typical sacrifice on d5 in the Sicilian Defence. The position is split into two, with communications disrupted, and Black must worry the whole time about the safety of his king.

Leonid Stein Semen Furman

Moscow 1969 (18)

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 e6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♘xd4 a6 5.♘c3 ♔c7 6.g3 b5 7.♗g2 ♗b7 8.0-0 ♘f6
9.♖e1 d6



Both sides develop their pieces, but unlike Black, who has made many pawn moves, White has succeeded in castling and bringing his pieces to fighting positions.

10.a4! b4

10...bxa4 11.♘d5! exd5 12.exd5+ ♔d8 13.♗g5 ♘d7 14.♗e2 ♗b6 15.♖xa4 ♖c8 16.♗d2 ♖c5 17.c4 ♔c8
18.b4 g6 19.bxc5 dxc5 20.♗a5 and Black resigned in the game Girya-Dudas, Herceg Novi 2008.

11.♘d5!

A positional sacrifice!

11...exd5

11...♘xd5 12.exd5 e5 13.a5!.

12.exd5+ ♔d8 13.♗g5

Now the black king is condemned to wander.

13...♘d7

The game Quinones-Higashi, Siegen Olympiad 1970, continued 13...♗c8 14.♗xf6+ gxf6 15.♗h5!
♖a7 16.♖e4 ♗g7 17.♖ae1 ♗c5 (17...f5 18.♗h4+ f6 19.♖e6) 18.♗e2 ♗d7 19.♘b3 ♗b6 20.a5 ♗b5
21.♗e3 ♖c7 22.♗f4 ♖e8 23.♗xd6 ♖xe4 24.♖xe4 ♔c8 25.♗f1 ♗a4 (25...♗b7 26.♖xb4 ♗a7 27.c4)
26.♖xb4 ♗a2 27.♘c5! ♗a1 28.♖xb8+ ♔xb8 29.♘xa6+, and Black resigned. A lost position also results
from 13...♗e7 14.♘f5 ♖e8 15.♘xg7 ♖g8 16.♗d4.

14.♗e2 ♗c8



15.c3!

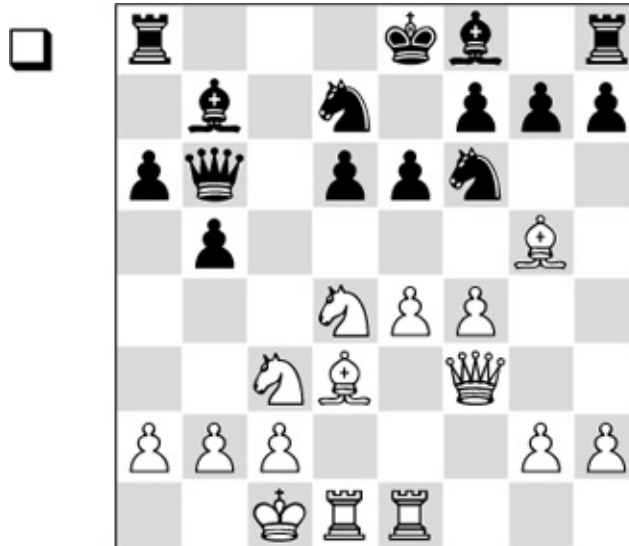
Opening a second front.

15...b3 16.♘c6! ♙xc6 17.dxc6 ♘e5 18.♖a3! d5! 19.♗xb3 ♙d6 20.♘xf6 gxf6 21.♘xd5 ♘xc6 22.♚g4+ ♚d7 23.♚xd7+ ♚xd7 24.♗b7+ ♙c7 25.♘g2! ♖ad8! 26.♘h3+! ♚d6 27.♗d1+ ♚c5 28.b4+ ♚c4 29.♘f1+! ♚b3 30.♗xc7 ♗xd1 31.♗xc6 ♚xa4 32.♚g2! a5 33.bxa5 ♗hd8 34.♗xf6 ♗d7 35.a6 ♗c1 36.♘d3! ♗xc3 37.♘h7 ♚b5 38.♘e4 ♗a3 39.♘b7 ♚c5 40.h4 ♚d4 41.♗f5 ♗e7 42.h5 ♗e5 43.♗f4+ ♚c5 44.h6

1-0

Maia Chiburdanidze
Semen Dvoirys

Tallinn 1980



White has posted his pieces as aggressively as possible and proceeds to the attack.

1.♘d5! exd5

[Translator's Note: This move is a mistake. Theory considers the position unclear after 1...♚xd4 2.♘xf6 gxf6 3.♘xb5 ♚c5 4.♗xf6+ ♚d8 5.♗xd7 ♚xb5 8.♗xf8 ♗xf8 etc.]

2.♘c6!!

Closing off the king's flight to d8.

2...♙xc6

2...d4 3.e5!+-.

3.exd5+ ♖e7 4.dxc6 ♜c5 5.♙xf6 gxf6

5...♘xd3+ 6.♚xd3 gxf6 7.♞xe7+ ♘xe7 8.♚xd6+ ♘e8 9.♞e1+.

6.♙f5 ♘c7

6...♘f8 7.c7+- 6...♞a7 7.♞xd6 ♘f8 8.c7 ♚xc7 9.♞c6+-.

7.b4! ♜e6 8.♘h5 ♜g7

More tenacious is 8...♘f8.

9.♙d7+ ♚f8 10.♘h6 d5

10...♚d8 11.♞d3 with the idea ♞de3.



11.♞xe7! ♘xe7 12.♞e1+ ♚f8

12...♘e6 13.♙xe6+-.

13.♘xf6 ♚g8 14.♞e7 ♞f8 15.♙e6! ♘xe7 16.♘xe7 fxe6

16...♘xe6 17.f5 ♘g7 18.c7.

17.c7 h5 18.♘xf8+

1-0

Anatoly Karpov

Josif Dorfman

Moscow 1976 (8)



Even with fewer pieces on the board, the sacrifice may be possible. There is still a long way to go to the endgame!

1. ♖d5! exd5 2. ♗xg7

Bad is 2.exd5 ♖xd5 3. ♗xg7 ♖xh1 4. ♖e1 ♗e5 5. ♗xe5 dxe5 6. ♖xe5 0-0!-+.

2... ♖g8 3.exd5 ♖c7 4. ♗f6

White has two pawns and a lasting initiative, for the piece; 4. ♖e1 ♗e5.

4... ♗e5

4... ♗b6 5. ♖e1 ♗xd5 6. ♗g2-; 4... ♗c5 5. ♖e1 ♖a7 6. ♗h3 ♗xh3 7. ♖xh3 or 6... ♗f8 7. ♗xc8 ♗xf6 8. ♖e8+ ♗g7 9. gxf6+ ♗h8 10. ♖xg8+ ♗xg8 11. ♖e8#.

5. ♗xe5 dxe5 6.f4 ♗f5

6...e4 7.d6.

7. ♗h3

7.fxe5 ♖c8 8. ♖h2 ♖a5 9. ♖f3 b3! 10. ♖xb3 ♖g6, Karpov.

7... ♗xh3 8. ♖xh3 ♖c8 9.fxe5

9.b3 e4 10. ♖xe4 ♗f8 11. ♗b1 with advantage.

9... ♖c4! 10. ♖dd3



10... ♖f4+!

10... ♖xg5 11.hxg5 ♖xa2 12. ♖hg3 ♖a1+ 13. ♗d2 ♖xb2 14. ♖d1 with advantage to White; 10... ♖xa2 11.d6±, Karpov.

11. ♖b1 ♖c4 12.d6 ♖e4 13. ♖he3 ♖xe3

13... ♖xg5 14.hxg5 ♗xg5 15.d7+ ♗d8 16. ♖d1! ♖xe3 17. ♖xa6+.-.

14. ♖xe3 ♖xh4 15. ♖f3 ♖xg5 16. ♖e1

Also possible is 16. ♖c6+.

16... ♖g2 17. ♖f5 ♖g6 18. ♖f1 ♖d5 19.dxe7 ♖xe7 20. ♖f4! a5 21. ♖h4+ ♖e8 22. ♖xh7 ♖f3 23. ♖h8+ ♖e7

23... ♗d7 24.e6+.

24. ♖h4+ ♖e8 25. ♖c4 ♖b7 26.b3 ♖e6 27. ♖g1 ♖xe5 28. ♖g8+ ♖e7 29. ♖h4+ ♖d7 30. ♖f6! ♖e7 31. ♖f5+ ♖d6 32. ♖xa5 ♖e5 33. ♖d8+ ♖e6 34. ♖b2 f6 35. ♖f8 ♖g7 36. ♖c8+ ♖d5 37. ♖c4+

1-0

Sometimes it is the bishop which is sacrificed on d5, but the main attacking scheme remains the same.

Robert Fischer
Jorge Rubineti

Palma de Mallorca 1970 (17)

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♘xd4 ♘f6 5.♘c3 e6 6.♞c4 a6 7.♞b3 b5 8.0-0 ♞b7?

Better is 8...♞e7.

9.♖e1 ♘bd7

9...♞e7 10.♞xe6!.

10.♞g5 h6 11.♞h4

Better is 11.♞xf6! ♖xf6 12.a4!.

11...♘c5?

Correct is 11...g5 12.♞g3 ♜e5.



12.♞d5!

If the knight is sacrificed on d5, the bishop on b3 would remain out of play.

12...exd5?!

Too optimistic. More solid is 12...♖c7.

13.exd5+ ♔d7 14.b4! ♘a4 15.♘xa4 bxa4 16.c4 ♕c8 17.♕xa4 ♕d7 18.♕b3 g5

Better is 18...♞e7.

19.♞g3 ♘h5



20.c5! dxc5

20... ♖xg3 21.c6! ♜g4 22.♞c4.

21.bxc5 ♜xd5

Or 21... ♜xd5 22.♞b6! ♖xg3 23.c6 ♜xc6 24.♞ac1.

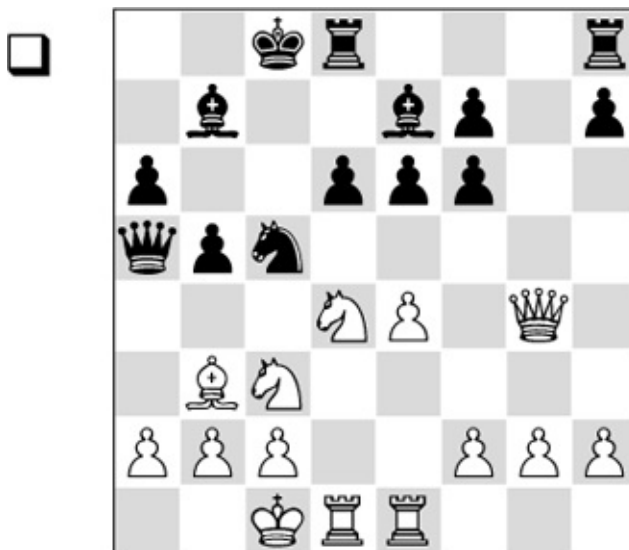
22. ♜e8+ ♜d7 23. ♜a4+ ♜c6 24. ♞xc6

1-0

Leonid Stein

Mikhail Tal

Moscow 1961 (3)



1. ♜d5!

Weaker is 1. ♖d5 ♞he8!.

1...b4 2. ♜xb7+ ♜xb7 3. ♞d5! exd5

3... ♞hg8 4. ♖c6!!; 3... ♜f8!? 4. ♞h5!; 3...h5 4. ♞h4!; 3...b3 4.axb3 ♞a1+ 5.♔d2 ♞xb2 6.♖c3, and now 6...d5 fails to 7.exd5 f5 8.♞f3 ♖e4+ 9.♞xe4!±.

4.exd5 ♜d7 5. ♞c6! ♜xa2!

5...♞c7 6.♞xb4+ ♜c8 7.♞c4!.

6. ♜xb4+ ♜c7 7. ♞xe7 ♜b8 8. ♜a3 ♜c4 9. ♞c6 ♜b3 10. ♜a5+ ♜b6

10...♜b7 11.♞e8.

11. ♜b1 ♞a4



12. ♖ d4! ♜ xb2 13. ♚ c1

Avoiding the trap: 13. ♜ xc4 ♘ xc4+.

13... ♚ c5 14. ♖ e3 ♚ b7 15. ♖ c3 ♜ b5! 16. ♚ a3!

16. ♜ xc5 dxc5.

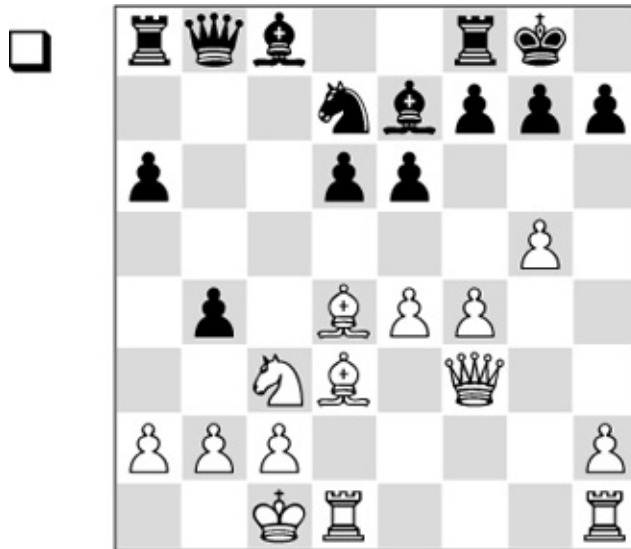
16... ♚ xa3 17. ♖ xa3 ♜ xd5 18. ♜ a5+!

Black resigned.

Even when the defender can refute the attack with accurate play, this is very hard to do in practice. There is a general rule that attacking is easier than defending.

Mikhail Tal Bent Larsen

Bled 1965 (10)



1. ♜ d5!? exd5 2. exd5

«The piece sacrifice is of a positional character, being based on the invisible barrier that exists along the open e-file. Various squares along it (e5, e6) are controlled by white pawns, and his rook will soon appear on e1» (Tal).

2...f5

The continuation 2...g6! was a possible refutation of White's idea, but one needs great courage and

excellent powers of calculation to decide so to weaken the kingside. It looks as though White can open the h-file, but Black also has his trumps: 3.h4 ♖c5 4.h5 ♜xd3+ 5.♙xd3 ♙f5 6.hxg6 fxg6 7.♙xh7 ♜xh7 8.♙e3 ♙a7-+; 3.♙de1 ♙d8 4.♙h3 ♜e5 5.♙h6 ♙b6! 6.fxe5 ♙xd4 7.♙e4 ♙f2! 8.♙f1 ♙a7 9.e6 ♙b7 with the better chances for Black.

3. ♙de1 ♙f7

3... ♙d8 4.♙h5 ♜c5 5.♙xg7! ♜xd3+ 6.♜b1! ♜xe1 (6... ♜xf4 7.♙h6) 7.g6 ♜xg7 8.♙xh7+ ♜f6 9.g7 ♙f7 10.g8♜#.

4.h4 ♙b7 5.♙xf5 ♙xf5 6.♙xe7 ♙e5

6... ♙f7 7.♙xf7 ♜xf7 8.g6+ hxg6 9.h5 with a mating attack.

7. ♜e4 ♜f8 8.fxe5 ♙f4 9. ♜e3



9... ♙f3?

9... ♙xd5 10.exd6 ♙xd4 11.♙xd4! ♙xh1 12.b3 ♙f3! 13.♙c4+ ♜h8 14.♙f7 ♙xd6 15.♙xf3+-.

10. ♜e2 ♜xe7 11. ♜xf3 dxe5 12. ♙e1 ♙d8 13. ♙xe5 ♜d6 14. ♜f4!

And White won.

Viktor Kupreichik

Mikhail Tal

Sochi 1970 (9)

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♘xd4 ♘c6 5.♘c3 ♘f6 6.♙c4 ♚b6 7.♘b3 e6 8.♙e3 ♚c7
9.f4 a6 10.♙d3 b5 11.a3 ♙e7 12.♚f3 ♙b7 13.0-0 ♜c8 14.♞ae1 0-0 15.♚h3 b4



16.♘d5

Another questionable sacrifice. Perhaps White wanted to force the great Tal onto the defensive?

16.axb4 ♘xb4 with counterplay. True, Black has to defend with a number of only moves.

16...exd5 17.exd5 ♘b8 18.♙d4 g6 19.♞f3

19.f5 ♙xd5 20.fxg6 fxg6 21.♞xe7 ♚xe7 22.♙xf6 ♚e6!±.

19...♙xd5 20.♞fe3 ♙d8 21.♚h4 ♘bd7

21...♘h5? 22.♚xh5+–; 21...♘fd7 22.♚xh7+!+–.

22.♚h6 ♚b7 23.♞g3



23...♘c5?

White's strategy triumphs. Black could place the whole sacrifice in doubt with 23...♙b6! 24.♞e7 ♙xb3 25.♙xg6 ♙xd4+ 26.♚h1 ♚h8 27.♙xf7 ♘g4! 28.♙g6 ♞f7!! 29.♞xf7 ♘xh6 30.♞xh7+ ♘g8 31.♙e4+ ♚f8 32.♙xb7 ♞xc2 with a clear advantage to Black.

24.♘xc5 dxc5 25.f5! cxd4

25... ♖c7 26. ♗xc5 ♗e7 27. ♗d4.

26. fxf6 fxf6 27. ♗xg6 ♔h8 28. ♚xf8+ ♞g8 29. ♗f5 ♖b8 30. ♖e8 ♚f7 31. ♖h3!

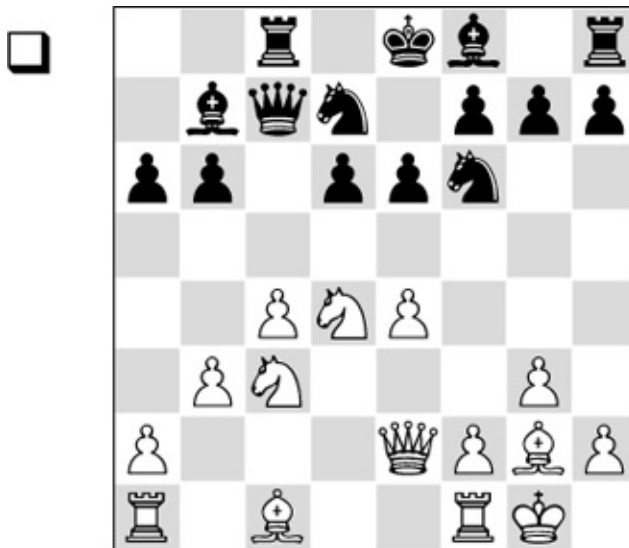
1-0

The idea of creating a barrier in this way can be carried out in various forms of the Sicilian structure.

Garry Kasparov

Valery Salov

Barcelona 1989 (12)



The white pawns are already on c4 and e4, which makes the barrier even more effective. White goes bravely into the attack:

1. ♞d5! ♚b8

White has the advantage after 1...exd5 2.exd5+ ♚d8 3. ♖e1 or 2...♗e7 3. ♞f5 ♞e5 4. ♞xg7+ ♚f8 (4... ♚d8 5. ♗b2) 5. ♗h6 ♚g8 6. ♖ae1±, or ♗h3.

2. ♖d1 g6

2...e5±.

3. ♗g5! ♗g7 4. ♗xf6! ♞xf6

On 4...♗xf6 5. ♞xf6+ ♞xf6 there follows 6.e5! dxe5 (after 6...♗xg2 7.exf6 ♗h3 the simplest is 8. ♚e4±) 7. ♗xb7 ♚xb7 8. ♚xe5 ♚e7 (8...♚e7 or 9. ♞xe6! fxe6 10. ♖d6-) 9. ♞c6!+-.

5. ♞xb6 ♖d8



6.e5!

The attack continues in a single breath. Black defends inventively, but still loses.

6... ♖xg2

6...dxe5 7.♘c6 ♕xc6 8.♕xc6+ ♔e7 9.c5! ♖c7 10.♗xa6 ♜xd1+ 11.♜xd1 ♗xc6 12.♗a7+-.

7.exf6 ♖xf6 8.♗xe6 fxe6 9.♔xe6+ ♖e7 10.c5! ♖b7

10...♕c6 11.♜e1; 10...♕f3 11.♜d3 ♜f8 12.♜e1+-.

11.♜e1 ♗c7 12.c6! ♖xc6 13.♜ac1 ♜d7 14.♗xd7 ♗xd7 15.♗c4 ♖b7 16.♗c7 ♜f8

17.♗b8+ ♗f7 18.♜c7

Black resigned.

Alexander Panchenko

Lev Psakhis

Vilnius 1987

1.e4 c5 2.♗f3 b6!? 3.d4 cxd4 4.♗xd4 ♖b7 5.♗c3 d6 6.♖g5 ♗d7 7.♖c4

7.♗db5!?

7...a6 8.♗e2 b5 9.♖d5 ♗c8 10.0-0!

10.0-0-0 was also possible, but the white king is totally safe on the kingside.

10...♗gf6

10...b4 11.♗a4 e6 12.♕b3 ♗gf6?! 13.♕xf6±.

11.♜ad1 e6



There are some cases where we first break up the king's pawn cover on e6 and then bring a piece to d5.

12. ♖xe6! fxe6 13. ♗xe6 ♔c5

13... ♗e7? 14.e5!.

14. ♖d5 ♗xd5 15.exd5

As well as cutting the enemy communications, White has an outpost on e6, where the bishop is ideally placed.

15...0-0-0 16. ♖d3! ♔b7 17. ♖c3 ♔d4 18.a4!

It is vital to break up the enemy defences.

18... ♔e5

18... ♖xa4 is also bad because of 19. ♗xd7 ♖xd7 20. ♗xf6 gxf6 21. ♖e6 ♖e7 22. ♖c8+ ♔a7 23. ♖c7+ ♖xc7 24. ♖xc7+ ♔a8 25. ♖d8+ ♔a7 26. ♖xf6+-. On 18...bxa4 there would follow 19. ♗xd7 ♖xd7 20. ♖c6.

19. ♗e3 ♖c5

Or 19... ♗xd5 20. ♗xd5+ ♖xd5 21.axb5 axb5 22. ♖d1 ♖e5 23.f4 ♖f5 24.g4+-.

20.axb5 a5



21.b6!

With the idea of 22. ♖b5.

21... ♗e7?

21... ♖h5! 22. ♖c4! ♗e7 23. ♖a1 with a strong attack.

22. ♖a1 ♖a8 23. ♔b5 ♖a6 24. ♔c6+ ♔b8 25. ♔c7+ ♔a8 26.b7+! ♖xb7 27. ♔c8+!

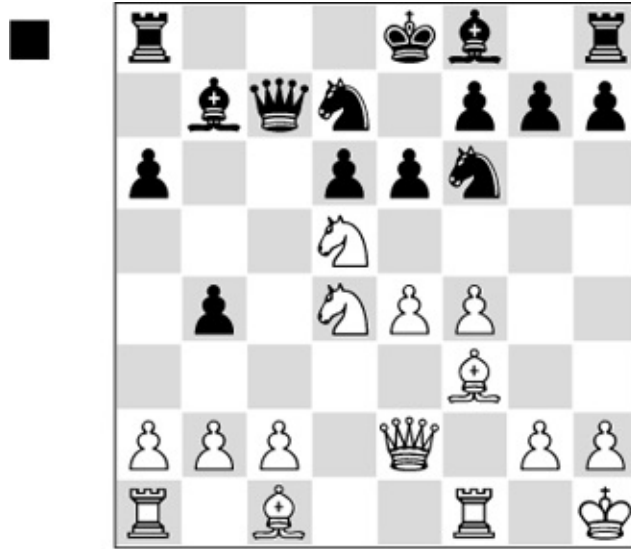
Black resigned.

Every time one side makes such a sacrifice, he must take into account a host of small details, which influence whether the sacrifice is sound. One little thing out of place and the assessment changes completely.

Georgy Tringov

Peter Clarke

Munich 1958 (10)



With his last move, White sacrificed a piece on d5. But there is a big difference from the previous examples – the bishop is on c1 instead of g5 and can only passively watch the development of the attack.

1...exd5 2.exd5+ ♔d8

Even stronger is 2...♗e7 3.♘f5 ♘b6.

3.♙c6+ ♜xc6 4.dxc6 ♞b6 5.♙e3 d5! 6.♖ad1 ♞d6 7.♙f2 ♜b8 8.♙h4?! ♙xc6

Black has the advantage.

Positions for solving and for playing out

Here and after each chapter, we will present a selection of positions for solving and playing out. The tests should be solved without moving the pieces, and then you should compare your answers with the solutions. It is quite possible that you will find another solution – in almost any position, there will be alternative ways to play. The task is to find the best one.

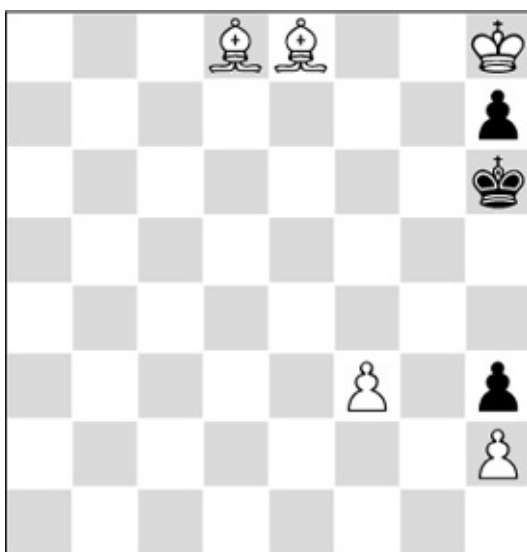
The positions for playing out (indicated with a 'P' before the number) should first be played against a sparring-partner or trainer, and then the play compared with how the game actually went.

With the positions for solving (indicated with an 'E' before the number), I recommend you solve 4-6 at a time, taking 2-3 hours.

The time to be taken in playing out positions is indicated below each one.

Positions for solving

[E1 \(solution on page 214\)](#)



White to play and mate in 4

[E2 \(solution on page 214\)](#)



White to play

E3 (solution on page 214)



White to play

E4 (solution on page 214)



Black to play

E5 (solution on page 215)



Black to play

E6 (solution on page 215)



How should White continue the attack?

E7 (solution on page 215)



White to play

E8 (solution on page 215)



White to play

[E9 \(solution on page 216\)](#)



White to play

[E10 \(solution on page 216\)](#)



Can White further his attack?

[E11 \(solution on page 216\)](#)



White to play

[E12 \(solution on page 216\)](#)



Calculate $1. \text{♞xf7}$

E13 (solution on page 216)



White to play

E14 (solution on page 217)



White to play

[E15 \(solution on page 217\)](#)



How can White maintain the pressure?

[E16 \(solution on page 217\)](#)



White to play

E17 (solution on page 217)



White to play

E18 (solution on page 218)



Is 1.♘d5 possible?

Positions for playing out

P1 (solution on page 218)



Black to play (40 minutes)

P2 (solution on page 218)



White to play (20-30 minutes)

P3 (solution on page 219)



White to play (30-40 minutes)

P4 (solution on page 219)



Black to play (20-30 minutes)

P5 (solution on page 220)



White to play (30-40 minutes)

P6 (solution on page 220)



White to play (15-20 minutes)

P7 (solution on page 220)



White to play (20-30 minutes)

P8 (solution on page 221)



White to play (15-20 minutes)

[P9 \(solution on page 221\)](#)



White to play (30 minutes)

[P10 \(solution on page 221\)](#)



White to play (30-40 minutes)

Chapter 2

Defence

It is impossible to become a strong chess player without having the ability to defend. Louis Paulsen and William Steinitz first began thinking about the problems of defence only at the end of the 19th century (before this, players thought only of attack). The great Emanuel Lasker summarised their findings and enriched them significantly with his own ideas.

The principles of defence can be formulated in brief as follows:

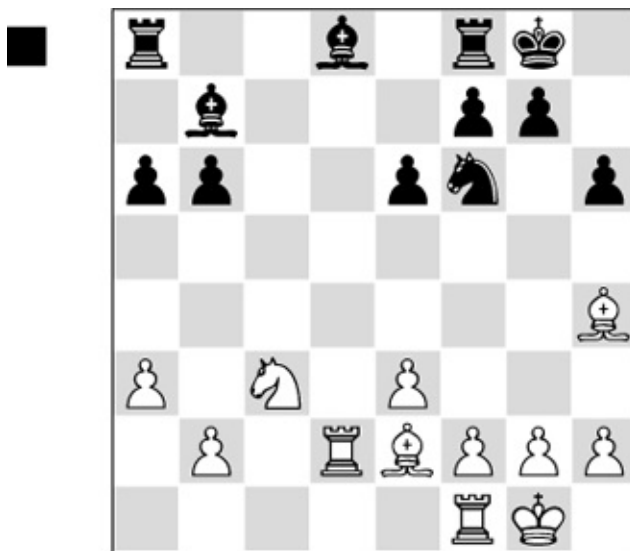
1. Recognise clearly that your position is inferior and consider the ways in which its drawbacks can be eliminated. The main thing is that the defence should be planned and well thought out. The heart of the defence should consist not of individual moves, but a clear unified plan.
2. It is necessary to divine the opponent's plans and try with all possible means to prevent their implementation.
3. Try to defend with the minimum forces necessary and counterattack with the rest (the principle of economy). Steinitz considered that the king can often defend himself.
4. Do not weaken one's castled position without absolute necessity.
5. Having won material, it is always possible to return it at the right moment, obtaining other advantages in return, such as piece activity, the better endgame, etc.

Since the time these principles were formulated, more than 100 years have passed. In this time, the level of defence has greatly improved and new devices have been developed, but the principles developed by the great players of the past remain valid.

Let us look at the main devices and methods which players can use to defend inferior positions. Exchanging pieces and going into the endgame This is the classical method of defence. The basic idea is that, as a general rule, the fewer pieces are on the board, the greater the chances of a successful defence. The very laws of chess dictate that the weaker side does well to exchange pieces – after all, a bishop or two knights cannot win against a bare king. The defender should strive for a type of position, where the drawing chances are greater (opposite-coloured bishops, rook endgames, possible fortress set-ups, etc). Most often, this is achieved by means of a sacrifice. This method is used by all players and is very important!

José Raul Capablanca Alexander Alekhine

Buenos Aires 1927 (15)



1... ♖e4!

After 1... ♗e7 2. ♜fd1 (2... ♘a4 b5 3. ♗xf6 ♗xf6 4. ♘c5 gives White a small advantage) 2... ♜fd8 Black can gradually equalise.

2. ♗xe4 ♗xh4! 3. ♗d6 ♗d5!

Alekhine saw this pawn sacrifice from afar, and it leads to an endgame with opposite-coloured bishops and a quick draw. 3... ♗c6? is bad because of 4. ♜c1, whilst after 3... ♜fd8 there is 4. ♜d4.

4.e4 ♜fd8! 5. ♗xf7 ♗xf7 6.exd5 ♜xd5! 7. ♜xd5 exd5 8. ♜d1



8... ♗f6!

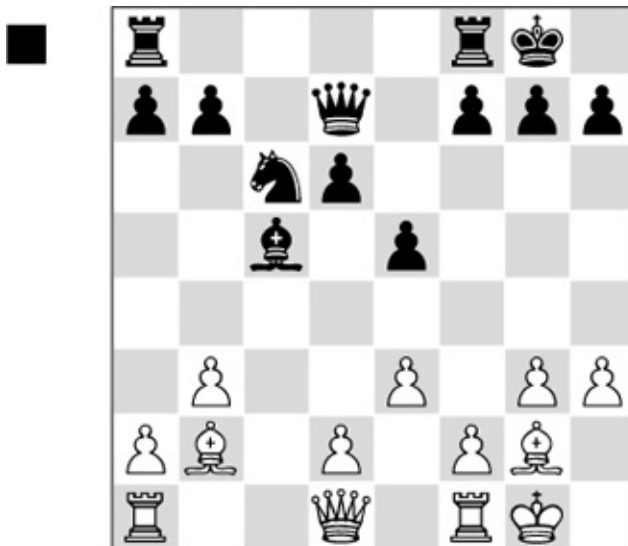
The only move. It is dangerous to play 8... ♗e6?! 9. ♗g4+ ♗e5 10.g3 ♗f6 11.f4+ ♗e4 12. ♗f2.

9. ♗f3 ♜c8! 10. ♗xd5+ ♗e7 11.b3 ♗b2! 12.a4 ♜c1 13. ♜xc1 ♗xc1 14. ♗c4

1/2-1/2

Viktor Kortchnoi Anatoly Karpov

Merano 1981 (15)



White's position is better, thanks to the two bishops. In addition, he has an active plan of kingside play with f2-f4 and g3-g4. Instead, Karpov sacrifices a pawn and turns the game into an ending with opposite-coloured bishops.

1...d5!

Worse is 1...♘b6? with the idea of ...d6-d5, because of 2.♙f3 ♜fd8 3.♙d5! ♜ab8 4.f4 — White has an attack.

2.♞xe5

Otherwise Black plays 2...d4.

2...♞xe5 3.d4 ♞d6 4.dxe5 ♞xe5 5.♞c1 d4

5... ♜ad8 6.♞c5.

6.♞c5 ♞f6 7.♞d5 ♙c7 8.exd4 ♜ad8 9.♙c1 ♙b6 10.♞xd8 ♞xd8 11.d5 g6!



Black's position is very hard to break down.

12.♞f3 ♙g7 13.♞e1 ♞d7!

Intending 14... ♜e7. Without rooks, White has no winning chances at all.

14.♙f4 ♞e7! 15.♞xe7

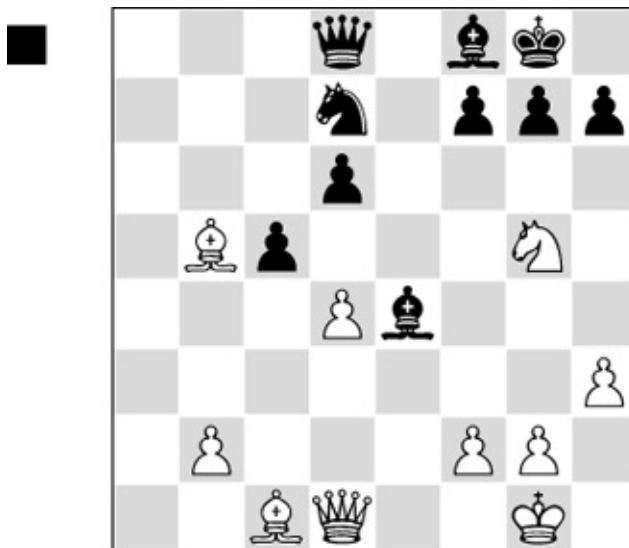
Or 15. ♖d1 ♗e5 16. ♖d2 ♖d6, and Black should hold the position.

15... ♗xe7 16. ♖g2 a5 17. h4 h5 18. ♗e2 ♗c5 19. ♗c4 ♖f6 20. ♖d2 b6 21. a4 ♗e5 22. ♖d3 ♖f6 23. ♖d2 ♖e5 24. ♗e2 ♖e4+ 25. ♗f3 ♖e5 26. ♗d1 ♖e4+ 27. f3

Draw.

Boris Spassky Anatoly Karpov

Tilburg 1983 (4)



1... ♗g6!

For his pawn, Black gets the two bishops and simplifies the position.

2. ♗xd7 ♖xd7 3. dxc5 ♗f5! 4. cxd6 ♗xd6 5. ♖f3 h6 6. ♗e4 ♗e5 7. ♗c3 ♖d3 8. ♖xd3 ♗xd3 9. ♗d5

Avoiding the possible opposite-coloured bishops.

9...f6 10. ♗e7+

Nor were there any winning chances after 10.b4 or 10.f3, since the black king quickly comes to the centre.

10... ♖f7 11. ♗c6 ♖e6 12. ♗xe5

Otherwise the advantage could pass to Black.

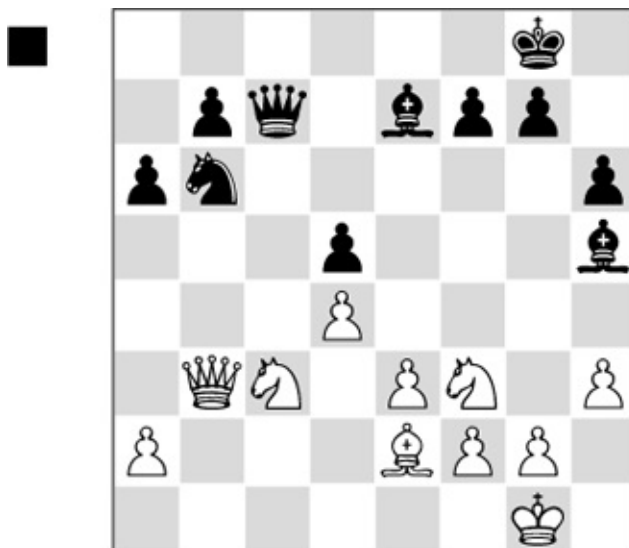
12... ♖xe5 13. f3 h5 14. ♗e3 h4

Draw.

Evgeny Bareev

Alexey Dreev

Sochi 1982



Black's position is clearly worse because of the weakness on d5. Not wishing to conduct a passive defence by 1...♔d6 or 1...♔d8, Dreev sacrifices the pawn, obtaining the two bishops and a passed pawn on the queenside.

1...f6! 2.♘xd5 ♘xd5 3.♙c4 ♔h8 4.♙xd5 ♔c1+ 5.♔h2 ♙d6+ 6.g3 b5 7.♔g2 ♙e8 8.♙e4

Better is 8.♙f7.

8...♔c4 9.♔xc4 bxc4 10.♘e1 ♙f7 11.♙c2 ♙b4 12.♔f1 ♙e6 13.g4 g5 14.♔e2 h5!

Striving for exchanges and a later opposite-coloured bishops position.

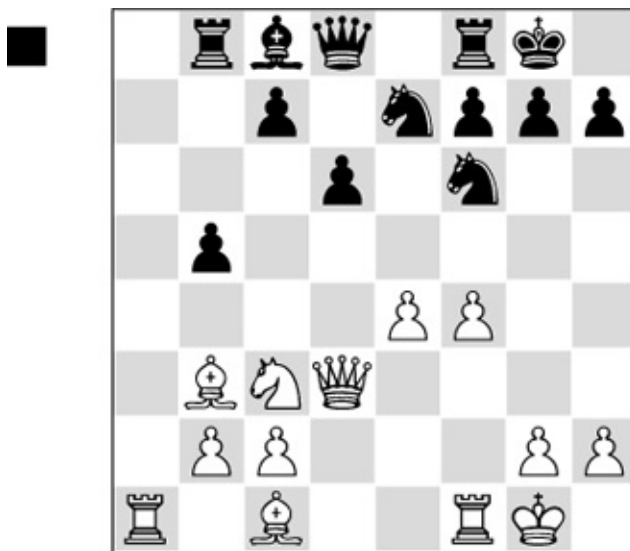
15.f3 hxg4 16.hxg4 ♔g7 17.e4 ♙c3 18.d5 ♙d7 19.♘g2 ♔f8 20.♘e3 a5 21.♘xc4 ♙b5 22.♔d3 ♙e5!



And the two extra pawns have no significance. Draw.

Garry Kasparov Veselin Topalov

Novgorod 1997 (7)



With the move

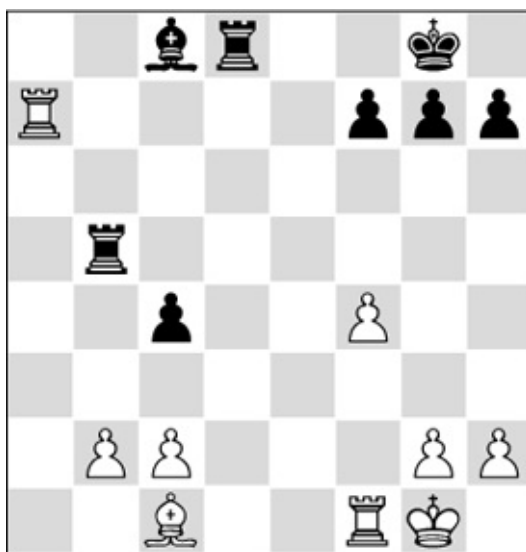
1...c5!

Black takes play into an endgame with opposite-coloured bishops. After 1...b4?! 2.♘e2 White would have an obvious advantage.

2.♘xb5 ♗xe4 3.♙xe4 ♖xb5 4.♖a7 c4!

After 4...♘g6? 5.♖xf7! ♖xf7 6.♙xf7+ ♘xf7 7.♙c4+ ♘f8 8.♙xb5 White wins.

5.♙xc4 d5! 6.♙xe7 dxc4 7.♙xd8 ♖xd8



And Black has fully sufficient compensation for the pawn.

8.♖a8 ♖f8 9.♖a4 ♙e6 10.f5!? ♙d5

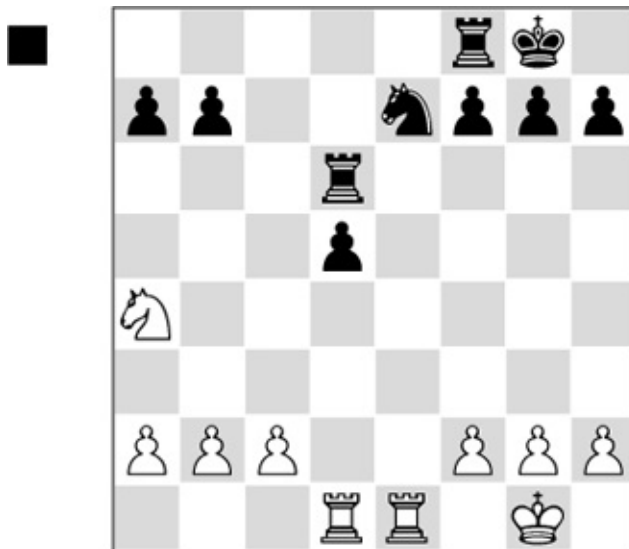
There is no reason to give the opponent two passed pawns on the queenside with 10...♖xf5 11.♖xf5 ♙xf5 12.♖xc4.

11.♖e1 h5! 12.h3 ♖c8 13.♙h2 h4! 14.f6 gxf6 15.b3 f5 16.bxc4

Draw.

Nikolay Bakulin
Mark Dvoretzky

Moscow 1974



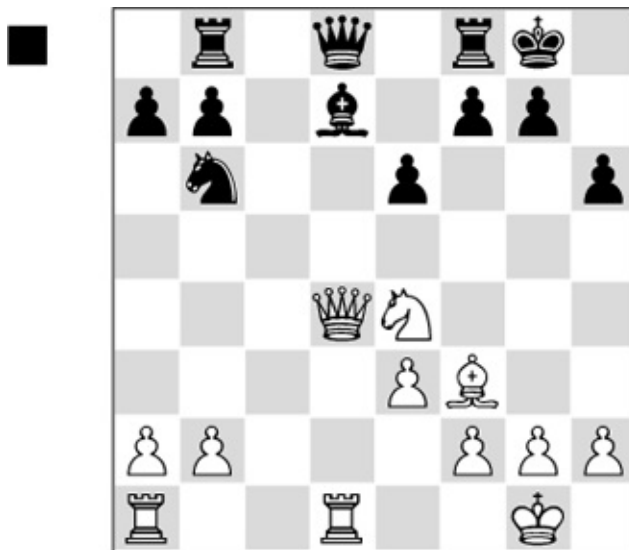
Black's position is worse, but not lost – with 1... ♖c6 he could defend, but he would have to do so for a long time. Dvoretzky instead sacrifices a pawn and immediately takes play into a theoretically drawn rook ending.

1... ♖e6! 2. ♗c5 ♖xe1+ 3. ♖xe1 ♖c8! 4. ♖xe7 ♔f8 5. ♖xb7 ♖xc5 6. c3 d4! 7. ♔f1 dxc3 8. bxc3 ♖xc3 9. ♖xa7 ♖c2

Draw.

Anatoly Karpov
Garry Kasparov

Moscow 1985 (6)



Black's position is inferior and Kasparov sacrifices a pawn to activate his pieces.

1... ♖a4!

The more passive 1... ♗c6 leaves White with a notable advantage after 2. ♖c5 ♖c7 3. ♗d6 ♗d7 4. ♖c3.

2. ♔xd8

2.b3 ♖xd4 3. ♖xd4 ♗c6.

2... ♖fxd8 3. ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 4. ♗c5 ♖d2 5.b3

5. ♗xa4 ♗xa4 6.b3 ♗c3.

5... ♖c6 6. ♗xb7 ♖xf3 7.gxf3 ♗d7!

For his pawn, Black has an active rook and the chance to attack the weak white pawns. Practically, Kasparov has taken the game into a typical rook endgame, but with knights on.

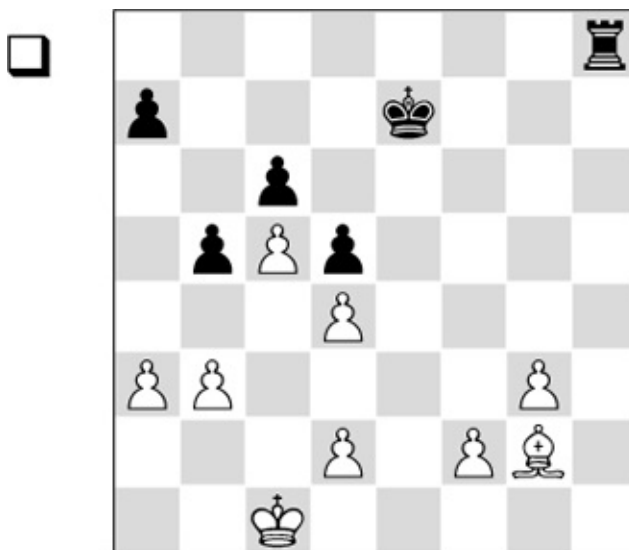
8. ♕g2 g5 9.b4 ♗b6 10. ♕f1 ♗d7! 11. ♕g2 ♗b6 12. ♕f1 ♗d7

Draw agreed, since in the variation 13.a4 ♗e5 14.b5 ♗xf3 15.a5 ♗xh2+ 16. ♕g1 ♗f3+ 17. ♕g2 ♗h4+ 18. ♕f1 g4 19.b6 axb6 20.a6 g3 21.fxg3 ♗f3 perpetual check cannot be avoided.

One should never forget about the possibility of sacrificing material to create a fortress. This is illustrated in clear style in the following endgame study.

Vitaly Chekhover

1947



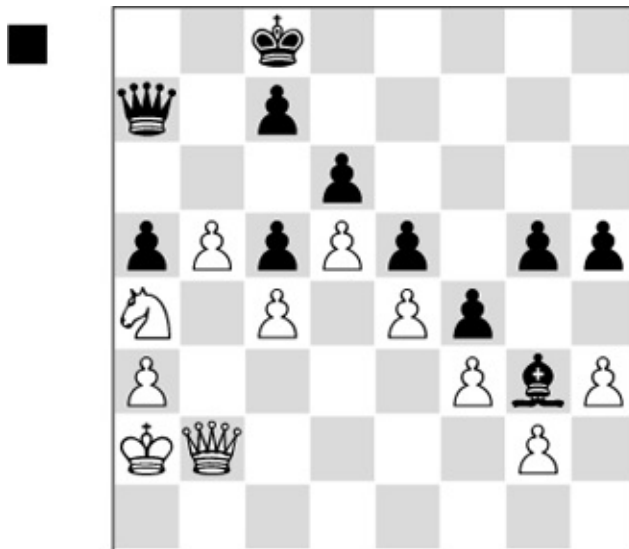
1. ♕d1! ♖h2 2. ♕e1! ♖xg2 3. ♕f1 ♖h2 4. ♕g1 ♖h8 5.f3

And White controls all possible penetration squares.

Arshak Petrosian

Laszlo Hazai

Schilde 1970 (9)



Black's position is very difficult. He tries his last chance.

1... ♔b6!?

Beautiful, but insufficient to save the game. Now White can win with 2. ♕d2! followed by ♔b3, ♖b2, ♗a4 and ♖b2-d3-c1-b3. But instead, he grabbed the queen with:

2. ♖xb6+?

And after...

2...cxb6 3.h4 gxh4 4. ♕d2



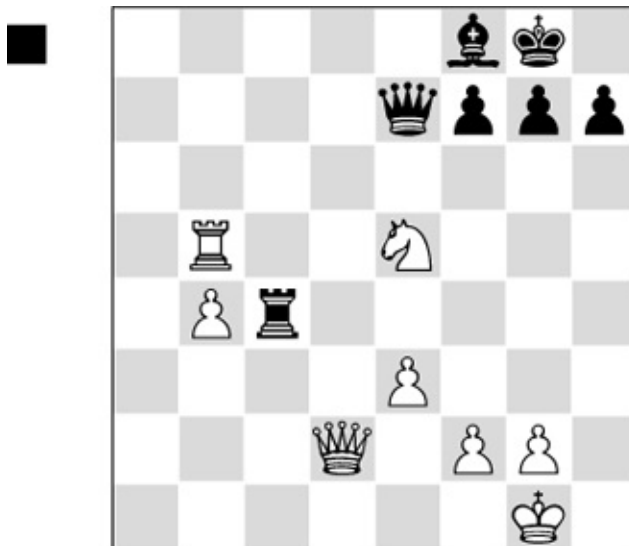
4...h3!! 5.gxh3 h4!

a draw was agreed.

Vassily Smyslov

Robert Hübner

Velden 1983 (11)



Black creates a fortress by sacrificing his queen.

1... ♖xb4! 2. ♘c6 ♖xb5 3. ♗xe7+ ♙xe7 4. ♚d7 ♖b1+ 5. ♛h2 ♙f8 6.f4

Nothing is changed by 6.g4 ♗b2 7. ♕g3 g5!.

6...h5 7.f5 ♖b6 8.e4 g6! 9. ♚d8 ♖d6 10. ♛g5 ♙g7 11. ♛e7 ♙f8 12. ♛g5 ♙g7

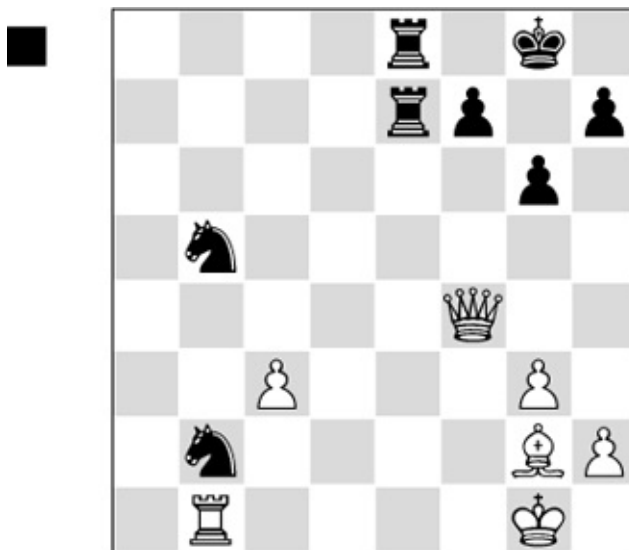
And eventually the game was drawn.

In the next two examples, the weaker side failed to exploit his chances of building a fortress.

Robert Byrne

Mark Taimanov

Leningrad 1973 (10)



The game continued:

1... ♗d3 2. ♛d2 ♗a3 3. ♖a1 ♖e1+?

Stronger is 3... ♘e5.

4. ♖xe1 ♗xe1 5. ♛d7 ♖e2 6. ♙d5

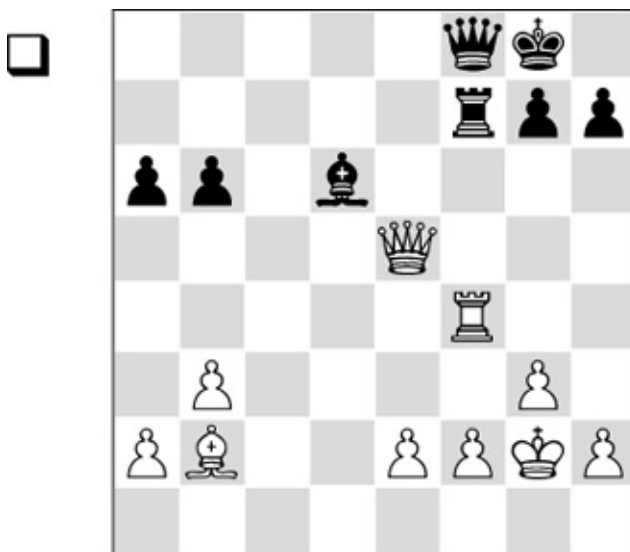
And Black resigned.

But after the correct 1... ♖xc3! 2. ♖xb2 ♖e1+ 3. ♗f1 ♜e2+ 4. ♖xe2 ♖8xe2 5. ♖c4 ♖xf1+ 6. ♜xf1 ♖xh2 7. g4 g5! (worse is 7...h5 8. ♖c8+ ♜g7 9. ♖c3+ ♜g8 10. ♖g3 ♖h1+ 11. ♜g2 ♖a1 12. gxh5, but 7...h6! followed by ...g6-g5 is also possible) 8. ♖c8+ ♜g7 9. ♖f5 ♖h6 10. ♖xg5+ ♖g6 we have a fortress.

Nikolay Andrianov

Aleksander Wojtkiewicz

Sochi 1980



After

1. ♖d5 ♗xf4 2. gxf4 ♖c8

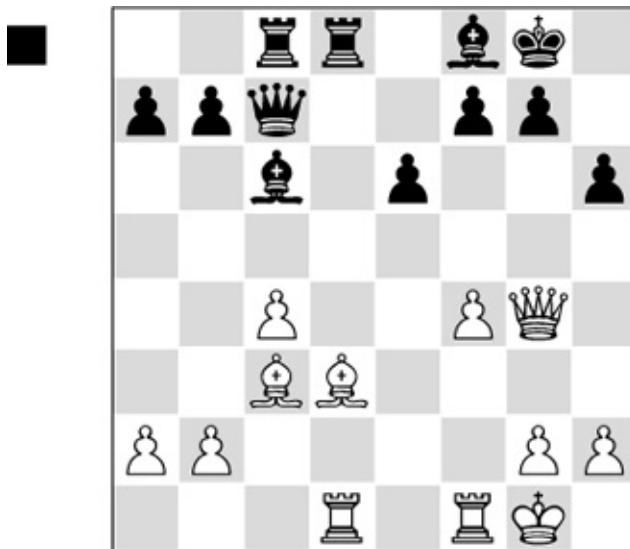
Black won. It was essential to play 1. ♖xf7! ♖a8+ 2. ♖f3 ♗xe5 3. ♗xe5 ♖e4 4. ♗f4 ♖xe2 5. a4 ♖e4 6. h3 h5 7. h4. The white position cannot be breached.

Fighting the most dangerous piece(s)

Sometimes it is not in the defender's interest to simplify by exchanges, especially when he has pawn weaknesses which could be exploited or when the opponent can realise a material advantage in the endgame. In such cases, the weaker side must exchange only the most dangerous enemy piece or pieces and must defend his weaknesses. The problem is to determine which enemy piece is the most dangerous.

Geza Maroczy Akiba Rubinstein

Karlsbad 1907 (17)



White threatens the move 2.f5, after which his bishop on d3 can become very dangerous. The countermeasures follow from this.

1... ♖xd3! 2. ♖xd3 ♗e4 3. ♖d2 ♔xc4

With a pawn for the exchange, plus two bishops and an active queen, Black has fully adequate counterplay.

4. ♖fd1 ♗d5 5.h3 f5 6. ♔g6 ♔xf4



7. ♖xd5

Otherwise the white king will come under attack.

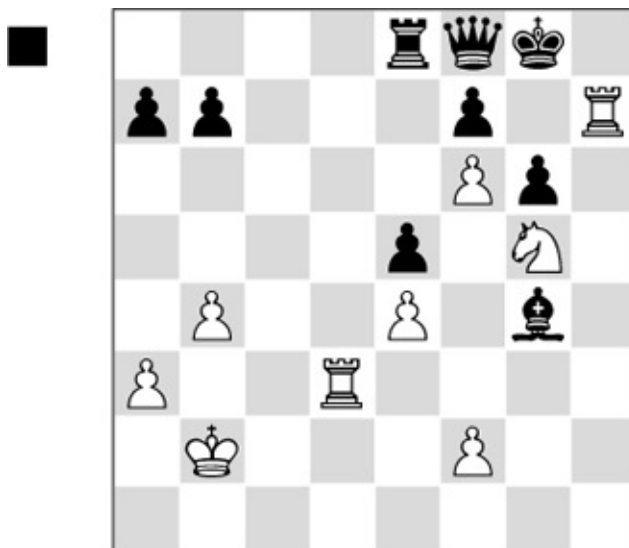
7... ♔e3+ 8. ♔h1 exd5 9. ♔xf5 ♖d8 10. ♖xd5

Draw.

Mikhail Tal

Lev Aronin

Moscow 1957 (17)



The biggest danger to Black is the pawn on f6, and he quite rightly takes steps to remove it.

1... ♖c8!

The simplification 1... ♖d8? 2. ♖xd8 ♔xd8 3. ♖h8+ ♕xh8 4. ♘xf7+ ♕g8 5. ♘xd8 ♗f3 6. f7+ ♕g7 7. ♗e6+ ♕xf7 8. ♗g5+ leads Black to defeat.

2.f3 ♖c6 3. ♖xf7!

Certainly not 3.fxg4? ♖xf6 4. ♖dh3 ♖f2+ 5. ♕b3 ♔d6, and Black takes the initiative.

3... ♔xf7 4. ♘xf7 ♔xf7 5.fxg4 ♔xf6 6. ♖d7 ♖b6



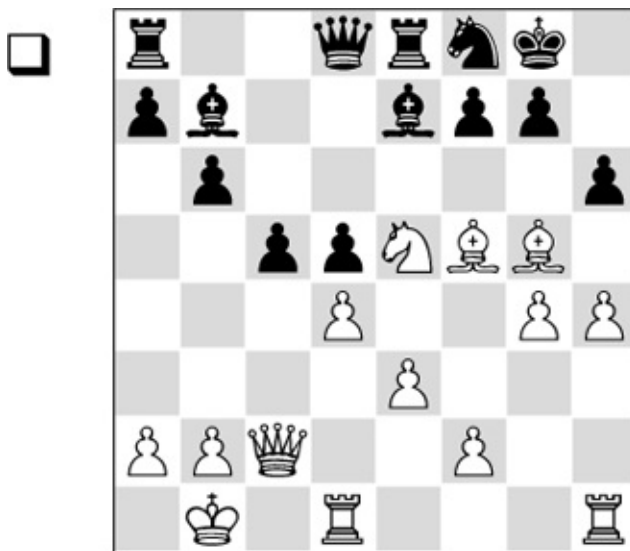
The position has equalised out completely. After

7. ♔c3 ♔g5 8.a4 a6 9. ♔c4 ♔xg4 10. ♔c5 ♖c6+ 11. ♔d5 ♖b6

a draw was agreed.

Jovica Manic Maximilian Blau

Lugano 1984 (7)

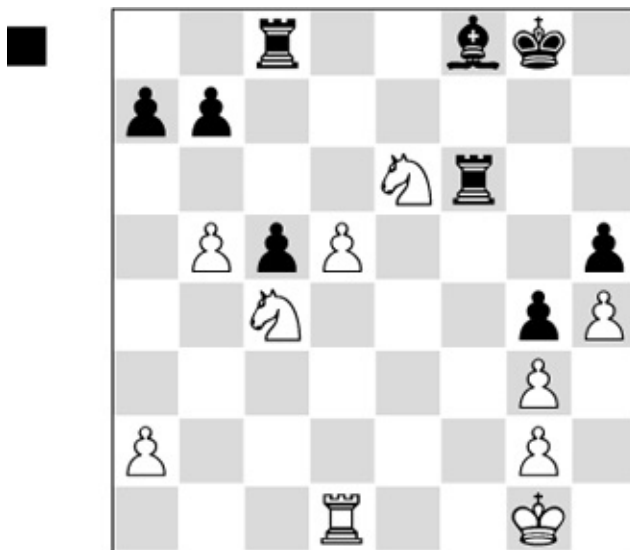


1. ♖xh6! g6 2. g5 h5? 3. ♖h7+! ♜xh7 4. g6 ♜f8 5. gxf7+ ♚h8 6. ♜dg1 ♛c7 7. ♛g6 ♜f6
8. ♛g7+! ♜xg7 9. ♜g6#

This all happened because Black failed to fight against White's most active piece – the knight on e5. After 2... ♜d6 3. g6 ♜xe5 Black would have had good chances of beating off the attack.

Vladimir Kramnik Garry Kasparov

Linares 1994 (10)



The knight on e6 looks the most dangerous piece. Black should therefore play 1... ♜e8 and return the exchange after almost every white move, with rough equality.

1... ♜h6? 2. ♜e1 ♜e8

Now this is too late.

3. ♜e5 ♜e7 4. ♜xh5 ♜ef7 5. ♛h2 ♜c1 6. ♜e5 ♜f1 7. ♜e4

And after having eliminated the g4-pawn that cramped his king, White had a clear advantage:

7... ♜d1 8. ♜xg4+



8... ♔h7??

A time-trouble mistake. After 8... ♔h8 9. ♖e4 ♗ff1 10.g4 ♗xd5 White is better.

9. ♖e5 ♗e7 10. ♖f8+!

And Black resigned, since after 10... ♔h6 (10... ♔h8 11. ♘fg6+) 11. ♖g6+ ♔h5 12.g4+ he is mated.

Defending the weakest points

Which points are the weakest? The answer to this comes from experience and/or proper training.

William Steinitz
Emanuel Lasker

Montreal 1894 (18)



White's position is weakened. The threat is 1... ♘xf3+ 2. ♘xf3 ♙xf3 3. ♖xf3 ♔e1+. Both 1. ♖c2 ♗xc2 2. ♙xc2 ♖c6 and 1. ♖e2 ♗c1 2. ♙c2 ♖d5 are bad, and White loses after 1. ♔g2 ♘xf3 2. ♘xf3 ♘e5.

1. ♔f1!

With this move, Steinitz covers the entry square e1, liquidating the main threat, and gradually restores equality.

1... ♗c5 2. ♔e3 ♗d5 3. ♗xd5 ♔xd5 4. ♖c3 ♔c6 5. ♔f2 ♔g7 6. ♖e2 ♔d6 7. ♖d4 ♔f6
8. ♖g2?



8... ♖c6?

The tactical blow 8... ♗xf3! gives a large advantage.

9. ♖e6+ ♔g8 10. ♗c2 ♕e5 11. ♖gf4 ♗xe3+ 12. ♔xe3 ♖b4 13. ♗b1 ♖e5 14. ♖d4

Draw.

The main aim of defending the weakest point is to deny the opponent the chance to decide the game immediately. Let us defend an inferior position, but the battle goes on! The opponent must continually seek the strongest continuation and will not always find it – mistakes, time-trouble, etc. The attacker is often dazzled by the chance of imminent victory or the search for beauty. If we defend tenaciously, the opponent will probably err at some point.

Slavoljub Marjanovic Alexander Panchenko

Tbilisi 1973 (4)



It is hard for Black to organise counterplay. I went in for a forcing variation that looks dangerous, but I was convinced that, having defended the main entry squares, I could hold the position.

1...cxd5!? 2. ♖b3 ♕a6 3. ♕xd5 ♖fc8! 4. ♕b5 ♖gf8 5. ♖fd1 ♖xc4 6. ♕xa6 bxa6 7. ♖xd6 ♖b8 8. ♖a5 ♖c8 9. ♖d5 ♖e6 10. ♖d1 ♕f8 11. b3 ♖d8! 12. ♖c7

White settles on a combination, because he cannot see any way to strengthen his position, even though

all his pieces seem to stand ideally.

12... ♖xd6 13. ♙c5 ♘xc5 14. ♖xd6 8... ♘c6?



14... ♘c6! 15. ♘xa8

15. ♘xc6 ♖c8!; stronger is 15. ♖xc6 ♖d8 16. ♘d5 with a large advantage.

15... ♘xa5 16. b4 ♘ab7 17. ♖c6 ♘d3 18. ♖xa6 ♙e3 19. ♖a3 ♘f2+ 20. ♚g1 ♙d4 21. ♚f1
♘d6 22. ♘c7 ♘d1 23. ♖a6 ♘e3+ 24. ♚e2 ♚e7 25. ♘d5+ ♘xd5 26. exd5 ♙b6?

Better chances were given by 26... ♘b5 with the idea of 27... ♙b6 and 28... ♘c7.

27. a4 ♘e8 28. a5 ♙g1

28... ♘c7 fails to 29. axb6 ♘xa6 30. b5.

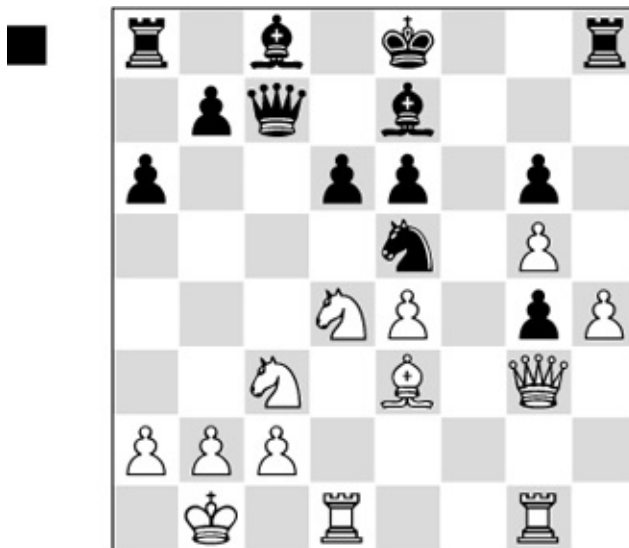
29. b5 ♚d7

1/2-1/2

Kevin Spraggett

Andrey Sokolov

Saint John 1988 (7)



Black should play 1... ♙f8! 2. ♖gf1 (2. ♘ce2 ♚e7 3. ♘f4 ♙d7 is double-edged) 2... ♚e7!, solidly defending e6.

1... ♙d7? 2. ♘ce2 ♖c8 3. ♘f4 b5

And now after 4.♙c1 ♖b7 5.♗ge1 the e6-pawn falls. Instead, the hasty

4.♘fxe6 ♙xe6 5.♘xe6 ♜xc2+ 6.♚a1 ♜xe4 7.♙d4 ♘f3!

gave Black counterplay.

Arthur Bisguier

Leonid Stein

Stockholm 1962 (15)



Black cannot defend the square h7, but he can defend f6, g7 and h8.

1... ♙c3!! 2.h4?

White should have settled for equality by means of 2.♖h7+ ♜f8 3.♖h6+ ♙g7 4.♖h4! ♜c5 5.♖g3! (also possible is 5.h3 ♜c3!, and now 6.♖g3! holds) 5... ♗xd3 6.♘h7+ ♜g8 7.♘f6+.

2... ♜f6! 3.♜h7+ ♜f8 4.♜h5 ♜h8! 5.♘h7+ ♜g8 6.♜g5+ ♜g7!

But not 6... ♜xh7 7.♙xf5+!

7. ♗c2 ♜xg5 8.♘xg5 ♗xd3

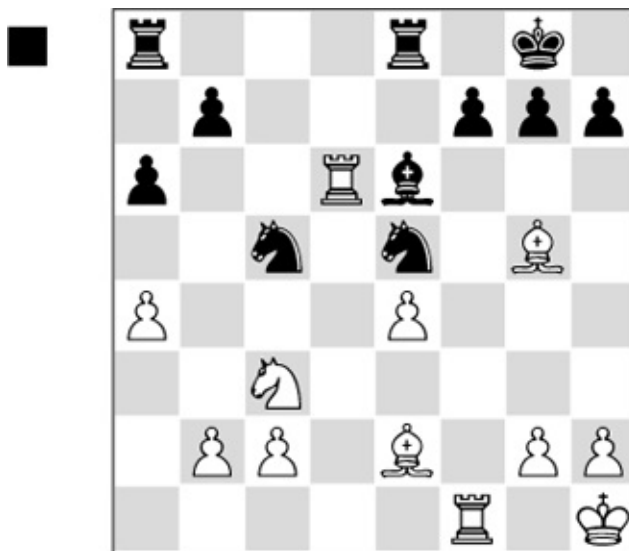
White resigned.

Improving the position of (a) badly-placed piece(s)

Sometimes the advantage consists in the fact that the opponent has a badly-placed piece or pieces. By improving its position, the weaker side usually equalises. One should strive for harmoniously placed pieces in any position, not just when defending.

Anatoly Karpov Lev Polugaevsky

Moscow 1974 (2)



If Black marks time, White will gradually realise his extra pawn.

1... ♖d7!

Attacking the pawns on a4 and e4.

2.b3

In Karpov's opinion, White could have retained the better chances after 2. ♗e3! ♜xa4 3. ♘d5.

2... ♖c6 3. ♖f3 f5! 4. ♖e3

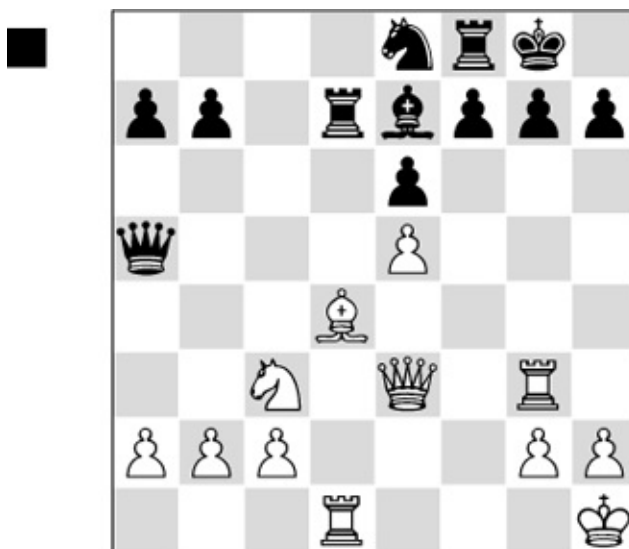
Complicated play results from 4. exf5 ♜xf3 5. gxf3 ♜e5 6. ♜g1 ♜xf5.

4... ♗xe4 5. ♖xe4 fxe4 6. h3 ♜ad8 7. ♜xd8 ♜xd8

And the position is equalised completely.

Alexey Suetin Viktor Kortchnoi

Leningrad 1967



The position favours White. He threatens to create an attack with ♘c3-e4-f6 or ♜f1-f4-g4, and, in addition, Black has a bad knight on e8. Black improves his position in an original way.

1...h5!

1...g6 2.♖h6.

2.♖f1

Stronger is 2.♖e2.

2...♔b4 3.♗e2 ♔c4 4.c3 g6 5.♖gf3 ♘g7 6.b3 ♔a6 7.♗g3 h4 8.♗e4 ♗f5 9.♔f4 ♔xa2 10.♘c5

On 10.g4 Black had prepared 10...hxg3 11.hxg3 ♖e2.

10...♔e2 11.♖3f2 ♔d3 12.♖f3 ♔e2 13.♖3f2 ♔d3 14.♖d2?!

A repetition of moves is likely after 14.♖f3.



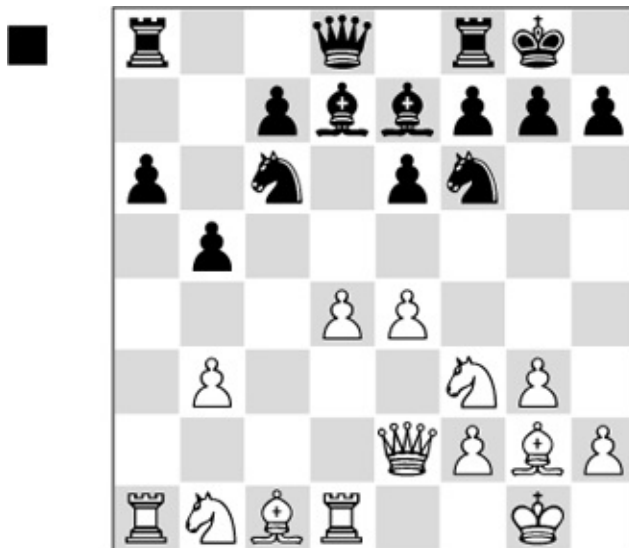
14...♔xd2! 15.♗xd2 ♘xc5 16.♗e4 ♘e3 17.♗f6+ ♔g7 18.♔c4 ♖dd8 19.♗g4 ♘b6 20.♗f2? ♘xf2 21.♖xf2 ♗e3

White resigned, as he will lose his queen.

Lev Polugaevsky

Alexander Panchenko

Sochi 1981



Black's position looks dangerous, but after

1...♗c8!

the bishop transfers to b7, from where it will control the central squares d5 and e4.

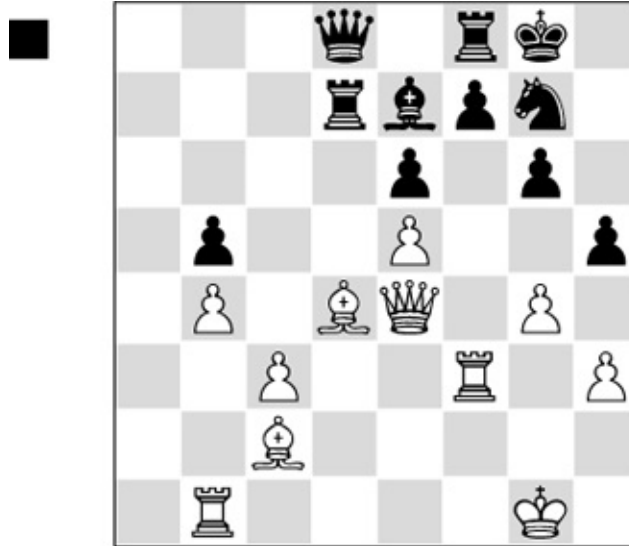
2. ♖c3 ♜b7 3. d5 exd5 4. e5 ♜b4! 5. ♗a2 ♗e4 6. ♗xb4 ♗xb4 7. ♜b2 c5

And after this, Black's chances were preferable.

Nigel Short

Garry Kasparov

Amsterdam 1996 (4)



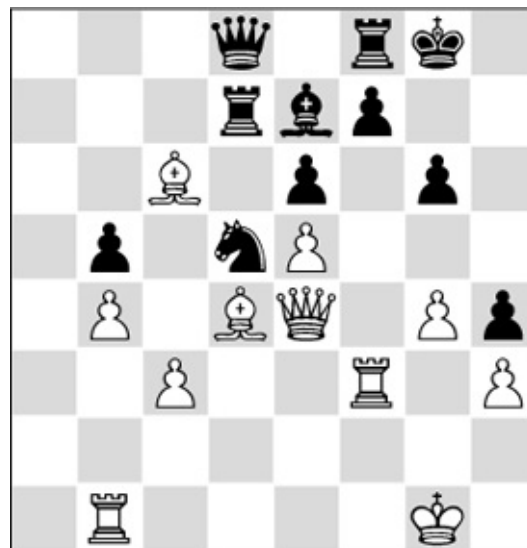
Black's position is clearly worse because of the badly-placed knight on g7. Kasparov transfers it to d5 and gradually equalises.

1... h4! 2. ♖e3?

The sacrifice 2. ♗xf7! deserved consideration, with some attack. For example, 2... ♗xf7 3. ♗xg6 ♖f8 4. ♗h7 ♖e8 5. ♗g6 ♗xd4 6. ♗xf7+ ♖xf7 7. ♗f1+. Also 2. ♗d3!, setting his sights on Black's weak queenside, would have given Black a hard time.

2... ♗e8 3. ♜e4 ♗c7 4. ♜c6 ♗d5 5. ♖e4?

5. ♗f2 is good and retains the advantage.

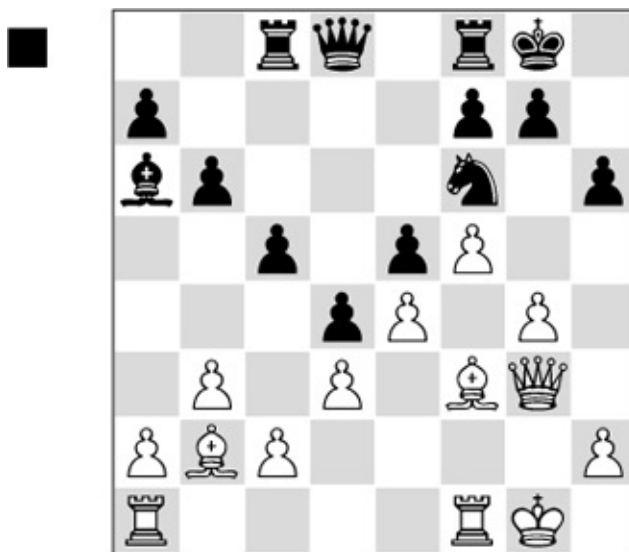


5... ♗xc3! 6. ♗xc3 ♖b6+ 7. ♗g2 ♗c7 8. ♜a8 ♗c4 9. ♖b7 ♖xb7 10. ♗xb7 ♗b8 11. ♗a6 ♗b6 12. ♗a1 ♗cc6 13. ♗xb5 ♗xb5 14. ♗a8+ ♖g7 15. ♗a7 ♖f8 16. ♗a8+ ♖g7 17. ♗a7 ♖f8

Quite often, one has to improve the position of one's main piece, the king itself, by evacuating it from the danger zone. In positions where the opponent has a space advantage on the flank and can prepare an attack, one cannot afford to wait. It is essential that the king quit this flank. Defending the king against mate with little space and no counterplay is a hopeless task.

Aaron Nimzowitsch Victor Berger

London 1927



1... ♖e8? 2.h4 ♞h7 3.♙c1 f6 4.♜f2 ♜c7 5.♜g2 ♚e7 6.♚h3 ♜c6 7.♙d2 ♜d8 8.♚h1 ♜dd6 9.a4 ♙c8 10.♜ag1 a6 11.♜h2 ♚h8 12.g5 fxg5 13.hxg5 b5 14.axb5 axb5 15.♚h4 c4 16.gxh6 ♚xh4 17.hxg7+

Black resigned.

Nimzowitsch: 'Correct was the immediate 1...♞d7 followed by ...f7-f6 and ...♚f7. For example, 2.h4 f6 3.♙c1 ♚f7 4.g5 hxg5 5.hxg5 ♜h8, and Black cannot be prevented from bringing his king out d6 to b8. After this, he can turn to the attack with ...b6-b5 and ...c5-c4, as the position dictates. To put it briefly, Black had a clear chance to consolidate his position.'

Jesus Diez del Corral Tigran Petrosian

Palma de Mallorca 1969 (14)



1... ♖f8! 2. ♔g5 ♕e8 3. ♖ac1 ♕d7 4. h5 gxh5 5. ♖xh5 ♖g8 6. ♖h7 ♕c8

And having completely safeguarded his king, Black turned to the realisation of his own advantages: his better pawn position and good knight versus bad bishop.

Grigory Ravinsky Alexander Kotov

Leningrad 1949



1... ♕f7! 2. ♖g3 ♕e7 3. ♕e2 h5! 4. ♖xh5 ♖h8 5. ♕xg4 ♖xh5!

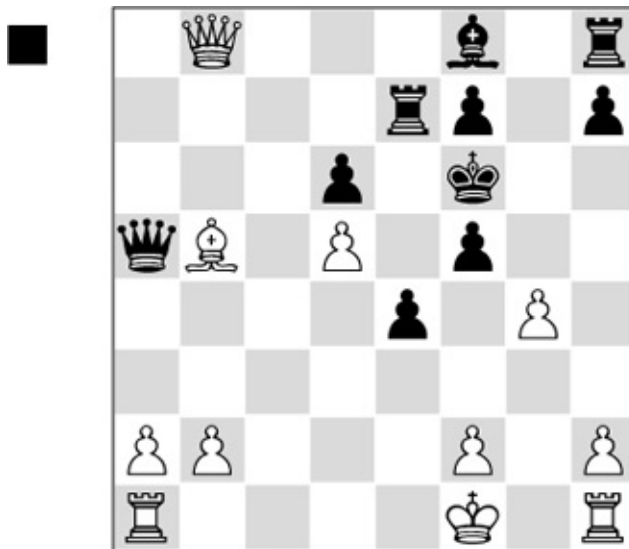
Now the white king is under attack, and events develop forcibly.

6. ♕xh5 ♖h8 7. ♖h7 ♖e4 8. f4 ♕b2 9. ♕xg5+ ♖f6 10. ♕xf6+ ♕xf6 11. ♖xe4 ♕xa2

And the black queen is much stronger than the white pieces.

Bozidar Ivanovic Evgeny Sveshnikov

Krk 1976



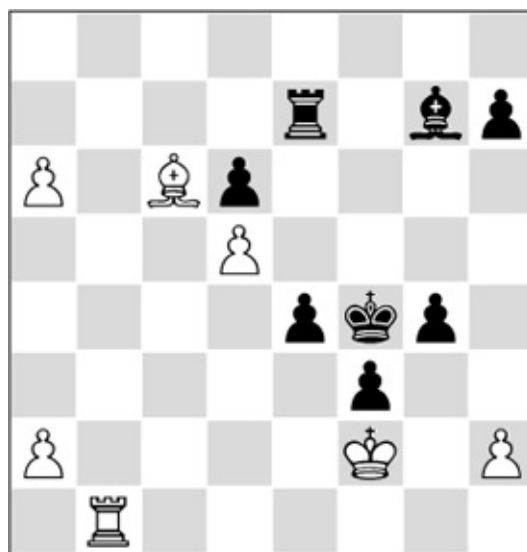
1... ♔e5!

A creative development of Steinitz's ideas! The march of the king into the very centre of the board makes a strong impression. Having defended the d6-pawn, Black creates the threat of 2... ♕g7, trapping the white queen.

2. f4+ ♕xf4 3. ♕e2?

Better is 3. ♖xd6+ ♗e5.

3... ♕e5 4. ♖hf1 fxc4 5. b4 ♗g7 6. bxa5 ♖xb8 7. ♖ab1 f5 8. a6 f4 9. ♗c6 f3+ 10. ♕f2 ♖xb1 11. ♖xb1 ♕f4!



12. ♖b4 ♗c3 13. ♖c4 ♗a5 14. ♕f1 ♗b6 15. ♗b7 h5 16. ♖c6 e3 17. ♖c4+ ♕g5

0-1

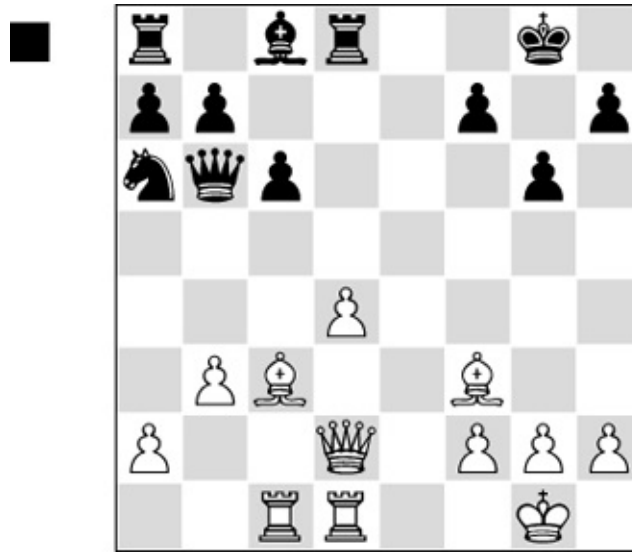
Deflecting the opponent from carrying out his main plan. Sharply changing the character of the battle

When your position is inferior and you see a clear plan for the opponent to attack, you need to look for a way to change the character of the battle, so as to deflect the opponent from this plan, even if doing so involves sacrifices. By changing the course of the game, the opponent often finds it hard to

adjust to the new position and the battle can become sharper, increasing your chances of survival.

Alexey Sokolsky
Peter Romanovsky

Soviet Union 1930



Black's biggest problem is the weakness of his king position. If White advances d4-d5, then it will be impossible to avoid mate on the long diagonal. There is also a threat of 2.♙a5.

1... ♙e6!

1... ♖d6 2.d5.

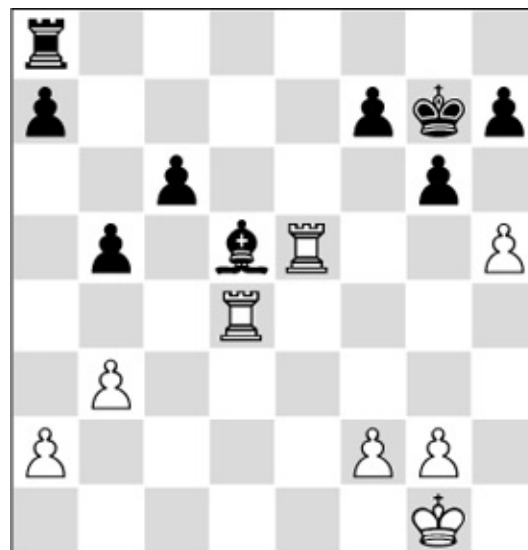
2. ♙a5?

Better was 2.d5 cxd5 (2... ♙xd5 3.♗h6 f6 4.♙xf6 ♖d7 5.♖xd5) 3.♗f4 with an attack.

2... ♖xd4 3. ♗xd4 ♙xa5

Black has eliminated the direct threats on the dark squares.

4.h4 ♗b4 5. ♗f6 ♗f8 6.h5 ♘b4 7. ♖d4 ♘d5 8. ♙xd5 ♙xd5 9. ♖e1 ♗g7 10. ♗xg7+ ♗xg7 11. ♖e5 b5



And despite his material losses, Black can hold.

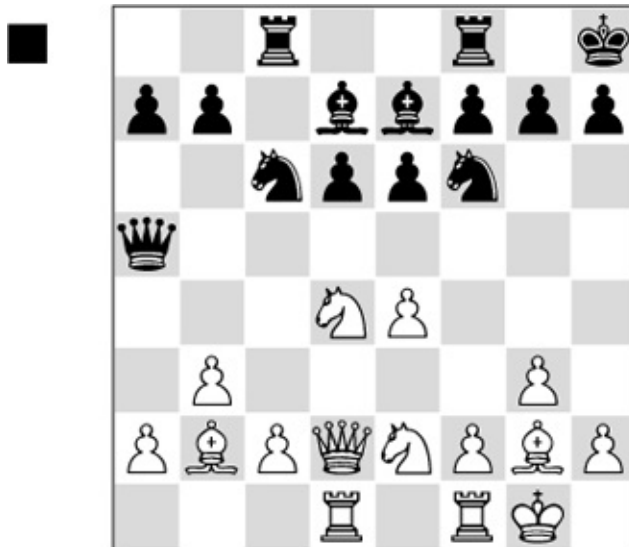
Most often, the change in the course of the game is achieved by sacrificing a pawn, an exchange or

the queen for rook and minor piece. Rarely is a whole piece sacrificed.

Alexander Ilyin-Zhenevsky

Emanuel Lasker

Moscow 1925 (8)



1... ♖xa2?! 2. ♖a1 ♖xb2 3. ♖fb1 ♖xb1+ 4. ♖xb1 ♖fd8

Having changed the material relation on the board (with formal material equality), Black invites his opponent to show what he can do.

5.c4 ♗e8 6.f4?! a6 7. ♖h1 ♗c7 8. ♖e3 ♖b8 9. ♖d1 ♗b4 10. ♖c3 a5 11. ♖a1 b6 12. ♖e3? e5! 13. ♗f5 ♗xf5 14.exf5 ♗c2 15. ♖c3 ♗xa1 16. ♖xa1 ♗f6



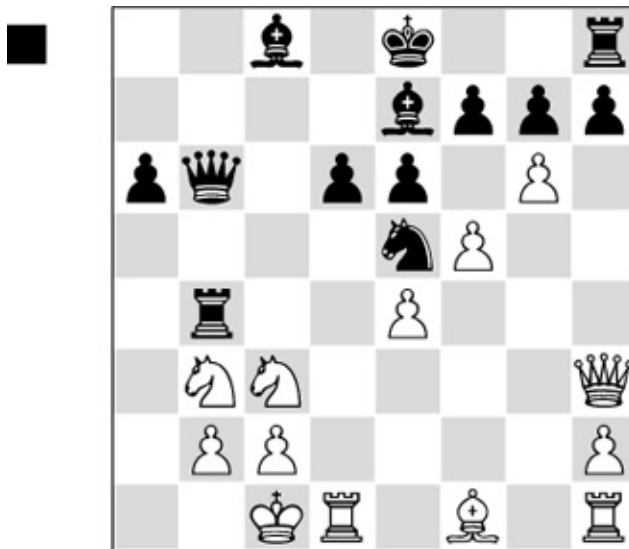
And Black gradually realised his advantage:

17. ♖g1 d5 18.cxd5 ♗xd5 19.fxg5 ♗xe5 20.g4 f6 21.h4 b5 22. ♗d4 ♗e3 23. ♖xe3 ♖xd4 24. ♗f3 a4 25.h5 a3 26. ♖e2 ♖bd8

0-1

David Bronstein Lev Polugaevsky

Moscow 1967



1...fxg6! 2.fxe6 ♖xb3! 3.cxb3 ♚xb3 4.♚g3 ♗xe6 5.♞e2 0-0 6.♚xb3 ♗xb3 7.♖d4 ♞f3
8.♖b4 ♗g5+ 9.♚b1 ♞d2+ 10.♚a1 ♗c4 11.♞f4 ♞xf1 12.♞h3 ♞e3 13.♖xc4

The threat was 13...♞c2+.

13...♞xc4 14.♞xg5

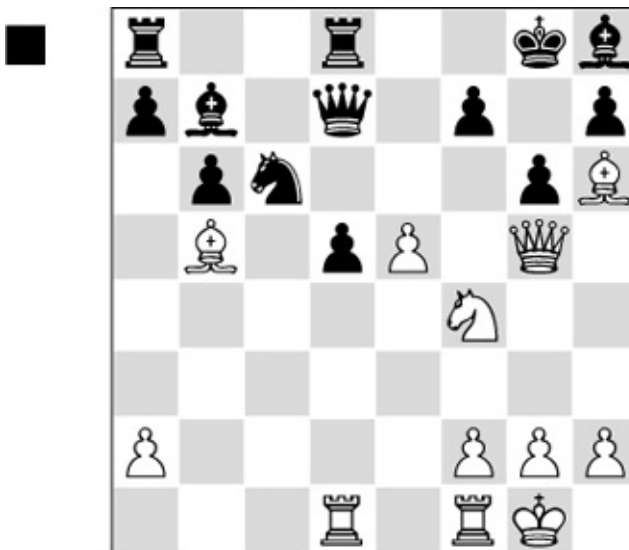
And the two extra pawns were realised:

14...h6 15.♞e6 ♖e8 16.♞c7 ♖e7! 17.♖c1 ♖xc7 18.b3 ♗f7 19.bxc4 ♗e6 20.♚b2 ♗e5
21.♗c3 ♗xe4 22.♖e1+ ♗f5 23.♗d4 g5

0-1

Miroslav Filip Viktor Kortchnoi

Bucharest 1954 (12)



At first glance, Black's position is unattractive – the threat is ♖f1-e1 and e5-e6. But it is his move...

1...♗xe5! 2.♗xc6 ♗xf4 3.♗f6 ♗xh6! 4.♗xd7 ♖xd7



As a result of the sudden change in the situation – no vestige remains of White’s attack – Black already has a clear plan and the more promising play, despite the fact that he has only two minor pieces for the queen. But what pieces they are!

5. ♖fe1 ♗f8 6.h4 ♜ad8 7.h5? d4 8.hxg6 hxg6 9. ♜d3 ♗a6 10. ♜ed1

Otherwise the black pawn marches on.

10... ♗xd3 11. ♜xd3 ♜c8 12. ♚f3 ♗g7 13. ♚e4 ♜cd8 14.f4 ♜d5 15.g4 ♗f6 16. ♚g2 ♚f8 17. ♚f3 b5 18. ♚e1 ♚g8 19. ♚b4 ♜8d7 20. ♚b3 a5 21.a3 ♜c5 22. ♚b1 ♜dc7 23. ♚e2 a4 24. ♚h1 ♜7c6 25. ♚b1 ♜c8 26. ♚h1 ♜c2+ 27. ♜d2 ♜e8+ 28. ♚d1 ♜c3 29. ♚d5 ♜xa3 30. ♚xb5 ♜a1+ 31. ♚c2 ♜c8+ 32. ♚d3 ♜e1 33. ♜c2 ♜d1+ 34. ♚e2 d3+ 35. ♚xd1 dxc2+ 36. ♚c1 a3 37. ♚a6 ♗b2+

0-1

Viktor Kortchnoi Gyula Sax

Wijk aan Zee (rapid) 1991 (9)



White’s position is completely bad. In time-trouble, Kortchnoi radically sharpens the battle.

1. ♗d2!? ♚xa3 2.f5! gxf5 3. ♚g3+ ♚f7 4. ♚b8 ♚e7 5. ♗b4 ♚d7 6. ♚f8+ ♚g6 7.g4 f4

Other winning moves are 7... ♜c8 and 7... ♗g7.

8.exf4 ♚d8??

Now Black loses by force. 8... ♖c8 would still win.



9.f5+! exf5 10.gxf5+ ♖h5 11.♖f7+ ♖h6 12.♗d2+

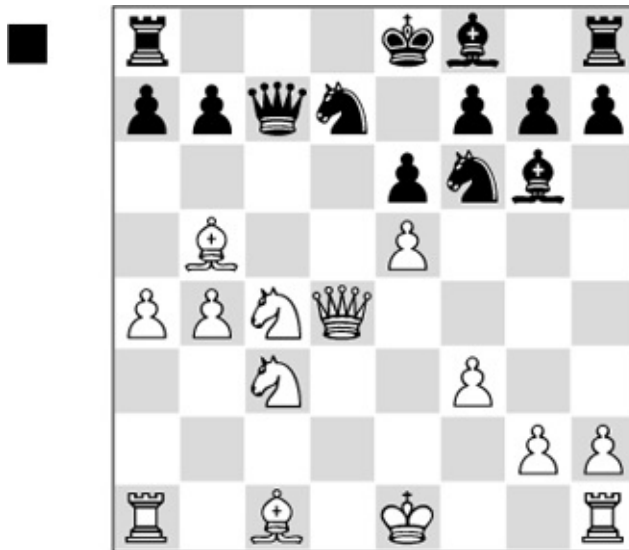
The fastest road to mate is 12. ♖g1. After 12. ♗f8+ Black has to part with his queen..

12... ♗g5 13.f6!

1-0

Alexander Khalifman
Valery Salov

Wijk aan Zee 1991 (3)



White has played the opening excellently and hoped to increase his advantage after the natural 1... ♘d5 2. ♘xd5 exd5 3. ♘d6+! (3. ♘e3 0-0-0 4. ♗b2 with a double-edged game) 3... ♗xd6 4. exd6 ♖xd6 5. ♗h6!! (5... f6 6. ♗xg7! ♗e7+ 7. ♖f2 ♗xg7 8. ♖he1+ ♖f8 9. ♗xd7, and White wins). Nor does 1...0-0-0 2. exf6 ♘c5 work, because of 3. fxg7, and 1...a6 2. exf6 axb5 for the same reason: 3. fxg7.

However, Black found the unexpected

1... ♗xb4! 2. exf6 0-0 3. ♗a3 ♗xa3 4. ♖xa3 ♖fd8

4... ♘xf6 5. ♘e5! ♖fd8 6. ♗e3.

5. ♖d6! ♖c8 6. ♗e5!

After 6. ♘e3 ♘c5 7. ♗e5 ♘d3+ 8. ♗xd3 ♖xd3 Black has rich compensation for the piece.

6... ♖c5

The tempting 6... ♗xf6 7. ♖b4 ♗d5 (7... a5 8. ♖c4) 8. ♗xd5 ♜xd5 (8... ♖c1+ 9. ♖f2 ♖xh1 10. ♗e7+ ♖h8 11. ♗7xg6+) 9. ♗xg6 ♖c1+ 10. ♖f2 ♖xh1 11. ♗e7+ would leave White with a decisive advantage. Now, however, his queen is offside.

7. ♖e7 a6 8. ♖e2 ♗xa4! 9. ♗xa4 ♖c1+ 10. ♖f2 ♖xh1 11. ♗b6 ♖xh2



12. ♗xa8?

In time-trouble, White allows his opponent to give perpetual check. He could win with 12. ♗g4! ♖h4+ (12... ♖f4 13. ♗xa8 ♜xa8 14. ♖xb7 ♜b8 15. ♖a7) 13. g3 ♖g5 14. f4! ♖f5 15. ♜d3.

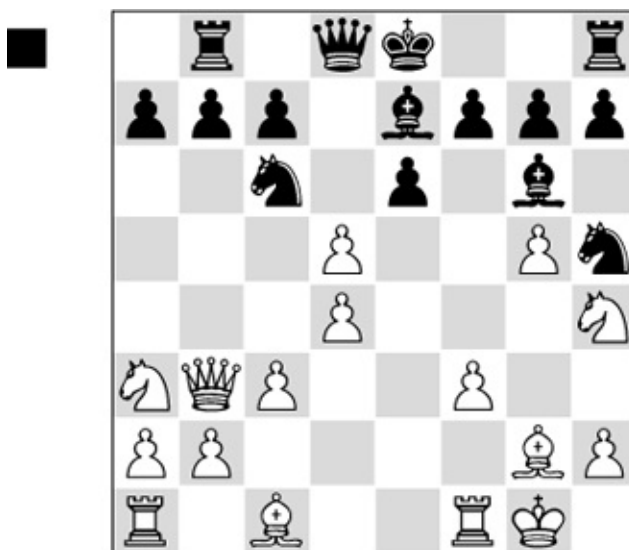
12... ♖h4+ 13. ♖f1 ♖h1+ 14. ♖f2 ♖h4+ 15. ♖g1 ♜d1+! 16. ♖xd1

1/2-1/2

Predrag Nikolic

Walter Arencibia Rodriguez

Yerevan 1996 (6)



Black preferred counterattack to a gruelling defence:

1... ♖xg5! 2. ♗xg6 ♖xc1 3. ♗xh8?

Stronger is 3. ♜axc1 hxg6 4. dxc6 ♗f4 with complicated play.

3... ♖e3+ 4. ♜f2

4.♖h1 ♔h4.

4...♗xf2+ 5.♘xf2 exd5 6.c4 ♔f8 7.cxd5 ♔h4+ 8.♘f1 ♘xd4 9.♗c4 ♘f5 10.♗xc7
♘hg3+ 11.hxg3 ♘xg3+ 12.♗g1 ♘e2+ 13.♗f1 ♘g3+ 14.♗g1 ♘e2+

1/2-1/2

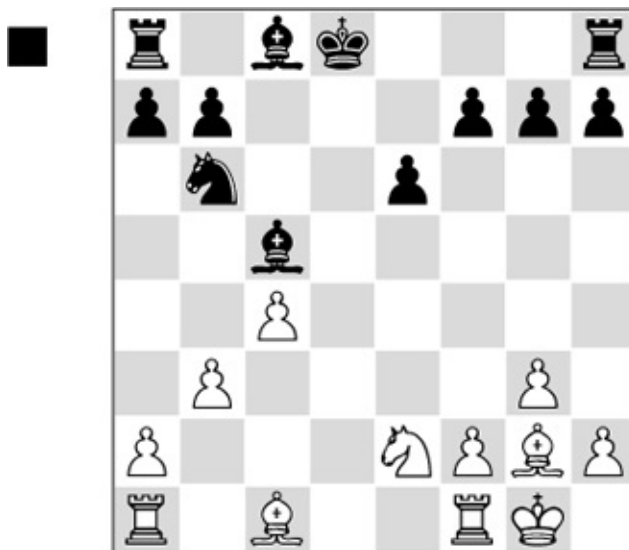
Creating the maximum difficulties

It is not always possible to defend just with the devices looked at above. In many cases, we need planned, well thought-out defence, sometimes without counterplay. The task is to pose the opponent the maximum difficulties. It is important to remember that practically every position has its plusses, which one needs to seek out and utilise in defence. One must defend with hope for the future, believing that the moment for counterplay will gradually come.

David Bronstein

Georgy Lisitsin

Leningrad 1947 (10)



Black's position is clearly worse – he is behind in development, his knight on b6 is badly-placed and White has a queenside pawn majority. But Black does have one plus – he is defending with virtually an extra piece, in the shape of his king. His plan is to exchange pieces, repulse the threats and gradually try to liquidate his lag in development.

1...♗e7 2.♘c3 f5 3.♗g5+ ♔f7 4.♖ad1 a6 5.♗e3 ♗xe3 6.fxe3 ♗e7! 7.e4 g6 8.exf5
gxf5 9.♖fe1 ♖b8! 10.♘e2 ♖f8!

Worse is 10...♖d8 11.♖xd8 ♗xd8 12.♘d4.

11.c5 ♘a8! 12.♘f4 ♖d8?

Correct was 12...♘c7.

13.♘d5+ ♗f7 14.♘b6 ♖xd1 15.♖xd1 ♘xb6 16.cxb6 ♗e7 17.♖c1 ♗d6 18.♖c7 h6
19.b4 e5 20.♖h7 ♗d7 21.♖xh6+ ♗e6



22.a4?

Immediate centralisation of the king would retain the advantage: 22.♔f2 e4 23.g4 (23.♔e3 ♖c8).

22...e4 – chances are equal.

Ratmir Kholmov
Mark Taimanov

Tbilisi 1959 (13)



Black has the advantage. White first exchanges some pieces, then strengthens his position and awaits the moment to launch a counterattack.

1. ♖xc6! ♜xc6 2. ♖xd4 ♔xd4 3. ♞e4 f6 4. ♔e2!

Looking at the b5-square.

4... ♔d5 5. ♔b1 ♞d4 6. ♔f2 ♞c6 7. ♔e2 ♞d4 8. ♔g2! ♞e6 9.g5



9...f5?

A misjudgement of the position. It was necessary to take twice on g5, with equality. Now, however, the initiative passes to White.

10. ♖c3 ♔d2 11. ♕f1 ♕xg5

Better is 11...♖f4.

12. ♕c4 ♕f6 13. ♞d5 ♕f7 14. ♖xe5 g6 15. h4! ♖d6 16. h5 ♖c6 17. ♕h4 ♕f8 18. hxg6 ♕xg6

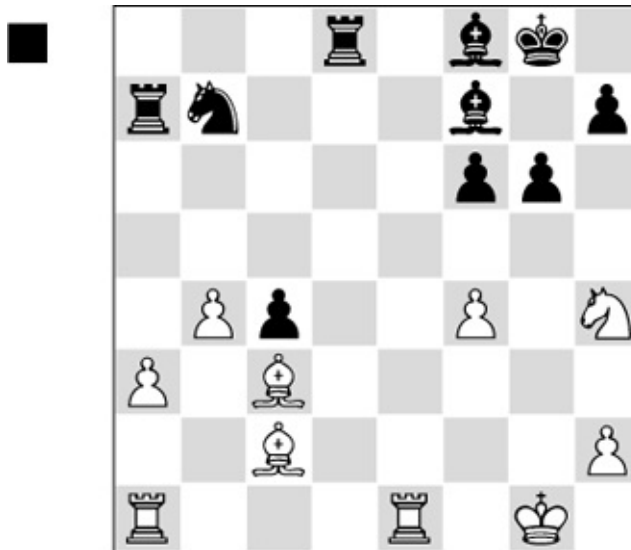
After 18...hxg6 19. ♖h8+ ♕g8 20. ♖xg8+ ♕xg8 21. ♜e7+ White wins.

19. ♕e7+ ♕g8 20. ♞f6+ ♕h8 21. ♖xe6 ♕g1+ 22. ♕a2

1-0

Grigory Levenfish Viacheslav Ragozin

Moscow 1936 (15)



1... ♞d6! 2. ♞xf6?

White is better thanks to his passed pawns on the queenside, so it follows that he should have played 2.a4.

2... ♖da8 3. a4 ♞e8 4. ♞c3 ♞c7! 5. ♞e4 ♞d5 6. ♖ad1 ♞xe4 7. ♖xe4 ♖xa4 8. ♖xc4 ♞b5 9. ♞e1 ♞a3 10. ♖c7 ♞b5 11. ♖b7 ♞d6 12. ♖d7 ♞b5 13. ♖b1 ♖e8 14. ♞d2 ♖e4



15. ♖c1?

Some chances could have been retained by 15. ♗f3, and if 15... ♙xb4?, then 16. ♖d8+ ♜g7 17. ♗g5, winning.

15... ♗d4 16. ♖e1

And the position was completely equal. Draw.

Voloshin

Vladimir Korzhunov

Correspondence game 1968-71



Black could resign. He is a pawn down, with a bare king. His first task is not to lose at once, and to find some way to hold on for a time.

1... ♖h7 2. ♙e3 ♙d7 3. ♙g3 ♖g7 4. h4

Or 4. ♖e7 ♖xe7 5. ♗xe7+ ♜f7 6. ♗g6 ♗f5.

4... ♗f7 5. h5 ♗c8

Covering the square e7.

6. ♙f4 ♙d8 7. ♙f5 ♙g8 8. h6 ♖f7 9. ♖e3 ♗d6 10. ♙xd5 ♙b6 11. ♗e7+ ♜h7 12. ♙d3+ ♖f5 13. ♗h1 ♗e4



Although he has lost another pawn, Black has managed to secure his king and coordinate his forces.

14. ♖d5 ♜b2 15. ♚h2 ♞f2 16. ♚e2 ♞g4+ 17. ♚g1 ♜b1+ 18. ♚e1 ♜xa2 19. ♞d3 a5 20. ♞f4 ♞b7 21. ♞d1 ♚f7 22. ♞d5 ♚e8! 23. ♞d1 ♚xe1+ 24. ♞xe1 a4 25. ♞a1 a3 26. ♞g3 ♞a7 27. ♚f1 ♞f6 28. ♞e2 ♚xh6

And the players agreed a draw.

Vladimir Kramnik
Alexey Shirov

Linares 1994 (12)



Objectively, Black has nothing for the piece, but he determinedly uses all his chances.

1... ♞f6!? 2.f3 ♞e4!! 3. ♞xd5?!

The cold-blooded 3. ♞e2 leaves White with chances of success.

3...cxd5 4.c6 ♞xf4! 5.cxb7 ♞e4 6. ♞c1 ♚h7 7.b8♚ ♚xb8 8.fxg4 ♚h2! 9. ♞f3 ♞xg4 10.b7?

Correct is 10. ♞f2!, and White should win.

10... ♞fg6



11. ♖c2?

This is the decisive mistake. After 11.b8♔ White could hope for equality.

11... ♖xg2 12. ♔xg2 ♖xg2 13. ♖xg2 ♔h1+ 14. ♔f2 ♔b1

And Black won.

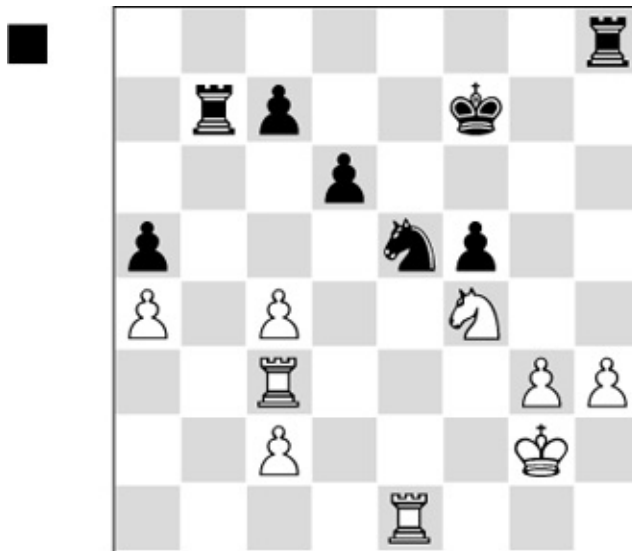
Playing with a material deficit

It is one thing to play and defend an inferior position. But what do you do when you are a pawn or two down, or the exchange? Several of the methods examined above are unlikely any longer to work, especially simplification, or giving up further material. The main thing in such cases is:

1. Strive to activate all your remaining pieces, to include them all in the battle against the enemy king, a badly-placed enemy piece or his pawn weaknesses.
2. Try to set up a fortress or head for a typical position, in which you have well-known drawing chances. Do not lose heart!

Carl Schlechter
Emanuel Lasker

Vienna/Berlin 1910 (1)



Black's position is inferior, but he finds counterplay:

1... ♖b4! 2.c5 ♖xa4 3.cxd6 cxd6 4. ♖c7+ ♔f6 5. ♗d5+ ♔g5 6.h4+ ♔h6 7. ♗e7 ♖f8

8. ♖d1 ♖f7 9. ♖xd6+ ♔h7 10. ♖e6 ♗g6!

Black gradually simplifies the position.

11. ♖xg6 ♖xe7 12. ♖gc6 ♖xc7 13. ♖xc7+ ♔g6 14. ♖c6+ ♔f7 15. ♔f3 ♖e4 16. ♖c5 ♔f6
17. ♖xa5 ♖c4!



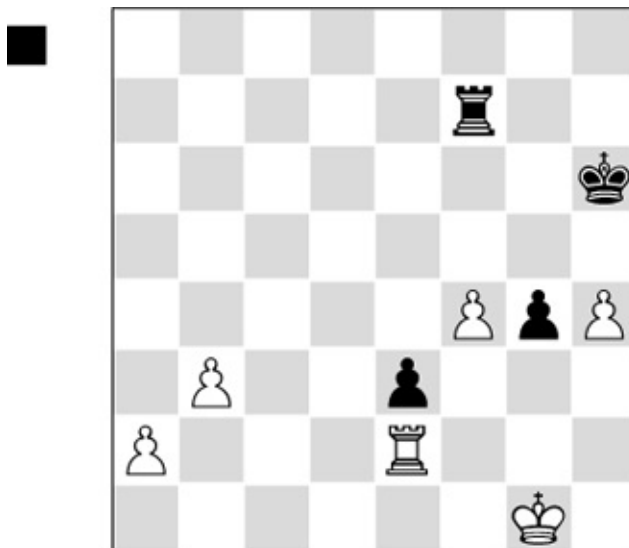
Black has managed to reach a drawn rook ending.

18. ♖a6+ ♔e5 19. ♖a5+ ♔f6 20. ♖a6+ ♔e5 21. ♖a5+ ♔f6 22. ♖a2 ♔e5 23. ♖b2 ♖c3+
24. ♔g2 ♔f6 25. ♔h3 ♖c6 26. ♖b8 ♖xc2 27. ♖b6+ ♔g7 28. h5 ♖c4 29. h6+ ♔h7 30. ♖f6
♖a4

Draw.

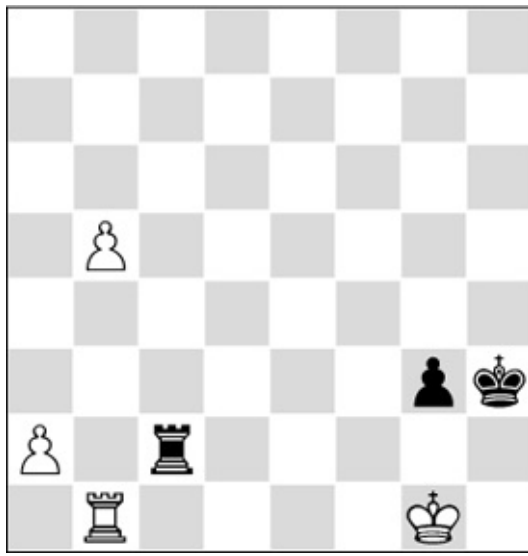
Vladislav Nevednichy Alexander Panchenko

Bucharest 1994 (7)



Black is two pawns down. His only chance is to unite his king, rook and g-pawn with the idea of setting up mating threats or promoting the pawn.

1... ♔h5 2. ♖xe3 ♔xh4 3. ♔g2 ♖xf4 4. ♖e2 ♖f3 5. b4 ♖g3+ 6. ♔h1 ♖d3 7. ♔g2 ♖g3+
8. ♔f1 ♖f3+ 9. ♖f2 ♖c3 10. ♔g2 ♖g3+ 11. ♔h2 ♖h3+ 12. ♔g1 ♖c3 13. b5 ♖g3 14. ♖b2
♔h3 15. ♖b1 ♖c2

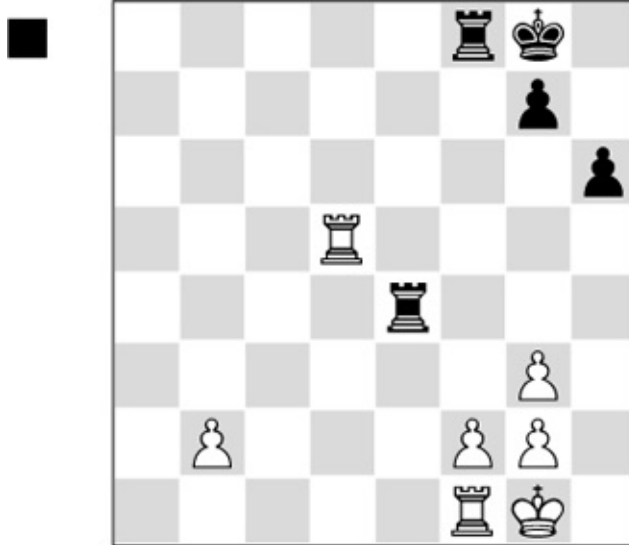


16. b6 Rg2+ 17. Kh1 Rf2+ 18. Ke1 Rxa2 19. b7 g2 20. Rb3+ Kh4 21. Rg3 Rb2

Draw.

Jan Timman
Joel Lautier

Wijk aan Zee 1994 (1)



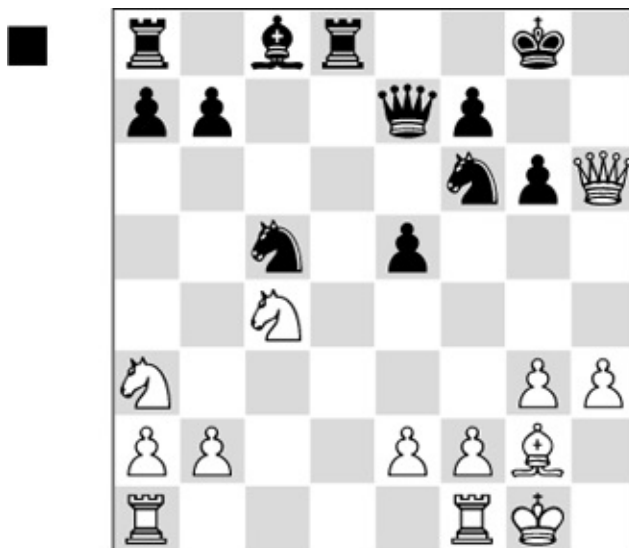
With accurate play, Lautier steers the game into a theoretically drawn rook ending.

1... R e2 2. R b5 R c8 3. g4 R cc2 4. b3 R b2 5. g5 hxg5 6. R xg5 R xb3 7. R c1 R b7 8. R c8+ Kh7 9. f3 R b1+ 10. Kh2 R b6

Draw.

Predrag Nikolic
Henrique Mecking

Sao Paulo 1991 (2)



Black is a pawn down and has a weak king. What can he do? Fight!

1...e4 2. ♖ ad1 ♗ e6 3. ♔ g5 b6 4. b3 ♜ xd1 5. ♜ xd1 ♜ d8!

Threatening to seize the open file.

6. ♜ xd8+ ♔ xd8 7. ♔ d2 ♔ xd2 8. ♗ xd2 ♗ d5 9. ♗ b5 f5 10. ♗ b1 a6 11. ♗ 5c3 a5! 12. f3 exf3 13. ♗ xf3 ♗ b4 14. h4 ♔ f7 15. ♔ f2 ♔ f6 16. ♔ e3 ♔ e5 17. ♗ a3 a4



18. bxa4

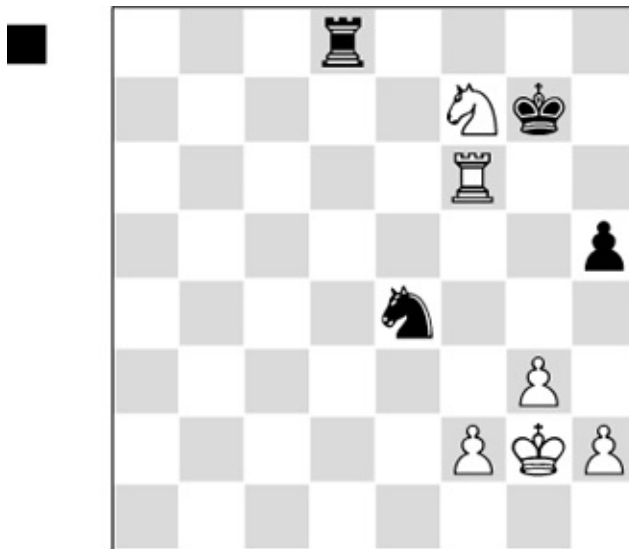
White cannot bear the activity of the black pieces and agrees to equality. He could retain some advantage only with 18. ♗c4+ ♗xc4 19. bxc4.

18... ♗ xa2 19. ♗ ab5 ♗ xc3 20. ♗ xc3 ♗ d7 21. ♗ d5 ♗ xa4 22. ♗ f4 ♗ e8 23. ♗ d3+

And the game was agreed drawn.

Loek van Wely Anatoly Karpov

Cap d'Agde (rapid) 1996



Two pawns down, the ex-World Champion saves the game by active play.

1... ♖d5! 2. ♖f4 ♞f6

Even more precise is 2... ♘c5.

3. ♞h6 ♔g6 4. h3 ♞h7 5. ♞g8 ♖e5!

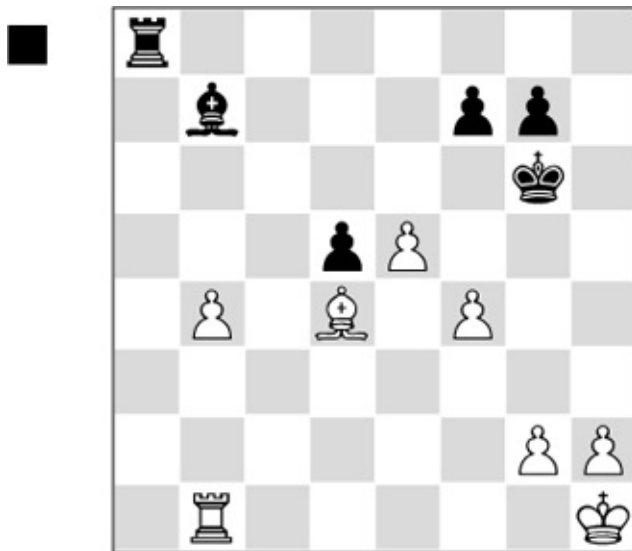


Finally 'arresting' the white knight.

**6. ♖a4 ♔g7 7. ♖a8 ♖e6 8. f4 ♔f7 9. g4 hxg4 10. hxg4 ♖g6 11. ♞e7 ♔xe7 12. ♖a7+ ♔f6
13. ♖xh7 ♖xg4+ 14. ♔f3**

1/2-1/2

Xie Jun
Mark Taimanov
 Copenhagen 1997 (8)



This endgame clearly shows that extra material is not everything.

1... ♔f5

The activity of his king gives Black definite counterplay.

2.g3?

Much stronger was 2. ♖e1, not allowing the black king into the centre.

2... ♔e4 3. ♖d1 ♜a2 4. ♔g1?

Now White even loses. He had to play 4.b5, not allowing the black bishop its freedom.

4... ♞a6 5.e6 fxe6 6. ♞xg7 ♔f3 7. ♞d4 ♜g2+ 8. ♔h1 ♜c2 9. ♖b1 ♞b5 10. ♞g1

Stronger is 10. ♔g1.

10... ♔g4 11. ♖b3 ♜d2 12. ♞e3 ♜a2 13. ♞d4 ♜d2 14. ♞e3 ♜e2



15. ♔g1?

This loses; 15. ♞d4 was essential.

**15... ♔h3 16. ♞f2 d4 17. ♞xd4 ♜g2+ 18. ♔h1 ♜xh2+ 19. ♔g1 ♜g2+ 20. ♔h1 ♞c6!
 21. ♜c3 ♞d5 22. ♜c5 ♜xg3+ 23. ♜xd5 exd5 24.b5 ♜b3 25. ♔g1 ♔g4 26. ♞e5 ♔f5
 27. ♔f2 ♔e4**

Konstantin Landa Artyom Timofeev

Taganrog 2011 (3)

**1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 d5 4.♗f3 ♖g7 5.♚b3 dxc4 6.♚xc4 0-0 7.e4 a6 8.♗e2 b5
9.♚b3 ♗c6 10.d5 ♗a5 11.♚b4 c6 12.0-0 ♗b7 13.♖d1 ♚c7 14.♗e3 cxd5 15.♗xd5
♗xd5 16.exd5 ♗c4 17.♖ac1 ♖ac8?**

Correct was 17...♗d7 18.♗xc4 bxc4 19.♖xc4 ♗xd5 with equality.

18.b3 ♚d6 19.♖xc4 bxc4 20.♚xb7



Black is clearly worse. His immediate task is to exchange as many pawns as possible and open lines for his rooks.

20...cxb3

After 20...c3 21.♗c4 the pawn on c3 will sooner or later be lost.

21.axb3 ♖b8 22.♚a7

The endgame without queens and the pawns on a6 and b3 should be lost for Black. Therefore, White could now have taken on a6.

22... ♖xb3 23.♗c5 ♚b8 24.♚xa6

After 24.♚xb8 ♖fxb8 25.♗xe7 ♖b1 Black has excellent counterplay.

24... ♚b7 25.♚c6 ♖b1

It is important to exchange one pair of rooks.

26.♗d2

Stronger is 26.♚xb7 ♖xb7 27.♗d4.

26... ♖xd1+ 27.♗xd1 ♚b2 28.♗f1 ♗d4 29.♗xd4 ♚xd4

Now it was necessary to exchange off the white d-pawn and hope for a fortress.

30.♗e3 ♖b8 31.g3 ♖b1 32.♚c2 ♖b2 33.♚c8+ ♗g7 34.♗c2 ♖b6 35.♚c7

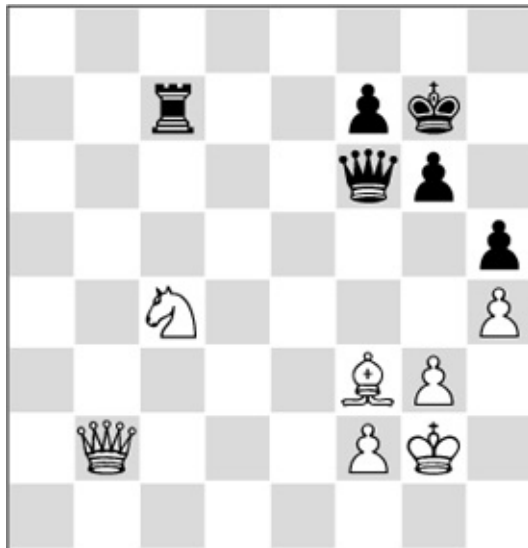
Better is 35.♗d7, interfering with Black's plans.

35...e6 36.dxe6 ♖xe6



This position may already be drawn. The idea is to defend the square f7, whilst keeping the queen in the centre, where it has maximum activity. It was possible to exchange queens, although this means a difficult defence in the endgame. For the next 50 moves, White tried to break his opponent's defence, but without success.

37. ♖b3 ♜f6 38. ♚c2 ♜d6 39. ♚g2 ♜d7 40. h4 h5 41. ♙c4 ♜b7 42. ♙b3 ♜d7 43. ♚c6 ♜e7 44. ♚c1 ♜b7 45. ♙d1 ♜b5 46. ♙f3 ♜a5 47. ♚c7 ♜a7 48. ♚c2 ♜a5 49. ♚b3 ♜c5 50. ♞d5 ♜c6 51. ♚b1 ♜a6 52. ♞f4 ♜b6 53. ♚e1 ♚f8 54. ♞h3 ♚g7 55. ♞f4 ♚f8 56. ♞h3 ♚g7 57. ♚e7 ♜b2 58. ♚g5 ♜c2 59. ♚a5 ♜d2 60. ♚c7 ♜a2 61. ♚c1 ♜b2 62. ♚e1 ♜b6 63. ♞g5 ♜b2 64. ♙c6 ♜a2 65. ♞h3 ♜c2 66. ♙e4 ♜b2 67. ♞f4 ♜b6 68. ♙f3 ♚f8 69. ♞d5 ♜b2 70. ♚e7+ ♚g7 71. ♞e3 ♜b5 72. ♚a3 ♜c5 73. ♚b3 ♜a5 74. ♙d5 ♜a7 75. ♚c2 ♚e5 76. ♚c4 ♜c7 77. ♚b4 ♜d7 78. ♚b3 ♜c7 79. ♚b6 ♜d7 80. ♚b5 ♜c7 81. ♚b8 ♚e7 82. ♙f3 ♚e5 83. ♞c4 ♚e7 84. ♚b2+ ♚f6



85. ♚b5?

More pragmatic was 85. ♚xf6+ ♚xf6 86. ♞e3 with lasting pressure in the endgame.

85... ♚d4 86. ♞e3 ♜c5 87. ♚b7

Draw.

Positions for solving

E19 (solution on page 222)



Black to play

E20 (solution on page 222)



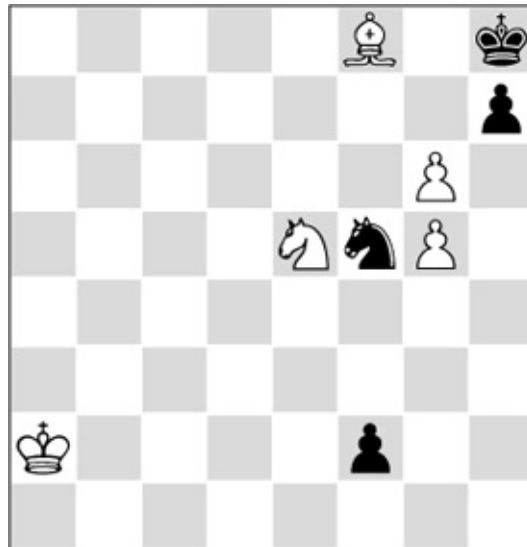
White to play

[E21 \(solution on page 222\)](#)



Black to play

[E22 \(solution on page 223\)](#)



White to play and draw

[E23 \(solution on page 223\)](#)



Black to play

[E24 \(solution on page 223\)](#)



Black to play. What is the threat?

E25 (solution on page 223)



What happens after 1. ♖xh7+ ?

E26 (solution on page 224)



Black to play

[E27 \(solution on page 224\)](#)



Is 1...fxe6 possible?

[E28 \(solution on page 224\)](#)



Is 1... ♖xe5 good?

E29 (solution on page 224)



Assess 1. ♖xe6. Give variations

E30 (solution on page 225)



Is 1. ♖f5 possible?

E31 (solution on page 225)



Can Black defend after 1. ♖f6+ ?

E32 (solution on page 225)



Black to play

[E33 \(solution on page 225\)](#)



Black to play

Positions for playing out

[P11 \(solution on page 226\)](#)



Black to play (30 minutes)

P12 (solution on page 226)



Black to play (20-30 minutes)

P13 (solution on page 226)



Black to play (20-30 minutes)

[P14 \(solution on page 226\)](#)



Black to play (30-40 minutes)

[P15 \(solution on page 227\)](#)



Black to play (30-40 minutes)



Black to play (30-40 minutes)

Chapter 3

Counterplay

Some players (Kortchnoi, Polugaevsky, Larsen, and many others) sometimes prefer active counterplay to stubborn, but passive defence. This is always associated with risk for both players and requires a great deal of strength. The main thing with such play is to strive for the initiative at all costs. It is not always possible to be sure who has the advantage, since each side will have its own plusses and minuses, and the battle usually rages on different flanks, the principle being ‘The Devil take the hindmost!’. Here everything is decided by accurate calculation and strong nerves. It is essential to commit to the defence only the minimum number of pieces required (the principle of economy!) and to attack with the greater part of one’s forces, not shirking before sacrifices.

As Lev Polugaevsky put it: ‘There are two types of defender. On the one hand, there is the prophylactic defender. I belong to the other group, which says openly to the opponent: “Come on then, attack as much as you like, but bear in mind that rather than passive defence, you will encounter active counterplay”.’

In the following example, Black strives for the initiative from the first few moves.

Shipov

Lev Polugaevsky

Yalta 1962

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 e6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♘xd4 a6 5.♙d3 ♘c5 6.♘b3 ♙a7 7.0-0 ♘c6!?

Black allows 8.♙g4, intending to go over to a counterattack, with a pawn sacrifice. His aim is to break through to the f2-pawn.

8.♙g4 ♘f6 9.♙xg7 ♖g8 10.♙h6 ♘e5 11.♙h1

Better was 11.♙f4, placing his opponent’s strategy in doubt. Now, however, Black’s tactics prove justified.

11... ♖g6 12.♙h4 ♘fg4!



13.♙xh7

13.♙xd8+ ♙xd8 14.♙g1 is bad because of 14... ♘f3+.

13... ♖f6!

Black consistently exploits his trump – the weakness of f2. If immediately 13... ♗xf2+, then 14. ♖xf2 ♕xf2 15. ♖h8+.

14.f4 ♖h6 15. ♖g8+ ♕e7 16.h3 ♖h8 17.fxe5

Better is 17. ♖g5.

17... ♖xf1+ 18. ♕xf1 ♖xg8 19. ♕f4 19... ♕b8!

The mate threat indirectly defends the black knight: see, for example, 20.hxg4 ♖h8+ 21. ♖g1 ♕a7+ or 21. ♕h2 ♕xe5.

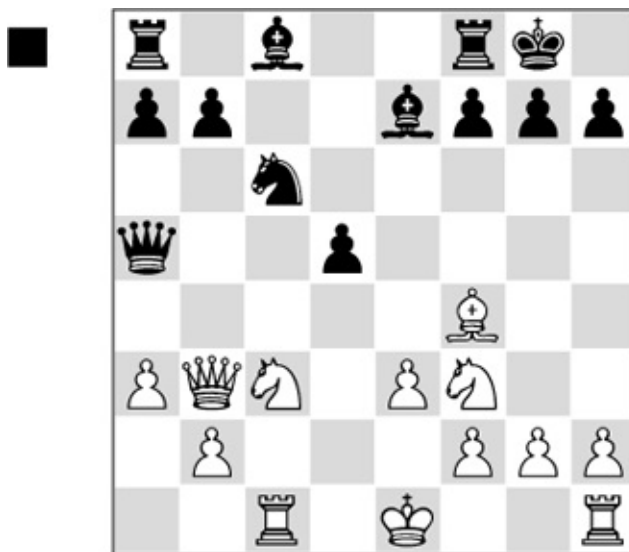
20.g3 ♖xe5 21. ♖c3 b5 22. ♖a5 ♕c7 23.b4 d6

And Black realised his extra exchange.

Mark Taimanov

Bent Larsen

Vinkovci 1970 (13)



White is better. After 1... ♖d8 both 2. ♖b5 and 2.0-0 are possible, and Black faces a difficult battle for a draw. But he did not want to defend passively and instead went in for a counterattack, which involves weakening the black king and carries great risk with it.

1...g5! 2. ♕g3 g4 3. ♖d4

If 3. ♗e5, then 3... ♕f6 4. ♗xc6 bxc6 5.0-0 ♕e6 with a complicated position, but another possibility was 3. ♗d2!? d4 4. ♗c4 ♖f5 5. ♗e2 dxe3 6.0-0 with an attack for the sacrificed pawn.

3... ♖xd4 4.exd4 ♕g5 5.0-0

Now what?

5... ♕xc1 6. ♖xc1 ♕e6 7.h3

White goes in for an interesting combination, but Black finds a defence.

7...gxh3 8. ♕e5 f6 9. ♖e4 fxe5 10. ♖g3+ ♕g4!

10... ♖h8 or 10... ♖f7 are bad because of 11. ♖xe5.

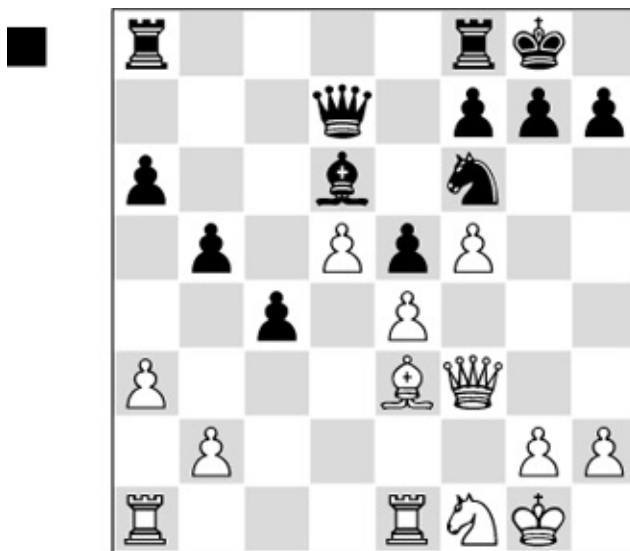
11. ♖xg4+ ♕h8 12. ♖g5 ♖d2 13. ♖c7 ♖xf2+! 14. ♖h2 ♖xg2+ 15. ♖xg2 hxg2

And Black won.

Counterplay rarely arises of its own accord (unless via a forcing move, such as 1...g7-g5!? in the previous game). It has to be prepared. One must find the enemy's weakness (not always easy) and direct all possible forces against it. First we identify the area for the counterattack, then the counterattack itself follows.

Ion Balanel Laszlo Szabo

Moscow 1956 (4)



Black's position looks dangerous, as g2-g4-g5 is threatened, with an attack. Decisive measures are needed.

1... ♖fc8!

Black prepares counterplay on the queenside, where he has a pawn majority.

2.g4 c3

Of course, not 2...h6.

3.b3 c2! 4.g5 ♘e8 5.♙d2 ♚e7! 6.b4 a5! 7.bxa5 ♜xa5! 8.♙xa5 c1♚ 9.♜axc1 ♜xc1 10.♜xc1? ♚xg5+ 11.♚g3 ♚xc1



Thus, there remains no trace of White's attack.

12.♚b3?

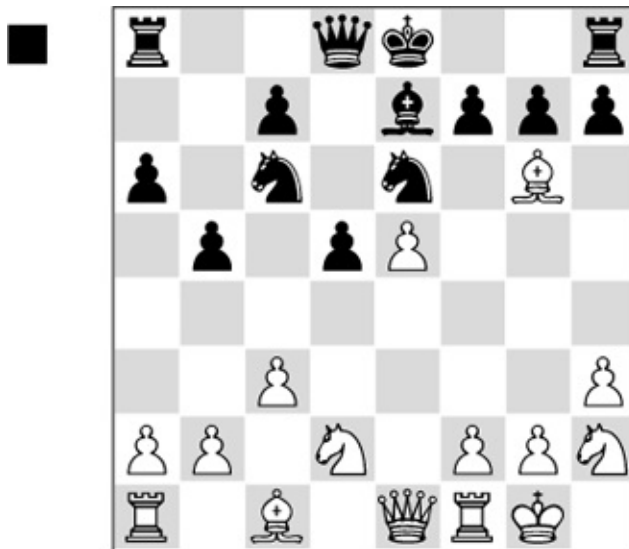
Better is 12.♙b4.

12... ♙c5+ 13.♚g2 ♘d6 14.♙b4 ♘xe4 15.♙xc5 ♚xc5 16.♘e3 h5 17.a4? bxa4

White resigned.

Alexander Alekhine Akiba Rubinstein

Vilnius 1912 (5)



After 1...hxg6? Black is condemned to a difficult defence. By playing

1...fxg6!

he intends a counterattack along the f-file. There followed:

2. ♖b3

Better is 2.f4 0-0 3. ♘b3 with approximate equality.

2...g5!? 3. ♙e3

3.f4!?.

3...0-0 4. ♘f3 ♚d7 5. ♚d2?

This move allows an exchange sacrifice, which justifies 1...fxg6!; better was 5. ♚e2.

5... ♜xf3!

Of course!

6.gxf3 ♘xe5 7. ♚e2 ♜f8 8. ♘d2 ♘g6 9. ♜fe1 ♙d6

White's position is lost, but he still has an original try:



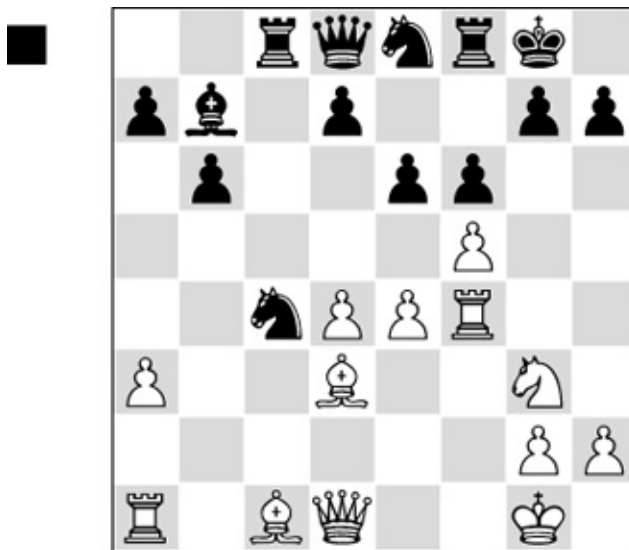
10.f4!? ♘exf4 11. ♚f1 ♘h3+ 12. ♚h1 g4 13. ♚e2 ♚f5

White resigned.

The following game is a classical example of a counterattack.

Efim Geller
Machgielis Euwe

Zurich 1953 (2)



1...b5!

«The start of a wonderful plan. It is obvious that, given the extremely limited space on the kingside, any defensive measures with pieces (... ♖f8-f7, ... ♔d8-e7 etc.) are doomed to failure. But Black has another resource – counterattack! The bishop on b7, the rook on c8 and the knight on c4 occupy excellent positions and it only remains to include the queen. The basis of the counterattack is Black’s superiority on the central squares. By playing ...b6-b5, Black further strengthens the position of his knight and allows a path out to b6 for the queen» (Bronstein).

2. ♖h4 ♘b6 3.e5 ♗xe5 4.fxe6 ♗xd3 5. ♘xd3

5.exd7 ♖xc1.

5... ♘xe6 6. ♘xh7+ ♗f7 7. ♘h6

The white pieces have gone too far and now Black goes over to a counterattack.

7... ♖h8! 8. ♘xh8 ♖c2 9. ♖c1

More tenacious is 9.d5! ♗xd5 10. ♖d1 ♖xg2+ 11. ♔f1 ♖a2.

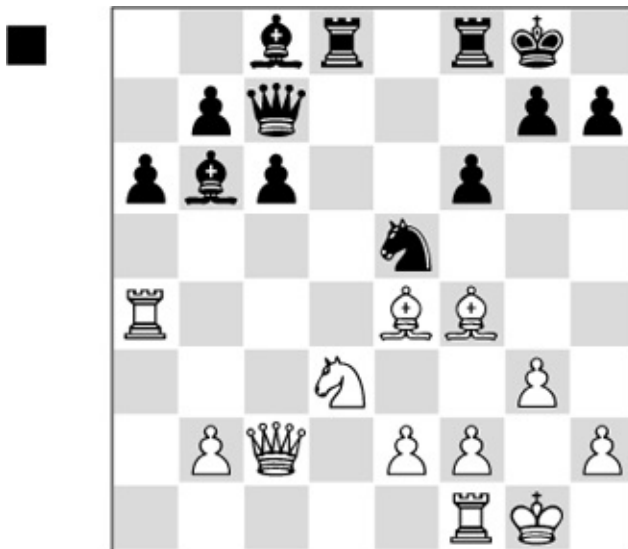
9... ♖xg2+ 10. ♔f1 ♘b3 11. ♔e1 ♘f3

0-1

In the following game, Black also achieves a decisive counterattack.

Milan Vidmar Machgielis Euwe

Nottingham 1936 (2)



With the unexpected and strong move

1...g5!

Black goes over to the counterattack:

2. ♖xh7+

After 2. ♖xe5 (2. ♗xe5 gxf4! 3. ♗c4 ♖a7 with the idea of ...b7-b5) 2...fxe5 the sacrifice on h7 is inadequate: 3. ♖xh7+ ♗xh7 4. ♗xe5+ ♖f5. 3. ♖b3+ is also bad because of 3...♗h8 4. ♗xe5 ♖xf2+ 5. ♗xf2 ♖xe5 with an extra pawn for Black. 3. ♗xe5 is refuted by 3...♖h3 4. ♖b3+ (4. ♖g2 ♖xg2 5. ♗xg2 ♖xe5 6. ♖b3+ ♖d5+) 4...♗h8 5. ♖g2 ♖xf2+!, and if 6. ♗xf2, then 6...♖b6!., winning for Black. Better is 3.e3, somewhat stabilising the position.

2... ♗xh7 3. ♖xe5 ♖a7!

Bad is 3...fxe5 4. ♖b3+ and 5. ♖xb6.

4. ♖c3 b5 5. ♖aa1 c5 6. ♗c1 c4 7. ♗e1

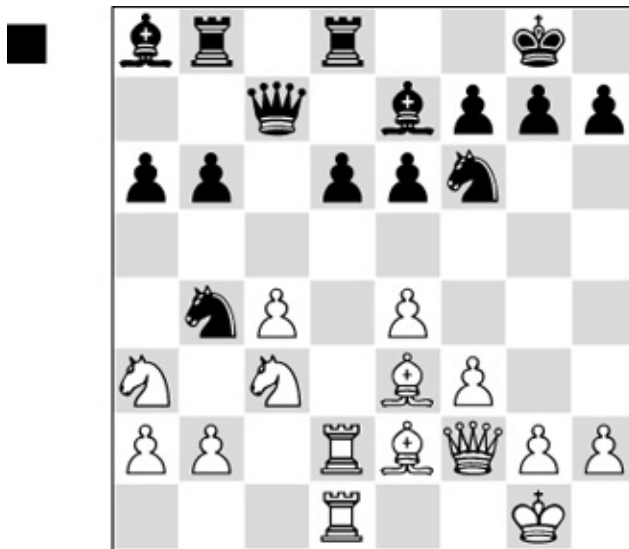
7. ♗b4 ♖h3 with a mating attack.

7... ♖b7 8. ♗f3 g4 9. ♗g5 ♗f5

And White resigned.

Roy Dieks Slavoljub Marjanovic

Manila 1974



Black seizes the initiative with a typical blow in the centre.

1...d5! 2.cxd5 exd5!? 3.e5

It was essential to play 3.exd5 with rough equality.

3...♖xe5 4.♗xb6 ♖xb6!

After 4...♜d7 5.♘d4 White is better.

5.♖xb6 ♞d7 6.♖a5 ♜b8!

With the idea of 7...♙d8 and 8...♞c5, trapping the white queen.

7.♞c2 ♗g5!

Worse is 7...♙d8 8.♞xb4 with a complicated game.

8.♞xb4 ♗xd2 9.♗f1

Better is 9.♖f1.

9...♗e3+ 10.♞h1 ♗b6 11.♖xa6 ♗c7 12.g3 d4 13.♗e2

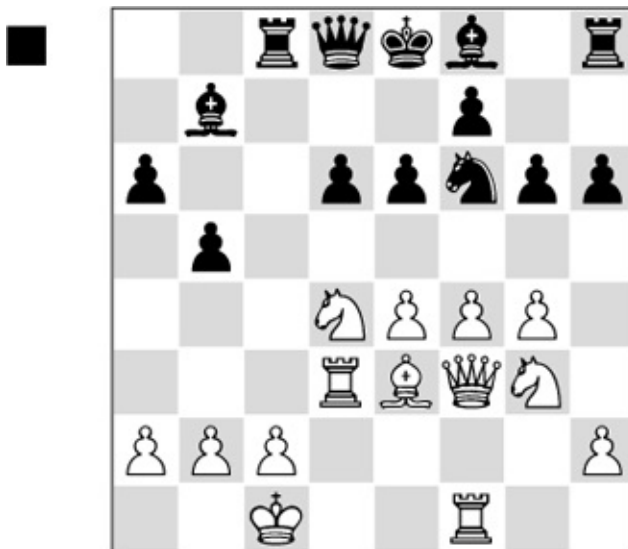
Or 13.♞e4 ♗xe4 14.fxe4 ♜xb4 15.♞c8+ ♞f8.



13...♞f8! 14.♖c4 dxc3 15.bxc3 ♜e8 16.♜d2 ♗xf3+

Viktor Kupreichik Vladimir Tukmakov

Ashkhabad 1978 (8)



White has a weak pawn on e4 and Black plays against this.

1...h5! 2.gxh5

If 2.h3 or 2.g5, then 2...h4! with advantage to Black.

2...♟xh5!

On 2...gxh5 Tukmakov gives the following beautiful variation: 3.f5 e5 4.♞e6! fxe6 5.fxe6 h4 6.♙g5 ♟h6 7.♙xh6 ♞xh6 8.♞f5 ♙xe4 9.♞xe4! ♞xe4 10.♞g7+ ♚e7 11.♞f7#.

3.f5 exf5 4.♞dxf5 gxf5 5.♞xf5

5.♞xf5 ♞c7! 6.♞c3 ♞xg3 7.hxg3 ♞d7 8.♞xd7+ ♚xd7 9.♞xf7+ ♙e7.

5... ♞h7 6.♞b1 ♞c7 7.♞d2 ♞c4 8.♙d4 ♞e6 9.♞e1 ♞c4! 10.♞g2 ♞f6 11.♙xf6 ♞xf6



12.♞xd6+ ♙xd6 13.♞g8+ ♙f8 14.♞xh7 ♞h6 15.♞xh6 ♙xh6 16.♞de2 ♞e7 17.b3 ♞d4 18.♞b2 b4 19.c3? ♞d2+ 20.♞xd2 ♙xd2 21.♞e2 bxc3+

And Black won.

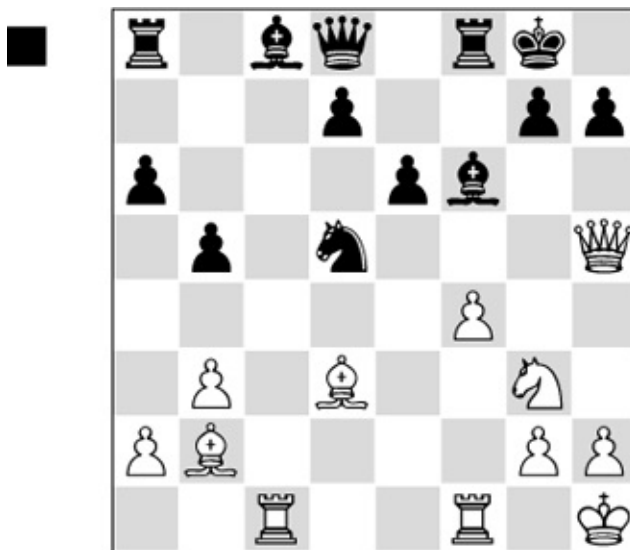
Often, the move to a counterattack starts with a sacrifice of material (sometimes the return of extra material) and obtaining in return other advantages (an advantage in forces in a certain sector of the

board, badly placed enemy pieces).

Fridrik Olafsson

Mikhail Tal

Bled/Zagreb/Belgrade 1959 (25)



1...g6!

Returning the pawn in the hope of seizing the initiative. On 1...h6 there is the strong reply 2.♙e5 with the threat of 3.♖g6.

2. ♙xg6

After 2.♖e2 ♗xb2 3.♖xb2 ♘xf4 Black has a material advantage which is fully adequate for victory.

2... ♗e7!

Of course, Mikhail Tal had anticipated this position in advance and had seen that after 2...hxg6? 3.♖xg6+ ♔h8 4.♘f5! White wins. Now, however, Black goes over to the counterattack.

3. ♙xf6 ♗xf6 4. ♗f3 ♖b8 5. ♙d3 ♗b7 6. ♗e2 ♗h8

Black's pieces come to life.

7. ♖ce1 ♖be8 8. ♗f5

White panics.

8... ♗b4 9. ♗b2 ♖c8 10. ♖g3

Retreating.

10... ♗c3 11. ♗e2

In the event of an exchange of queens, Black's material advantage is enough to win.

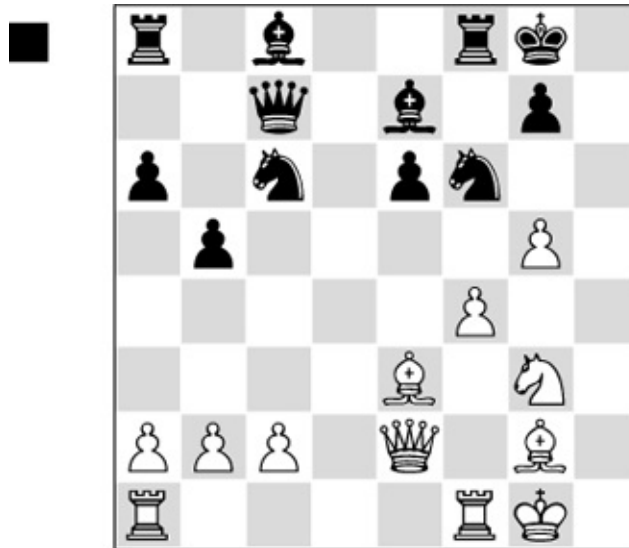
11... ♖g8 12. ♗e4 ♗d4! 13. ♗g5 ♖g7!



Almost imperceptibly, White has difficulties.

14. ♖e3 ♜xe3 15. ♝xe3 ♜c3 16. ♝h3 b4 17. ♚g1 e5! 18. ♝g3 e4 19. ♞c4 d5 20. ♞e2 d4
 And the powerful passed pawns decided the outcome.

Efim Geller
Alexander Panchenko
 Moscow 1982



1... ♞b7!

Black returns the piece, in the hope of exploiting the bad position of the white king and the white pawn weaknesses.

2.c3 ♝ae8 3.gxf6 ♞xf6 4. ♞c5 ♝f7 5. ♞e4 ♞e7!

Underlining Black's obvious advantage. The knight heads for the eternal outpost on f5, and if it is exchanged, then the strength of the black bishop pair will have its say. In this respect, it was worth considering the forced transition into a queen and rook ending, although here too, the white king is in danger.

6. ♞d6 ♜c8 7. ♝ad1 ♞f5 8. ♞e5?

A time-trouble oversight.

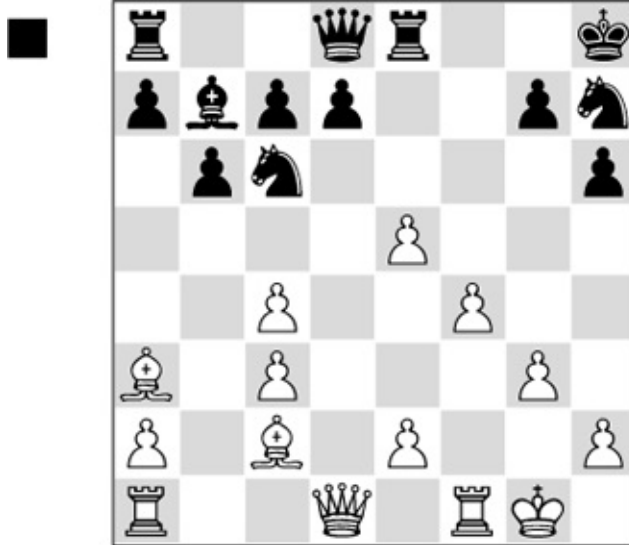


8... ♖xe4 9. ♔xe4 ♘g3 10. ♔g6 ♘xf1 11. ♖e4 ♖xe5

White resigned.

Veselin Topalov
Boris Gelfand

Novgorod 1997 (8)



White threatens the unpleasant move 2. ♔d3 with an attack. Gelfand returns the piece, liquidating all the threats and going over to the counterattack:

1... ♘xe5! 2. fxe5 ♖xe5 3. ♖xh7

Otherwise the knight comes into the battle with great effect.

3... ♔xh7 4. c5 ♔e8 5. ♔d3+ ♖e4 6. ♔d2 ♔e6

Having broken in on the light squares, Black wins quickly.

7. ♖f2 bxc5 8. ♖af1 ♖e8 9. c4 ♔h3 10. ♖b2 ♖g5 11. ♔c3 ♖e6 12. ♔e3 ♖g4 13. ♖c1



13...h5

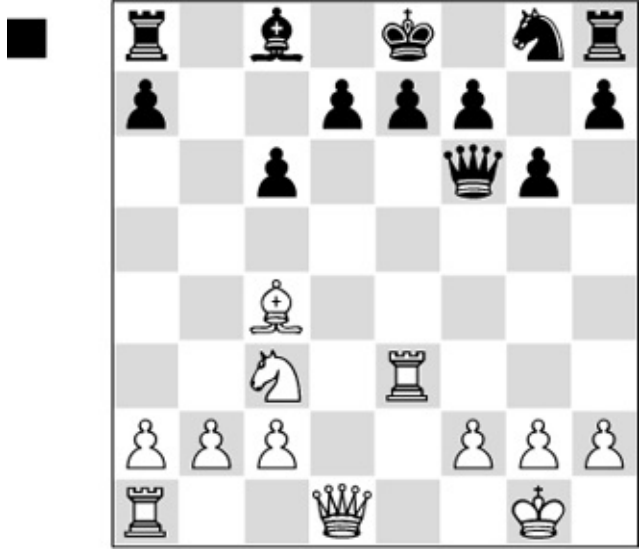
0-1

There is no defence against ...h5-h4.

Sometimes, returning the extra material is essential to a successful defence.

Jan Timman
Viktor Kortchnoi

Brussels 1991 (5)



Black has an extra central pawn, but is massively behind in development. There is the very unpleasant threat of ♖c3-e4. Kortchnoi takes the correct decision – he gives back the extra pawn, to complete his development, and gradually equalises.

1...d5! 2. ♖xd5 ♗f5!

Taking the piece would subject Black to a huge attack.

3. ♗f3 h5 4. ♖e2 ♖b8 5. ♘a4 ♗f8! 6. ♖e1 ♖b4 7. b3 ♗g7 8. ♖c3 ♗g4! 9. ♖e3 ♗xf3 10. ♖xf3 ♖xf3 11. ♖xf3 e6 12. ♖d1 ♘f6 13. c4 ♖bb8 14. ♖fd3 h4!

Creating counterplay on the kingside.

15. f3 g5! 16. ♘c5 a5 17. ♖f2 g4 18. ♖d6 ♖bc8 19. ♖e3 h3 20. ♖g1 hxg2 21. ♖xg2 ♖h3 22. ♖g3 ♖xh2 23. fxg4 ♖xa2 24. g5 ♘h5 25. ♖f3 ♖g2 26. ♖d7



26... ♔g6 27. ♖xf7 ♜xg5 28. ♘e4 ♜g4

Draw.

Positions for solving

E34 (solution on page 227)



Black to play

E35 (solution on page 228)



Black to play

E36 (solution on page 228)



Black to play

E37 (solution on page 228)



Black to play

E38 (solution on page 228)



Black to play

E39 (solution on page 229)



Black to play

Positions for playing out

P17 (solution on page 229)



Black to play (20-30 minutes)

P18 (solution on page 229)



White to play (20-30 minutes)

P19 (solution on page 230)



Black to play (30 minutes)

P20 (solution on page 230)



Black to play (30-40 minutes)

[P21 \(solution on page 230\)](#)



White to play (30 minutes)

[P22 \(solution on page 231\)](#)



Black to play (30-40 minutes)

[P23 \(solution on page 231\)](#)



Black to play (45 minutes)

[P24 \(solution on page 231\)](#)



Black to play (30 minutes)



Black to play (30 minutes)

Chapter 4

Prophylaxis

In order not to fall into difficult positions many players prepare in advance for a possible enemy attack, by strengthening the weakest points in their position, so as to be able to beat off the attack and go over to a counterattack.

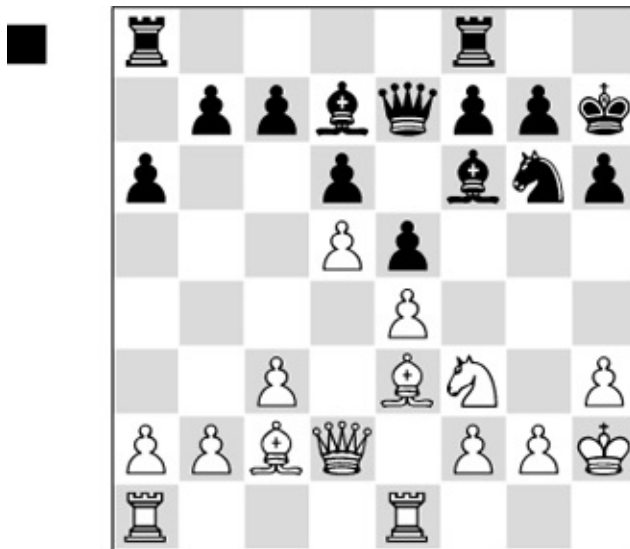
Prophylaxis can also be employed against specific manoeuvres or even moves!

The idea of prophylaxis in chess belongs to one of the greatest players of the early 20th century, Aaron Nimzowitsch. This is what he wrote about it in his book *My System*: ‘Prophylaxis is what we call measures which have the aim of preventing certain developments, which are undesirable from the positional viewpoint.’

Let us look at several examples from his play.

Carl Schlechter Aaron Nimzowitsch

Karlsbad 1907 (17)



1... ♖h8!

Black wants to prevent the possible white attack after f2-f4, and also to exploit the opponent's weakened kingside, if the chance arises.

2. ♖g1 g5 3.g3 ♗g6 4. ♔d1 ♘g7 5. ♔f3 a5

In any event, Black prevents White's possible play on the queenside (c3-c4 and then b2-b4).

6. ♗e2 ♙b5

Black waits, since he has no active play.

7.a4 ♘d7 8. ♖h1 ♔e8!

Preventing h3-h4.

9.h4

White plays it anyway, leading to his defeat. Better was 9. ♖g2!.

9... ♔c8 10. ♙d3 ♙g4 11. ♔g2 gxf4 12.f3 (12.gxf4 ♗g8) 12...h3 13. ♔f1



13...f5!

The long planned break, without which Black would stand badly.

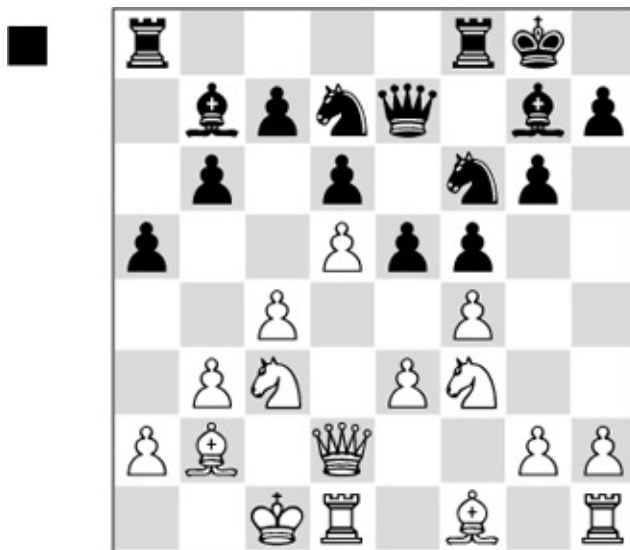
14.fxg4 fxe4 15. ♔xh3 exd3 16. ♙xh6 ♖h8!

The concluding trick. White resigned.

Carl Ahues

Aaron Nimzowitsch

Kecskemet 1927 (1)



Black's plan includes playing ...♠c5 followed by ...a5-a4 and ...a4-a3. This does not work at once because of 2.fxe5 dxe5 3.d6 cxd6 4.♖xd6 with counterplay for White.

1...♠h5!

Black tries to force g2-g3, so as to deprive the knight on f3 of defence!

2.g3

Better is 2.♗e2, since it is dangerous for Black to accept the pawn sacrifice after 2...exf4 3.exf4 ♠xf4 4.♖xf4 ♗xc3 5.♗xc3 ♖xe2 — the bishop on e3 is very strong, whilst if 2...♠c5, then 3.fxe5 dxe5 4.d6 cxd6 5.♖xd6 ♖xd6 6.♗xd6 ♗h6 7.♠d1 with an unclear position.

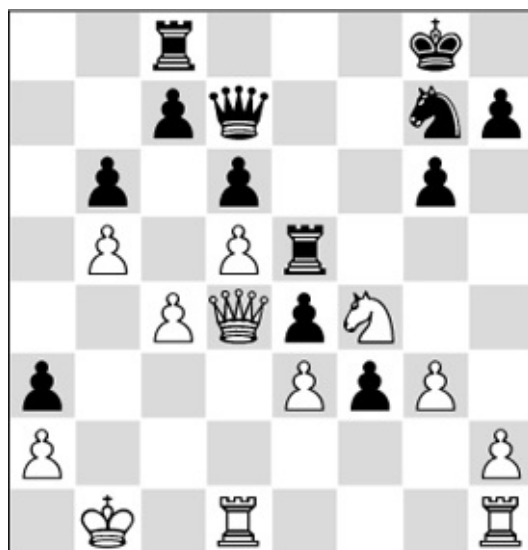
2...♠c5

Now this is possible!

3.♗e2 a4 4.b4 a3! 5.♗a1 ♠e4 6.♠xe4 fxe4 7.♠g5 exf4 8.♗xg7 ♖xg7 9.♖d4 f3 10.♗f1 ♗fe8 11.♗h3

11.♠xe4 ♗xe4.

11...♗c8 12.♗xc8 ♗axc8 13.b5 ♗e5 14.♠e6 ♖e7 15.♖b1 ♠g7 16.♠f4 ♖d7



17.h4

The threat was 17...g5, but now the pawn on g3 is weakened.

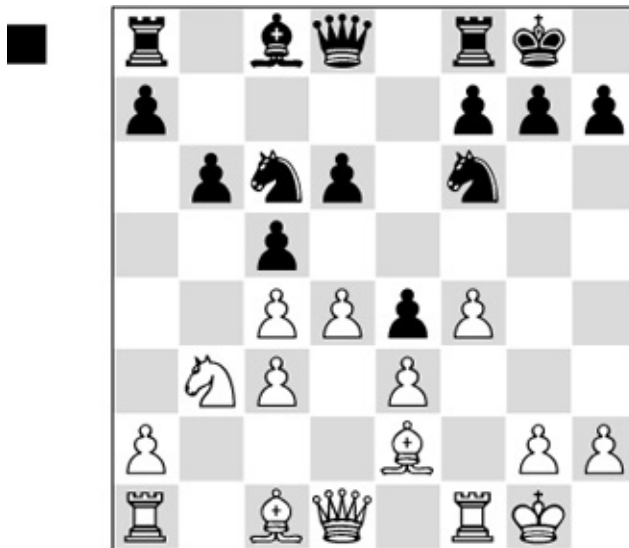
17...♖f5 18.♔c3 ♗xg3 19.♖hg1 ♗h5 20.♗e6 ♗g7 21.♗d4 ♖f8

White resigned in view of 22.♕xa3 ♖h5 23.♖h1 ♕g4 24.♖dg1 ♖xh4! 25.♖xg4 ♖xh1+ and 26...f2.

Paul Johner

Aaron Nimzowitsch

Dresden 1926 (2)



Black is threatened by a pawn attack on the kingside. Nimzowitsch starts to carry out a subtle plan to prevent this.

1...♔d7! 2.h3 ♗e7 3.♔e1

3.g4 is too early because of 3...h5 4.g5 (or 4.f5 hxg4 5.hxg4 g6!, and the white king is seriously weakened) 4...♗h7 (if he wishes, Black can force a draw with 4...♕xh3 5.gxf6 ♕g3+ and perpetual check, or he can play for the attack with 5...♗f5, although this is risky).

3...h5!

Now White cannot play g2-g4.

4.♗d2

4.♕h4 is bad because of 4...♗f5 5.♕g5 ♗h7 6.♕xh5 ♗g3, winning the exchange.

4...♔f5!

With the idea of ♕f5-h7 and then h4, blockading the white pawns.

5.♔h2 ♔h7 6.a4

Better is 6.g4.

6...♗f5

Intending 7...♗g4+ 8.hxg4 hxg4+ 9.♔g1 g3, but the move 6...h4 also deserved attention.

7.g3 a5!

Again prophylaxis.

8.♖g1 ♗h6 9.♗f1 ♗d7 10.♗c1 ♖ac8

Black forces the advance d4-d5, so as to free his hands in the centre.

11.d5

Otherwise 11...♗e6, which forces 12.d5 anyway.

11...♔h8 12.♗d2 ♖g8



By prophylactic means, Black has completely tied up the white pieces and now he proceeds with the attack.

13. ♖g2 g5 14. ♗f1 ♜g7 15. ♞a2 ♘f5 16. ♙h1 ♜cg8 17. ♚d1 gxf4 18. exf4 ♙c8 19. ♚b3 ♙a6 20. ♞e2

After 20. ♙d2 Nimzowitsch gives the following beautiful variation: 20... ♞g6! 21. ♙e1 ♘g4+ 22. hxg4 hxg4+ 23. ♙g2 ♙xc4 24. ♚xc4, and now the quiet move 24...e3!! wins.

20... ♗h4 21. ♞e3

If 21. ♘d2, then 21... ♙c8! 22. ♘xe4 ♚f5! 23. ♘f2 ♚xh3+ 24. ♘xh3 ♘g4 mate!

21... ♙c8 22. ♚c2 ♙xh3 23. ♙xe4

23. ♙xh3 ♚f5+ 24. ♙h2 ♘g4+, mating.

23... ♙f5

The rest is simple:

24. ♙xf5 ♗xf5 25. ♞e2 h4 26. ♞gg2 hxg3+ 27. ♚g1 ♚h3 28. ♗e3 ♗h4 29. ♚f1 ♞e8!

White resigned.

The authority of Nimzowitsch in the early 20th century was huge and so his contemporaries took his ideas of prophylaxis and used them in their own games. Whole opening schemes were constructed on these ideas. The following game can be considered as an example.

**George Thomas
Akiba Rubinstein**

Baden-Baden 1925 (2)

1.e4 e5 2. ♗f3 ♗c6 3. ♙b5 a6 4. ♙a4 ♗f6 5.0-0 ♙e7 6. ♞e1 b5 7. ♙b3 d6 8.c3 0-0 9.h3 ♗a5 10. ♙c2 c5 11.d4 ♚c7 12. ♗bd2 ♗c6 13.d5

White closes the centre and prepares to attack on the kingside.

13... ♗d8

Black intends prophylactic measures – ... ♘e8 with the idea of ...f7-f6, ...g7-g6 and ... ♘f7, ... ♘g7.



14. ♖f1 ♗e8 15. a4 ♜b8!

Bad is 15...b4 16.c4!, and Black has no counterplay on the queenside.

16. axb5 axb5 17. g4 g6 18. ♖g3 ♗g7 19. ♔h1 f6 20. ♜g1 ♗f7 21. ♚f1 ♘d7 22. ♙e3 ♜a8!

The prophylaxis is over and Black goes over to active play.

23. ♚g2 ♜xa1 24. ♜xa1 ♚b7 25. ♚h2 ♜a8

Beginning a battle for the a-file.

26. ♚f1 ♜a6!

A standard device.

27. ♗d2 ♚a8 28. ♜xa6 ♚xa6 29. ♗b3 ♗g5 30. ♚g2



30...h5!

Going over to counterattack.

31. h4 ♗f7 32. gxh5 gxh5 33. ♚h2 ♚c8 34. ♚g2 ♚f8 35. ♗d2 f5! 36. exf5 ♘xh4 37. f6 ♘xf6 38. ♚f3 ♘h4 39. ♘g6

39. ♗xh5 ♘g4.

39... ♘xg3+ 40. fxg3 ♘f5! 41. ♘xf7

41. ♘xh5 ♗xh5 42. ♚xh5 ♘g4 43. ♘h6+ ♚e8 44. ♚g6 ♚f5!.

41... ♚xf7 42. ♗e4 ♚d7 43. ♘h6 ♚g6! 44. ♘xg7 ♚xg7 45. b4 c4 46. ♗d2 ♚f7 47. ♚e3 ♚xd5 48. ♚g5+ ♘g6 49. ♚e7+ ♚g8

Simpler was 49... ♚f7.

50. ♖d8+ ♔f7 51. ♖d7+ ♔f6 52. ♖d8+ ♔f5 53. ♖d7+ ♔f6 54. ♖d8+ ♔g7 55. ♖e7+ ♔f7
 56. ♖xd6 ♔f2+ 57. ♔h3 ♔h6!



Zugzwang.

58. ♖b1 ♔f5+ 59. ♔g2 ♔xb1 60. ♔f8+ ♔g5 61. ♔d8+ ♔g4 62. ♔d7+ ♔f5 63. ♔d1+ ♔g5
 0-1

Nor was the idea of prophylaxis a stranger to one of the greatest masters of the combinational style – the fourth World Champion, Alexander Alekhine.

Friedrich Sämisch Alexander Alekhine

Dresden 1926 (1)



Black's position is superior, thanks to his compact pawn mass in the centre, but White threatens to exchange bishops by ♕e4, and so ease his situation. Black prevents this.

1... ♖e5!

With the idea not only of ...a5-a4, but also ...f7-f5.

2. ♖b2

The queen is very active on e5 and so White exchanges it off.

2... ♖xb2 3. ♜xb2 a5 4. ♜bd2 ♕f8!

Prophylaxis again! First the pawn on d6 must be defended, which is Black's only weakness, and then the b3-pawn can be attacked by means of ...a5-a4.

5. ♖c2 ♕e7 6.f3 a4 7. ♕f2

7.bxa4 ♜b4 is no better.

7...axb3 8. ♖xb3

After 8.axb3 ♜a8 Black seizes the only open file and retains the advantage.

8...f5!

Not allowing e3-e4.

9. ♕e2 ♜b4 10. ♕d3 ♖a4 11. ♖xa4?

Better is 11. ♖c3.

11... ♜xa4 12. ♜b1 ♜a3+ 13. ♕e2 ♜c3 14.a4



14... ♜a3!

A strong move. After 14... ♜xc4 15. ♜a2! White obtains saving chances!

15. ♜b7+ ♜d7 16. ♜db2 ♜xa4 17. ♜xd7+ ♕xd7 18. ♜b7+ ♕c6 19. ♜xg7 ♜xc4

The rook ending is easily winning.

20. ♜g6 ♕d5 21. ♜xh6

Better is 21. ♖d3.

21... ♜c2+ 22. ♕f1 c4 23. ♜h8 c3 24.h4

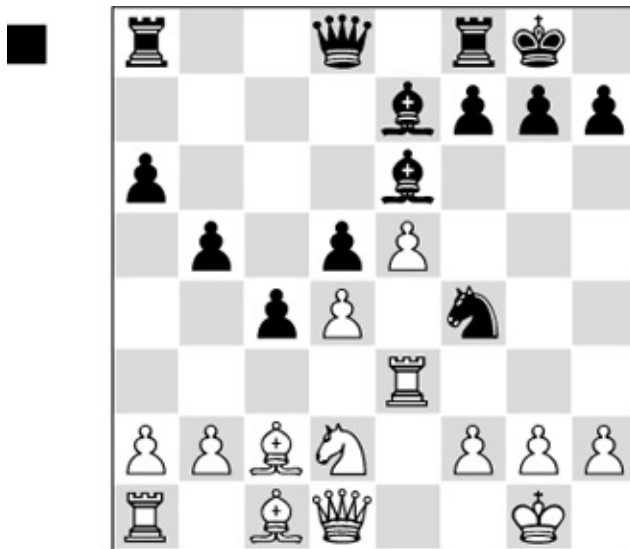
On 24. ♜c8 Black decides matters with 24...f4! 25.exf4 ♖d4 26.h4 ♖e3 27. ♖g1 ♖xf4 28.h5 ♖g5 29.g4 d5.

24... ♜d2 25. ♕e1 ♜xg2 26. ♜c8 c2 27.h5 ♜h2 28.h6 ♜xh6 29. ♜xc2 ♜h1+ 30. ♕d2 ♜h2+ 31. ♕d3 ♜xc2

White resigned.

Alexander Flamberg Alexander Alekhine

Mannheim 1914 (8)



Black has the advantage on the queenside, and should attack there. But first he takes prophylactic measures on the other wing.

1...f5!

'Killing' the bishop on c2, since it is unfavourable for White to play 2.exf6 because of 2...♙xf6.

2.♘f1 ♖f7 3.♖g3

White has no other plan.

3...♘g6 4.f4 a5 5.♙e3 b4 6.♘d2 ♚b6 7.♘f3 ♗d7

Preparing 8...a4.

8.♘g5 ♗xg5 9.♖xg5 a4 10.♚h1 ♘e7



11.♚h5

This attack is doomed to failure.

11...b3 12.axb3 cxb3 13.♙d3 a3! 14.♖xa3 ♖xa3 15.bxa3 b2 16.♚d1 ♖f8 17.♖g3

Complete failure.

17...♖a8 18.♙b1 ♖xa3 19.♙g1 ♖a1 20.♖c3 ♙a4 21.♚d3 ♙b5 22.♚d1 ♚a6!

White resigned.

In our day, the level of defence and prophylaxis amongst leading grandmasters has greatly improved and has been enriched with new ideas. Prophylaxis has begun to be used not only in defence, but also in the realisation of an advantage. It has become one of the main elements in contemporary chess.

Walter Browne
Paul Keres

Vancouver 1975 (10)



White is preparing an attack on the king. With a few prophylactic moves, Keres liquidates the danger and then seizes the initiative himself.

1... ♖h7! 2. ♖g3 ♘g8! 3. ♗f3 ♙xg4!

Now Black goes over to a counterattack, exploiting the fact that the knight is out of play.

4. ♖xg4 ♗f6 5. ♖h4 ♚g8! 6. ♖h3 d5! 7. ♚e2 ♚d7 8. ♗h4

Better was 8. ♘d2.

8... dxe4 9. dxe4 ♖ad8 10. ♗f5 ♚d2 11. ♚f3

11. ♖e3.

11... ♖e6!

Finally eliminating White's threats.

12. ♖g3 g6 13. ♖f1 ♚f4 14. ♖d1 ♖ee8 15. ♗e7+ ♚g7 16. ♗d5



16... ♖xf3 17. ♖xf3

Forced. If 17.gxf3, then 17... ♗h5 18. ♖g4 c6.

17... c6 18. ♗e3 ♖xd1+ 19. ♗xd1 ♖d8 20. ♗e3 ♗xe4 21.h3 ♗g5 22. ♖g3 f5 23. ♗xf5+ gxf5 24.h4 f4 25. ♖g4 ♗g6 26.hxg5 hxg5 27.g3 ♗f5 28.f3 ♖d1+ 29. ♗g2

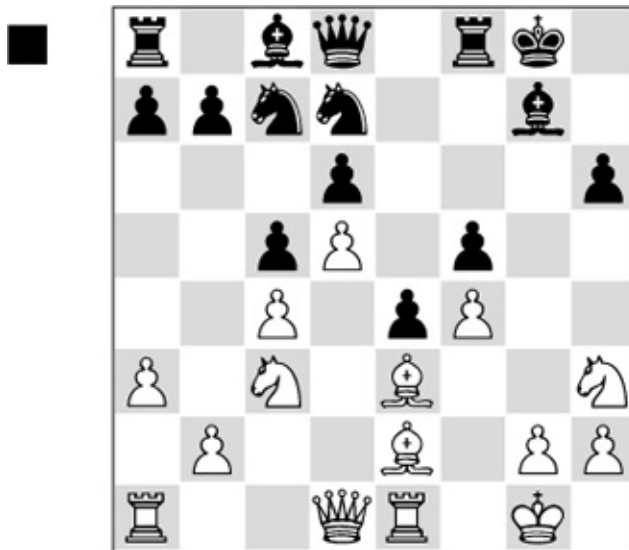
And White resigned.

This was Paul Keres' last tournament game.

Now let us look at several more examples of prophylaxis in its modern form.

David Bronstein Tigran Petrosian

Amsterdam 1956 (11)



White threatens two breaks: b2-b4 and g2-g4. Both are dangerous for Black, but he finds an interesting defensive idea – he creates an unbreachable fortress.

1... ♗xc3!

Petrosian gives up the pride of the King's Indian, his bishop on g7, and exposes his king, but in return, kills off the possibility of b2-b4.

2.bxc3 ♗f6 3.a4 ♗h8

Now Black's plan consists in stopping White from carrying out g2-g4. White has no other plan available to him.

4. ♗f2 ♖g8 5. ♗h1 ♗e8 6. ♖g1 ♗g6 7. ♗d2 ♗d7 8.g3 ♖ae8 9.a5 ♖e7 10. ♖ab1 ♗c8 11. ♖g2 ♖eg7 12. ♖bg1 ♗ce8 13.h3 h5

1/2-1/2

Garry Kasparov Tigran Petrosian

Banja Luka 1979 (1)



1... ♖xf1!

The move of a great master. By giving up the bishop, as in the previous example, Petrosian liquidates the opponent's main threat and strengthens his position. On 1...g6 there would follow 2.♘g3 followed by ♗f3 and ♔h1 with a strong attack.

2. ♗xf1 ♔d7!

The queen heads for h3, so as to prevent the white pieces achieving coordination. Without doubt, this move was prepared in advance.

3. ♗g3 ♔h3 4. ♖f3 g6 5. ♖d1

Already White needs to play accurately.

5... ♖fe8

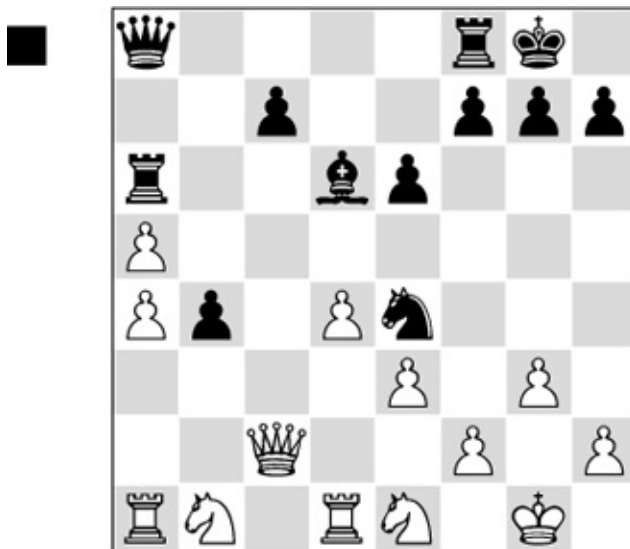
Not 5...♘xh5 because of 6.♘f5!.

6. ♖g2 ♔xg2+ 7. ♗xg2

White has only a symbolic advantage in the two bishops. Draw.

Rafael Vaganian Alexander Beliavsky

Moscow 1988 (6)



White would like to play f2-f3 and ♖b1-d2. Black prevents this.

1... ♗g5!

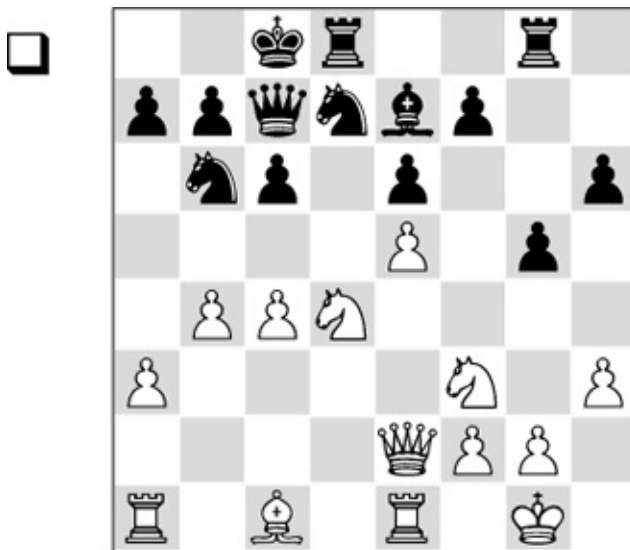
With the threat of 2... ♗h3+.

2.h4 ♗e4!

Now 3.f3 is not possible, and Black can calmly strengthen his position. White gave up the exchange with 3.♗d2 ♗c3, but lost.

Yury Balashov Artur Jussupow

Minsk (rapid) 1982



1.g4!

From the point of view of anyone who has studied Steinitz or Tarrasch, this move seems suicidal, but it is very clever – White deprives Black of counterplay and prepares an attack on the queenside.

1...h5 2.♖d2 hxg4 3.hxg4 ♗f8

It is hard for Black to create any counterplay, since White has such a large space advantage in the

centre.

4.a4 ♖g6 5.a5 ♗d7 6.a6! b6 7.♙c3 ♜h8

It is hard to know what to advise Black.

8.♚e4 ♜h3 9.♗xc6 ♜dh8 10.♙d2!



10... ♙c5!?

Exploiting his last chance.

11.bxc5 ♗xc5 12.♗xa7+ ♚xa7 13.♚c6+ ♚c7 14.♚xc7+ ♚xc7 15.♗xg5!? ♜3h4 16.f3 ♜h1+ 17.♚f2 ♗d3+ 18.♚e3 ♗xe1 19.♙xe1 ♗xe5

More tenacious is 19... ♜f8.

20.♙g3 ♜f6 21.♗xe6+ ♚d7 22.♗f8+ ♚e8

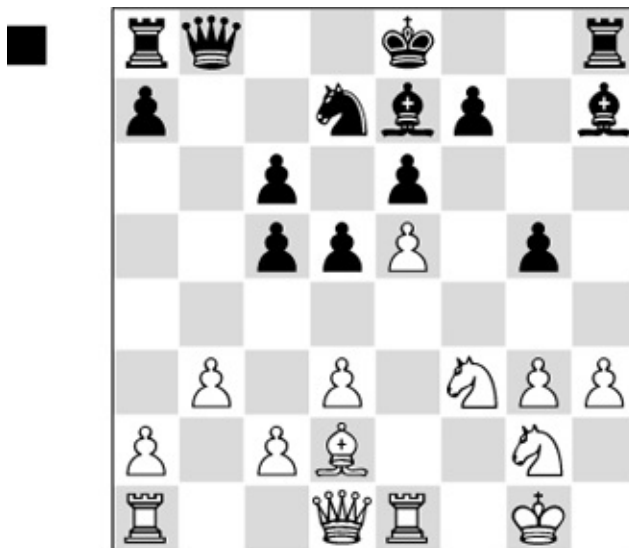
Or 22... ♚c8 23.♙xe5 ♜xe5 24.♜xh1 ♜xh1 25.♗g6, and White wins.

23.♙xe5 ♜xe5 24.♜a3!

1-0

German Titov
Leonid Yudasin

Kostroma 1985 (13)



It seems as though Black has a difficult position. On 1... ♙g6 there would follow 2.♗xg5 ♗xe5 (or

2... ♖xg5 3. ♖xg5 ♜xh3 4. ♖h4! ♜xe5 5. ♖e2! ♜d7 6. ♖g4) 3. ♖f4 ♖d6 4. ♖e2 ♜d7 5. ♜xe6!, and White wins. Yudasin produces a beautiful, very strong move, which is extremely hard to find.

1... ♖g8!

Black's main weakness is the pawn on e6, so he defends it in depth.

2. ♖xg5

Black also has a good position after 2. ♜xg5 ♜xe5 3. ♖f4 ♖d6 followed by ... ♜g6.

2... ♖xg5 3. ♖xg5 ♜xe5 4. ♖f4 ♜d6 5. c4

Better is 5. ♖g2.

5...f6 6. ♖f3 ♖g6!

Now the weakness of the g3-pawn tells.

**7. ♖d2 ♖xf4 8. ♖xf4 ♜xf4 9. gxf4 ♖xh3 10. ♖g2 ♖h5 11. ♖h1 ♖xh1 12. ♖xh1 ♖e7!
13. ♖f2 a5 14. ♖d2 ♖f7 15. ♖f1 a4 16. ♖d2 ♖g6 17. ♖e2 ♖f5 18. ♖g1 axb3 19. axb3
♖a2**

With the idea of 20... ♖c2 and ... ♖c3.

20. ♖c1 ♖d6 21. ♖e3



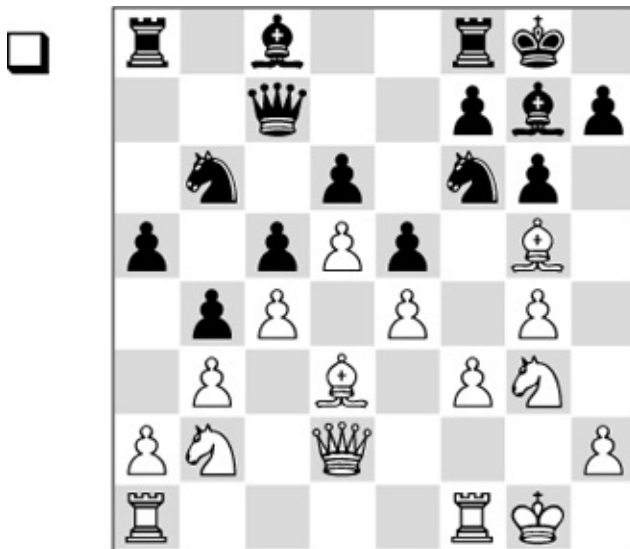
21... ♖g4

White resigned: the threat of 22...d4+ is extremely unpleasant.

Often, one only needs to find one or two prophylactic moves, in order to strengthen the position or obtain the advantage, and also to prevent the opponent carrying out his plans.

Bukhuti Gurgendidze Lev Polugaevsky

Tbilisi 1956 (18)

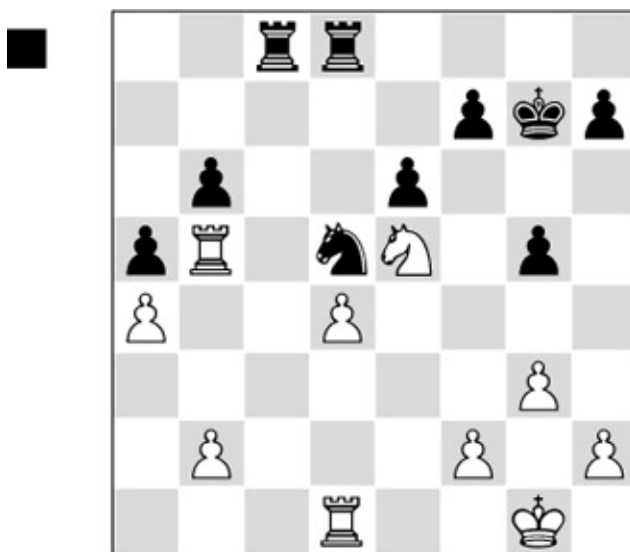


1.a4!

Depriving Black of counterplay on the queenside. 1...bxa3 is impossible because the a5-pawn will be lost, so the entire play will be in one direction.

Alexander Zakharov Mark Dvoretzky

Ordzhonikidze 1978



White threatens to obtain drawing chances with the manoeuvre ♖e5-g4-e3. This can easily be prevented:

1...h5! 2. ♖ d2 f6 3. ♗ f3

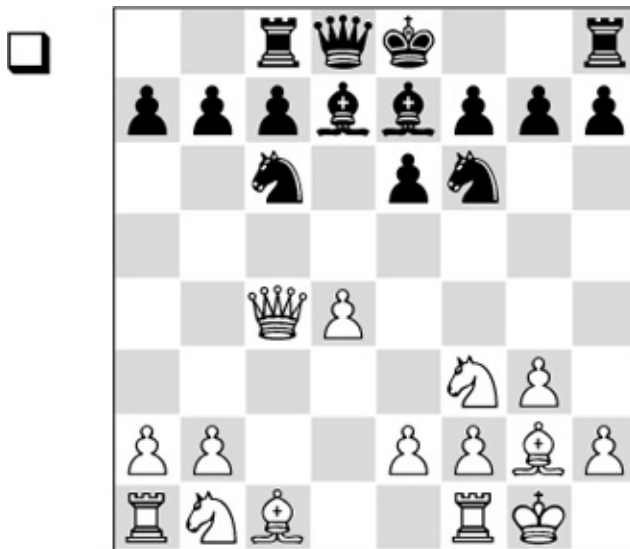
The knight no longer has the square g4.

3... ♖ c4 4.b3 ♖ c6 5.h4 g4 6. ♗ e1 ♗ c7 7. ♖ xh5 ♔ g6

White resigned.

Rafael Vaganian Mark Dvoretzky

Yerevan 1975 (4)



Black wants to free himself with 1... ♖a5 and 2... c5, which would follow after, for example, 1. ♗c3. Therefore:

1. ♖d2! 0-0 2. ♖d1 ♔e8

After two prophylactic moves from the opponent, Black has nothing to do.

3. ♗c3

Now ... ♗a5 can be permitted.

3... ♗a5 4. ♔d3 c5 5. dxc5 ♗xc5



6. b4! ♗xb4 7. ♗e4! ♗b5

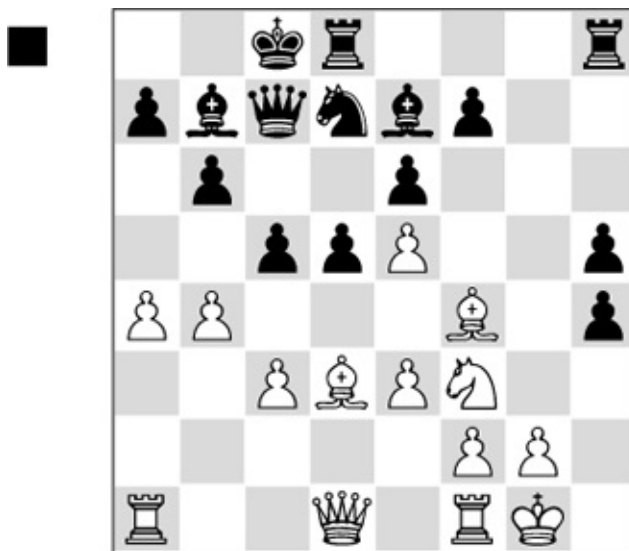
Black loses after 7... ♗xd2 8. ♗xf6+ gxf6 9. ♗xd2 or 7... ♗xe4 8. ♗xb4.

8. ♔b1! ♗xd2 9. ♗d6 ♔e7 10. ♗xc8 ♖xc8 11. ♔xb5!

And White won.

Boris Spassky Tigran Petrosian

Moscow 1966 (7)



1...c4!

First Black safeguards his own king, then he attacks on the g-file.

2. ♖e2 a6! 3. ♚h1 ♜dg8 4. ♜g1 ♜g4 5. ♚d2 ♜hg8 6. a5 b5!

White's attack has come to a dead end.

7. ♜ad1 ♜f8

With the idea of ...♔g7.

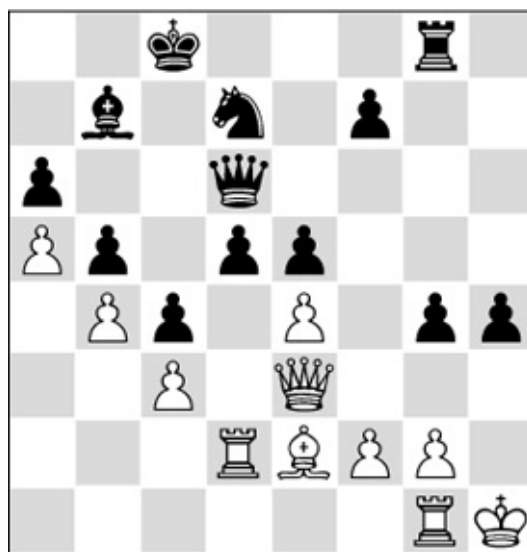
8. ♘h2 ♘xe5!

Black seizes the initiative by means of an exchange sacrifice.

9. ♘xg4 hxg4 10. e4 ♘d6 11. ♚e3 ♘d7

There is no need to fear exchanges.

12. ♜xd6 ♚xd6 13. ♜d4?! e5 14. ♜d2



14...f5!

White had evidently underestimated this move.

15. exd5 f4 16. ♚e4 ♘f6 17. ♚f5+ ♚b8 18. f3

He also loses after 18. ♚e6 ♚xe6 19. dxe6 ♘e4.

18... ♖c8 19. ♚b1 g3 20. ♜e1 h3 21. ♙f1 ♜h8 22.gxh3 ♞xh3 23. ♚g1 ♞xf1 24. ♚xf1



Trying to run with the king, but...

24...e4! 25. ♚d1 ♞g4!

The decisive blow.

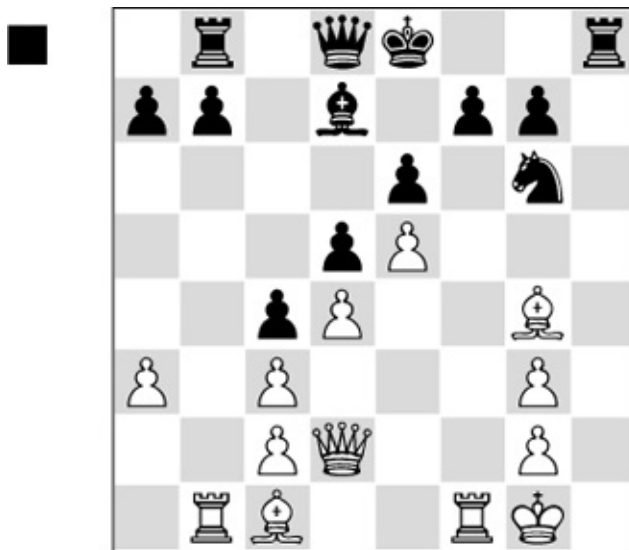
26.fxg4 f3 27. ♜g2 fxg2+

White resigned.

Sometimes it is only in analysis that one finds a missed chance to save a game or achieve success, with the help of prophylaxis.

Leonid Stein Tigran Petrosian

Moscow 1961 (6)



White's threat is to bring his bishop to the a3-f8 diagonal and attack on the dark squares. This should have been prevented with 1... ♙a4! with an unclear game.

But in the game there followed

1... ♚e7? 2.a4! ♞xa4 3. ♜a1! b5 4. ♞a3 ♚d7 5. ♜f2

Now White obtained a dangerous-looking attack:

5... ♖b7 6. ♖af1 ♔d8



7. ♔d1!

With the idea of 8. ♗h5 or 8. ♗xe6.

7... ♖h6?

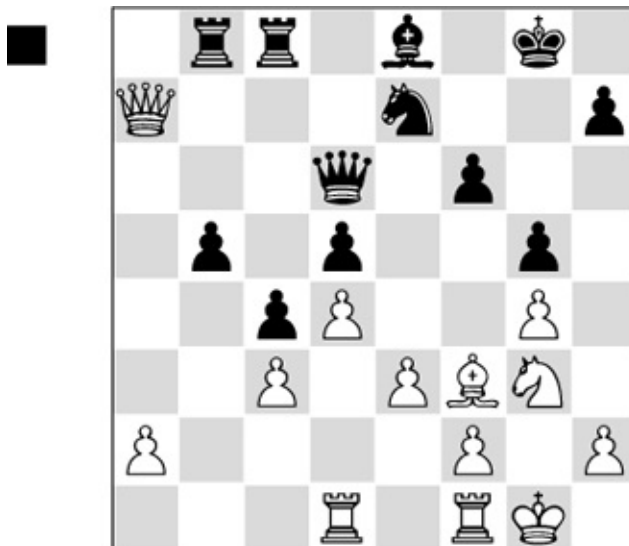
A mistake. Black is not dead yet after 7...b4! 8. ♗xb4 ♖g5.

8. ♗c1 ♖h7 9. ♗xe6!

Black resigned in view of 9...fxe6 10. ♖g4.

Evgeny Bareev Sergey Dolmatov

Kiev 1986 (10)



Black can win with the prophylactic move 1... ♗g6!, dominating the knight. The queen has no escape – after 2. ♖a5 there follows 2... ♘c6 3. ♖a6 ♗c7 with the unavoidable threat of 4... ♗a7. Nor does the desperate 2.e4 save White, in view of 2... ♗a8 3. ♖b7 ♗cb8 4.e5 ♖d8!. Black played:

1... ♖a8 2. ♗b7 ♗c6

Now not 2... ♗cb8 because of 3. ♘f5.

3. ♗b6 ♖xa2 4. ♖a1

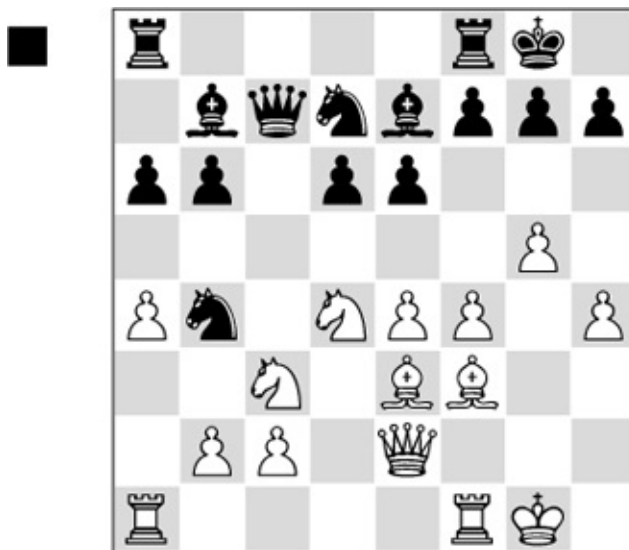
And the game ended in a draw.

Prophylaxis in opening set-ups

Prophylaxis is very often needed in the opening, because it is at this stage of the game that the plans of the sides and the contours of the future battle are laid down. In some positions, prophylactic measures have become typical (see Thomas-Rubinstein, for example). We will look now at a similar example from a Sicilian structure.

Igor Polovodin
Alexander Panchenko

Moscow 1981



It may appear that White stands better, thanks to his greater space. But with two prophylactic moves, typical for such structures, Black shows the opposite:

1... ♖fe8! 2. ♔g2

If 2.f5, then after 2... ♗f8 Black has the e5-square, and White has achieved nothing.

2... ♗f8!

Now 3...e5 is a threat.

3. ♘b3 ♗c5 4. ♘xc5 bxc5 5. ♗d1

Going over to defence.

5... ♖ab8 6. h5 d5 7. e5 d4 8. ♗c1 ♗xf3 9. ♖xf3 ♔b7 10. ♖f2



10...c4 11.♖xb7 ♜xb7 12.c3 ♞d3 13.♖c2 ♞xc1 14.♖axc1 d3

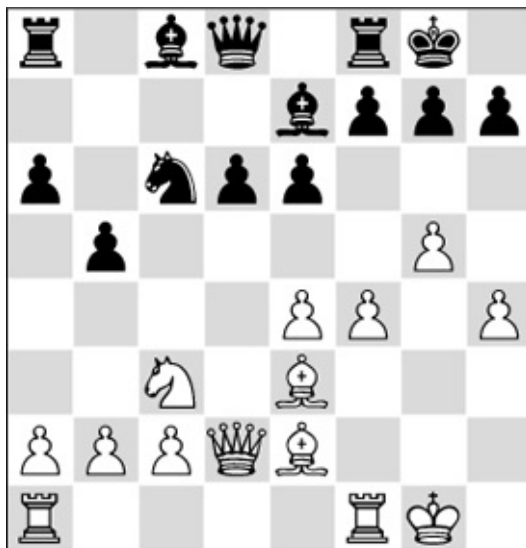
And Black had a winning position.

Carlos Cuartas

Alexander Panchenko

Prague 1982 (8)

1.e4 c5 2.♞f3 e6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♞xd4 ♞f6 5.♞c3 d6 6.g4 a6 7.g5 ♞fd7 8.♞e3 ♞c6
9.♖d2 ♞de5 10.♞e2 ♞xd4 11.♖xd4 b5 12.f4 ♞c6 13.♖d2 ♞e7 14.h4 0-0 15.0-0



15...♖e8! 16.♞f3 ♖c7 17.♖g2 ♞b7 18.h5 ♞a5

White tries to get at the enemy king, but this is difficult:

19.g6 fxg6 20.hxg6 h6

White's attack has come to nothing.

21.♖h3 ♞c4!

Going over to a counterattack against the weakened white king.

22.♞g4

Nor is 22.♖xe6+ any better.

22...♞xe3 23.♞xe6+ ♖h8 24.♖xe3 d5 25.♖h3 dxe4 26.♞f7 ♞c5+ 27.♖h2 ♖ed8



And Black won quickly:

28. ♖g3 ♗d4 29. ♖g4 e3 30. ♖ae1 ♗e7 31. ♖h5 ♗xc3 32. bxc3 ♖d2 33. ♖g1 ♗e4
 34. ♗c5 ♖g2+ 35. ♖xg2 ♗xg2+ 36. ♗f5 ♗e4+ 37. ♗g4 ♗f3+

0-1

Kasparov became World Champion by winning in an analogous structure in the final game of his 1985 match against Karpov.

Anatoly Karpov Garry Kasparov

Moscow 1985 (24)

1. e4 c5 2. ♘f3 d6 3. d4 cxd4 4. ♘xd4 ♘f6 5. ♘c3 a6 6. ♖e2 e6 7. 0-0 ♖e7 8. f4 0-0 9. ♗h1
 ♗c7 10. a4 ♘c6 11. ♖e3 ♖e8 12. ♖f3 ♖b8 13. ♗d2 ♖d7 14. ♘b3 b6 15. g4 ♖c8 16. g5
 ♘d7 17. ♗f2 ♖f8



For the moment, Black is defending.

18. ♖g2 ♖b7 19. ♖ad1 g6 20. ♖c1!

Preparing the rook transfer to h3.

20... ♖bc8

Better is 20... ♗c5 (see the game Polovodin-Panchenko): 21. ♗xc5 bxc5 22. ♖d3 ♗d4 23. ♖h3 ♗e7!.

21. ♖d3 ♘b4 22. ♖h3 ♖g7

It was worth considering 22... f5!? 23. gxf6 ♗xf6 24. f5 (24. ♗d4 e5 25. ♗xb4 d5 26. ♗xd5 ♗xd5 and 27... ♗xf4) 24... exf5 25. exf5 ♖g7 with complications.

23. ♖e3?

Stronger is 23. f5.



23... ♖ e7!

Such moves are always striking.

24. ♚ g1 ♖ ce8! 25. ♖ d1 f5!

Black goes for the counterattack.

26. gx6 ♗ xf6

Of course, not 26... ♗ xf6 27. ♚ d2.

27. ♖ g3 ♖ f7 28. ♗ xb6 ♚ b8 29. ♗ e3 ♗ h5 30. ♖ g4

If 30. ♖ f3, then 30... ♗ f6 with equality, but White had to win this game to save the world title.

30... ♗ f6 31. ♖ h4 g5! 32. fxg5 ♗ g4!? 33. ♚ d2 ♗ xe3 34. ♚ xe3 ♗ xc2 35. ♚ b6

Best, else 35... ♚ a7 and 36... ♗ e3.

35... ♗ a8



36. ♖ xd6?

After 36. ♚ xb8 ♖ xb8 37. ♗ h3 White can still fight on.

36... ♖ b7! 37. ♚ xa6 ♖ xb3

37... ♗ b4! wins at once.

38. ♖ xe6 ♖ xb2 39. ♚ c4 ♚ h8 40. e5

More tenacious was 40. ♖ xe8+ ♚ xe8 41. ♗ d1.

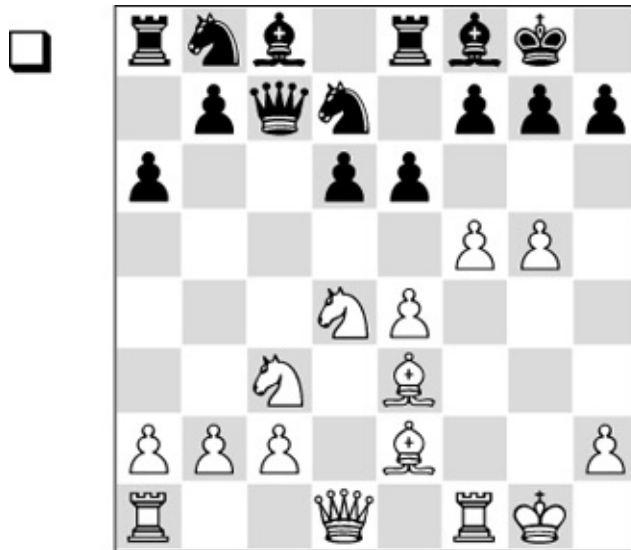
40... ♚ a7+ 41. ♚ h1 ♗ xg2+ 42. ♚ xg2 ♗ d4+

White resigned.

Of course, one should not jump to the conclusion that such a set-up with ... ♖e8, ... ♜f8, ... ♞d7 is always harmless for Black. White has a good deal more space and has every right to expect to develop the initiative and create an attack. But he needs to show inventiveness. Here is a characteristic example.

Alexey Shirov Judit Polgar

Tilburg 1996 (9)



If it were Black to play, then after 1... ♞e5 everything would be in order for him. But...

1. ♞xe6! fxe6 2. ♜h5 g6

If 2... ♖d8, then 3.fxe6 ♞e5 (or 3... ♞c5 4.♜xc5 dxc5 5.♖xf8+ ♖xf8 6.♗xd8 ♖xd8 7.e7) 4.♜f7+ ♜h8 5.♜xe8 ♗xe8 6.♞d5.

3.fxg6 ♜e7

3...hxg6 4.♜xg6 ♖e7 5.♗h5 ♞e5 6.♖xf8+! ♜xf8 7.♗h8#.

4. ♞d5!

Shirov conducts the attack very energetically!

4...exd5 5. ♖xd5+ ♜h8

5...♜g7 6.♖f7+.

6.gxh7

With the idea of 7.♗g8#.

6... ♜xh7 7. ♜g6 ♜g7

7... ♖g7 8.♜d4.

8. ♜xh7



8... ♖d8

Mate results from 8... ♖xh7 9.g6+!

9. ♖f5 ♗e5 10. ♖d1! ♖xf5 11.exf5 ♖e8 12.g6 ♗g4 13. ♖d4 ♖e4 14.f6 ♗c6 15.fxg7+ ♖g8 16. ♖f8+ ♖xf8 17.gxf8 ♖+ ♖xf8 18. ♖f1+

Black resigned.

Vassily Ivanchuk

Veselin Topalov

Novgorod 1996 (8)



1.g6!

The only move which permits White to fight for the initiative. Nothing comes from 1. ♖c7 ♖c8 2. ♖b7 ♖b8.

1... ♗xa7

Bad is 1... f6 2. ♖g5 ♖e7 (2... ♖c8 3. ♖c7 ♖a6 4. ♖c3) 3. ♗xe7+ ♗xe7 4. ♖f4 ♖e6 5. ♖h4 or 1... h6 2. ♖xf7! ♖e6 3. ♖g5 ♖e7 4. ♗xe7+ ♗xe7 5. ♖f4 ♖d7 6. ♖xg7+! ♖xg7 7. ♖f6+. A stronger idea is 1... f6 2. ♖c7 and now 2... ♖c8 3. ♖xc6 ♖xc6 4. ♗xf6+ ♖xf6 5. ♖d5+ ♖h8 6. ♖xc6 with a big advantage; 2... ♖d7 3. ♗xf6+ (3.g6 h7+ ♖h8 4. ♖c3 ♗e5 5. ♖a1) 3... g6 4. ♖d5+ ♖h8 5.g6 h7 ♖e7 6. ♖xc6 ♖xc6 7. ♖xc6 is also bad for Black, but a possibility is 2... ♗e7 3.g6 h7+ ♖h8 4. ♖a1 ♗xd5 5. ♖xd5. However, the most solid is 2... ♗e5 3.g6 h7+ ♖h8 4. ♖f2 ♖e6 5. ♖c3.

2.gxf7+ ♔h8 3.♖g5! ♕d7

3... ♜e7 4.♘xe7 ♙xe7 5.♞f4.

4.fxe8 ♘!?! ♜xe8

4... ♞xe8 5.♗f6! gxf6 6.♙xf6+ ♖g8 7.e5! ♙e6 8.♙d5.

5.♕f2 ♗g8 6.e5! h6

Or 6... ♙e6 7.♗f4 ♙c4 8.e6; 6... ♘c8 7.♗c7 ♞xc7 8.♙d5+; 6... dxe5 7.♗b6 ♞c7 8.♙d5+.

7.♘b6 ♕c7 8.♖d5+ ♔h7

8... ♖h8 9.♞xf8+.

9.♖e4+ ♗g8 10.♘d5 ♕d7



11.♘e7+!

1-0

Positions for solving

E40 (solution on page 232)



Black to play (5-7 minutes)

E41 (solution on page 232)



Black to play (10-12 minutes)

[E42 \(solution on page 233\)](#)



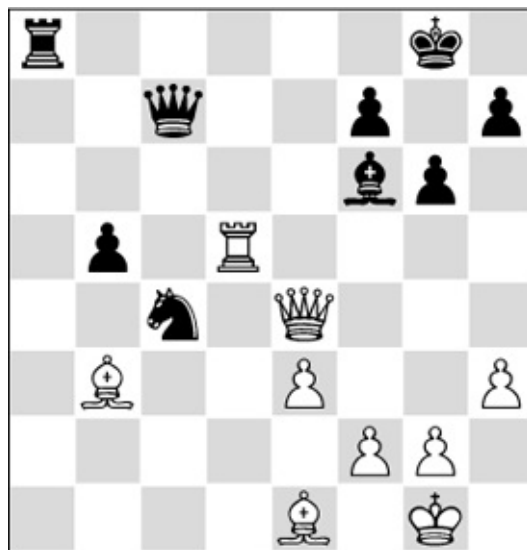
White to play (12-15 minutes)

[E43 \(solution on page 233\)](#)



White to play (8-10 minutes)

[E44 \(solution on page 233\)](#)



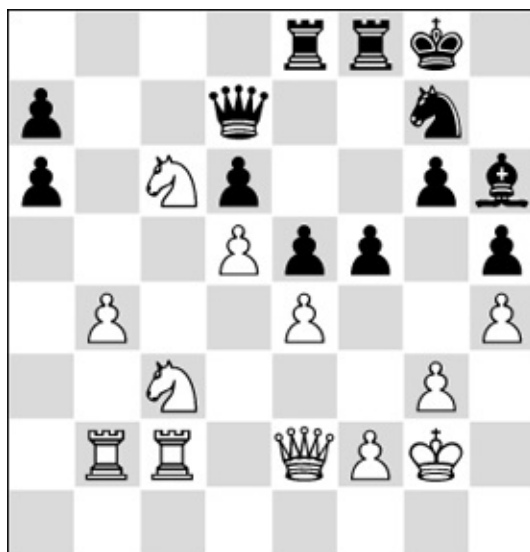
White to play (15 minutes)

[E45 \(solution on page 234\)](#)



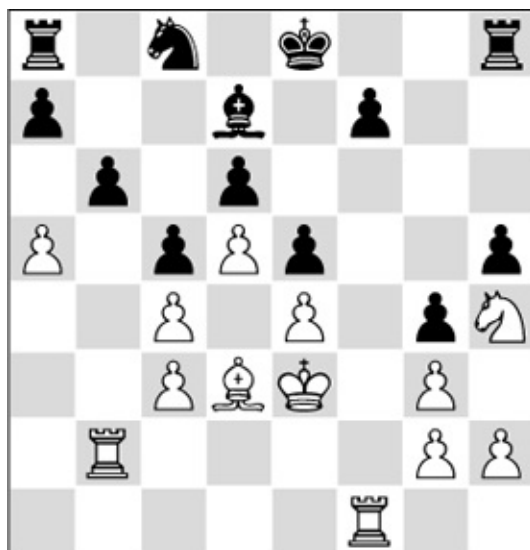
White to play (5-7 minutes)

E46 (solution on page 234)



White to play (12-15 minutes)

E47 (solution on page 234)



White to play: what plan? (10-12 minutes)

[E48 \(solution on page 234\)](#)



White to play (12-15 minutes)

[E49 \(solution on page 235\)](#)



Black to play (5-7 minutes)

[E50 \(solution on page 235\)](#)



Black to play (10-12 minutes)

[E51 \(solution on page 235\)](#)



Black to play (10-12 minutes)



Black to play (White's last move was ♖c2-c1)

Chapter 5

Realising an advantage

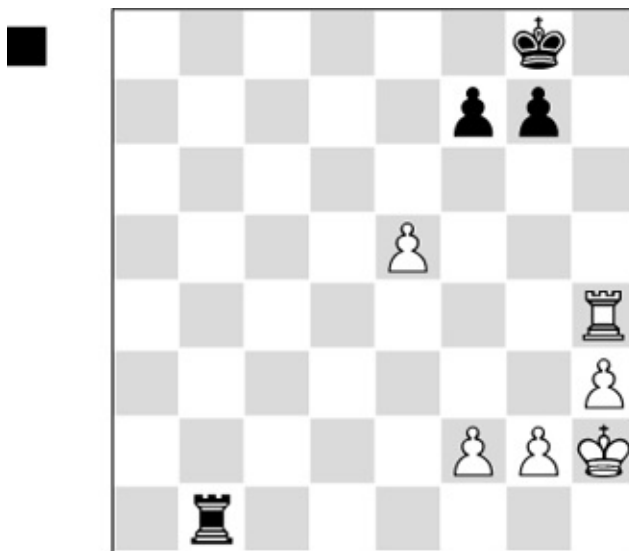
Why do many players prove unable to realise a material or positional advantage, sometimes even a very large one? This is a question which has interested many people. Lasker considered that winning a won game was the hardest thing in chess, and less experienced players find realising an advantage especially difficult. We will examine the main factors which influence the player who has the advantage, and try to understand why winning positions are often not won.

Having obtained an advantage, often a decisive one, players tend to relax in anticipation of the victory which is on hand. After every move, he expects his opponent to resign, and finds it hard to force himself to think hard. In such circumstances, it is easy to overlook something. The opponent, on the other hand, having a worse position and nothing much to lose, begins to play very inventively. Thus, we get a situation where the player with the advantage is marking time, whilst the defender is giving it 100%. The chances gradually equalise out.

Samuel Reshevsky

Efim Geller

Zurich 1953 (24)



White's position is completely winning. Reshevsky, convinced that his opponent would soon resign, starts to relax. And watch what this leads to.

1... ♖e1

Trying to bother White.

2.f4 ♜e3 3. ♜g4 ♔h7 4. ♜g3 ♜e2 5.h4?

This move does not throw away the win, but it complicates White's task. He could win easily with 5. ♖a3 followed by 6. ♔g3.

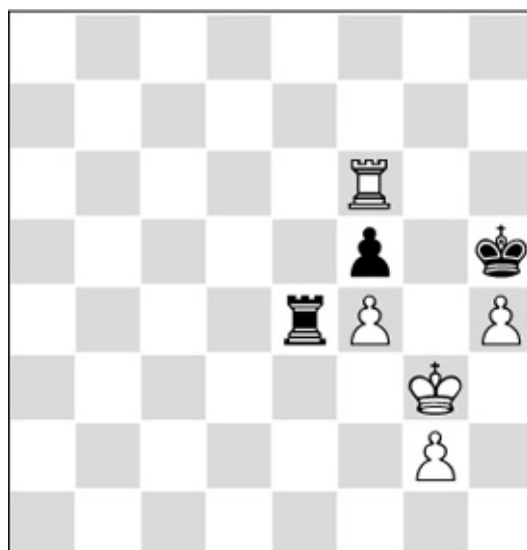
5... ♜e4 6. ♜f3 f6 7.exf6 gxf6 8. ♔g3?

«Considering that he can win however he wants, Reshevsky plays carelessly in time-trouble. He should prefer 8.g4» (Bronstein).

8... ♔g6 9. ♜a3 f5 10. ♜a6+?

10. ♖a8! still wins.

10... ♔h5 11. ♜f6?



Finally throwing away the win. Again, 11. ♖a8! still wins.

11... ♜e3+ 12. ♔f2 ♜a3 13.g3

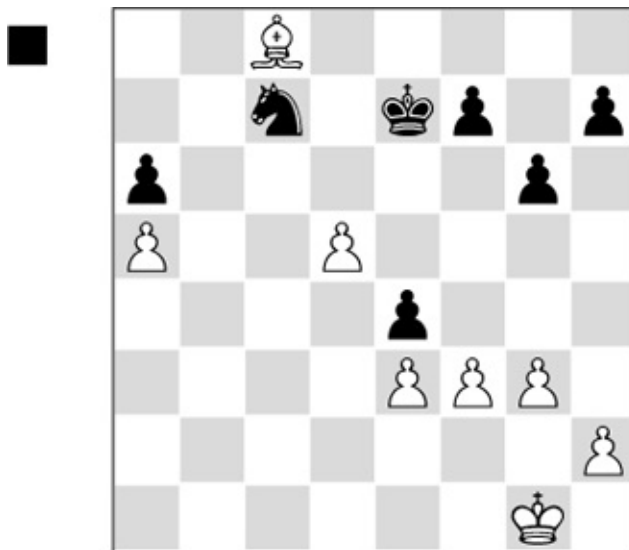
13. ♖xf5+ ♜xh4 14. ♖g5 ♜a2+ 15. ♜e3 ♜e2+ is also insufficient.

13... ♜f3+! 14. ♜e2 ♜xg3 15. ♖xf5+ ♜xh4 16. ♜f2 ♜a3 17. ♖g5 ♜b3 18. ♖g1 ♜h5
19. ♜e2 ♜a3 20. f5 ♜a5

Draw.

Artur Jussupow
Alexander Panchenko

Kiev 1984



Black could resign, which he wanted to do without resumption, but the game continued. Jussupow thought he could win however he wished, and he fell into the only trap, after which the game turns out to be drawn.

1...f5

The sealed move.

2. ♜f2

Simpler is 2.g4.

2... ♜d6 3. ♞b7 ♜c5

Black's only chance.

4.g4 exf3 5.gxf5 gxf5 6. ♜xf3 ♜b5 7.d6 ♞e6 8. ♞c8 ♞d8 9. ♜f4 ♜xa5 10. ♜xf5 ♜b6

11.e4 a5 12.e5 ♜c5 13. ♞d7

13. ♜f6! ends the game at once.

13... ♞b7 14. ♜e6 ♜d4 15. ♞c6

15. ♞a4! wins.

15... ♞d8+ 16. ♜d7??



16... ♔xe5!

Believing in a quick win, White had missed this move. 16. ♖f6 or 16. ♖f5 ♜xc6 17.e6 was still sufficient.

17. ♖xd8 ♖xd6

1/2-1/2

Alexander Panchenko Elizbar Ubilava

Beltsi 1979



1.f5 ♘g5

1... ♜f8 or 1... ♜d8 both fail to save him because of 2.f6 or 2. ♖h4.

2. ♖xc5 ♜xc5 3.h4 ♘xe4 4. ♖xe4 ♖d8 5.fxg6 hxg6

White has an extra piece, and simply could not decide what Black was hoping for. Expecting immediate resignation, he just plays 'his own moves'. In the end, this led to an oversight.

6. ♘dc3 ♜h5 7.g3 ♖e5 8. ♖g2 e6 9. ♖f3 ♖e7 10. ♘e4 ♜d8!

Remaining cold-blooded.

11. ♜c2 ♜f5 12. ♖g4 d5 13.cxd5 exd5 14. ♘ec3

Winning is 14. ♜g5! ♖d7 15. ♖e2.

14... ♖e6 15. ♖h3

Better is 15. ♖cd2 or 15. ♖e2, and White should win.

15...d4 16. ♗e4??

Here too, good is 16. ♖cd2; one should point out that White was not in time-trouble.

16... ♙b3! 17. ♖c5 ♗f4



18. ♗f6+!

The only way to hold the position.

18... ♖xf6 19. ♙xf4 ♙xd1 20. ♙xf6 ♗h1+ 21. ♙g4 ♗e4+ 22. ♙h3

22. ♗f4? f5+ 23. ♙g5 ♗e7+.

22... ♙h1+

1/2-1/2

Even great players sometimes relax in winning positions. Two examples from World Championship matches.

Anatoly Karpov Viktor Kortchnoi

Baguio 1978 (22)



White considered that he could win any old how and was careless:

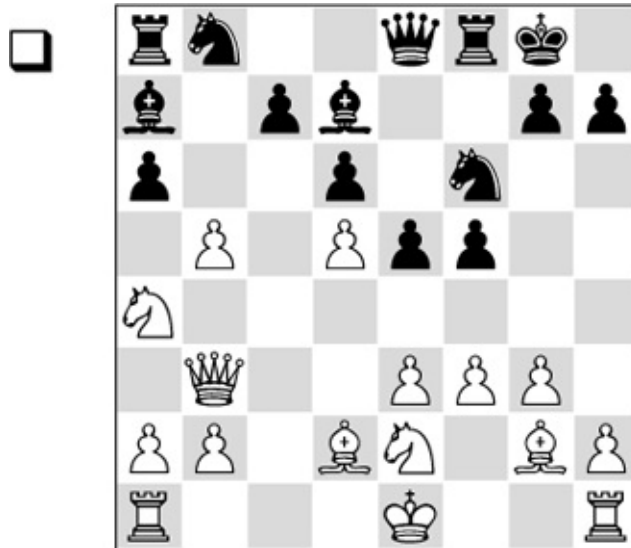
1. ♖e3?

After this, the game ended in a draw, although White missed several more chances to convert a decisive advantage. He could have won immediately with 1. ♖d3 ♜g5 2. ♙xg5 hxg5 3. ♖c1 ♜a6 4. ♖c8+ ♜h7 5. ♖h3#. On 3... ♖ad8 there is 4. ♖c6 with the idea of ♜b1-c2-b3.

Mikhail Botvinnik

David Bronstein

Moscow 1951 (9)



1.b6! ♖xa4

Or 1...cxb6 2. ♜xb6 ♙xb6 3. ♖xb6 ♜xd5 4. ♖xd6 with a winning position.

2.b7 ♖xb3 3.bxa8 ♜ ♖b6 4.axb3

With an extra rook, it is easy to presume that Botvinnik expected his opponent to resign, but the latter played on...

4... ♜b5 5. ♙c3 ♜xb3 6. ♖xa6

There is an easy win with 6.0-0 f4 7. ♜h1 fxe3 8. ♙c1 or 6... ♖xb2 7. ♖a2 ♖b3 8. ♖b1 ♖c4 9. ♙f1. Of course, there were other ways too.

6... ♙xa6 7. ♜xa6 ♙xd5 8. ♜a4

«Both 8. ♖e2 and 8. ♜xd5 ♖xd5 9. ♜e2 f4 10. ♖d3 win without any special difficulty. Striving to exchange queens immediately gives the opponent chances to save the position» (Botvinnik).

8... ♜xa4 9. ♙xa4 ♖xe3 10. ♖f1

Better is 10. ♜c3.

10... ♖a8

And the game ended in a draw.

When playing a game, one must not relax in any position. That way, one's tournament results will be significantly better.

Marking time

Very often, after obtaining an advantage or a winning position, the player switches off. He starts marking time, avoiding undertaking anything committal or decisive, thinking the win is just a matter of time. But games never win themselves – they have to be won. «The player with an advantage is obliged to attack (play decisively), on pain of losing his advantage» (Steinitz).

Mikhail Botvinnik Machgielis Euwe

Leningrad 1934 (5)



White's position is better, but he needs to act resolutely. Instead, he dallies and loses his advantage.

1.h3 ♖a8 2.♔h2 ♚e8

Black waits.

3.♖f3?

Better was 3.e6! f6 (3...fxe6 4.f6!) 4.♗f4, increasing his advantage.

3...♗a5!

Earlier this was impossible due to ♖f1-a1.

4.♗f4 ♗c7 5.♖f1 ♖a8 6.♖e1 ♚c6

Black has regrouped and the worst is already behind him.

7.e6

7.f6 gxf6 8.exf6 ♖g8.

7...♗xf4 8.♚xf4 fxe6 9.fxe6

9.f6 ♗d7.

9...♖e8 10.e7 h6 11.♚f5 ♚d6+ 12.♚h1 ♗g8 13.♖e6 ♚d7 14.♚e5

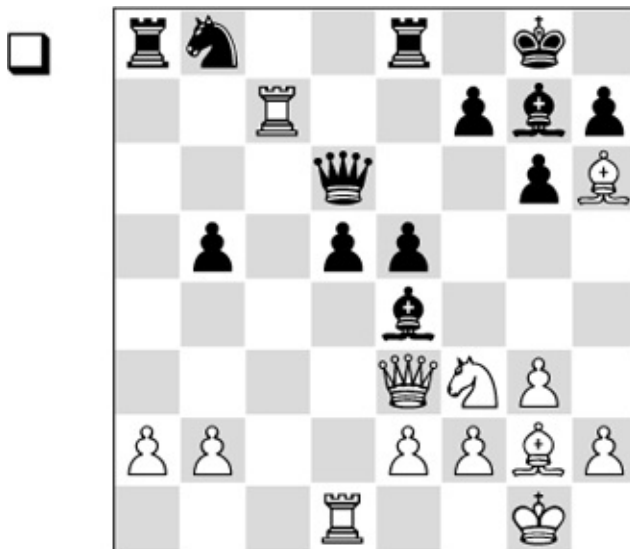
Draw.

Steinitz considered that many players mark time in this way through a lack of combinative ability. The next example underlines this.

Alexander Panchenko

Heikki Westerinen

Las Palmas 1978 (10)

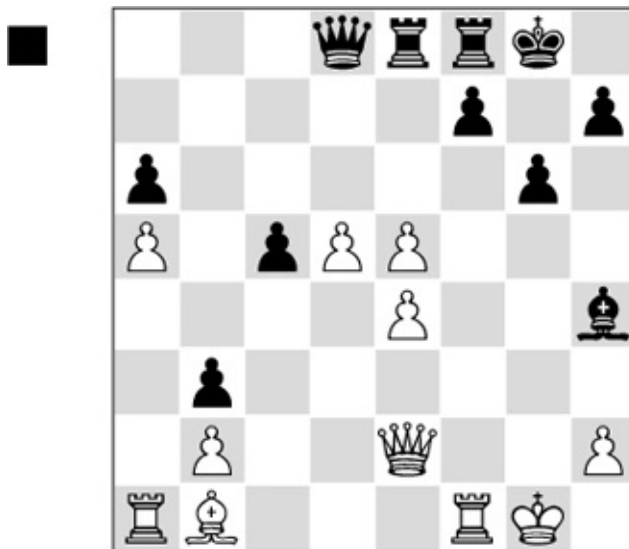


White has an advantage in development and his pieces are ideally placed. In this situation, he should look for a decisive continuation, otherwise Black will equalise. For example, he can win with the simple 1. ♖xf7! ♜xf7 (1... ♙xh6 2. ♖xh6 ♜xf7 3. ♘g5+) 2. ♘g5+ ♜f8 (2... ♜g8 3. ♘xe4 ♖e7 4. ♘f6+ ♖xf6 5. ♙xd5+) 3. ♘xe4 ♖e7 4. ♖f3+ ♜g8 5. ♘f6+ ♖xf6 6. ♖xf6 ♙xf6 7. ♙xd5+ and 8. ♙xa8. However, White played ‘solidly’:

1. ♖dc1? ♘a6 2. ♖7c6 ♜e7 3. ♙xg7 ♜xg7 4. a3 b4 5. axb4 ♜xb4



after which he was already somewhat worse. Even so, he continued to play for a win, which, in the end, led him to defeat in a long endgame.



Black's position is clearly better – White has a weak king and his pieces are poorly placed. Black could achieve success by energetic action: 1... ♖xe5! 2. ♗xa6 f5! (also good is 2... ♗g5+ 3. ♔h1 ♗d2) 3. exf5 (3. ♗e2? fxg4 4. ♖xf8+ ♗xf8 5. a6 ♗f3 6. ♗xf3 exf3 7. ♔d3 ♖e1+ 8. ♖xe1 f2+) 3... ♗g5+ 4. ♔h1 ♔g3 5. hxg3 (5. ♗d3 ♖e3 6. ♗d2 ♗h5 or 5. ♖g1 ♗d2! 6. ♖xg3 ♖e1+ 7. ♖g1 ♗xd5+ 8. ♔e4 ♗xe4#) 5... ♗xg3, and White is defenceless. For example, 6. ♖a4 ♖e3! 7. ♔e4 ♗h3+ 8. ♔g1 ♖g3+ 9. ♔f2 ♖xf5+! 10. ♔xf5 ♖g2+ 11. ♔e1 ♗e3+ 12. ♔d1 ♗d2#, or 6. ♗d3 ♖e3 7. ♗d2 ♗h4+ 8. ♔g1 ♖g3+ 9. ♔f2 ♖d3+, or 6. ♗c4 ♖e3 7. d6+ ♔h8 8. ♗f4 ♗h3+ 9. ♔g1 ♖g3+ 10. ♔f2 ♗g2+ 11. ♔e1 ♖e8+ 12. ♔d1 ♗e2+ 13. ♔c1 ♖c3+ 14. bxc3 b2#.

Instead of this, Black goes in for an unsuccessful queen manoeuvre, losing time and reaching an inferior position:

1... ♗g5+?! 2. ♗h1 ♗xe5 3. ♔d3 ♗d4?!

3... f5 was significantly stronger.

4. ♖fd1 ♗b4? 5. d6 ♖e5 6. d7 ♗g7 7. ♔xa6 ♖xe4 8. ♗b5! ♖a8?

Whilst Black has been running on the spot, White has activated his forces. After the text move, Black's position becomes difficult. Equality came from 8... ♔f6 9. ♗xb4 ♖xb4 10. ♖d2 followed by 11. ♖c1.

9. ♗xb4 ♖xb4 10. ♔c8 ♖bb8 11. a6 ♖xc8 12. dxc8 ♗ ♖xc8 13. ♖d7 ♖a8 14. a7



14... ♖f2

He could prolong resistance only by 14...c4! 15. ♖c1 ♘f2 16. ♖xc4 ♗xa7 17. ♖xa7 ♘xa7 18. ♖b4.

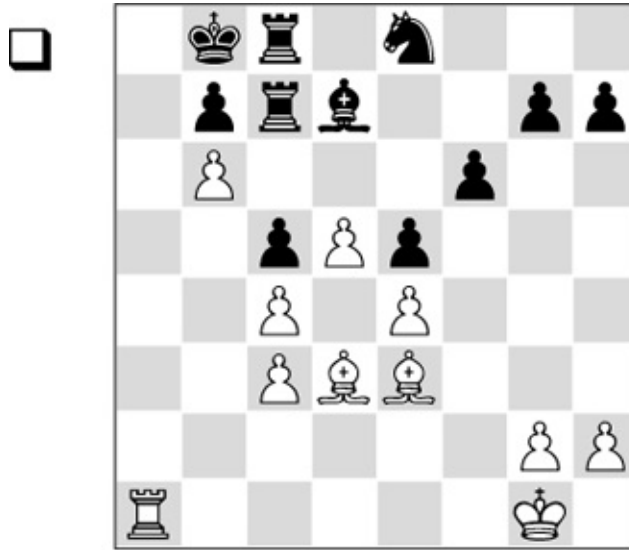
15. ♖f1 ♘d4 16. ♖fxf7+ ♔h6 17. ♖xh7+ ♔g5 18. ♖h3

And Black resigned.

As we have seen, sometimes one only needs to dither for one or two moves to lose the advantage. It is very important not to miss the moment to go over to active operations. This ability usually comes with experience.

Yakov Meister Rumiantsev

Rostov-on-Don 1981

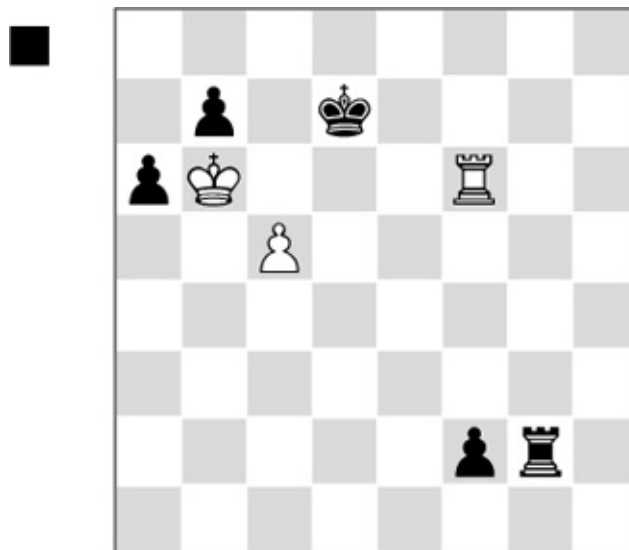


Yakov Meister, having played the first part of the game well and obtained an advantage, now played

1.bxc7+?

without thinking, which led to a draw. After the preliminary 1. ♖a5!?, attacking the c5-pawn, Black would have had a difficult game.

TEXTBOOK POSITION



Black's position is winning. However, trying for a beautiful finish with

1... ♖g6?

leads to a draw after

2.c6+! bxc6 3. ♖xf2

There is a simple win with 1... ♕e7 2. ♖f3 ♖g6+ 3. ♕xb7 ♖f6.

Moves which seem obvious and strike one in the eye always need to be thought about. Often, having obtained the advantage, a player will not only try to win quickly, for which purpose he just plays the obvious moves without thinking, but also wants to win beautifully. This frequently leads to disaster. Here are several examples.

Ratmir Kholmov

Ole Jakobsen

Kislovodsk 1972 (4)



White played

1. ♕f3! ♖d3 2. ♕f6 ♕b7 3.h5

and Black resigned after

3...gxf5 4. ♕xe5

1-0

But the attempt to win brilliantly after 1. ♕xg6+ fxf6 2. ♖e7+ ♕h6 3. ♖c7 only leads to a draw by perpetual check after 3... ♖d1+! 4. ♕g2 ♕f1+ 5. ♕f3 ♖d3+ 6. ♕g4 ♕e2+ 7.f3 ♕xf3+ 8. ♕h3 ♕g4+ 9. ♕xg4 ♖xg3+! 10. ♕xg3 ♖e3+.

Sometimes players resign in drawn or even winning positions. Here are two examples.

Igor Polovodin Zigurds Lanka

Riga 1980



In this position, White resigned because he cannot avoid a pawn ending: 1. ♖xb2 ♜xb2+ 2. ♔e3 ♜xf2 3. ♔xf2? ♔b6. However, with the move 3.d7!, White wins. So Black has to play 2... ♜b7, but after 3. ♔e4 the passed pawn in combination with the activity of the white king and rook are more than enough to secure a win!

Igor Glek Vladimir Lazarev

Porto San Gorgio 1997 (6)



After

1. ♜xf8+

Black resigned, not seeing in the variation 1... ♔xf8 2. ♔c5+ the move 2... ♜e7!! 3. ♔xe7+ ♔e8, and it is Black who wins.

Time trouble

It is obvious that in conditions of time shortage, it is possible not only to squander an advantage, but

even to lose the most overwhelming positions.

The main reasons why players fall into time-trouble are as follows:

1. Uncertainty in oneself and one's strengths, excessive sensibility.
2. The desire to find the absolutely best move in every position.
3. Poor knowledge of openings, typical middlegame positions and endgames.
4. The importance of the game or event.
5. Insufficient tournament practice, long intervals between playing.

How to get rid of time-trouble?

This is not easy, but it can be done. The following steps are essential:

- Believe in yourself and do not fear any opponent.
- Try to play every game at the same strength.
- Try in any position to play 'solid, strengthening' moves, even if they are not the very strongest. Finding the very best move is hard, especially in time-trouble.
- Before the tournament, especially after a long break from playing, it is essential to play a few training games with the usual time limit or a rapid one (15-30 minutes). Blitz is also helpful.

If you still fall into time-trouble, try to play solidly. Before reaching serious time-trouble, try to play your moves a bit more quickly. If your opponent is in time-trouble, never try to match his speed of play. He is internally prepared and focussed on playing quickly, whereas you are not. The chances of making a mistake in such situations is much greater. In the opponent's time-trouble, try to make moves in series (3-4 moves at a time). In any event, you need strong nerves.

Effective realisation of an advantage

In order to realise effectively an advantage obtained in previous play, you need good combinational vision (so as to be able to find knockout blows), and, of course, good technique, with a knowledge of typical positions and plans. It is very important not to forget that you must never relax and start waiting for the game to win itself. We will look at typical ways of realising an advantage.

Decisiveness

Quite often in a game, one player will obtain an advantage in strength in one area of the board. This is possible in the following circumstances: superiority in development, the enemy king left to its fate, badly placed pieces, etc. All of these factors are temporary.

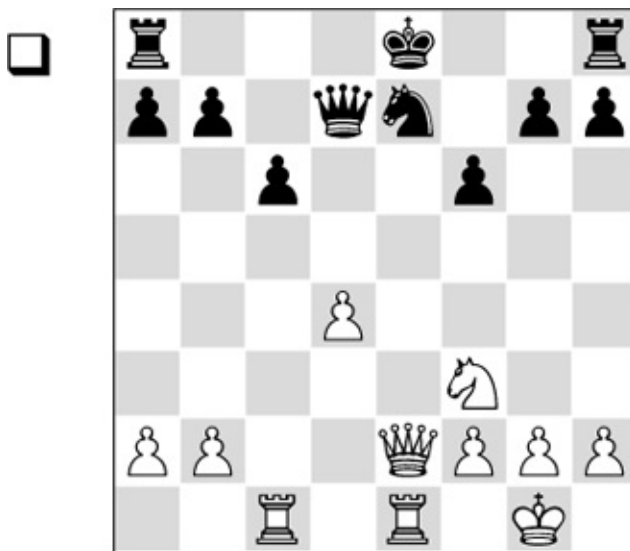
Dithering squanders the advantage.

«If you have a strength, you must attack, else the strength will assume a hidden character and will cease to matter» (Em. Lasker).

It is essential to identify the moment to go over to decisive action, so as not to be too late. This often involves material sacrifices. In the following classical game, one of the most beautiful combinations in the history of chess was played.

William Steinitz Curt von Bardeleben

Hastings 1895 (10)



1.d5! cxd5

After 1...♔f7 2.dxc6 ♘xc6 3.♖cd1 White has a clear advantage.

2.♗d4 ♕f7 3.♗e6 ♖hc8

He is not saved by 3...♘c6 4.♘c5 ♕c8 5.♗h5+ g6 6.♗xd5+ ♔g7 7.♘e6+, and White has a winning attack.

4.♕g4! g6 5.♗g5+! ♕e8



6.♖xe7+!! ♕f8!

Or 6...♔xe7 7.♖e1+ ♔d8 (7...♔d6 8.♗b4+ ♔c7 9.♘e6+ ♔b8 10.♗f4+) 8.♘e6+ ♔e7 9.♘c5+, winning.

7.♖f7+! ♕g8 8.♖g7+! ♕h8

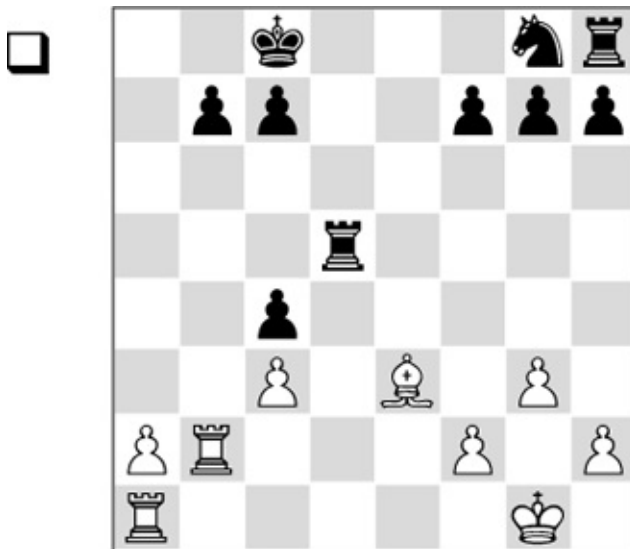
8...♔f8 9.♘xh7+.

9.♖xh7+ ♕g8 10.♖g7+ ♕h8 11.♕h4+! ♕xg7 12.♕h7+ ♕f8 13.♕h8+ ♕e7 14.♕g7+ ♕e8 15.♕g8+ ♕e7 16.♕f7+ ♕d8 17.♕f8+ ♕e8 18.♗f7+ ♕d7 19.♕d6#

However, not all of these moves were actually played – after 7.♖f7+ the shattered Curt von Bardeleben just quit the tournament hall and let his time run out.

Dusan Rajkovic Mladen Muse

Athens 1985



Black just needs to play the single move ...♘g8-e7, and his position will be normal. White prevents this by sacrificing a piece.

1. ♖ab1 b6 2. ♗xb6! cxb6 3. ♖xb6 ♖d8

3...h5 was worth considering.

4. ♖b8+ ♔c7 5. ♖1b7+ ♔c6 6. ♖xd8 ♗xb7 7. ♗g2

Preferable is 7.h4!, fixing the black pawns.

7...♔c7 8. ♖f8 ♔d7 9.a4! ♔e7 10. ♖b8 h5 11.h4



11... ♖h6

The only move. He loses immediately after 11...f6 12.a5 ♗f7 13.a6.

12. ♖xg8 ♖a6 13. ♖xg7 ♖xa4 14. ♖g5 ♖a3 15. ♖xh5 ♖xc3 16. ♖c5 ♗d6 17. ♖c8 ♗d7 18. ♖a8 ♖d3 19. ♖a7+?!

Better is the immediate 19.♗f1!.

19... ♔c6 20. ♗f1!

After 20.♖xf7? c3 21.♖f8 ♔c7 22.♖f4 ♖d6! the black pawn costs White a rook.

20...c3 21. ♗e2 ♖d2+ 22. ♗e3 ♖d5

After 22...f5 23.♖a3 ♜c2 (23...f4+!? 24.♔xf4 ♜xf2+ 25.♔e3!) 24.h5 ♔d5 25.h6 ♜c1 26.h7 ♜h1 27.♜xc3 ♜xh7 28.♔f4 White wins.

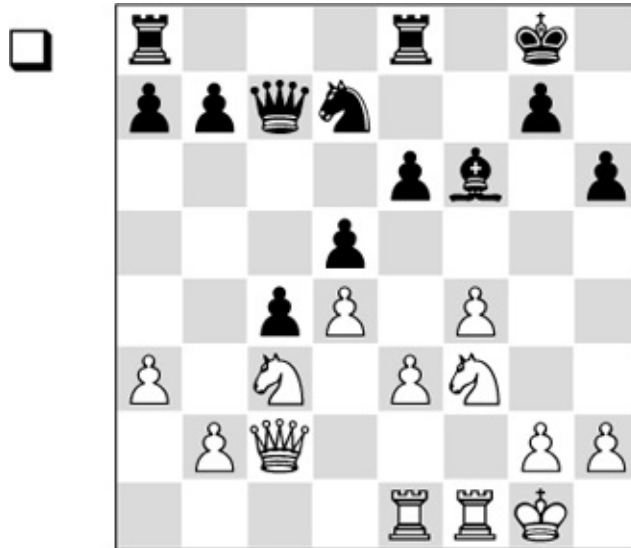
23. ♖ a3! ♜ c5 24. ♖ a1 ♜ b5 25. ♔ d3 ♜ f5 26.f4

1-0

Vladimir Kramnik

Gregory Serper

Dortmund 1993 (3)



Without waiting for his opponent's counterplay on the other wing, White begins to storm the weakened enemy kingside.

1.g4! ♗ f8 2.g5 hxg5 3.fxg5 ♖ e7 4.e4 dxe4

Or 4... ♜ad8 5.exd5 exd5 6.♔g2!.

5. ♔ xe4 ♜ ad8 6. ♜ e2 a6 7. ♔ g4 ♔ a5 8. ♗ e5

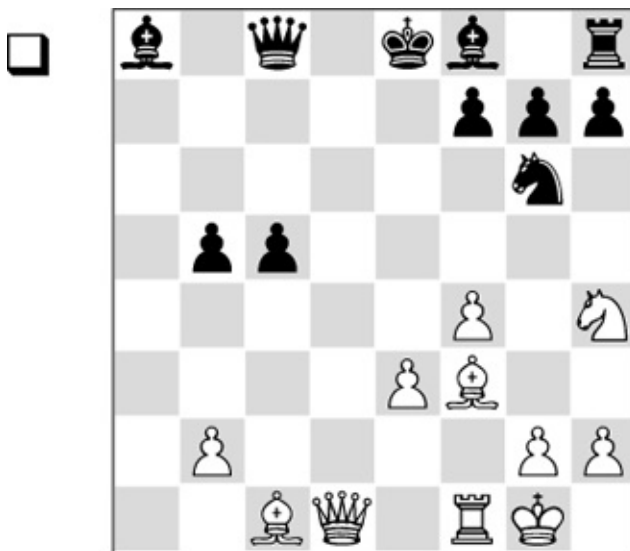
And the white attack is decisive. Black resigned.

In the next three examples, decisive play by White prevented his opponent from evacuating his king from the danger zone.

Alexey Alexandrov

Valery Popov

St Petersburg 1996 (9)



1. ♘f5!

By sacrificing a piece, White obtains an irresistible attack.

1... ♙xf3 2. ♖xf3 ♘xf5 3. ♖a8+ ♚e7 4. ♖d1 ♖f6

The king is forced to embark on a dangerous journey.

5.e4 ♘g4 6. ♖d5! ♘xf4

6... ♙e7 7. ♖c6+ ♚e6 8. ♖f5#.

7. ♙xf4 h6 8.h3



8... ♘xf4!?

Hoping to build a fortress after 9. ♖f5+ ♚xf5 10.exf5 g6. He also loses after 8... ♖e6 9. ♖d8 ♘g6 10. ♙g3! ♙d6 11. ♙xd6.

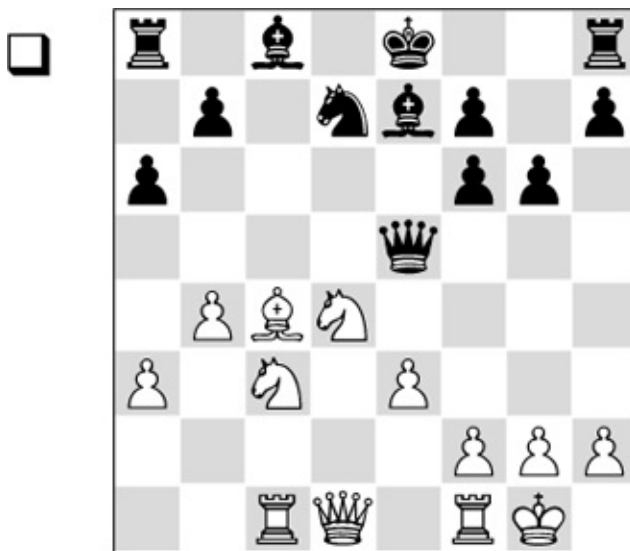
9. ♖c6+! ♙d6 10. ♖xd6+ ♖g5 11. ♖xc5+ f5

11... ♘h4 12. ♖d3.

12.exf5 ♖c8 13. ♖g6+

Tigran Petrosian Viktor Kortchnoi

Curacao 1962 (23)



If Black gets to play 1...0-0, then the worst will be behind him.

Therefore:

1.f4! ♖b8

1...♙xe3+ 2.♔h1 with the threats of 3.♘d5 or 3.♚e1.

2.♙xf7+! ♚xf7 3.♙b3+ ♚e8 4.♙d5 ♙d6 5.♙e6 b5 6.♙dc7+ ♚e7



7.♙d4! ♚f8

After 7...♙xc7 8.♘c6+ ♔f8 9.♘xb8 or 7...♙xc7 8.♚xc7 ♙xc7 9.♙e6+ ♔f8 10.♙c6 ♚a7 11.♘e6+ White wins.

8.♙xa8 ♚xa8 9.♙e6

Black resigned.

Artur Jussupow

Robert Hübner

Tilburg 1987 (4)



If Black castles (which he should have done on the previous move), his position will be fine. We must prevent this.

1. ♖xg6! ♔e7

1...fxg6 2. ♕xe6+ ♘f8 3.f5 loses, but a better try is 1...0-0 2. ♗d3 ♘d5, and the knight comes to the king's defence.

2. ♖xf7! ♕xf7

Bad is 2...♕xb5 3. ♗xe6 ♘f8 4. ♖c2 with an attack for White.

3.f5 e5!?

Preventing the opening of all lines. After 3... ♖he8 4.fxe6+ ♘g8 5.e7 or 3...♕xb5 4. ♕xe6+ ♘f8 5.f6 ♕d7 6.fxg7+ ♘g7 7. ♕f6+ ♘g8 8. ♕g6+! White wins.

4.f6 g6 5. ♕xe5 ♗d5 6. ♖e2



6... ♕b6?

6...♕xb5! 7. ♕e6+ ♘f8 8.f7 ♕xe2 9. ♕xe2 leaves White only slightly better.

7. ♕g5 ♖d7 8. ♖e7+ ♗xe7 9.fxe7+ ♕e8 10. ♕e5! ♖xe7 11. ♕xh8+

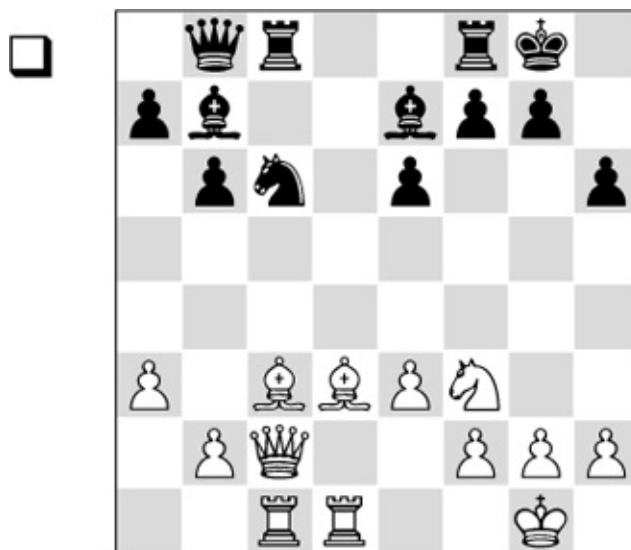
In this position, Jussupow agreed a draw in time-trouble, although after 11...♘d7 12. ♕h3+ ♕e6

13. ♖xe6+ ♜xe6 14. b3! White should win.

If the opponent has a piece badly placed, far from the scene of the action, then there is no time to lose, we must attack.

Tigran Petrosian Vassily Smyslov

Moscow 1961 (7)



The poorly-defended black king and his offside queen allow White to launch a strong attack.

1. ♖a4! ♜fd8 2. ♖e4 g6 3. ♖g4 h5

If 3... ♗h7, then 4. ♘xg6+ fxg6 5. ♖xe6 ♜f8 6. ♜d7, winning.

4. ♖h3

Threatening 5.g4. Black stops this, but fatally weakens the position of his king.

4... f5 5. ♘c4 ♜xd1+ 6. ♜xd1 ♖f7 7. e4 ♖f4



8. ♜e1! ♖g4 9. exf5 ♖xc4 10. fxf6+ ♖e8

10... ♗xg6 11. ♜xe6+ ♗f7 12. ♜xc6.

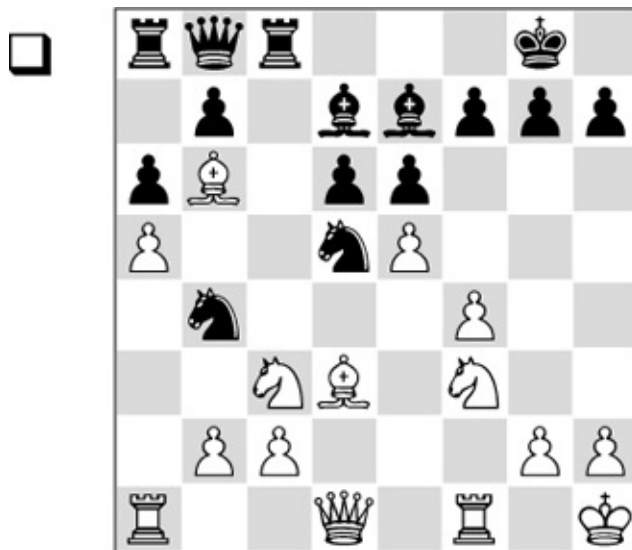
11. g7 e5 12. ♖xh5+ ♖d7 13. ♜d1+ ♘d6 14. ♘xe5 ♗d4 15. ♗xd4

In the game below, White punished his opponent for a badly-played opening.

Alexander Panchenko

Igor Novikov

Pavlodar 1987



1. ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 2. ♗g5+ ♔g8 3. ♕h5 ♖xg5 4. fxg5 ♖e8

White also has a winning attack after 4...g6 5.♖h6 ♗c4 (5...dxe5 6.♗f3 ♘f4 7.♘e4 ♘bd5 8.♗h3 ♘xh3 9.♘f6+ ♘xf6 10.gxf6) 6.♗xf7! ♘xf7 7.♖h7+ ♘f8 (7...♘e8 8.♖g8+ ♘e7 9.♖g7+ ♘e8 10.♗f1+ ♘f4 9.b3! ♖e8 (9...♖c8 10.bxc4 ♖xc4 11.♖h8+ ♘f7 12.♖f6+ ♘g8 13.♗xf4) 10.bxc4 ♖f7 11.♖h8+! or after 4...♗f8 5.♗f3.

5. ♗e4 dxe5

5...f5 6.g6 ♘e7 7.♘f6+!) 6.♘f6+! ♘xf6 6...♘f8 7.♘d7+!; 6...gxf6 7.gxf6 ♘xf6 8.♖g5+! ♘f8 9.♗xf6 and there is no defence against ♗f6-h6.

7.gxf6 ♗d5

The group of black pieces on the queenside are held down by one white bishop and are unable to come to the aid of their king.

8.fxg7 ♔xg7 9. ♕g4+! ♔f8

Mate follows after 9...♘h8 10.♗a3 ♘f4 11.♗xf4.

10. ♕xe6! ♗xb6

He is also not saved by 10...♘f4 11.♗xf4 ♘f4 12.♖h6+ ♘e7 (12...♘g8 13.♗d4 ♘f6 14.♖xf6 ♖c7 15.♖h8+ ♘f7 16.♗e1!) 13.♗e1+ ♘d7 14.♖h3+ with a quick mate.

11. ♕h6+! ♔e7 12. ♕h4+ ♔f8

Or 12...♘d7 13.♗ad1+ ♘c7 14.♖e7+ ♘d7 15.♗xf7 ♗d8 16.♖c5#.

13. ♕b4+! ♔g8 14. ♗a3 e4

14...♗c6 15.♗g3+ ♘h7 16.♖f8.

15.axb6



15... ♖b5

It was essential to play 15... ♖c6! 16. ♖g3+ ♜xg3 17. hxg3 ♜e6 18. ♖f4 ♜c6 19. ♖g4+ ♜g6 20. ♖xg6+ fxg6 21. ♜d6 ♜f7 22. ♜f4+ ♜g7 23. g4, and White still has some work to do to realise his advantage.

16. ♖f5! ♜c6 17. ♖g3+ ♜g6?

Here too, he had to part with the queen: 17... ♜xg3 18. hxg3 ♜e8 19. ♖g5+ ♜g6 20. ♖xg6+ fxg6.

18. ♖xg6+ fxg6 19. ♜b3+! ♜h8 20. ♜f7 ♜c8 21. ♜g3 ♜f5 22. ♜c3+

Black resigned.

In a winning position, decisiveness can even be required when the queens are off the board.

Vladimir Kramnik

Mikhail Ulibin

Chalkidiki 1992 (9)



1.g5! hxg5 2.hxg5 ♜xg5 3. ♖c6 ♜c8 4. ♜h1 ♜g8 5. ♜aa1!

White obtains excellent attacking prospects for the pawn.

5... ♜ce6

On 5...f6 there follows 6. ♖d5+ ♜f7 7. ♖ag1 ♜f8 8. ♖h7 with the threat of 9. ♖xf6.

6. ♜h4 f6 7. ♜g1 ♜f7

Or 7... ♜h7 8. ♖gh1 ♜ef8 9. ♖e4 g6 10. ♖d5+, and there is no defence against the advance f2-f4-f5.

8. ♖d5 ♙e8 9. ♖h8+ ♘f8 10.f4 ♗e6 11. ♙f3

It was also possible to win with 11. ♙xe6 ♜xe6 12. ♜xg7.

11...f5 12. ♜g6



12... ♗c5

12... ♗d7 13. ♙c6+.

13. ♙xg7 ♜f7 14. ♙xf8

Black resigned, as he loses a rook.

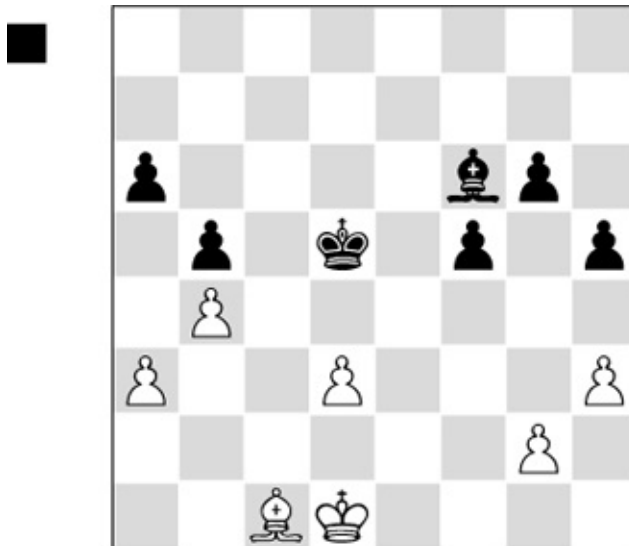
Playing for a squeeze

If an immediate attack is not possible, then one must play to gradually strengthen the position, seize space, create weaknesses in the enemy position and only then go over to decisive action. In a superior position, there is almost always a way to strengthen the position further. This usually involves advancing pawns. One also needs in such cases to prevent the opponent's counterplay.

Tatiana Zatulovskaya

Maya Chiburdanidze

Lvov 1977



Black's position is superior, on account of her active king and the weak pawns on a3 and b4. She

increases her advantage by means of an advance of the kingside pawns.

1...g5! 2. ♖e2 g4 3. ♗f2 ♕e5 4. ♖e2 f4 5. hxg4 hxg4 6. ♗f1 ♖e6 7. ♖e2 ♗f5 8. ♗f1 ♖d4
9. ♖e2 ♗e5! 10. ♗f1 f3! 11. gxf3 gxf3 12. ♖h6 ♗d5 13. ♖f8 ♗e6 14. ♖e1 ♗f5 15. ♗f1
♗f4 16. ♖h6+ ♗g4 17. ♖f8 ♖b2

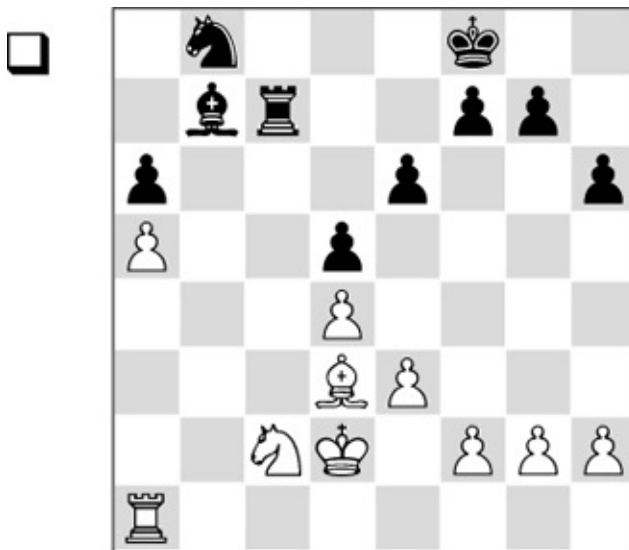
0-1

In the following endgame, White increases his advantage in an analogous fashion.

Alexander Kotov

Herman Pilnik

Stockholm 1952 (9)



White's position is better (because of the a6-pawn), but one weakness is not a lot – he needs to create another on the kingside.

1. ♖b4 ♗e7 2. ♖e2 ♗d8 3. ♖d3 ♖d7 4. f4

«... White, by advancing his kingside pawns, strengthens his position on that side of the board as well» (Kotov).

4... ♖c8 5. g4 ♖f6 6. ♖f3 ♖b7 7. ♗c3 ♖c7+ 8. ♗b3 ♖b7+ 9. ♖b4 ♖c7 10. g5! hxg5
11. fxg5 ♖d7

11... ♗e8 12. ♖e2.

12. h4 g6 13. ♖e2 ♖b8 14. ♖d3 ♗e7 15. ♖e5 ♖c6 16. ♗b2! ♖b7+

16... ♗xe5 17. dxе5 followed by 18. ♖f1 and 19. h5, fixing on the point f7.

17. ♗c3 ♗d6 18. ♖xc6

Not 18. ♖xa6? ♖c7!

18... ♖c7 19. ♗d2 ♖xc6



20. ♖f1 ♜c7 21. h5 gxh5 22. ♙xh5 ♜b7 23. ♚c3 ♜c7+ 24. ♛b3 ♜b7+ 25. ♚c3 ♜c7+ 26. ♛d2 ♜b7 27. ♜xf7 ♜b2+ 28. ♚e1 ♜g2 29. ♜g7 ♙d7 30. ♙f3 ♜h2 31. ♜g8 ♚e7 32. ♜g7+ ♚d6 33. ♙e2 ♜h1+ 34. ♛f2 ♜h2+ 35. ♚f3 ♙e8 36. g6 ♜h8 37. ♙xa6 e5 38. dxe5+ ♚xe5 39. ♙b7 ♜f8+ 40. ♚g3 ♚f6 41. ♜c7 ♙xg6 42. a6 d4 43. exd4 ♜g8 44. ♛f2

1-0

Mikhail Botvinnik Evgeny Zagoriansky

Sverdlovsk 1943 (6)



Black has a weak pawn on d5, but he cannot increase the pressure against it any further. White therefore starts to break up the enemy king's pawn cover:

1.g4! ♛c6

1... ♚d6 2. ♛xd6 ♜xd6 3.e4.

2.g5 hxg5 3. ♚xg5 f6 4. ♚g6 ♙f7 5. ♚g3 f5 6. ♚g5 ♚e6 7. ♚h1 ♚e5 8. ♜g1 ♜f8 9. ♚h6 ♜b8 10. ♜h4 ♚f8 11. ♚h8+ ♙g8



12. ♖ f4

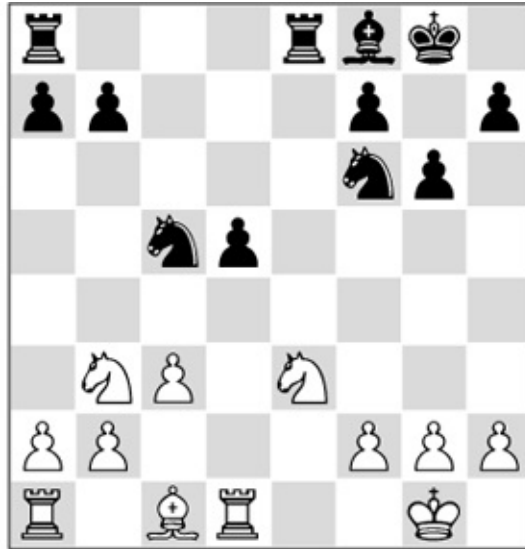
Switching the attack to the new weakness, the pawn f5.

12... ♜ bb7 13. ♖ g5 ♜ f7 14. ♚ h5 ♚ a1+ 15. ♚ g2 g6 16. ♚ xg6 ♜ h7 17. ♚ d6+ ♜ fe7
18. ♚ d8+

Black resigned.

Garry Kasparov
Alexey Kharitonov

Moscow 1988 (10)



1.g4! h6 2.h4 ♘xb3 3.axb3 ♜c5 4.g5 hxg5 5.hxg5 ♘e4 6.♘g4! ♜b6 7.♚g2 ♚g7 8.♜f4
♜ad8 9.f3 ♘c5 10.b4! ♘b3 11.♜a3 ♜e2+ 12.♚g3 ♜xb2



13.c4!

With the threat of 14.♙e5+.

13... ♖e8 14.c5 ♜d8 15. ♖xa7 ♜ee2 16. ♖xd5 ♜e7 17. ♖xb7

Black resigned.

Garry Kasparov Tigran Petrosian

Bugojno 1982 (6)



1. ♖fe5! ♜xe5

With 1...♙d7 2.♘xd7 ♗xd7 3.♗xd7 ♘xd7 4.♘d6 Black suffers material losses.

2. ♖xe5 ♜d5 3. ♖fd1! ♜b6 4. ♗a5! g6

After 4...f6 5.♘c4 ♘xc4 6.♗xc4 ♜b6 7.♗c3 Black's position is bad.

5. ♖d3 ♜d5

Simplifications like 5...♗d8 6.♗c5 ♗xc5 7.♗xd8+ ♗f8 8.♗xf8+ ♗xf8 9.♗c7 do not bring Black any relief.



6.e4!

Stronger than 6.♙xd5?, which gives Black counterplay for the pawn.

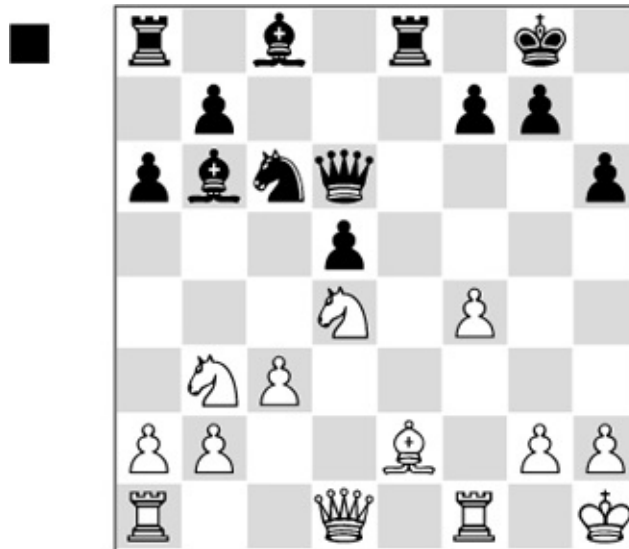
6...♘b6 7.♙f1 ♖e8 8.♖dd1 ♖f8 9.a3! ♔g7 10.b3 ♔g8 11.a4 ♖d8 12.♙c5 ♙xc5 13.♖xd8+ ♙f8 14.♖xf8+ ♙xf8 15.♖c7

1-0

Gennady Tunik

Alexey Dreev

Gorki 1989



Black ‘squeezes’ his opponent, not allowing any counterplay at all.

1...♙xd4! 2.cxd4

2.♘xd4 ♘xd4 3.cxd4 ♙f5.

2...♙f5 3.♙f3 ♙e4 4.♙d2 ♙xf3 5.♖xf3 ♖e4 6.f5 ♙f6 7.♖d1 ♖ae8 8.h3 ♖e2 9.♙c3 ♙g5 10.♖g1 h5 11.♙c1 ♖2e4 12.♙b3 ♖e2 13.♙c1 ♖2e3 14.♙d2 f6 15.♙b3 h4 16.♖f2 ♖8e4 17.♖gf1 ♙h7 18.♙c5? ♖xd4 19.♙e6 ♖xh3+! 20.gxh3 ♙xd2 21.♖xd2 ♖xd2 22.♖g1 ♙d4 23.♖xg7+ ♙h8 24.♖f7 ♙f3 25.♖f8+ ♙h7 26.♖f7+ ♙h6 27.♖xf6+ ♙h5 28.♙g7+ ♙g5 29.♖g6+ ♙f4

The checks have almost ended and mate is unavoidable. White resigned.

Evgeny Bareev
Marko Manninen

Yerevan 1996 (1)



1.c5!

Permanently shutting in the bishop on b7.

1...b5 2.a4 a6 3. ♖fe1! ♚e7 4. ♗b1! ♘h5 5. ♗bd2 ♗e6 6. ♙f1 ♜fd8

6... ♞d4 7. ♙xd4 exd4 8.e5.

**7. ♗b3 ♜d7 8.axb5 axb5 9. ♜xa8+ ♙xa8 10.g3 ♚h7 11.h4 ♜d8 12. ♙h3 ♙b7 13. ♗a5
♙a8 14. ♜d1 ♗c7 15. ♜xd8 ♚xd8 16. ♙d2 ♚f6 17. ♚d3 ♗e6 18. ♙g4 ♗d4 19. ♗xd4
exd4 20.f4 ♚d8 21.e5 ♚g8 22. ♚g2**

And Black resigned: he simply has no moves.

The following game is given in full, because from beginning to end, it was marked by a single plan: squeezing the black position.

Smbat Lputian Matthew Sadler

Lucerne 1997 (9)

1. ♖f3 d5 2.g3 ♗f6 3. ♘g2 e6 4.0-0 ♙e7 5.c4 0-0 6.d4 dxc4 7. ♚c2 a6 8.a4 ♘d7 9. ♚xc4 ♘c6 10. ♘g5 a5 11. ♗c3 ♗a6 12. ♘xf6! ♘xf6 13.e4! ♗b4 14. ♖fd1 ♖a6 15. ♖ac1 ♖b6 16.h4 h6 17. ♚e2 ♖e8 18. ♖d2 ♚d7 19. ♚d1 ♚d8 20. ♗h2 ♘e7 21. ♗g4 ♖f8 22. ♗e5 ♘e8 23. ♘f1! ♖d6 24. ♗c4 ♖a6 25. ♗e3 ♖a8



26.d5! e5 27. ♗f5 ♘c5 28. ♘b5 ♚h7 29. ♘xe8 ♖xe8 30. ♗b5 b6

Or 30... ♘b6 31.d6 c6 32. ♗c7 ♘xc7 33.dxc7 ♚xc7 34. ♖d7, and White has an irresistible attack.

31.d6 cxd6

31... ♘xd6 32. ♗fxd6 cxd6 33. ♗c7.

32. ♖xc5!

Aiming at the kingside.

32...bxc5 33. ♖xd6 ♚c8 34. ♚h5! ♖a6

34...f6 35. ♖xf6.

35. ♚xf7 ♖g8 36. ♚g6+ ♚h8 37. ♖xa6

Black resigned.

Realising a material or positional advantage in the endgame

Realising an advantage in the endgame is very different from doing so in the middlegame. The ability to carry out a combinative finish or squeeze the opponent takes a back seat. In the endgame, the role of technique and knowledge of typical positions and how to play them grows in importance. In the concluding stage of the game, one has to concern oneself with retaining an advantage sufficient for victory, and not ending up in some sort of theoretically drawn position.

We will look at several examples of realising both material and positional advantages in the endgame. In these, we will see various devices which are typical of the ending, specifically the activity of the king, simplification (exchanging pieces in a favourable way), creating passed pawns, exploiting pawn weaknesses, etc.

Tigran Petrosian Harry Golombek

Stockholm 1952 (5)



Black has a badly-placed knight and weak pawns on a5 and c5. But he wants to stabilise his position. For example, after 1.f3 there follows 1...f5 followed by 2...♘d6. Petrosian instead simplifies the position, taking play into a favourable knight endgame, at the same time depriving Black of any counterplay.

1. ♔d5! ♚xd5 2.cxd5 ♚f7 3. ♞d2 f5?

Better is 3...♘d6.

4. ♞c4 ♚f6 5.f3



5...e4?

This eases White's task. More tenacious was 5...h5.

6.fxe4 fxe4 7.g4 h5 8. ♚g3 hxg4 9. ♚xg4

And Black resigned, since after 9...e3 there follows 10.♘xe3 ♚e5 11.♔g5.

Ulf Andersson
Florin Gheorghiu

Moscow 1982 (3)



1. ♖ ac1 ♜ b7 2. ♘ e5!

Ensuring a penetration square.

2... ♙ xg2 3. ♚ xg2 0-0 4. ♜ d6 ♜ h6 5. e4! ♜ e8 6. ♚ f3 ♜ a8 7. ♚ e3 ♜ a5 8. ♜ cd1 ♜ b5 9. ♜ d8+ ♜ xd8 10. ♜ xd8+ ♚ h7 11. ♘ xf7 ♘ c6 12. ♜ c8 ♘ b4 13. ♜ h8+ ♚ g6 14. ♘ e5+ ♚ f6 15. f4



15... ♚ e7

15... ♘ xa2 loses to 16. ♜ f8+ ♚ e7 17. ♜ f7+.

16. ♜ g8 ♚ d6 17. ♜ d8+ ♚ e7 18. ♜ a8! ♘ xa2 19. ♜ xa5 ♘ c3 20. ♚ d3 ♜ b4 21. ♜ a6 ♘ b5 22. ♘ c6+ ♚ d7 23. ♘ d4 ♘ xd4 24. ♚ xd4 ♚ e7 25. g4

After this White will push his pawn to h5 and win the b4-pawn, so Black resigned.

Vassily Smyslov

Pal Benko

Szolnok 1975 (11)



White has an indisputable advantage: the active king and control of the open e-file. But realising this involves great technical difficulties.

1. ♖h1! g5 2. ♖e1! g4

2...f5 3.f3!

3. ♖a1 ♔c7 4.a5 ♖b8 5.b5!

Creating a passed pawn.

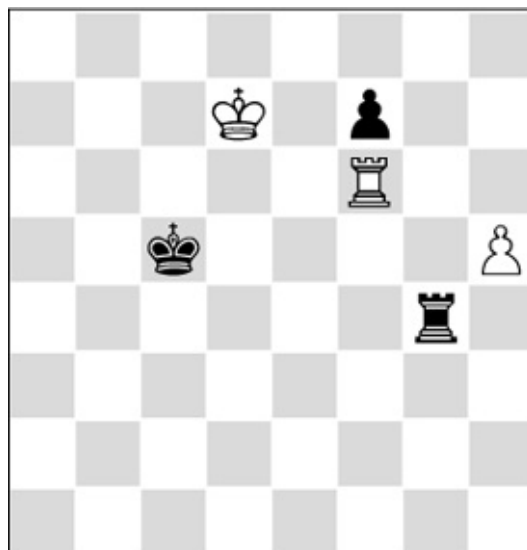
5...axb5 6.cxb5 bxa5 7. ♖xa5 ♖b6 8. ♖a7+ ♔c8 9. ♔c5 ♖f6

Now White needs to show accuracy. The natural moves have come to an end and Black has some counterplay.

10. ♖a4! ♖xf2 (10...♔c7 11. ♖f4 ♖e6 12. ♔d4) 11. ♖xg4 ♔c7 (11...♖f5+ 12. ♔b6) 12.b6+ ♔b7

13. ♖f4! ♖c2+ (13...♖h2 14.g4 ♖h4 15. ♖xf7 ♖xg4 16. ♖xd7+) 14. ♔d6 ♔xb6 15. ♔xd7 ♖h2

16.g4 ♖h4 17. ♖f6+ ♔c5 18. ♖xh6 ♖xg4 19. ♖f6? (19.♔e7!)



19... ♖e4?

Do you see Black's escape route? 19...♖g7! 20.h6 ♖h7! 21.♔e7 ♔d5 22.♔f8 ♔e4! (22...♔e5? 23.♔g8!) 23.♔g8 ♖xh6 24. ♖xh6 f5! draws.

20.h6 ♔d4 21.h7 ♖h4 22. ♖xf7 ♕e5 23. ♕e7 ♖h1 24. ♕f8 ♕e6 25. ♕g8

Black resigned.

Sergey Rublevsky

Kevin Spraggett

Groningen 1997 (1)



White has the more active king and Black has a weak pawn on b6. The Russian grandmaster accurately realises his advantage:

1.f5! exf5+ 2. ♖xf5 ♖f6 3. ♖c7 ♗d7 4. ♖d6!

If 4. ♗d5 ♖f7 5. ♗c6 ♗e6 Black holds.

4... ♖h4

After 4... ♖e5 5. ♗d5 ♖xd6 6. ♗xd6 ♗f6 7. ♖xb6 ♗xg4 8.c5 ♗f6 9.c6 ♖f7 10. ♖d4 ♗e8+ 11. ♗d7 g5 12. ♖g7! g4 13. ♖e5 ♖f8 14. ♗e6 Black quickly finds himself in zugzwang.

5. ♕f5 ♖f2 6.g5! ♕f8 7. ♖e4 ♖e3 8. ♕e6! ♗c5+ 9. ♖xc5 bxc5

9... ♖xc5 10. ♖d6+.

10.g6 ♕g8 11. ♖d6 ♖f2 12. ♕d5 ♖e3 13. ♖xc5 ♖d2 14. ♖d4 ♖b4 15. ♖e5 ♕h8 16. ♖d6

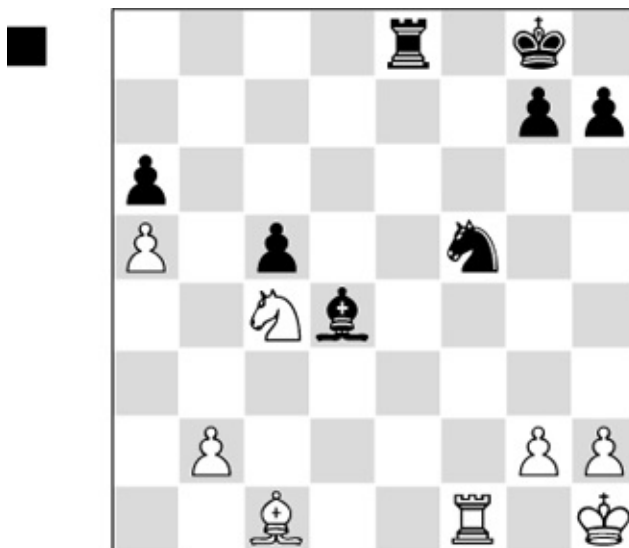
But not 16.c5? ♖xc5 with a draw.

Now, however, the position is untenable and Black resigned.

Efim Geller

Mihai Suba

Moscow 1986



White is practically playing without his king.

1...h5! 2.g3 g6 3.♘d2 ♔g7 4.♖e1 ♖xe1+ 5.♘xe1 g5! 6.♚g2 ♚f6 7.h3

7.♘f3 g4+ 8.♘e4 ♘g1.

**7...g4 8.hxg4 hxg4 9.b4 cxb4 10.♘xb4 ♔e6 11.♘d2 ♚d5 12.♞a3 ♚e4 13.♞c2 ♚d3
14.♞xd4 ♞xd4 15.♘f4 ♚e2 16.♘e5 ♞c2 17.♘f4 ♞e3+ 18.♚g1 ♚f3 19.♘c7 ♞f5
20.♚h2 ♚f2 21.♘b6+ ♞e3**

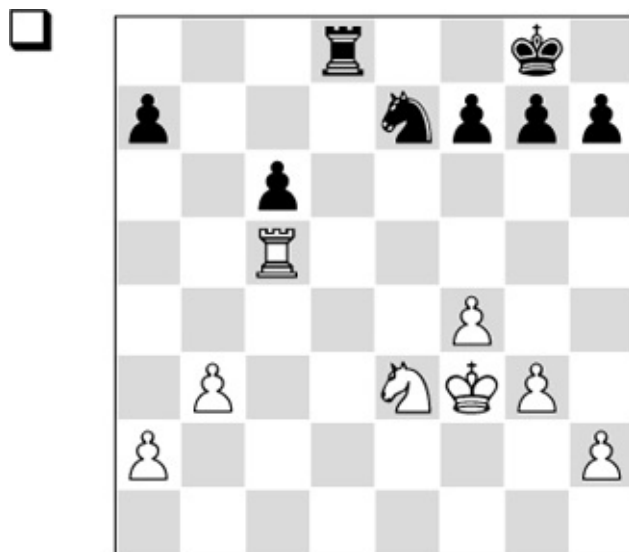
0-1

After 22.♘a7 ♚f3 the threat of ...♞e3-f1+ is unstoppable.

Akiba Rubinstein

Vladas Mikenas

Prague 1931 (18)



Rubinstein realises his plusses (active king and vulnerable black queenside pawns) in fine technical style:

1.♖a5! ♖d7 2.♞c4 f6 3.♖a6 ♚f7 4.♞a5 ♖c7 5.♚e4 ♚e6 6.♚d4 ♚d6 7.b4 ♞f5+

8. ♖d3 ♜d7

8... ♘d5 9. ♗b3.

9. ♘b3 ♘d6 10. ♘c5+ ♜e7 11. ♜d4 ♘b5+ 12. ♜c4 ♘d6+ 13. ♜d4 ♘b5+ 14. ♜d3 ♘d6
15. g4! h6 16. h3 ♘f7 17. ♜d4 g6

17... ♗d6 18. f5.

18. ♘e4 ♘d8 19. ♘g3 c5+ 20. bxc5 ♘e6+ 21. ♜e3 ♘xc5 22. ♖a3 ♘d7 23. f5! g5 24. ♘e4
♘b6 25. ♖a6 ♜f7 26. a4 ♜g7 27. a5 ♘d7 28. ♖e6! ♘c5 29. ♘xc5 ♖xc5 30. ♖e7+ ♜f8
31. ♖xa7



31... ♖c3+ 32. ♜e4 ♖xh3 33. a6 ♖a3 34. ♜d5 h5 35. ♜e6 hxg4 36. ♜xf6 ♜e8 37. ♜g7 g3
38. f6 ♖f3 39. ♖f7 g2 40. a7 ♖a3 41. ♖b7 g1 ♜ 42. f7+

And mate next move.

Tigran Petrosian

Mikhail Botvinnik

Moscow 1963 (5)



By exploiting his opponent's errors with filigree technique, White gradually converted his small advantage to victory:

1. ♘g5! ♖e8 2. ♘ge4 ♘xe4 3. ♘xe4 b6 4. ♖b1 ♘b4 5. ♗d2 ♘d5

5... ♖xa2 6. ♜a1 ♜b4 7. ♙xb4 cxb4 8. ♜xa7 ♙xb2 9. ♜b7 retains White's advantage.

6.a4 ♜c8 7.b3 ♙f8 8. ♜c1 ♙e7 9.b4! c4

Or 9... ♗f7 10.bxc5 bxc5 11. ♗d3 ♜b6 12.a5 c4+ 13. ♗d4 ♜d8+ 14. ♗c3 ♜d3+ 15. ♗c2 ♜d5 16. ♜b1.

10.b5 ♗f7?!

It was essential to activate his pieces with 10... ♙a3 11. ♜c2 c3 12. ♙xc3 ♙b4 13. ♗d2 ♜c4 14. ♙xb4 ♜xe4 15. ♙d6 ♜xa4.

11. ♙c3 ♙a3 12. ♜c2 ♗xc3+ 13. ♜xc3 ♙b4 14. ♜c2 ♗e7

It was worth considering 14... e5 15. ♜d2 c3 16. ♜e4 ♗e6 17.f3 ♙a5 18. ♗d3 ♜d8+ 19. ♗c4 ♜d2.

15. ♗d2 c3 16. ♗e4 ♙a5 17. ♗d3 ♜d8+ 18. ♗c4 ♜d1 19. ♗xc3 ♜h1? 20. ♗e4! ♜xh2 21. ♗d4! ♗d7 22.g3 ♙b4 23. ♗e5 ♜h5+ 24. ♗f6 ♙e7+ 25. ♗g7 e5 26. ♜c6 ♜h1

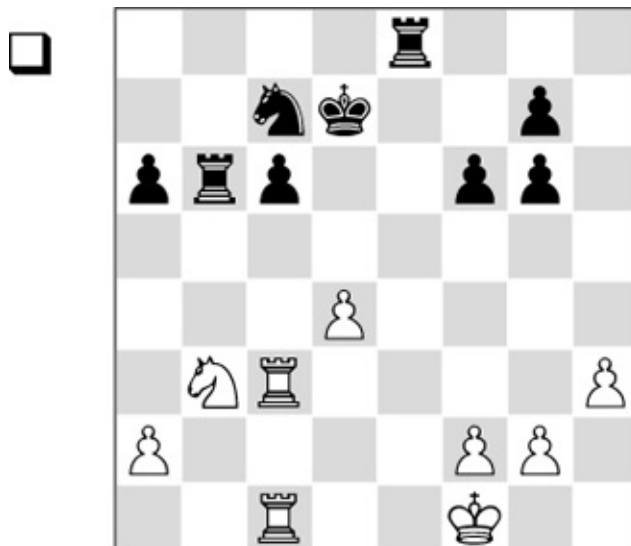


27. ♗f7! ♜a1 28. ♜e6 ♙d8 29. ♜d6+ ♗c8 30. ♗e8 ♙c7 31. ♜c6 ♜d1 32. ♗g5 ♜d8+ 33. ♗f7 ♜d7+ 34. ♗g8

And Black resigned.

Predrag Nikolic
Nigel Short

Moscow 1994 (9)



1.h4!

The immediate attempt to win the g6-pawn actually loses: 1. ♖g3 g5 2. h4 ♖h8 3. hxg5 ♖xb3, whilst 1. ♗c5+ ♘d8 2. ♗a4 ♖b4 3. ♖xc6 ♖xa4 4. ♖xc7 ♖xa2 5. ♖c8+ ♘d7 6. ♖1c7+ ♘d6 7. ♖xe8 ♘xc7 8. ♖e7+ ♘d6 9. ♖xg7 g5 leads to an endgame which is probably not winning.

1... ♖h8 2.g3 ♗d5 3. ♖3c2 ♖e8

Neither does 3... ♗b4 4. ♗c5+ ♘d6 5. ♖e2 save Black.

4. ♗c5+ ♗d8

4... ♘d6 5. ♗a4.

5.a3! a5 6. ♗a4 ♖b3 7. ♖xc6 ♖xa3 8. ♖6c5 ♗e7 9. ♖xd5 ♖xa4 10. ♖c7+ ♗e6 11. ♖dd7 ♗f5 12. ♖c5+ ♗e4 13. ♖xg7 ♗xd4 14. ♖c1 ♖f8 15. ♖xg6 ♗e5 16. ♖g7 f5 17. ♗g2 ♖a2 18. ♖d7 a4 19. ♖e1+ ♗f6 20. ♖ee7 ♗g6 21. ♖e6+ ♖f6 22. h5+ ♗g5 23. ♖g7+ ♗h6 24. ♖xf6+ ♗xg7 25. ♖xf5

Black resigned.

Now let us consider some examples of realising a material advantage. The two following examples show how difficult this can be, when little material remains on the board.

Anatoly Karpov

Jan Timman

Bugojno 1986



Clearly Black will have to give up a piece for the b-pawn. However, the limited material makes it hard to win the resulting position. It is in such positions that really good technique is required, such as shown here by Karpov.

1. ♖d7 ♗c6 2. b7

If 2. ♗xc6? ♖xc6 3. b7 ♖c1+ 4. ♘d2 ♖b1 Black maintains the balance.

2... ♗b8 3. ♖d8 ♖xf4 4. ♗c3!

4. ♖xb8? ♗d6!.

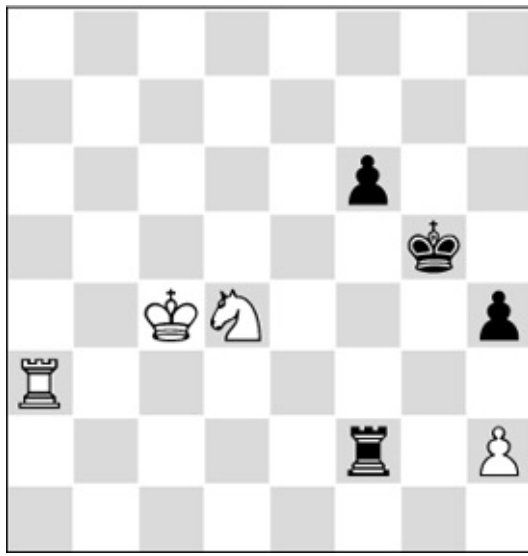
4... ♗e7 5. ♖xb8 ♗d6 6. ♖e8 ♖b4 7. ♗f3 ♖xb7 8. ♖d8 ♗b4

8... ♗b8 9. ♖xd5 ♖b2 10. h3 ♖f2 11. ♖d3!.

9. ♗xd5 a4 10. ♗xb4 ♖xb4 11. ♖a8 ♗g6 12. ♗e2 f6 13. ♖a5! h5 14. ♗e3 h4 15. ♗d4 ♖c4?

Active defence was called for: 15... ♖b2 holds the balance.

16. ♗d3! ♖b4 17. ♗c3 ♖b1 18. ♖xa4 ♖f1 19. ♗c4! ♗g5 20. ♖a3 ♖f2



21. ♔d5! ♕g4

21... ♖xh2 22. ♗f3+.

22. h3+ ♕f4 23. ♕e6 ♖d2 24. ♗f5 ♕g5 25. ♖f3! ♖a2 26. ♗e7 ♖a6+ 27. ♕f7 ♖a5
28. ♖xf6 ♖a3 29. ♖f5+ ♕h6 30. ♗g8+ ♕h7 31. ♖h5#

Joel Lautier
Alexey Shirov

Belgrade 1997 (2)



1. ♖xe4 ♕xe4 2.f6

White headed for this position, counting on 2... ♗e3? 3. ♖h4 d5 4. ♖xh5 ♗f4 5.f7 ♗d6 6. ♖xg4 d4 7. ♗a5 ♗e7 (7... d3 8. ♖g5) 8. ♗d8 ♗f8 9. ♖g5 d3 10. ♗a5, but a surprise awaited him.

2... ♗xf6

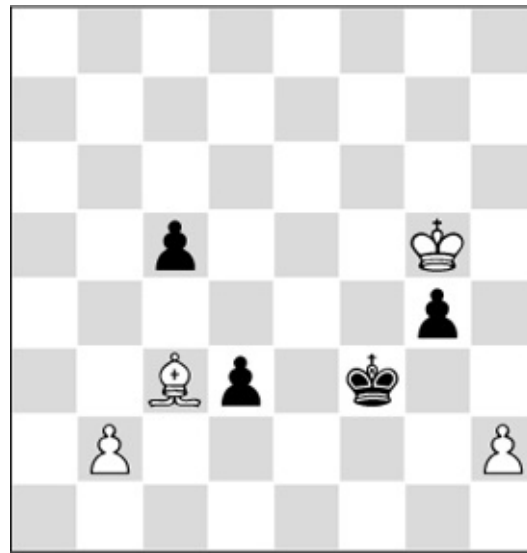
By giving up a piece, Shirov steers the game towards a theoretically drawn ending.

3. ♗xf6 d5! 4. ♕h4?!

Black would still face problems after the move 4.b3!, after which White wins: 4...d4 (4...c4? 5.b4! d4 6.b5 d3 7. ♗c3 ♖d5 8.b6 ♖c6 9. ♗a5, winning) 5. ♗e7! d3 6. ♖f2 ♖d4 7. ♗f6+ ♖d5 8. ♖e3.

A study-like draw results from 5. ♖f2 ♖d3 6. ♗e7 h4! (also after 6... ♖c3!? 7. ♗xc5 h4 8. ♖e1 Black can draw, but only with 8...g3!) 7. ♖e1 g3! (7... ♖c2? 8. ♗xc5 d3 9. ♗e3; 7... ♖c3 also draws) 8.h3 (8.hxg3 hxg3 9. ♗xc5 g2 10. ♖f2 ♖c3 11.b4 d3) 8...g2! (8... ♖e3!? 9. ♗xh4 ♖f3 g2! =) 9. ♖f2 ♖c2 10. ♗xc5 d3

11. ♖e3 ♜xb3 12. ♜xg2 ♜c2! 13. ♜f3 d2 14. ♖xd2 ♜xd2 15. ♜g4 ♜e3 16. ♜xh4 ♜f4.
4...d4! 5. ♚xh5 ♚f3 6. ♚g5
 Or 6.b3 g3! 7.hxg3 ♜xg3 8. ♜g5 ♜f3 9. ♜f5 ♜e3 10. ♖e7 ♜d3 11. ♖xc5 ♜c3 12.b4 d3.
6...d3 7. ♖c3



7...c4! 8. ♚f5 ♚e2 9. ♚xg4

And in view of the variation 9...d2 10. ♖xd2 ♜xd2 11.h4 ♜c2 12.h5 ♜xb2 13.h6 c3 14.h7 c2 15.h8♚+ ♜b1 with a theoretically drawn position, the players agreed the draw.

Even when the material advantage is quite large, realising it can require precise and accurate play.

Mikhail Botvinnik Vassily Smyslov

Moscow 1958 (6)



White has two extra pawns, but still needs to be accurate. Thus, after 1. ♜f2? d3 2. ♖g5 d2 3. ♜e2 ♖d3+ the advantage passes to Black. Correct was:

1. ♖a6! ♖d5 2. ♚f2 ♖e3 3. ♖e2!

Controlling the further activity of the black knight.

3...♚e6 4. ♖g5+ ♚d5 5. ♖e4 ♖xe4 6.fxe4+ ♚xe4 7.g4 ♚f4

He also loses after 7...d3 8.♙f3+ ♚f4 9.h5 gxh5 10.gxh5 d2 11.h6.

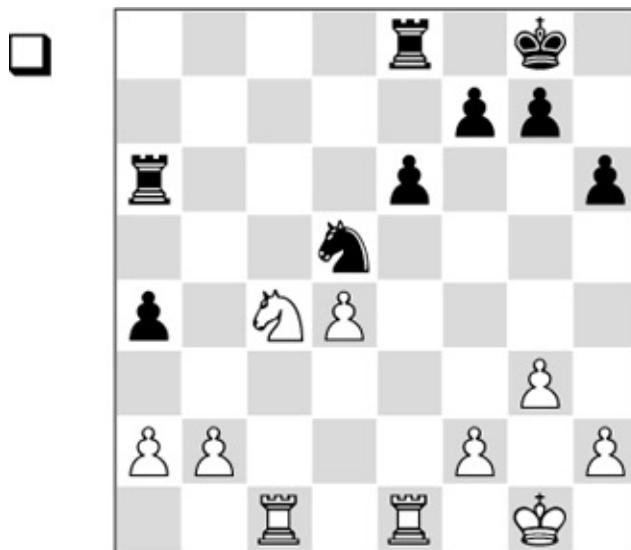
8.h5 gxh5 9.gxh5 ♚g5 10.♙f3

1-0

Viktor Kortchnoi

Boris Spassky

Palma de Mallorca 1968 (15)



Realising the extra pawn in this position is not so simple – the strong blockading knight on d5 and the possibility of going into a rook ending give Black good chances of saving himself.

1.a3!

Fixing the black pawn.

1... ♖b8 2. ♖c2 g5 3. ♚f1 ♚g7 4. ♗e5 ♖ab6 5. ♖ee2 ♖6b7 6. ♚e1 h5 7. ♗d3!

Beginning to lay siege to the weakness on a4.

7... ♚f6 8. ♗c5 ♖a7 9. ♖c4 ♖ba8 10. ♗e4+ ♚g6 11. ♗c3 ♗e7

Things are simple after 11... ♗xc3 12.bxc3 ♖b8 13.♖b4!.

12. ♚d2 ♗f5 13. ♚c1 ♖d8

Preventing the manoeuvre ♖e2-e5-b5-b4.

14. ♖xa4 ♖xa4 15. ♗xa4 ♗xd4 16. ♖e3



16... ♖f5

16...g4! is somewhat better.

17.h3 h4 18.gxh4 gxh4 19.b4 e5 20.♗c3 ♕e6 21.♗e2 ♗xe2+ 22.♖xe2 f5 23.b5 ♖a8
24.b6 ♕d6 25.♖b2 ♕c6 26.b7 ♖b8 27.♕d2

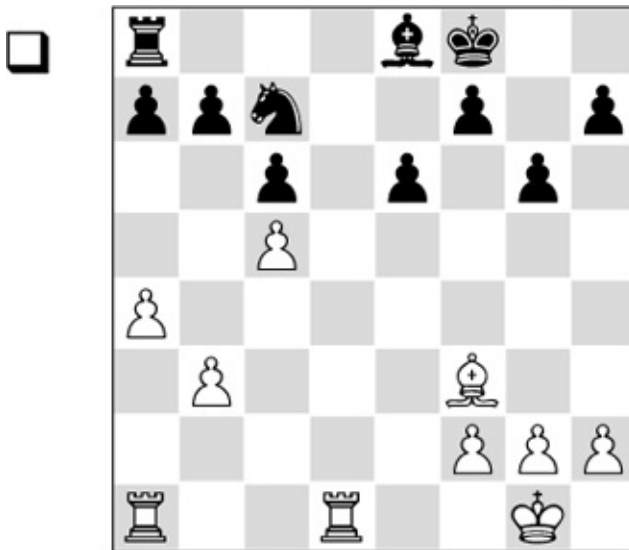
1-0

Quite often in the endgame, one has to realise the advantage of an extra exchange, for a pawn.

Vassily Smyslov

John van der Wiel

Reggio Emilia 1986/87



«Black has a pawn for the exchange but his pieces are far from optimally placed. His only hope is to try to create a fortress» (Smyslov).

1. ♗e2! ♕e7 2. ♗c4 ♗d5 3. ♖d4 ♗f6 4.a5!

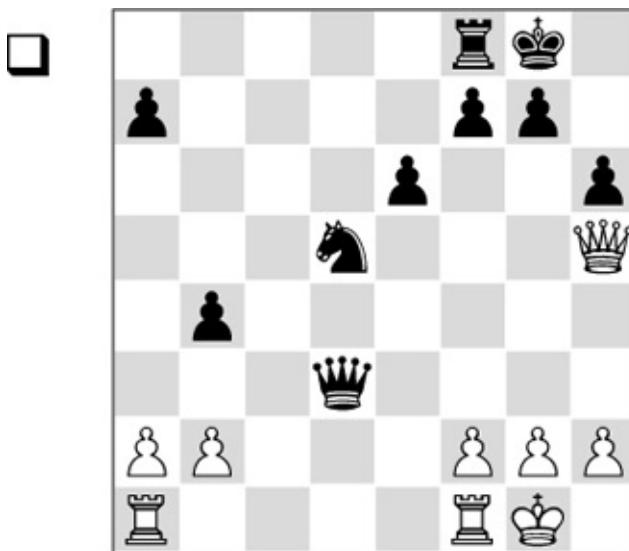
With the threat of a5-a6.

4...a6 5. ♖e1 ♖d8 6. ♖xd8 ♕xd8 7.f4 ♕e7 8. ♕f2 ♗d7 9.b4 ♗f6 10. ♕f3 h5 11.g3! ♗d5
12.h3 ♕d7 13.g4 hxg4+ 14.hxg4 ♕c7 15. ♗xd5! cxd5 16.f5 gxf5 17.gxf5 ♗d7 18.f6!
♗a4 19. ♕f4 ♕d7 20. ♕e5 ♗c2 21. ♖g1 ♕c6 22. ♖g7 d4 23. ♕xd4 e5+ 24. ♕c3

Black resigned.

Evgeny Bareev Alexey Shirov

Linares 1994 (3)



Black has a strong knight on d5, but White has the c-file and the possibility of opening the a-file as well. Bareev realises his advantage in instructive style.

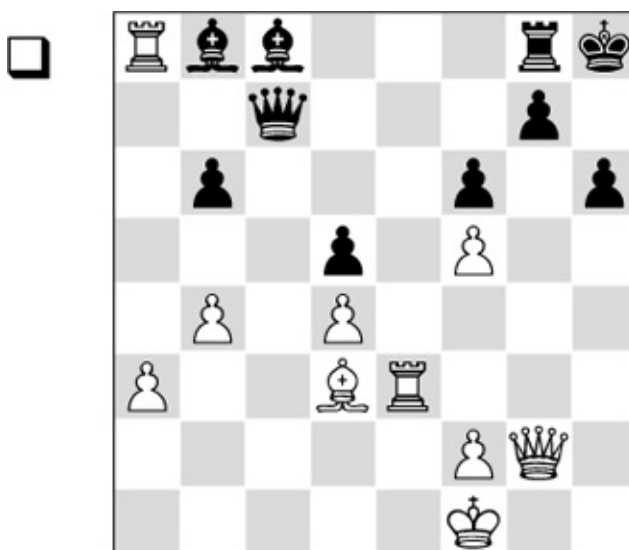
1. ♔e5! ♖c8 2. ♖fc1! ♖d8 3. h3 ♔h7 4. ♖e1 ♔c4 5. ♖ac1! ♔xa2 6. ♖a1 ♔b3 7. ♖xa7 ♔g8 8. ♔d4! ♖e8 9. ♖e2! ♖c8 10. ♖xe6 ♞c3 11. ♖ae7 ♔xb2 12. ♖e8+ ♖xe8 13. ♖xe8+ ♔h7 14. ♔d3+ ♖g6 15. ♔c4 ♔b1+ 16. ♔h2 ♔f5 17. ♔d4

Black resigned.

Realising a material advantage often involves returning the material, in exchange for some other advantage.

Lev Psakhis Oleg Romanishin

Frunze 1981 (4)



1. ♔g3!

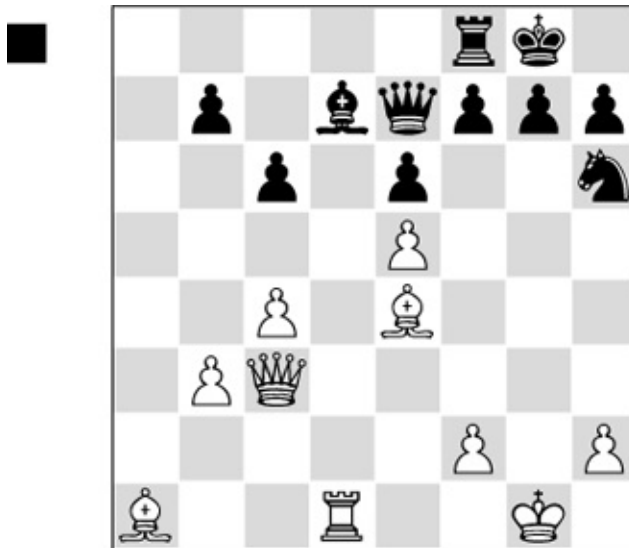
White gives back the exchange to reach a winning position with material equality. This device is often seen in practice.

1... ♖c1+ 2. ♜e1 ♘xe1+ 3. ♚xe1 ♙xg3 4. fxf3 ♘b7 5. ♜xg8+ ♚xg8 6. a4! ♚f7 7. a5 bxa5 8. bxa5 ♚e7 9. ♚d2 ♚d6 10. ♚c3 ♚c6 11. ♚b4 ♘c8 12. ♚a4! ♘b7 13. a6

1-0

Alexander Beliavsky Valery Salov

Moscow 1988 (9)



1...c5!

By returning the pawn, Black strives to exchange light-squared bishops.

2. ♙xb7 ♘c8 3. ♙g2 ♙b7 4. f3 ♘f5

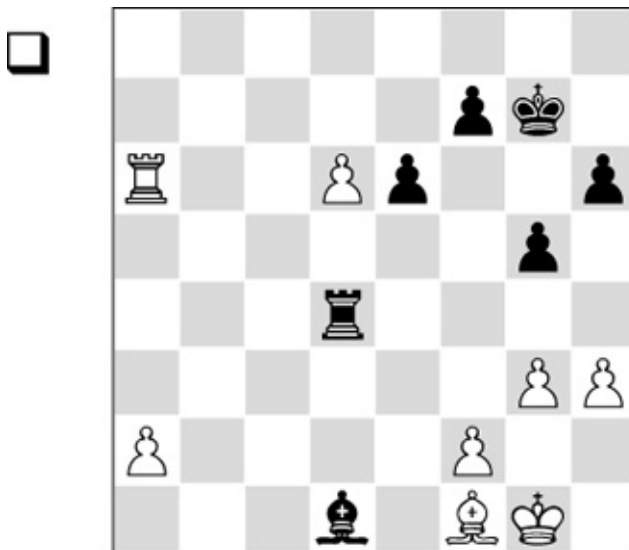
The initiative is fully on the side of Black.

5. ♙b2 ♜a8 6. ♜d3 ♙h6 7. ♚c1 ♘c6 8. ♙c3 ♜a2 9. ♚b1 ♜a8 10. ♚d1 ♚h7 11. ♙e1 ♚g5 12. ♚d2 ♚g6 13. h4 ♚h5 14. ♚f2 ♜a1 15. ♚h2 ♙g5 16. ♙h3 ♘xh4

White resigned.

Sergey Rublevsky Larry Christiansen

Lucerne 1997 (8)



Realising the extra pawn is not so simple, because 1...♔f3 is threatened. White wins by freeing his king, with the aid of a pawn sacrifice.

**1.f3! ♖xf3 2.♖b5 g4 3.h4 ♖e4 4.d7 e5 5.a4 ♖f5 6.♖a7 ♔f6 7.a5 ♔e7 8.a6 ♖d3
9.♖xd3 ♖xd3 10.♖b7 ♖xg3+ 11.♔f2 ♖f3+ 12.♔g2 f5 13.a7 ♖a3 14.d8♔+ ♔xd8
15.♖b8+ ♔e7 16.a8♔ ♖xa8 17.♖xa8 f4 18.♖g8 g3 19.♔f3 ♔f7 20.♖g4**

Black resigned.

Positions for solving

For nos 1-5 you can take 1.5 hours, for nos 6-10 – 2.5-3 hours. We recommend that you solve 1-2 positions in each session.

E53 (solution on page 236)



White to play

E54 (solution on page 236)



White to play

[E55 \(solution on page 236\)](#)



White to play

[E56 \(solution on page 237\)](#)



White to play

E57 (solution on page 237)



White to play

E58 (solution on page 237)



White to play

E59 (solution on page 237)



White to play

E60 (solution on page 238)



White to play

[E61 \(solution on page 238\)](#)



Black to play

[E62 \(solution on page 238\)](#)



White to play

Positions for playing out

P26 (solution on page 238)



White to play (30-40 minutes)

P27 (solution on page 239)



White to play (30-45 minutes)

[P28 \(solution on page 239\)](#)



White to play (30 minutes)

[P29 \(solution on page 239\)](#)



White to play (30-45 minutes)

P30 (solution on page 240)



White to play (30-45 minutes)

P31 (solution on page 240)



White to play (20-30 minutes)

P32 (solution on page 241)



White to play (30-40 minutes)

P33 (solution on page 241)



White to play (30 minutes)

[P34 \(solution on page 242\)](#)



White to play (20 minutes)

[P35 \(solution on page 242\)](#)



White to play (30-40 minutes)

Chapter 6

Equal positions

Steinitz started his theory with precisely this topic and stated that in equal positions, one should not attack, but must gradually try to accumulate small advantages (especially at the beginning of the game), and attempt to obtain a plus, and only then go over to attacking the weakened position. This can only be achieved by lengthy manoeuvring. In balanced positions, judgement and the selection of a plan assume greater importance than in positions where one side has the advantage, and here mistakes more often occur. It is precisely in such positions that a player's class shows itself, his positional understanding and manoeuvring ability, his technique. Since an equal position cannot be changed without a mistake or inaccuracy from one player, each must try to play like a machine. But this is impossible, and so an equal position will be won by the player who commits fewer mistakes – in other words, by the classier player. Sometimes, in order to play for a win (often against weaker opponents) in equal positions, one must go in for some sort of concession, hoping that one's experience and the opponent's time-trouble will assist one. Lasker, Kortchnoi, Polugaevsky and Larsen, plus other players, often played in this fashion, getting their own play on one area of the board and trusting to their superior class in the now unbalanced position. We have looked at positions like this in the earlier chapter on Counterplay, so here we will not examine them further. Usually, in games between opponents of equal standing, the game will be slower, with lengthy and quiet manoeuvring, probing, hoping for a mistake from the opponent, as often seen in the games of such players as Capablanca, Schlechter, Rubinstein, Smyslov, Petrosian, Karpov, Andersson, and others.

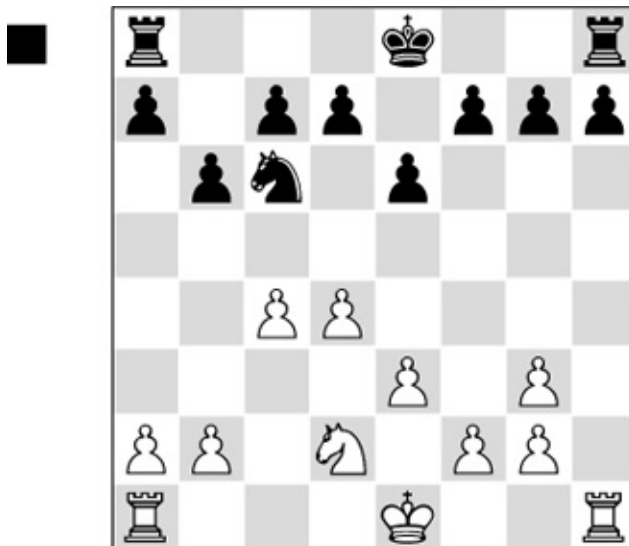
We will examine some typical cases of play in equal positions, including those with a microscopic advantage to one side or the other.

Playing 'on class', ie. without risk

Playing on class means gradually accumulating small advantages by means of manoeuvring, occasionally changing the outlines of the position, going into an equal position of a different type.

Efim Bogoljubow José Raul Capablanca

Bad Kissingen 1928 (9)



The position is completely equal, but Capablanca plays on for a win. This was owing largely to the tournament situation – he was trailing Bogoljubow, the leader, by a point and a half. Black's plan is a pawn advance on the queenside. White should play on the kingside.

1... ♔e7 2.g4 h6 3.a3

The first pointless move. Correct was 3. ♖e2 followed by ♜h1-h5 and ♜ah1.

3...a6 4. ♕e2 ♜hb8! 5. ♘e4 b5 6.c5 d5!

Not 6...b4? 7.a4 ♘a5 8.g5, and White obtains counterplay on the kingside.

7.cxd6+ cxd6 8.f4 ♜c8



9.f5?

Now 9. ♜ac1 ♘a5 10. ♘d2, slowing up the black initiative, is already impossible, because 10... ♘c4 gives the latter the advantage.

9... ♘a5 10. ♕d3?

A mistake, after which White stands badly. Correct was 10. ♜ac1 ♘b3 11. ♜xc8 ♜xc8 12. ♘c3, and he is fine.

10... ♘c4 11. ♜ab1

Black also retains the advantage after 11.b3 ♖a5 12.fxe6 fxe6 13.♗d2 ♖c7 14.♖ac1 ♖ac8 15.♗xc7+ ♗xc7.

11...d5! 12.♗c3

After 12.♗c5 e5! Black will follow up with ...e5-e4 and ...♗e7-f6-g5.

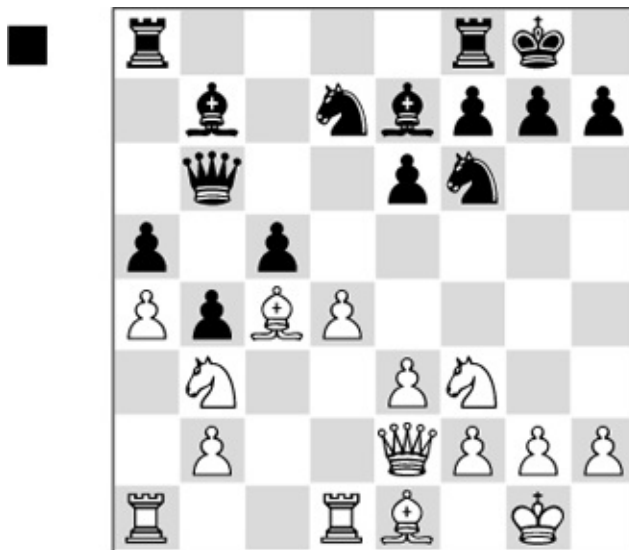
12... ♖ c6 13.fxe6 fxe6 14.g5 hxg5 15. ♖ h5 ♔ f6 16. ♖ h3 ♖ ac8 17. ♗ a2 a5 18. ♖ f3+ ♔ g6 19.g4 ♗ d6 20. ♗ c3 b4 21.axb4 axb4 22. ♗ d1 ♖ c2 23. ♖ f2 b3! 24. ♖ a1 ♗ e4 25. ♖ e2 ♖ 8c6 26. ♖ b1 e5 27. ♖ a1 ♖ 6c4 28. ♖ a5 ♗ c5+!

And White resigned: 29.dxc5 e4#.

Samuel Reshevsky

Vassily Smyslov

Radio match USA-USSR 1945 (2)



1... ♖ fd8 2. ♗ b5

Preparing the manoeuvre ♗f3-d2-c4.

2... ♗ d5! 3. ♗ bd2 ♔ b7 4. ♗ c4 ♗ b6 5. ♗ ce5?

5.♗xb6 maintains the balance.

5... ♗ e4 6.dxc5 ♗ xc5 7. ♗ d4! ♖ dc8

After 7... ♗xg2 8.f3 ♗h3 9.♗c6 the White pieces dominate.

8.f3 ♗ b3 9. ♗ xb3 ♗ xb3 10. ♖ d3 ♗ c2 11. ♖ d2 b3 12. ♗ f2 ♗ b4 13. ♖ d4 ♗ d5 14. ♗ d3 e5! 15. ♗ xe5 ♗ c3! 16. ♗ c4

The sacrifice cannot be accepted: 16.bxc3 ♗xc3 17.♗e1 ♗xb5 18.axb5 b2, and Black wins.

16... ♗ xd4 17.exd4

Not 17.♗d6 ♗xb2 18.♗xb7 ♗xa1, and Black gets a new queen.

17... ♔ c7 18. ♗ g3 ♔ a7 19. ♔ e5 ♗ b4 20. ♗ d6 ♖ f8 21. ♔ e3 ♖ ad8 22. ♔ c3 ♔ e7 23. ♖ e1 ♔ g5 24. ♔ e3 ♔ g6



25. ♖e4?

A time trouble mistake. After 25. ♖b7 ♜c8 26. ♙d6 ♙f5 27. ♞e2 ♙d3 the battle continues.

25... ♙xe4 26. ♚xe4 ♘c2 27. ♚xg6 hxg6 28. ♜c1 ♘xd4

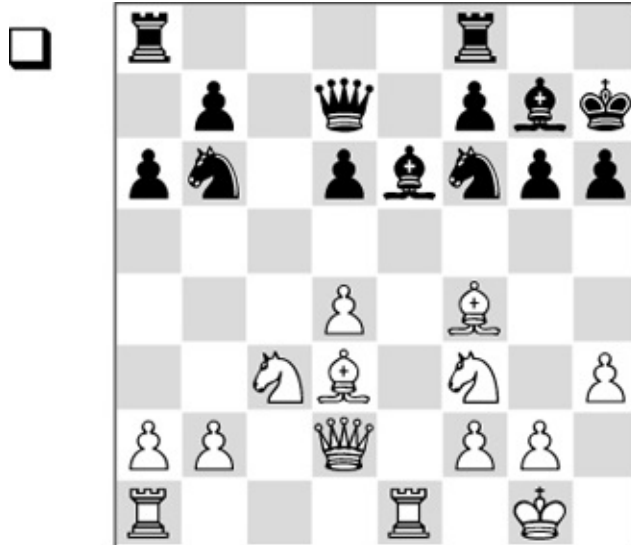
And Black methodically realised the extra exchange:

29. ♙c7 ♜d5 30. ♙c4 ♜c8 31. ♙a6 ♜e8 32. ♚f1 ♘c2 33. ♚g1 ♜e1+ 34. ♜xe1 ♘xe1
 35. ♚f2 ♘c2 36. ♚e2 ♜c5 37. ♙g3 ♘b4 38. ♙d3 g5 39. ♙e4 ♜c4 40. ♙e1 ♚f8 41. ♙c3 f6
 42. g4 ♚e7 43. ♚d2 ♚d6 44. ♚e2 ♘d5 45. ♙xa5 ♜xa4 46. ♙e1 ♜a2 47. ♚d3 ♜xb2
 48. ♚c4 ♜e2 49. ♙g3+ ♘f4 50. ♚xb3 ♜xe4 51. fxe4 ♚e5 52. h4 ♚xe4 53. hxg5 fxg5
 54. ♚c4 ♚f3 55. ♙e1 ♚xg4 56. ♚d4 ♚f3 57. ♚e5 g4

White resigned.

Alexander Alekhine Movsas Feigins

Kemerli 1937 (6)



The position is equal. It is very hard for White to count on any advantage. Alekhine continues to play, hoping for an inaccuracy from the opponent, which is the only way to proceed in this position.

1. ♙h2 ♘fd5 2. ♘e2

Refraining from exchanges for the moment.

2... ♜fd8 3. ♘f4 ♙f5?!

The first inaccuracy. Correct was 3... ♖xf4!? 4. ♗xf4 ♜d5 and then 5...b5.

4. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 5. ♙c4! ♙e6 6.a4!

With the intention of taking the b6-square away from the black knight on d5.

6... ♖ac8 7. ♙b3 ♜c7 8.a5 ♜d7 9. ♙a4 ♜e7 10. ♙g3 ♖c7 11. ♙b3 ♜d7 12. ♙h4 ♖b8
13. ♙a4 ♜c8 14. ♖ac1

White has achieved a certain amount, specifically the fact that the black major pieces on the queenside are not very well placed.

14... ♖c4?!

Better would have been 14...b5!? 15. ♙b3 (15.axb6 ♖xb6) 15... ♖bb7, seizing the c-file.

15. ♙g3 ♙f8 16.h4! ♖f6 17. ♙b3 ♖xc1 18. ♖xc1 ♜d7



19.d5!

White's advantage has become quite significant.

19... ♙f5 20. ♜b4 ♙e4

More promising is 20... ♜e4 21. ♙f4 ♜c5.

21. ♜d4! ♜f5

He should have simplified with 21... ♙xf3 22. ♗xf6 ♙e4.

22. ♖d2 ♙xd5 23. ♙xd5 ♖xd5 24. ♖e4 ♙g7 25. ♖xd6 ♜e6

Stronger is 25... ♙xd4 26. ♜xf5 ♙xb2.

26. ♜d2 ♖f6 27. ♜c2 b6?

Losing, whereas 27... ♜h5 28. ♙h2 b5! 29. ♜xf7 ♖f8 30. ♜d6 ♙d4 31. ♖f1 ♜e7 would have given Black reasonable compensation for the pawn.

28. ♜c7! ♖d7 29. ♖xf7! ♖f8

29... ♗xf7 30. ♖d1!.

30. ♖d8 ♜f6 31. ♖d1!

Anatoly Karpov Artur Jussupow

Bugojno 1986 (2)



Black is in no way worse. He has the half-open f-file and a strong knight on f4. Now a manoeuvring battle begins, in which Karpov proves to be the stronger.

1. ♖g1!

With the intention of driving the enemy knight from f4.

1... ♜ad8 2.g3 ♞fg6 3. ♝f1 d5 4. ♚e2 ♞c6

Black maintains the tension in the centre and threatens a possible ...d5-d4 at the appropriate moment.

5. ♞g2 ♜f7 6.h4 ♜df8 7. ♝ad1

Black's position is quite solid, so White unhurriedly manoeuvres around within his own camp.

7... ♞ge7 8.h5 g6?

The main cause of Black's future difficulties.

**9. ♞h3 ♚f3 10. ♚xf3 ♜xf3 11.hxg6 ♞xg6 12. ♞e3 d4 13. ♞c2 ♝f7 14.cxd4 ♞xd4
15. ♞xd4 exd4 16.f4 c5 17.a5! b5!? 18.axb6 ♜b7 19. ♝c1 ♜xb6 20. ♝xc5 ♜xb2+
21. ♝f2 ♜xf2+ 22. ♞xf2 ♜a8 23. ♝a5**



Now White has some advantage, thanks to his compact pawn mass, against three black pawn islands.

23... ♞e7 24. ♞g4! ♞c6 25. ♝c5 ♞e7 26. ♝c7! ♚f8 27. ♞e5 a5 28.g4 a4 29.f5 exf5

30.gxf5 ♖xf5

Or 30...a3 31.f6 a2 32.♖xe7, mating.

31.exf5 ♖a5 32.♖c5 ♖xc5 33.♗d7+ ♔e7 34.♗xc5 a3 35.♔g3 ♔d6!?

This is more tenacious than 35...♕f6 36.♕g4 a2 37.♗b3 h5+ 38.♕f4 h4 39.♕g4 h3 40.♕xh3 ♕xf5 41.♕g3, and Black can resign.

36.♗b3 ♔e5 37.♔g4 h5+ 38.♔g5! h4 39.f6 ♔e6

39...h3 40.f7 h2 41.f8♖ h1♖ 42.♖e7+ ♕d5 43.♖b7+.

40.♔g6 h3 41.f7 h2 42.f8♗ h1♗ 43.♗c5+ ♔e5 44.♗b8+

1-0

Anatoly Karpov
Viktor Kortchnoi

Merano 1981 (4)



Such positions are usually agreed drawn, especially in World Championship matches. But...

1.b3 ♖ad8

After 1...♖xe1+ 2.♖xe1 ♖e8 3.♖xe8+ ♔xe8 4.♖f5 h6 5.♗f3 ♖e6 the position is equal.

2.♗f3 f6?! 3.♗d2 ♔f7 4.♗f1 h5?!

Black tries to attack in an equal position, which eventually leads him to defeat.

5.♖xe8 ♖xe8 6.♕f3 ♖h8

More logical is 6...h4 7.gxh4 ♗xh4 8.♖h5+ ♗g6 9.♗e3 c6 10.♖e1 ♖h8 11.♖f5 ♖d8 12.c4 with rough equality.

7.♗e3 ♗e7 8.♖e1 g6?

It was still not too late to choose 8...♖d6 9.g4 hxg4 10.♗xg4 ♗g6 11.♗e5+ ♗xe5 12.dxe5 ♖e6 13.♖e3, and Black does not face anything too terrible.

9.♕f4! ♔g7



10.g4!

Tal recommended another line: 10.c4! g5 11.♖f3 dxc4 12.bxc4 ♕xd4 13.♗d1 ♖e5 14.♗d7, taking aim at the king.

10...g5 11.♕f3! hxg4 12.♗xg4 ♕d6

Better is 12...♗f5!? 13.♗xf6! ♖xf6 14.g4 ♖h7 15.♗e5 ♖h2+ 16.♗f1 ♖h1+ 17.♖xh1 ♗xh1+ 18.♗g2 ♗xd4! with counterplay.

13.g3 c6 14.c4! f5 15.♕e3! ♗g6

15...fxg4 16.♖xe7+ ♖xe7 17.♗xe7+ ♗f6 18.♗c7.

16.c5! ♕d8 17.♗e5 bxc5 18.♗xc6 ♕f6 19.♕e6 cxd4 20.♕xd5 d3 21.♕d7+ ♕f7 22.♗e7 ♕h7 23.♖g2 ♗e8 24.♗h1+ ♗h4+ 25.gxh4 ♕xe7 26.♕xf5+ ♕g7 27.hxg5 ♕b7+ 28.f3 ♗e2+ 29.♕f1 ♕g8 30.♕xd3 ♗e6 31.♕d8+ ♕g7 32.♕d4+

1-0

**Yury Yakovich
Igor Polovodin**

Kolontaevo 1994



White has a purely symbolic advantage, realisation of which is impossible without mistakes from the opponent. Yakovich starts a war of attrition, which eventually brings him success.

1.♗e2 ♗fc8 2.♗f3

Not 2. ♖xb7? ♜cb8 3. ♘b5 ♜xb7 4. ♘xd6 ♜xb2.

2...b6 3. ♜fe1 ♜ab8 4. ♘b5 h6 5.a3

Both sides strengthen their position.

5... ♜c7 6. ♘e2 ♘d7 7. ♘e5 ♜d8 8. ♙e2 ♚f8 9. ♙a6! ♜e8 10. ♜b5 ♜xc1 11. ♜xc1 f6
12. ♘e3 ♙f7 13.h3 ♙g6 14. ♜c3 ♘f7 15. ♘g3 ♙f5 16. ♘f4 ♙e4 17.f3 ♙h7 18. ♜c7 g5?

18... ♘d6!?.

19. ♘g3 ♜d6 20. ♜b5 ♜e8 21. ♜c6 ♘d7 22. ♜c3 ♘e7 23. ♘h2 ♙f5 24. ♘f2 ♜d6 25. ♜c7
♜e8 26. ♜xe8 ♜xe8 27. ♘g3 ♜d8 28. ♙b5 ♜d6 29. ♜c1 ♘g7



30. ♙e8! ♙e6 31. ♜e1 ♘d8 32. ♜e3! ♚f8 33. ♙b5 ♙f7 34. ♘e1 ♘c7 35. ♘g1 a5 36. ♜c3
♘d8 37. ♘c1 ♘g7 38. ♜c8 ♘e7 39. ♜c7 ♘e6 40. ♘f2 f5? 41. ♘e3 f4 42. ♘xe6 ♜xe6
43. ♙c6 ♜d6 44. ♙e8 ♜f6 45. ♜b7! ♚f8 46. ♙xf7 ♜xf7 47. ♜xb6 ♜c7 48. ♜xh6 ♜c2+
49. ♘g1 ♜xb2 50. ♜d6 ♜a2 51. ♜xd5 ♜xa3 52. ♜xg5 a4 53. ♜f5+ ♘e7 54. ♜xf4 ♜a1+
55. ♘h2 a3 56. ♜f5

Black resigned.

Fighting against an opponent who is intent on a draw

It sometimes happens that a weaker opponent plays for a draw with white. What should you do, if you need to win?

The most important thing is to fight and not agree a draw. Usually in such cases, the opponent will start to get nervous, fall into time-trouble and make some mistakes. It is important to remember that an equal position is not the same as a drawn one – the opponent still has to make a draw.

One of the most impressive fighters against such drawing play was Bobby Fischer. He always played for a win, against any opponent and with either colour. Remember his World Championship Candidates' match victories, when he beat both Taimanov and Larsen by a score of 6-0!

In tournament play, his approach brought him many extra points.

Efim Geller

Robert Fischer

Palma de Mallorca 1970 (12)

1. ♜f3 ♜f6 2.c4 g6 3.g3 ♙g7 4. ♙g2 0-0 5.0-0 c6 6.d4 d5 7.cxd5

After playing this move, Geller offered a draw, as this result suited his tournament situation.

7...cxd5!

A draw would also have suited Fischer, but he refused. However, if one really wants to play for a win here, one should probably take with the knight...

8. ♖e5 ♜f5!? 9. ♖c3 ♖e4 10. ♜e3?

A lack of confidence, which is almost inevitable when playing for a draw. Stronger is 10. ♖b3!? ♘c6 with complications.

10... ♖xc3 11. bxc3 ♖c6!



12. ♖xc6 bxc6

Black is playing as if he is White...

13. ♜a4 ♜b6 14. ♖ac1

White had used no less than an hour and a half over these natural moves.

14... ♖ab8 15. c4?!

The intermediate move 15. ♖fd1!? deserved consideration.

15... ♜xd4 16. ♜xd4 (16. c5 ♖b4) 16... ♜xd4 17. e3 (better is 17. ♖xc6 dxc4) 17... ♜e5 18. cxd5 cxd5 19. ♖fd1 e6 20. ♜xa7 ♖a8 21. ♜d4 ♜xd4 22. ♖xd4 ♖xa2 23. e4! dxe4 24. ♜xe4 ♜xe4 25. ♖xe4 ♖b8

Black has made progress and has an extra pawn. The position remains close to a draw, but one must give Fischer his due – he plays on to the bitter end, seeking the slightest chance of winning.

26. ♖e3 g5 27. h3 ♜g7 28. ♖c7 ♜g6 29. ♖f3 f6 30. ♖e7 ♖e2 31. g4 ♖b1+ 32. ♜g2 ♖ee1 33. ♖a3 h5 34. ♖aa7 ♖g1+ 35. ♜f3

White loses at once after 35. ♜h2 hxc4 36. hxc4 ♖xc4 37. ♖xe6 ♖b2.

35... hxc4+ 36. hxc4 ♖b3+ 37. ♜e2 ♖xc4 38. ♖xe6 ♖b1! 39. ♖aa6 ♖f4 40. ♖a2 ♖h1 41. ♖ea6 ♖b4 42. ♖6a4 ♖bb1 43. ♖a8 ♖hg1 44. ♜f3 ♖b5 45. ♖8a5 ♖b3+ 46. ♜e2 ♖bb1

Or 46... f5 47. ♖5a3 ♖bb1 48. ♖a8 ♖be1+ 49. ♜d2 (49. ♜f3 g4+ 50. ♜f4 ♖e4#) 49... ♜h5.

47. ♖a8 ♜f5 48. ♖2a5+ ♜g4 49. ♖a4+ ♜h5 50. ♖h8+ ♜g6 51. ♖g8+ ♜f7 52. ♖d8 ♖be1+ 53. ♜f3 ♖e5 54. ♖d2 ♖f5+ 55. ♜e2 ♖e5+ 56. ♜f3 ♜g6 57. ♖e4! ♖f5+ 58. ♜e2 ♖a5 59. ♖e3 ♜h5 60. ♖ed3 ♖aa1 61. ♖d8 f5 62. ♜f3!

Retaining a drawn set-up.

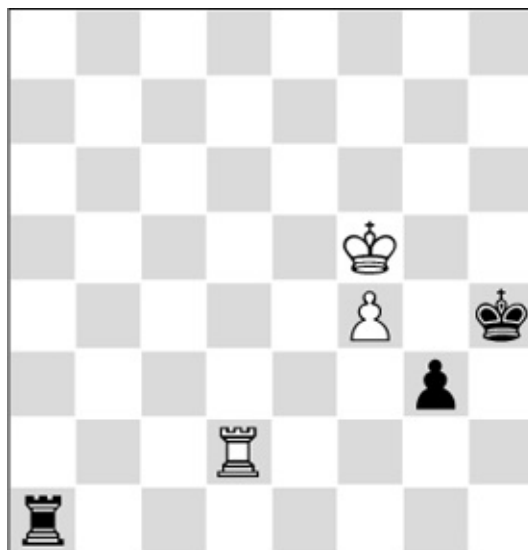
62... ♖a3+ 63. ♖2d3 g4+ 64. ♜f4 ♖xd3 65. ♖xd3 ♖f1

Or 65... ♖g2 66. ♖d2 ♜h4 67. ♜xf5 ♜h3 68. ♜f4 g3 69. ♜f3 with a draw.

66. ♖d2 ♜h4 67. ♜xf5 g3 68. f4! ♜h3 69. ♖d3

69. ♜g5 g2 70. ♖xg2 ♜xg2 71. f5 ♜f3 72. f6 ♜e4 73. ♜g6 ♜e5 74. f7 ♜e6, and the pawn is stopped.

69... ♔h4 70. ♖d2 ♖a1



71. ♔e5??

White cannot stand the tension any longer. After 71. ♖d8 g2 72. ♖h8+ ♔g3 73. ♖g8+ ♔f3 74. ♔e6 or 71. ♔g6 ♖a6+ 72. ♔f5 ♖a8 (72... ♖a5+ 73. ♔e4 ♔g4 74. ♖d8 ♖a4+ 75. ♔e3 ♔h3 76. ♖h8+) 73. ♖d7 ♖f8+ 74. ♔e4 ♖g8 75. ♔f3 he would still draw.

71... ♔g4 72. f5 ♖a5+

White resigned.

There are many such examples in Fischer's practice.

The main weakness in the play of the player who is striving for a draw tends to be passivity. This is the way one must seek to trap the opponent, gradually improving one's position. Even when one stands just slightly better, this is already a great achievement, since the opponent usually finds it impossible to re-orient himself and play at full strength. He loses the thread, drifts into time-trouble and starts to make mistakes.

Giorgi Giorgadze Alexander Panchenko

Aktiubinsk 1985

1.d4 ♘f6 2.♘f3 d5 3.c4 e6 4.♘c3 c6 5.cxd5 exd5 6.♙g5 ♙e7 7.♚c2 g6 8.e3 ♘f5
9.♙d3 ♘xd3 10.♚xd3 0-0 11.♙xf6 ♙xf6 12.b4 a6 13.0-0 ♙e7 14.♖ab1



14...♘d7 15.a4 ♖e8 16.♖fc1 ♙d6 17.b5 a5!

17...axb5 18.axb5 with equality.

18.♖c2 ♘b6! 19.♘d2 c5! 20.dxc5 ♙xc5 21.♖d1

21.♘xd5 ♙xe3!, and Black is better.

21...♙b4 22.♖a2 ♚f6 23.♘e2

23.♘xd5 ♘xd5 24.♚xd5 ♖ad8 25.♚b3 ♚d6!, and White loses material.

23...♖ac8 24.♘f3 ♖c4 25.♘f4 ♖d8 26.h4 ♖c3 27.♚e2 ♙d6 28.♖d4?

28.g3 was essential.

28...♖c1+ 29.♚h2 ♖c4 30.♖xc4 dxc4 31.g3 ♙xf4 32.exf4 c3 33.♘e5 ♚e6 34.♖c2 f6
35.♖xc3 fxe5 36.fxe5 ♖e8 37.♚d1 ♖f8 38.♚d4 ♘d5 39.♖c2 ♘e7 40.f4 ♚d5 41.♚b6
♘f5 42.♚f2 ♖d8 43.g4 ♘d4 44.♖c3 ♘e6 45.♚g3 ♖f8 46.♖f3 ♚h8 47.♚e3 ♚c5
48.♚xc5 ♘xc5 49.f5 gxf5 50.gxf5 ♚g7 51.♚f4 ♖d8 52.♚g5 ♖d4 53.♖e3 ♖xa4

0-1

Sergey Smagin Vassily Ivanchuk

Pinsk 1986

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘f6!

The Petroff Defence is regarded as heralding a draw, but even so, Ivanchuk chooses it in this must-win game. A draw would have suited Smagin.

3.♘c3

To make a draw, 3.♘xe5 seems better.

3...♘c6 4.♙b5 a6 5.♙xc6 dxc6 6.d3 ♙d6 7.♚e2 ♚e7 8.♙d2 ♙d7 9.♘d1? ♘h5 10.g3
g6 11.♘e3 b5 12.0-0-0 f6 13.♚b1 ♘g7 14.h4 ♘e6 15.h5 0-0-0 16.♙c3 ♚b7



17.d4? exd4 18.♗xd4 ♗g5!

Attacking the e4-pawn and forcing White to weaken his position.

19.f3 ♖xg3 20.♗b3 ♖d6 21.♗a5+ ♔c8 22.♗g4 ♖xg4 23.♗xc6 ♔xe4! 24.♔xe4 ♗xe4
 25.♗xd8 ♖xf3 26.♗f7 ♗xc3+ 27.bxc3 ♖f8

Now Black only needs to avoid a couple of traps.

28.hxg6 hxg6 29.♖xd6 ♖xh1 30.♖xf6 ♔b8 31.c4 bxc4 32.♔b2 ♔a7 33.♖f1 ♖d5

0-1

Positions for playing out

In the positions below, each player should have 1 hour 15 minutes for each 20 moves.

[P36 \(solution on page 242\)](#)



White to play

[P37 \(solution on page 243\)](#)



Black to play

P38 (solution on page 243)



White to play

P39 (solution on page 244)



White to play

P40 (solution on page 244)



White to play

P41 (solution on page 245)



White to play

P42 (solution on page 245)



White to play

P43 (solution on page 246)



Black to play

Chapter 7

The battle of the major pieces

This is an important subject, because the ability to coordinate and use the force of queen and rook together is a confirmation of the class of a chess player. Such positions are exclusively middlegame positions. We will examine the four types of position, which are seen most often in practice.

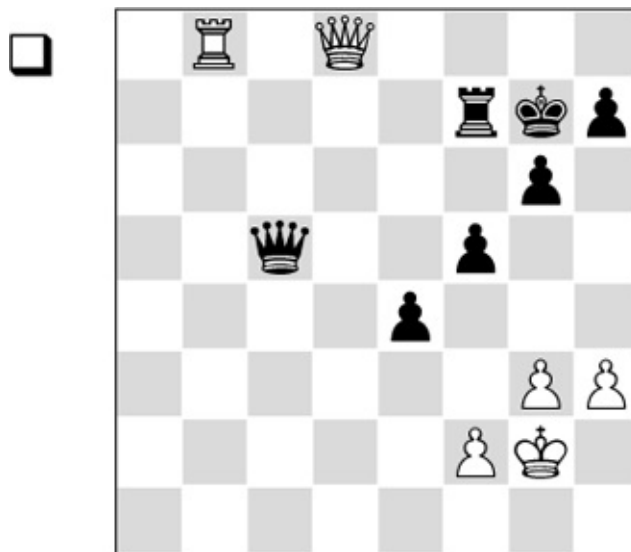
The attack on the king

If the king position is weakened, or he is in general unprotected, then it is easy to understand that he is unlikely to be able to shield himself against the power of such heavy pieces. The stronger side's path to success is through piece play. Here, we need exact calculation of variations, otherwise it will not be possible to give mate.

Evgeny Sveshnikov

Vladimir Karasev

Minsk 1976



1. ♔g8+ ♕f6 2. h4! ♔c6

Other moves also fail to save the game.

3. ♔h8+ ♕e6 4. ♔b2!

This is the strength of major pieces – they can transfer from one flank to the other in a single move.

4...e3+ 5. ♕h2!

On 5.f3 there would follow 5... ♖d7!.

5...exf2 6. ♖b6 f1♔ 7. ♖xc6+ ♔d5

There is no way back – 7... ♔e7 8. ♕e5+.

8. ♖c1



Clearly, mate is not far away.

8... ♖d3 9. ♜c3! ♘d4 10. ♚b5+ ♙e6 11. ♚e8+! ♜e7 12. ♜c6+ ♘d6
 Or 12... ♘d5 13. ♚d8+.

13. ♚g8+! ♙e5 14. ♚h8+ ♙d5 15. ♜xd6+
 And White won easily.

Yasser Seirawan
Kiril Georgiev
 Dubai 1986 (14)



1... ♜c3 2. ♜d3 ♚g1+ 3. ♚f4
 3. ♚h4 gave some chances of saving the game, although after 3... ♜xd3 4. ♚xd3 ♙xf2+ 5. ♚h5! (5. ♚g3 ♙d2 6. ♚f3 ♙e1+ 7. ♚g3 ♙e7+ 8. g5 ♙e4+ 9. ♚g4 ♙e1+) 5... ♚f4! Black should still win.

3... ♜c4+ 4. ♚e5
 After 4. ♚e3 Black wins with 4... ♙e1+ 5. ♚e2 ♜e4+.

4... ♚a1+!
 Again playing over the whole board.

5. ♚d6 ♚f6+ 6. ♚d7 ♚b6 7. ♚a8
 Mate results from 7. ♚e8 ♜c8+ 8. ♚e7 ♙f6+ 9. ♚d7 ♙d8#.

7... ♜c7+ 8. ♚e8 ♜b7 9. ♜d7 ♜b8+ 10. ♚xb8 ♚xb8+ 11. ♚xf7 ♚e5

And Black realised his material advantage:

12. ♖e7 ♜f6+ 13. ♚e8 ♜g8 14. ♖e6 ♜c3 15. ♖g6 ♜e1+ 16. ♚d7 ♜xf2 17. ♖xa6 ♜f3
18. ♖a5 ♜xh3 19. ♖xb5 ♜xa3 20. ♖b6 ♜f7 21. ♖b7 ♜f6 22. ♖b6+ ♜e5 23. ♖e6+ ♜f4
24. ♖g6 ♜xb4 25. ♚e8 ♜d4 26. ♚f7 h5 27. gxf5 ♜d7+ 28. ♚g8 ♜xf5 29. ♚f8 ♜d1
30. ♚xg7 ♜xh5 31. ♖f6+ ♜g5 32. ♖e6 ♜h4 33. ♖e5+ ♜f4 34. ♖e8 ♜g5+ 35. ♚f7 ♜f5
36. ♖f8 ♜g6+ 37. ♚e7+ ♜e5 38. ♖f7 ♜g8 39. ♖f1 ♜e6+ 40. ♚f8 ♜c8+ 41. ♚g7 ♜g4+
42. ♚f8 ♜e6 43. ♖f7 ♜h5

0-1

Alexander Alekhine

Josef Lokvenc

Prague 1943 (13)



1. ♚c1!

White tries to get at the black king as quickly as possible.

1...a5 2. ♚f1! ♖h6

He cannot allow a check on h3.

3. h3 ♜e6

«In such positions, it is hard to assess the quality of one move or another – nothing can repair the main weakness of the position, the open position of the black king» (Kotov).

4. ♖d3 ♜c2 5. gxf4 ♖g6+ 6. ♚h2 e4?

After 6...exf4 7. ♚e1+ ♜f5 8. ♖d7 White retains the attack. But stronger is 6... ♖f6.

7. ♖e3 ♜f5 8. ♚e1 ♜xf4?

Better was 8... ♖d6.

9. ♖c3! ♜a4 10. ♖c5 ♜xa3 11. ♚d2+ e3 12. fxe3+



12... ♔xe3

There was no defence.

13. ♖c4+ ♕f3 14. ♖c3 ♔xc3 15. ♔xc3+

And White gradually realised his advantage:

15... ♕f4 16. ♔xa5 ♖h6 17. ♔c5 ♖e6 18. ♔g2 ♖e2+ 19. ♔f1 ♖e6 20. ♔f2 ♖f6 21. ♔h5 ♕e4+ 22. ♔e2 ♖e6 23. ♔f7 ♕e5 24. ♔e3 ♖f6 25. ♔e7+ ♖e6 26. ♔f8 ♕d5+ 27. ♔f4 c5 28. ♔f7 ♕d6 29. ♔f5 ♖e5+ 30. ♔f6 ♖e4 31. ♔f8+ ♕d5 32. ♔a8+ ♕d4 33. ♔a1+ ♕d5 34. ♔h1 ♕d4 35. ♔d1+ ♕c4 36. ♔c1+ ♕d4 37. ♔d2+ ♕c4 38. ♔xh6

1-0

Igor Novikov

Giorgi Giorgadze

Lviv 1990 (1)



1. ♔e7

Black's position is hopeless and the game requires only minimal accuracy from White.

1... ♔g7 2. h3 ♖e8

The only move; 2... f5 3. ♖xe6.

3. ♔d6 ♔f8

More tenacious was 3... ♔h8 4. ♖g4 ♕f6.

4. ♖xc6 ♜bc8 5. ♖a4 ♜c5 6. ♜fe1 ♜e7 7. ♜e5 ♜c4 8. ♖a3

White realises his advantage with simple moves.

8... ♖f8 9. ♖e3 ♜h4 10. ♖f3

With the idea of 11. ♜xe6.

10... ♜h6 11. ♖h2 ♜c2 12. a3 ♜h4 13. g3 ♜d4 14. ♜1e3 ♜d2 15. ♖g2



15... ♖e8

There is nothing to do but bring the king into the centre. The threats were 16. ♖a8+ or 16. ♜xe6.

16. ♜e2 ♜c3 17. ♜5e3 ♜c6 18. ♜xc2 ♜xc2 19. ♖a8+ ♜d7 20. ♖xa7+ ♜c7 21. ♜d3+ ♜c8 22. ♖a8+ ♜b8 23. ♜d8+

1-0

Valery Salov
Veselin Topalov

Madrid 1996 (1)



1. ♖h5+

Black is unable to protect his 'bare' king.

1... ♖e6

If 1... ♜g6, then 2. ♜d6.

2. ♖e5+ ♜f7 3. ♜c7+ ♜g6 4. ♜c8!

White attacks without worrying about his own king, which can easily escape the checks.

4... ♜a1+ 5. ♜c2 ♜a4+ 6. ♜c1 ♜a1+ 7. ♜c2 ♜a4+ 8. ♜d2! ♜c6

Tying the queen to defence, but this does not save the game.

9. ♜g8+ ♜h6 10. ♜h8+ ♜g6 11. ♜g8+ ♜h6 12. c4

This quiet move decides things. The threat is 13. ♗g4.

12... ♜e6 13. ♜h8+ ♜g6 14. ♖h5!

The most accurate.

14... ♜d7+ 15. ♜c1 ♜e7 16. ♜b1! ♜e4+ 17. ♜a1 ♖e6 18. f3!

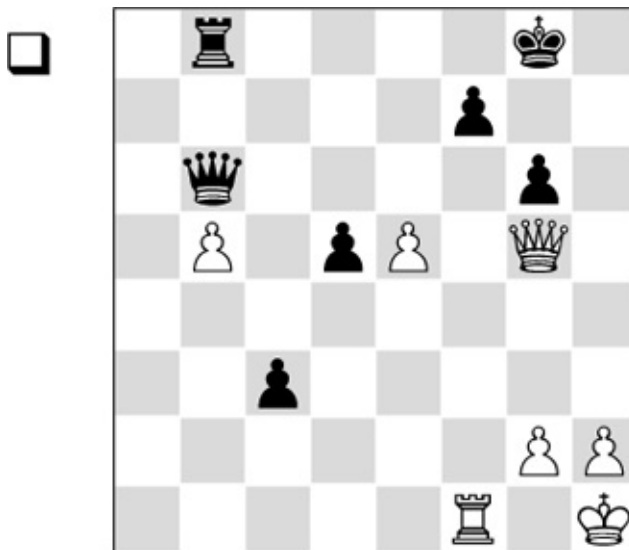
There is no defence, so Black resigned.

Sometimes, in a bad position, the exposed position of the stronger side's king offers chances of perpetual.

Vasja Pirc

Gideon Stahlberg

Amsterdam 1950 (8)



Black's pawns are very dangerous and White needs to play actively.

1. ♜f4 ♜c7 2. h4!

Trying to open up the black king.

2... ♖xb5 3. h5 ♖b6

If 3... gxf5, then 4. ♗g5+ ♖f8 5. ♗h6+ ♖e7 6. ♗f6+.

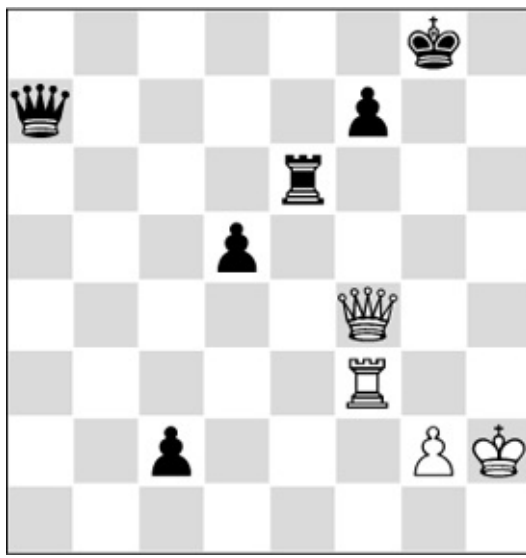
4. hxg6 ♖xg6 5. ♖c1 ♜c5 6. e6!

Throwing more fat on the fire.

6... ♖xe6

Black should win after 6... fxe6 7. ♖f1 ♗e7 8. ♖f3 c2.

7. ♖f1 ♜a7 8. ♖f3 c2 9. ♜h2!



9...d4?

9...♔g7! wins.

10.♔g5+ ♖g6 11.♔d8+ ♔h7 12.♖h3+ ♖h6 13.♖xh6+ ♔xh6 14.♔f6+ ♔h7 15.♔f5+

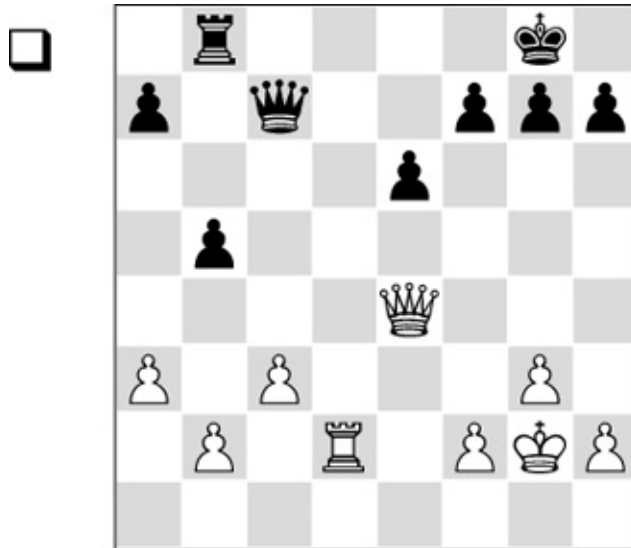
White gives perpetual check. Draw.

Control of open lines

Nimzowitsch wrote in his books that open lines exist for the major pieces to occupy and use to penetrate the enemy position. Control of the open file is an undoubted positional advantage and makes the defender's task very difficult.

Tigran Petrosian Lajos Portisch

Biel play-off 1976 (1)



White's advantage is obvious, thanks to the open d-file.

1.♔d3!

Otherwise 1...♖d8!

1...h6 2.♔d7 ♔c5

The exchange of queens favours White: 2...♔xd7 3.♖xd7 a5 4.♔f3 b4 5.axb4 axb4 6.c4 b3 7.♔e4, winning.

3. ♖d3 a5

Black tries to exchange off the queenside pawns, which White needs to prevent.

4. ♖f3 ♖f8 5. ♖f4 e5

Nothing else is apparent.

6. ♖e4 ♕h8 7. ♖e3! f6

7...f5 8.b4! was bad, but perhaps 7...b4 was stronger.

8. ♖d3 ♖b8 9. ♕d6!? ♕a7

Or 9...♙xd6 10. ♖xd6 b4 11.axb4 axb4 12.c4 b3 13.♖d3 ♖c8 14.♖c3 followed by the march of the white king to the queenside.

10. ♕c6

Preparing the rook's penetration to the 7th rank.

10... ♕f7 11. ♖d5 ♕g6?

A time-trouble mistake, but Black's position is difficult anyway. He should have preferred 11...b4 12.♖xa5 bxc3 13.♙xc3 ♙b7+.

12. ♖xe5 ♕d3 13. ♖c5

Stronger is 13.♖e7!.

13...b4 14.cxb4 axb4 15.a4 ♕b3 16. ♖c2

Correct was 16.a5!? ♙xb2 17.a6 ♙a2 18.♙b7!.

16... ♕a2 17. ♖e2 ♕h7 18.h4 b3 19. ♕d7! ♕h8! 20. ♖e7! ♖g8

20...♙xb2 loses because of 21.♖xg7 ♙c2 22.♙f7! ♙e4+ 23.f3! ♙e2+ 24.♕h3 ♙f1+ 25.♕g4 ♖b4+ 26.♕h5 ♙xf3+ 27.g4.

21. ♕d4 ♖a8 22. ♖b7 ♖e8

Nor does he save himself with 22...♙xa4 23.♖b8+ ♕h7 24.♙d3+ g6 25.♖b7+ ♕h8 26.♖b6 ♕g7 27.h5!.

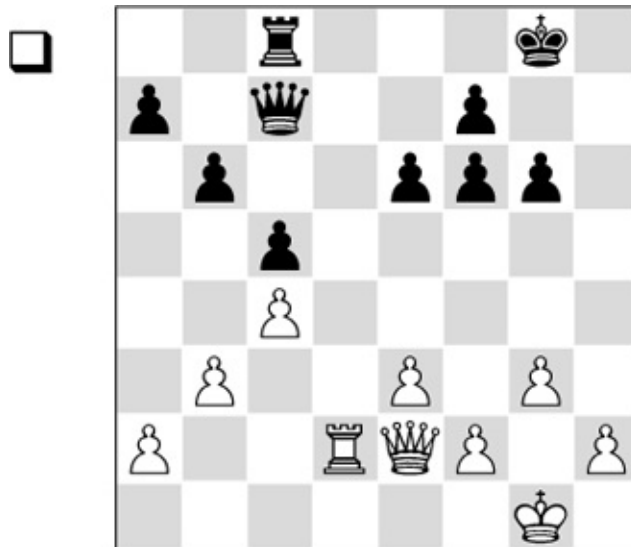
23. ♖b5 ♖c8 24. ♖b4 ♖g8 25. ♕c3 ♖a8 26. ♕f3!

Black resigned.

Lev Polugaevsky

David Bronstein

Tallinn 1965 (19)



1. ♕d1!

Stronger than 1.♙d3, as the rook should stand in front of the queen.

1... ♖c6 2. ♜d7 ♜c7 3. ♜d6 ♚e4 4. ♜d8+ ♚g7 5.h4!

A single open file is not enough for victory, so White wishes to expose the black king. Worse is 5. ♜b8 g5 6. ♚d8 ♚b1+ with perpetual check.

5... ♖c6 6.h5! ♜c8

6...g5 is bad because of 7.h6+ ♚xh6 8. ♜h8+ ♚g7 9. ♚h5.

7.hxg6 ♜xd8 8. ♚xd8 ♚e4 9.gxf7 ♚b1+ 10. ♚g2 ♚e4+ 11. ♚f1 ♚b1+ 12. ♚e2 ♚xa2+ 13. ♚f3 ♚xf7 14. ♚d7+ ♚g6 15. ♚e8+ ♚g7 16. ♚a4! ♚b1

The pawn endgame after 16... ♚xa4 17.bxa4 is probably lost for Black.

17. ♚xa7+ ♚g6 18. ♚xb6 ♚f5+ 19. ♚g2 ♚e4+ 20. ♚h2 ♚c2?

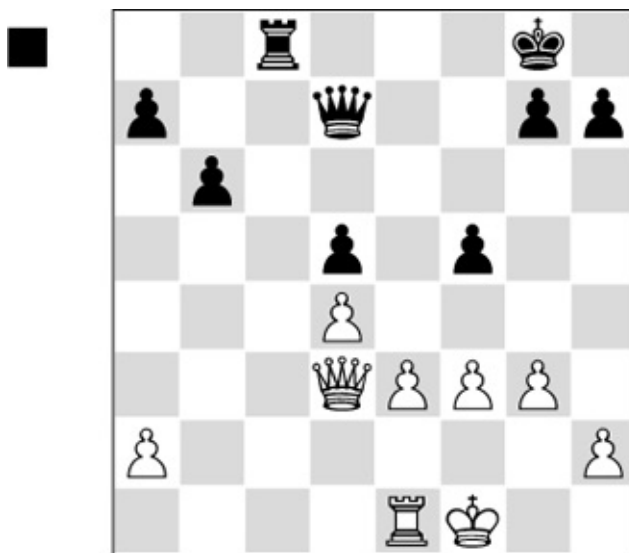
The decisive mistake. After 20... ♚f5! Black could still draw.

21. ♚xe6 ♚xf2+ 22. ♚h3 ♚f1+ 23. ♚h4 ♚h1+ 24. ♚h3 ♚b1 25. ♚g4+ ♚h6 26. ♚f3 ♚g6 27. ♚g4 ♚g7 28. ♚b7+ ♚g6 29. ♚d5 ♚c2 30. ♚f4 ♚f2+ 31. ♚f3 ♚b2 32. ♚e4+ ♚f7 33. ♚f5 ♚f2+ 34. ♚f4 ♚c2+ 35.e4

1-0

Gideon Stahlberg Alexander Alekhine

Zurich 1934 (13)



Black is better. He controls the open c-file and has a pawn majority on the queenside. But the weak pawn on d5 and his exposed king complicate the task of realisation.

1...g6 2. ♚f2

Maybe he should settle for 2.e4 dxe4 3.fxe4 fxe4 followed by 4. ♚xe4 ♚f7+ 5. ♚g1 ♚xa2 6.d5, creating counterplay.

2... ♚a4 3. ♜e2 ♜c1

Preventing 4.e4, which would offer White counterplay, and which would now be met by 4... ♜d1.

4. ♜b2 ♚g7 5. ♚b3

5. ♚b5? ♚d1.

5... ♖c6 6. ♚d3 h5

Directed against the possible g3-g4, and ...h5-h4 may also be a threat at some point.

7. ♚g2 ♜c3 8. ♚e2

8. ♚d2 ♚c4.

8... ♚a4!



White is gradually running out of moves and he undertakes an attempt to break out. However, passive defence would probably not have held the game either.

9.g4?! ♔e8! 10. ♖b3

There is nothing to do. On 10.♔f2 there is the unpleasant 10...hxg4 11.fxg4 ♚h8!.

10... ♖xb3 11.axb3 hxg4 12.fxg4 ♔e4+ 13. ♚f2

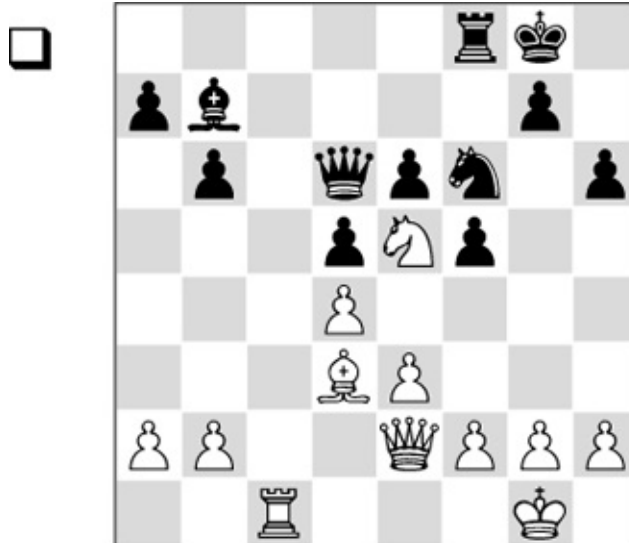
The pawn ending after 13.♔g3 ♚xg4+ 14.♚xg4 fxg4 15.♔xg4 a5! is lost.

13...fxg4 14. ♔e1 ♔c2+ 15. ♚g3 ♔xb3 16. ♚h4 ♔c2 17. ♚g3 ♔f5 18. ♔c7+ ♔h6

White resigned.

Lev Polugaevsky Charles Partos

Biel 1985 (4)



1. ♗a6!

In this way, White seizes control of the open c-file, which he can then use to penetrate the black position.

1... ♔b8 2. ♗xb7 ♔xb7 3. ♔c2! ♖e8 4. ♔c7

Penetrating.

4... ♖e7 5. ♔d6 ♚h7 6.h3! ♖e8?

This leads to defeat. But even after the superior 6...♔e8 7.♚d8 ♖c7 8.♖xc7 ♔xc7 9.♚d7! Black's

position is very difficult.

7. ♖c7 ♜a6 8. ♘d7! ♘xd7

8... ♗e4 9. ♗f8+ ♖g8 10. ♙d7.

9. ♜xd7 ♖g8 10. ♜xe6 ♜xa2 11. ♜xf5+ ♜h8 12. g4 ♜xb2 13. g5 ♜b4 14. ♜g6 ♜f8
15. ♖f7

Black resigned.

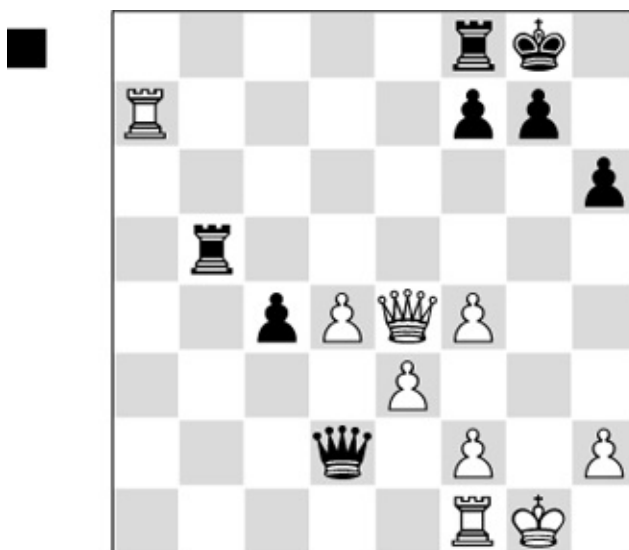
Passed pawns

Having a passed pawn, the stronger side either promotes it, or uses it to tie down the enemy pieces and then begins an attack on the defender's inadequately-defended king.

Ulf Andersson

Pablo Ricardi

Rio de Janeiro 1985 (3)



Black is a pawn down, but his strong passed c-pawn easily compensates. In addition, White has a weak king.

1...c3

This pawn easily promotes.

2. ♖c7 ♖b2 3. h3 c2 4. f5?

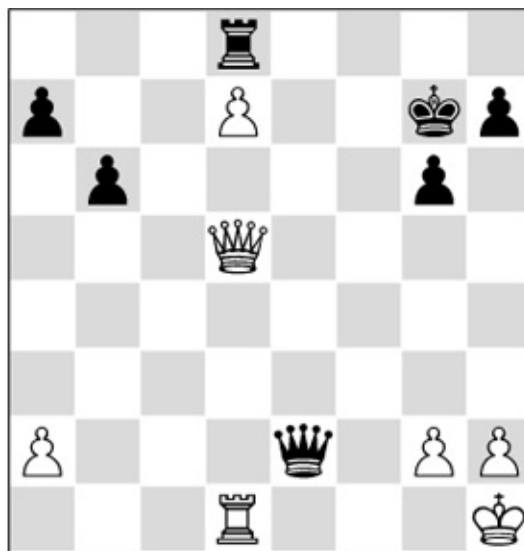
More stubborn is 4. ♖g2.

4... ♜d1! 5. ♜g2 ♖b1 6. d5 ♖fb8

White is helpless: 7. d6 ♜d3 8. d7 ♖xf1+ 9. ♙xf1 ♖b1, and so he resigned.

Nona Gaprindashvili
Hanna Erenska-Radzewska

Jajce 1981



The pawn on d7 ties down Black's forces. In such positions, the final result is usually decided by an attack on the king.

1.h3 ♖e7 2.a4 a6 3.♗d4+ ♜f6 4.♗e4 b5 5.a5!

White should not exchange pawns, as in this case it would be easier for Black to defend.

5...h5 6.♗e8 h4?!

This seems logical, but another weakness appears.

7.♖e1 ♜h6 8.♖e4 ♜h5 9.♗g1!

Black is in a curious zugzwang.

9...♗a1+ 10.♗h2 ♜f6 11.♖e6 ♜f4+ 12.♗g1 ♜c1+ 13.♖e1 ♜c7

The queen has to leave the kingside, and now we get a mating attack.

14.♗e2+ ♜h6 15.♗e3+ ♜h5 16.♖c1

Black resigned.

Alexander Alekhine
Paul Keres

Netherlands AVRO 1938 (5)



1.d6 ♖c6 2. ♖d5 f6

Black cannot live with the threat of a back-rank mate.

3. ♖d3 ♖c8 4. ♔b4 b5

The black passed pawn is not so dangerous, as it is not supported by its pieces.

5. ♖d5 ♖d8 6.g3

Ensuring a bolthole for the king.

6... ♔f7 7. ♔h2 ♔e6

The idea of the defence is to keep the passed pawn under control at all times.

8. ♔d4

If 8. ♖xb5? ♖xd6 9. ♖b7+, then 9... ♖e7!.

8... ♖d7

Better is 8...b4 9. ♖d3 b3, trying to exchange pawns.

9. ♔d3 b4 10. ♖d4 ♖d8?

10...b3? is bad because of 11. ♖g6+ ♔f8 12. ♖e4 ♖f7 13. ♖h7! ♖xh5+ 14. ♔g2 ♖d5 15. ♖h8+, mating, or 13... ♖d8 14. ♖e7! ♖g8 (14... ♖xh5+ 15. ♔g2 ♖d5+ 16.f3 ♖d2+ 17. ♔h3) 15. ♖e4!. Black should have played the prophylactic 10... ♔g8.



Here, Alekhine sealed a weak move:

11. ♔g6+?

Instead, he could have won with 11. ♖xb4! ♖xd6 (11... ♖xd6 12. ♖g6+) 12. ♖c4+ ♔f8 (12... ♖d5? 13. ♖b7+, intending ♖c7) 13. ♖b7 (now the king's position starts to tell) 13... ♖d7 (the only move) 14. ♖c8+ ♔e7 (14... ♖d8 15. ♖g4!) 15. ♖b3 f5 (15... ♔f7 16. ♖b8; 15... ♖d8 16. ♖g4 ♔f8 17. ♖b7) 16. ♖g8! ♔f6 (16... ♖f6 17. ♖e3+ ♔d6 18. ♖b8+) 17. ♖e8! ♖f7 (17... ♔g5 18. ♖d3) 18.f4! with the threat of ♖b6! and ♖e5#.

11... ♔f8 12. ♔h7

A draw results from 12. ♖g4 ♖f7 13. ♖xb4 ♖xg6 14. hxg6 ♖xd6 15. ♖b8+ ♔e7 16. ♖g8 f5! 17. ♖xg7+ ♔f6 18. ♖g8 ♖d7 19. ♔h3 ♖g7.

12... ♔f7

Now the players agreed a draw.

Eugenio Torre Oleg Romanishin

Biel 1988 (5)



The pawn on d5 is much stronger than that on a5, and this gives White a decisive advantage.

1. ♖c3 ♜b8 2. ♜c6 ♝d7

Or 2... ♞b4 3. ♞f6.

3. ♜a6 ♞b5 4. ♜a7 ♞b4 5. ♝f6 ♜f8 6.d6

The pawn advances and Black is in a very bad way.

6... ♞b6 7. ♜e7 a4 8. ♝e5 a3 9.d7 ♝c6

There were some chances of saving himself after 9... ♞d8 10.f5! a2 (10...gxf5 11. ♜e8 ♞xd7 12. ♞g3+) 11.f6 h6 (but not 11... ♞a8 12. ♜e8 a1 ♞ 13. ♜xf8+ ♞xf8 14. ♞xa1 ♞d6+ 15. ♔h1, winning).



10.f5! gxf5

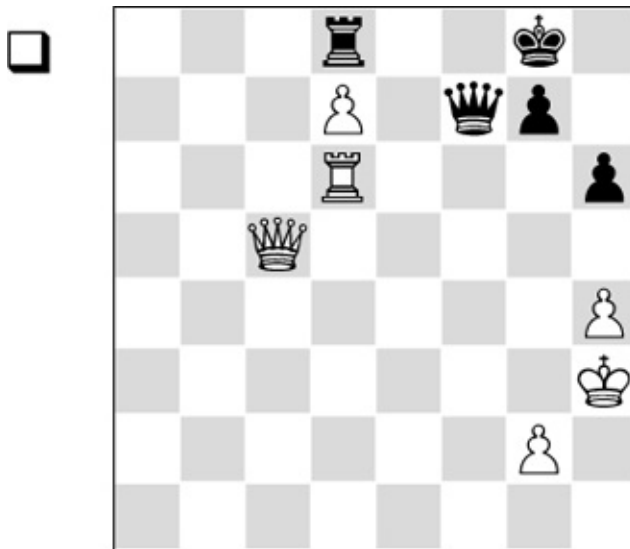
10...a2 11.f6 ♞a4 12. ♜xf7!; 10...f6 11. ♞g3! g5 12.h4 h6 13.hxg5 fxg5 14. ♞xa3 or 13...hxg5 14. ♞b3+ ♔h8 15. ♞h3+.

11. ♜e8

Black resigned in view of 11... ♞xd7 12. ♞g3+ or 11...a2 12. ♜xf8+ ♝xf8 13.d8 ♞+.

Nigel Short Robert Hübner

Wijk aan Zee 1986 (1)



1. ♔g4

The king joins in the attack.

1... ♕e7 2. ♔d5+ ♕h8

And not 2... ♖f7? 3. ♖xf7+ ♔xf7 4. ♔f5.

3. ♔h5! ♕e2+ 4.g4 ♕e7 5.g5 hxg5 6.hxg5 g6+ 7. ♖xg6 ♕e2+ 8. ♔h4 ♕h2+ 9. ♔g4 ♕e2+ 10. ♔h4 ♕h2+ 11. ♔g4 ♕e2+ 12. ♔f5 ♕c2+ 13. ♔f6 ♖f8+ 14. ♔e7 ♕xg6 15. ♔xf8 ♕f5+! 16. ♔f7

16. ♖xf5?? stalemate.

16... ♕xg5 17. ♔e6 ♕d8+ 18. ♔f7 ♕g8+ 19. ♔e7 ♕g7+ 20. ♔d8 ♕g5+ 21. ♔c7 ♕f4+ 22. ♔d6 ♕c4+ 23. ♔c6 ♕f4+ 24. ♔c8 ♕g4 25. ♔c3+ ♕h7 26. ♔c7 ♕f4+ 27. ♔c6 ♕e4+ 28. ♔b6

Black resigned: 28... ♖e6+ 29. ♔c7 ♖e7 30. ♖h3+ ♔g7 31. ♖g4+ ♔h6 (or 31... ♔h8 32. ♖h5+ ♔g7 33. ♖f5) 32. ♖f5.

Alexander Panchenko

Alexander Glianets

Kazan 1995 (3)



Black is worse, but the battle lies ahead.

1. ♖c4 ♜f6 2. ♜g2 ♚d6 3. ♖c2 ♜e5 4. ♖c3 ♚d6 5. ♜h2 ♚d2 6. ♜g1 ♚d1+ 7. ♜g2 ♚d6

Black fastens onto the c6-pawn the whole time, not allowing White the freedom to strengthen his position.

8. ♜f3!

The only chance of winning is to transfer the king to b5 or b6, although of course this should not succeed.

8... ♚d1+ 9. ♜e4 ♚e1+ 10. ♜d5 ♚e6+

10... ♜xf2 11. ♜d4+

11. ♜d4 ♜f6+ 12. ♜e3 ♜g8 13. ♜c5 ♚e6+ 14. ♜d3 ♚a2 15. ♖c2 ♚b3+ 16. ♜d2 ♚e6
17. ♜c1 ♚e4 18. ♜b2 ♚d3 19. ♜b4 ♚d8 20. ♜b6 ♚d6 21. ♜c5 ♚d3 22. ♖c3 ♚a6
23. ♜b3



23... ♖a7!

Reminding White that his own king could also come under attack.

24. ♖c2 ♚a4+ 25. ♜c3 ♖a5 26. ♜c4

It may look as though the c-pawn is now ready to advance, but...

26... ♖a3+ 27. ♕d2 ♜d6+ 28. ♕e2 ♖e5+ 29. ♕f3 ♜d1+ 30. ♖e2

Nor does anything result from 30. ♕g2 ♖e1.

30... ♖xe2 31. ♕xe2 ♜h1+ 32. ♕f4 ♜xc6 33. ♕xe7 ♜c4+?

Black was in serious time-trouble (it was a fixed time for the whole game). After 33... ♕g7 it is a dead draw.

34. ♕g5 ♜g7? (correct was 34... ♖c3!) **35. ♕e5+ ♜h7??**

And this is already the decisive mistake. He had to play 35... ♕f8.

36. ♕f6 ♜a2 37. f4 ♜c4 38. ♕e7 ♜c3+ 39. ♕xf7

Black lost on time.

Pawn weaknesses

The method of playing against pawn weaknesses is relatively simple. The stronger side, by attacking the weaknesses in turn, ties the enemy forces down to their defence, and then turns to the decisive attack. This is often directed against the enemy king. It is important not to permit the opponent any counterplay.

Efim Geller

Vladimir Tukmakov

Yerevan 1982 (9)



The pawns on d6 and especially a6 are weak. White immediately starts to attack them.

1. ♕e2 ♖c6 2. ♖ca1 e4

The alternative was 2... ♖b6.

3. fxe4 ♖b6 4. b4 ♖xe4 5. ♕f2 ♖e8 6. ♖f5!

White attacks over the whole board – the weak pawns on a6 and d6, but he also takes aim at the black king.

6... ♕c7 7. ♕d4 ♖c6 8. ♖af1!

Going over to an attack on the king, exploiting the fact that the rook on c6 is out of play, as it is tied to the defence of the weak black pawns.

8... ♕e7

Black loses after 8... ♖xc3 9. ♖f8+ ♖xf8 10. ♖xf8+ ♕h7 11. ♖e4+ g6 12. ♖d5.

9. ♖1f3

There is no hurry!

9... ♖h7 10. ♖d5 ♖ec8 11. ♗h2 ♘c7

Not the best move. Now White carries out a mating attack, but it was hard to recommend anything better for Black.

12. ♗e4+ ♗h8



13. ♗e6!

Preparing the decisive breakthrough.

13... ♖xc3 14. ♖f7 ♗c4 15. ♗g6 ♖g8 16. ♖h5!

1-0

The unstoppable threat is 17. ♖xh6+.

An analogous pawn structure arose in the following game, and the winning method was also similar.

Anatoly Karpov

Miguel-Angel Quinteros

Lucerne 1982 (11)



1. ♖ad1 ♖f6 2. h3! ♗b6 3. ♗d3 ♗b4 4. ♗h2 ♗b8

Or 4... ♖b6 5. c5 dxc5 6. ♖d8+ ♗f7 7. ♗h7! with a decisive attack.

5. ♖e1 ♜f8 6. ♖e4 ♚c7

If 6... ♜b6, then 7. ♖e3 or even 7.c5!?

7. ♜g4 ♜f6 8.b4 ♚b6 9.c5 ♚c7

If 9...dxc5 10. ♖d8+ ♜f8 11. ♖d7 g6 12. ♚d5+ ♚h8 13. ♚xe5+ ♜cf6 14. ♖xg6.

10. ♚h1! a5 11. ♜c4! ♚b8

11...e4 12.fxe4 dxc5 13. ♖d8+ ♜f8 14. ♚d5+ ♚f7 15. ♖d7!; 11...axb4 12.cxd6 ♜fxd6 13. ♖xc6 ♜xc6 14. ♖d8+ ♚f7 15. ♖d7+; 11...dxc5 12. ♖d8+ ♜f8 13. ♖d7 ♚b6 14. ♖g4 g6 15. ♚d5+.

12.cxd6 ♜cxd6 13.bxa5 ♚d8 14. ♜cc5

1-0

Tigran Petrosian

Boris Gulko

Yerevan 1975 (14)



It looks as though the position is close to a draw, but White subtly exploits the weaknesses at b6 and e6, and also the great activity of his pieces.

1. ♚b1! ♜eb8 2. ♜b4 ♚d6

The threat was 3. ♖c6.

3. ♜d1 ♚c6 4. ♚b3 ♜b7 5. ♜c4 ♚e8 6. ♜e4 ♜d7

The pawn cannot be defended.

7. ♜xd7 ♚xd7 8. ♜xe6 ♚f7 9.h4! ♜b8 10.h5 ♜a8 11.f3!

White strengthens his position.

11... ♚f8 12. ♚b4+ ♚g8 13. ♚c4 ♜f8 14.f4 ♚h8 15. ♚d5 ♚a7 16. ♚d4 ♚h7 17. ♜xb6

And White went on to win in a long endgame:

17... ♚a5 18. ♚e4+ ♚h8 19. ♜b5 ♚d2 20. ♜d5 ♚a2 21. ♜e5 ♜b8 22. ♜e8+ ♜xe8 23. ♚xe8+ ♚h7 24. ♚e4+ ♚h8 25.g4 ♚d2 26. ♚f1 ♚g8 27. ♚e8+ ♚h7 28. ♚g6+ ♚h8 29. ♚e8+ ♚h7 30. ♚e4+ ♚g8 31.g5 hxg5 32.fxg5 ♚d1+ 33. ♚g2 ♚xh5 34.g6 ♚g5+ 35. ♚f3 ♚h5+ 36. ♚g3 ♚g5+ 37. ♚f3 ♚h5+ 38. ♚e3 ♚c5+ 39. ♚e2 ♚h5+ 40. ♚d2 ♚h2+ 41. ♚c3 ♚g3+ 42. ♚c4 ♚c7+ 43. ♚d4 ♚b6+ 44. ♚c3 ♚f6+ 45. ♚d3 ♚d6+ 46. ♚e2 ♚h2+ 47. ♚f1 ♚h3+ 48. ♚g1 ♚g3+ 49. ♚f1 ♚h3+ 50. ♚e1 ♚g3+ 51. ♚d1 ♚g1+ 52. ♚c2 ♚h2+ 53. ♚b3 ♚b8+ 54. ♚a3 ♚d6+ 55. ♚b2 ♚b6+ 56. ♚c3 ♚f6+ 57. ♚c2 ♚f8 58. ♚a8+ ♚e7 59. ♚b7+ ♚d8 60. ♚d5+

Black resigned.

By winning this game, Petrosian became USSR Champion once again.

Positions for solving

It is recommended that you solve all of the positions below in one session (3.5-4.5 hours).

[E63 \(solution on page 246\)](#)



Black to play

[E64 \(solution on page 246\)](#)



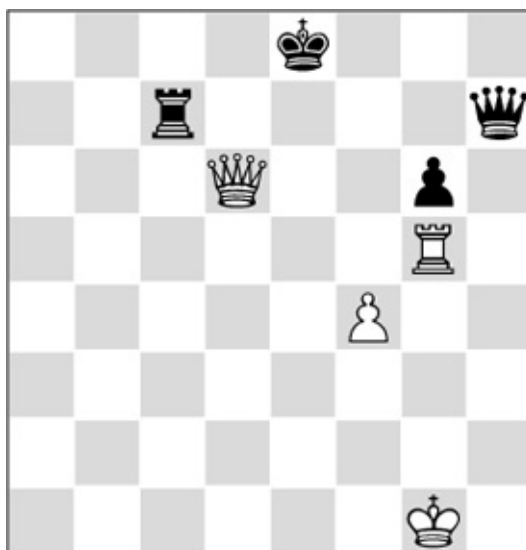
White to play

[E65 \(solution on page 247\)](#)



White to play

[E66 \(solution on page 247\)](#)



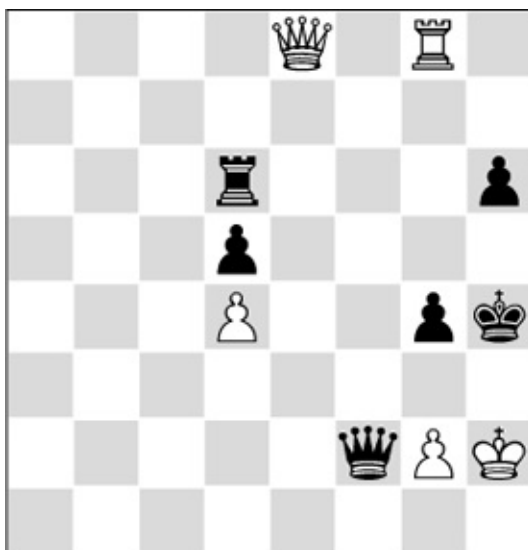
White to play and win

E67 (solution on page 247)



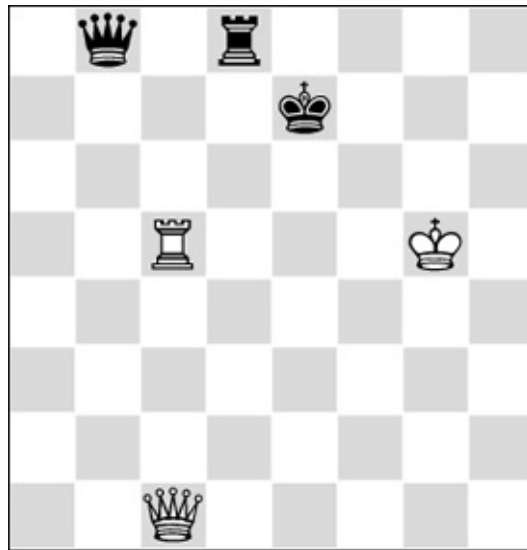
White to play

E68 (solution on page 248)



White to play

[E69 \(solution on page 248\)](#)



White to play and win

[E70 \(solution on page 248\)](#)



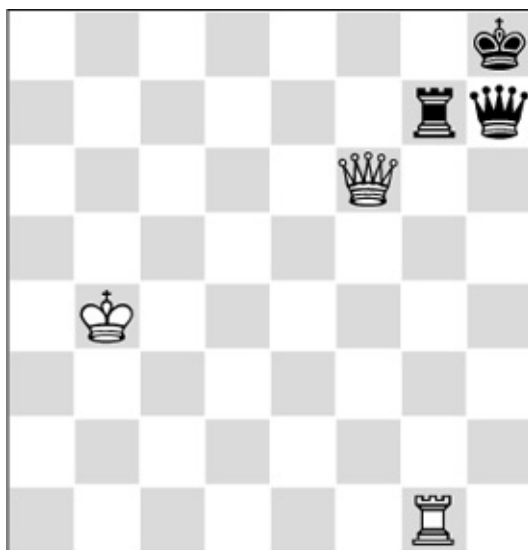
White to play

E71 (solution on page 248)



White to play

E72 (solution on page 248)



White to play and win

[E73 \(solution on page 249\)](#)



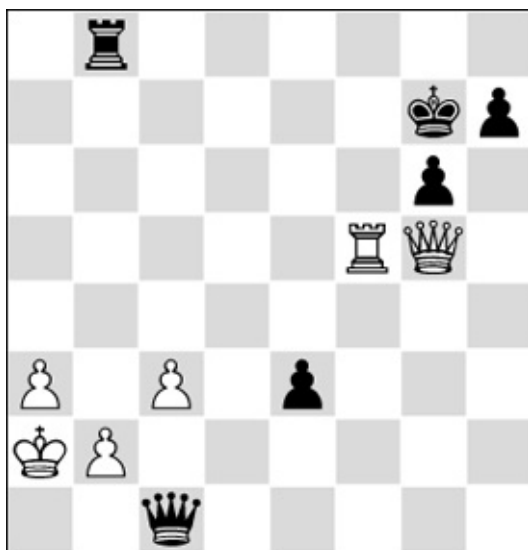
Black to play

[E74 \(solution on page 249\)](#)



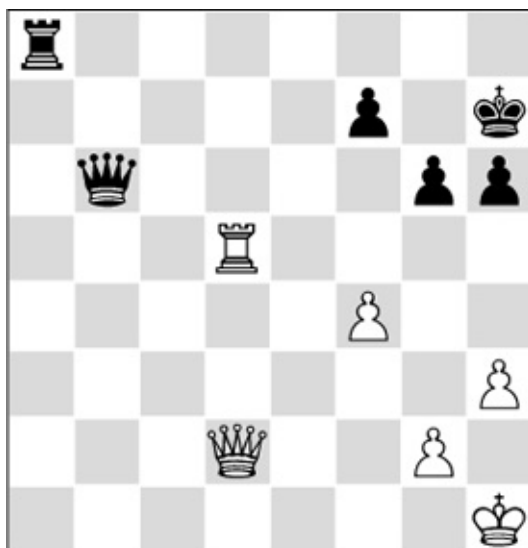
Black to play

E75 (solution on page 249)



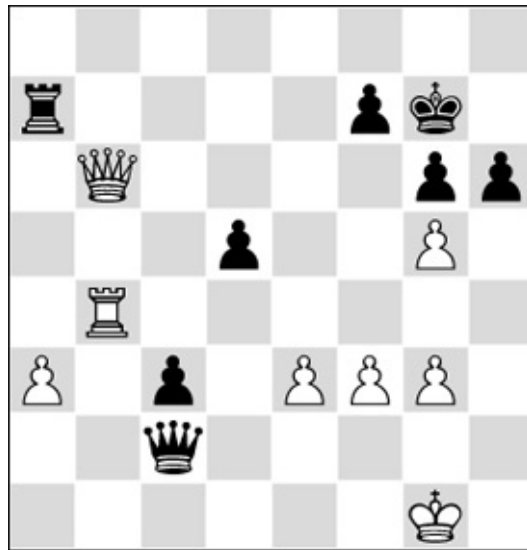
White to play

E76 (solution on page 249)



Black to play

[E77 \(solution on page 249\)](#)



Black to play

[E78 \(solution on page 250\)](#)



Black to play

Positions for playing out

P44 (solution on page 250)



White to play (30-40 minutes)

P45 (solution on page 250)



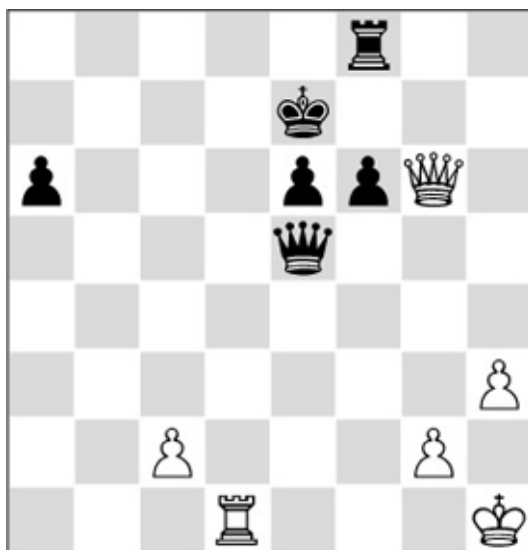
White to play (40 minutes)

[P46 \(solution on page 250\)](#)



White to play (20 minutes)

[P47 \(solution on page 251\)](#)



White to play (45-50 minutes)

P48 (solution on page 251)



White to play (45-60 minutes)

P49 (solution on page 251)



White to play (30-40 minutes)

[P50 \(solution on page 252\)](#)



White to play (45 minutes)

[P51 \(solution on page 252\)](#)



White to play (45 minutes)

[P52 \(solution on page 252\)](#)



Black to play (30 minutes)

[P53 \(solution on page 253\)](#)



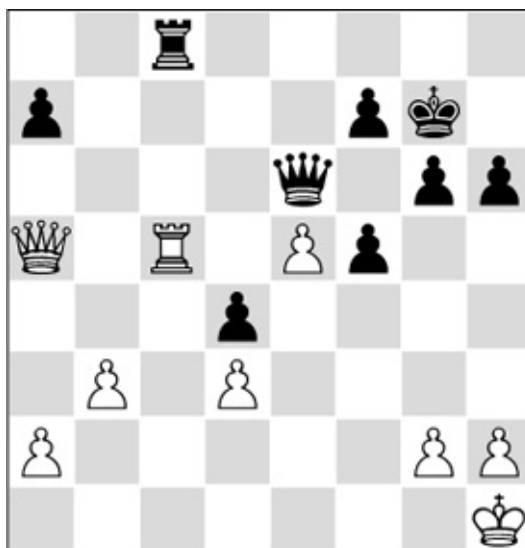
Black to play (30-40 minutes)

[P54 \(solution on page 253\)](#)



White to play (30 minutes)

[P55 \(solution on page 253\)](#)



Black to play (12-15 minutes)

Chapter 8

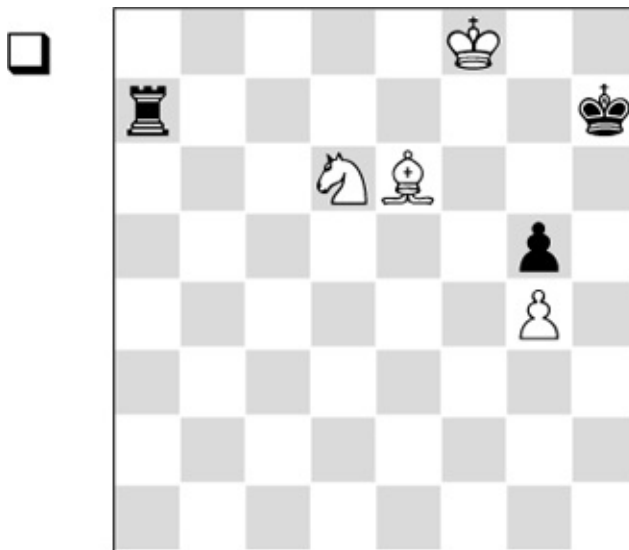
Two minor pieces against a rook

I first became interested in this subject after seeing the following game from many years ago:

Edmar Mednis

Piet Peelen

Lugano 1986



1. ♖c8!

White creates an attack on the king, with the smallest of means.

1... ♜b7

On 1... ♜a8 White plays 2. ♕f7 followed by ♘e7.

2. ♕e7 ♜b8+ 3. ♖f7 ♜a8 4. ♖f6!

4. ♘f5+ ♕h6 5. ♘g8+?? ♜xg8! 6. ♕xg8 stalemate.

4... ♜a6

The only move.

5. ♕f5 ♜b6 6. ♕g3! ♕h6 7. ♕e4 ♜b4 8. ♕d6!

8. ♘xg5? ♜xg4!.

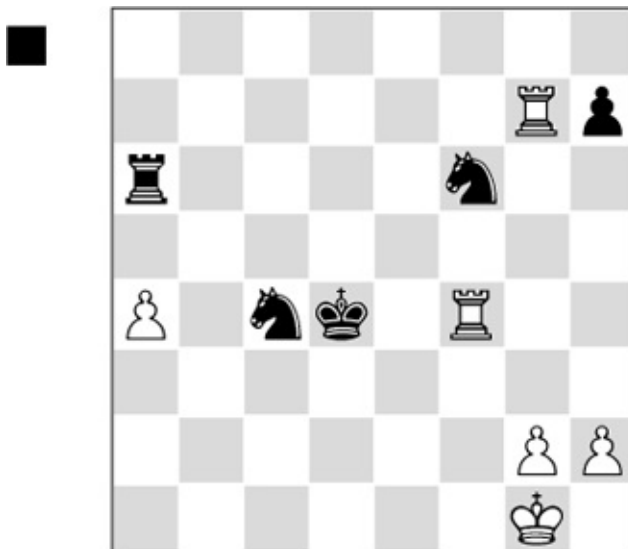
8... ♜f4+ 9. ♗f5

With the threat of 10. ♘f7#. Black resigned.

The following game had an interesting finish.

Viktor Kortchnoi Anatoly Karpov

Baguio 1978 (17)



White is better, but the activity of the black pieces gives him good chances of saving the game. Kortchnoi's desire to win at all costs leads to an nice finish.

1... ♖e4!

1... ♔d3 2. ♖f7.

2. ♖d7+?!

Driving the black king further forward. Stronger is 2. ♖xh7.

2... ♔e3 3. ♖f3+ ♔e2 4. ♖xh7 ♖cd2 5. ♖a3 ♖c6 6. ♖a1??

He also loses after 6.h4? ♖c1+ 7. ♔h2 ♖f1+ 8. ♔h3 ♖f2#. He could have drawn with 6.g3 or 6.g4.



6... ♖f3+!

If 7.gxf3 ♖g6+ 8. ♔h1 ♖f2#.

If the side with the two pieces has a passed pawn, then the win is usually achieved relatively easily. For this, the pieces must be well coordinated around the passed pawn, supporting its advance. The weaker side will usually be driven into passive defence to stop the pawn, after which the stronger side can gradually strengthen its position and go over to decisive action. Having an extra pair of rooks on the

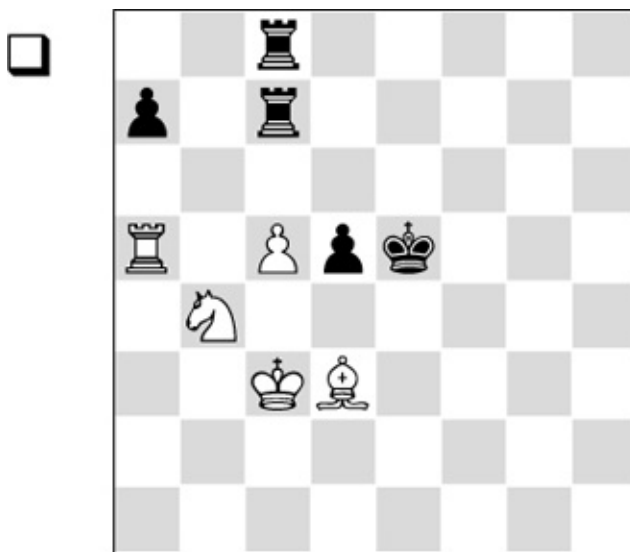
0-1

board usually helps the side with the two pieces.

Alexander Panchenko

Anatoli Vaisser

Sochi 1983 (4)



The battle revolves around the pawn c5. White must watch the whole time to ensure that Black cannot give up a rook for pawn and minor piece and leave a theoretical draw on the board.

1. ♖a6 ♜c6 2. ♙e2 ♜h6

2... ♕e4 3. ♖b4 d4 4. ♜a3.

3. ♖b4 ♜h4 4. ♙a6! ♜c7 5. ♖d3+

Driving the king away.

5... ♕e6 6. ♙b5 ♜b7 7. ♜a6+! ♕e7

Or 7... ♕f5 8. ♜a4.

8. ♜a4! ♜h3

Black loses after 8... ♜xa4 9. ♙xa4, since he loses the pawn on d5, eg.: 9... ♕e6 10. ♕d4 ♜f7 11. ♙b3.

9. ♙c6 ♜c7 10. ♜a6 ♕d8 11. ♕d4

11. ♙xd5 ♜xc5+.

11... ♜h4+ 12. ♕xd5 ♜g7 13. ♙b5 ♜h5+ 14. ♕c4 ♜g4+ 15. ♕c3

White has won a pawn and retreats temporarily.

15... ♜g3 16. ♜d6+ ♕c7 17. ♕b4 ♜g1 18. ♜d7+ ♕c8 19. ♜d4! ♜b1+ 20. ♕c4 a5 21. ♙a4!

White regroups again.

21... ♕c7 22. ♙c2 ♜b8 23. ♜g4 ♜h7 24. ♜g6!

Not 24. ♖f4 ♜b4+ 25. ♕c3 ♜h3+!

24... ♜h4+ 25. ♕c3 ♜b5 26. ♜f6 ♕b8 27. ♜f1!

Now White wants to win the a-pawn.

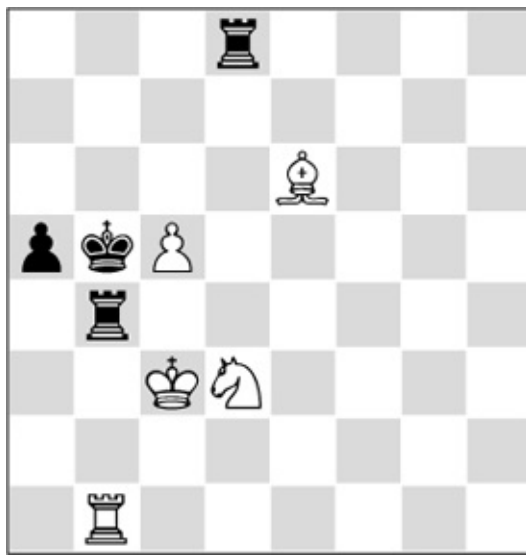
27... ♕a7 28. ♜a1 ♜h3 29. ♕c4 ♕a6 30. ♙a4 ♜b8 31. ♙d7 ♜h4+ 32. ♕d5 ♜h5+ 33. ♕d4

33. ♖e5 ♜b2!.

33... ♜h4+ 34. ♕c3

Once again, the king retreats to this square, but Black's life does not get any easier.

34... ♜d8 35. ♙e6 ♕b5 36. ♜b1+ ♜b4!



The only chance.

37. ♖c4+ ♕c6 38. ♜a1! ♜bb8

If 38... ♜a8, then 39. ♜f1.

39. ♜xa5 ♜a8 40. ♞b4+ ♕c7 41. ♞a6+!

It is better to retain the rooks.

41... ♕c6 42. ♖b5+ ♕b7 43. ♜a1

White builds a mating net.

**43... ♜d5 44. ♕c4 ♜g5 45. ♜e1 ♜g4+ 46. ♕c3 ♜g3+ 47. ♕b4 ♜g7 48. ♜e6 ♜h8 49. ♕a5
 ♜c8 50. ♜d6 ♕a8 51. ♖d7 ♜h8 52. ♕b6 ♜xd7 53. ♜xd7 ♜h6+ 54. ♕a5 ♜c6 55. ♜d6**

1-0

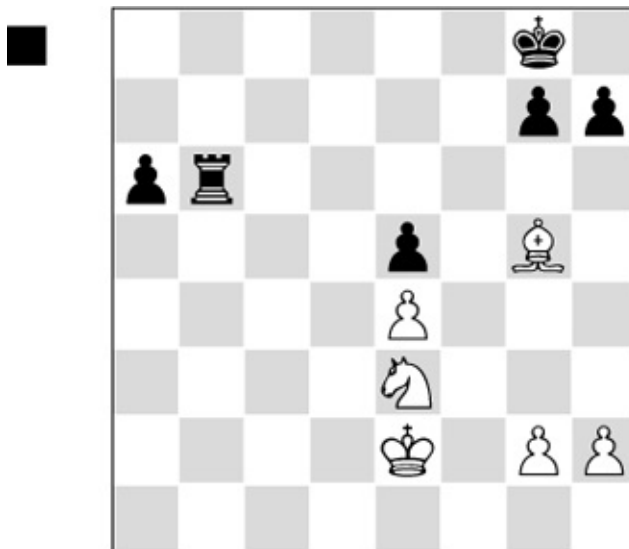
Up to now, we have looked at cases where one side has two pieces for the rook and obtained the advantage. But it often happens that a player sacrifices two pieces for a rook, hoping to obtain some sort of positional advantage, such as an attack on the king, open lines for the rook, a passed pawn, or simply material equivalent in the form of rook and two pawns against two pieces.

When the rook is stronger than the two pieces – the endgame

In the endgame, a rook and passed pawn (or the possibility of creating one) often prove stronger than two pieces. A bishop and knight, or two knights, find it hard to work well together to stop a passed pawn. The further the passed pawn is from the centre, the greater danger it represents.

Richard Réti
Efim Bogoljubow

Bad Kissingen 1928 (4)



1... ♖b4!

The rook should not only assist the advance of its own passed pawn, but also attack the enemy pawns.

2. ♔f3 ♕f7 3. ♙h4 ♜b1 4. ♞c4 ♚e6 5. ♙g3

Stronger is 5. ♙d8.

5... ♜c1 6. ♞a5

Not 6. ♙xe5 because of 6... ♜c3+ and 7... ♜xg3.

6... ♜a1 7. ♞c4 ♜a4 8. ♞e3 a5

The pawn finally starts its journey.

9. ♙e1 ♜a3 10. ♚e2 a4 11. ♞c2 ♜b3 12. ♙b4

White has managed to coordinate his pieces and blockade the passed pawn. Now Black advances his kingside pawns, with the aim of creating weaknesses there.

12...h5 13. ♙f8 g5 14.h3

Otherwise 14...g4, followed by the rook coming to h1.

14... ♜c3 15. ♚d2 ♜b3 16. ♚e2 ♜b2 17. ♚d2 ♜b1 18. ♚e2 ♜c1 19. ♚d2 ♜f1 20. ♙c5

The white pieces manage not only to stop the enemy passed pawn, but also to assist in defending their own kingside.

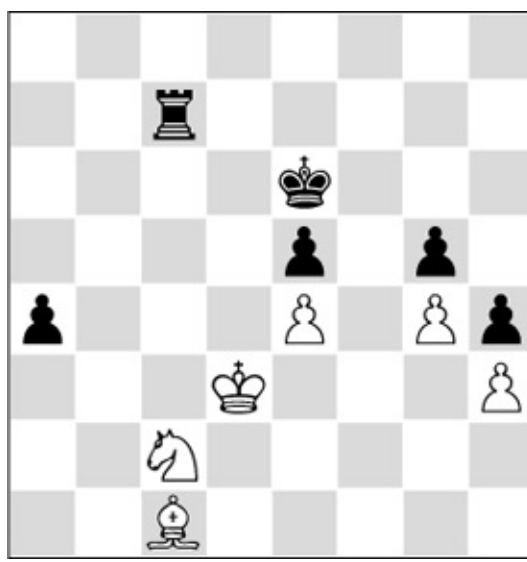
20... ♜f4 21. ♚d3 ♜f7

Now coming from the other side.

22. ♙e3 ♜d7+ 23. ♚e2 ♜g7 24.g4?

Weakening the h3-pawn, which proves decisive. It was essential to sit tight and wait. Black would then bring up his king (immediately or after ...g5-g4), but it is not clear there is a win.

24...h4! 25. ♙c1 ♜c7 26. ♚d3



26... ♖ b7!

Black does not particularly need the pawn on g5.

27. ♙ xg5 ♜ b3+ 28. ♚ c4 ♜ xh3 29. ♚ b4 a3 30. ♞ xa3 ♜ xa3!

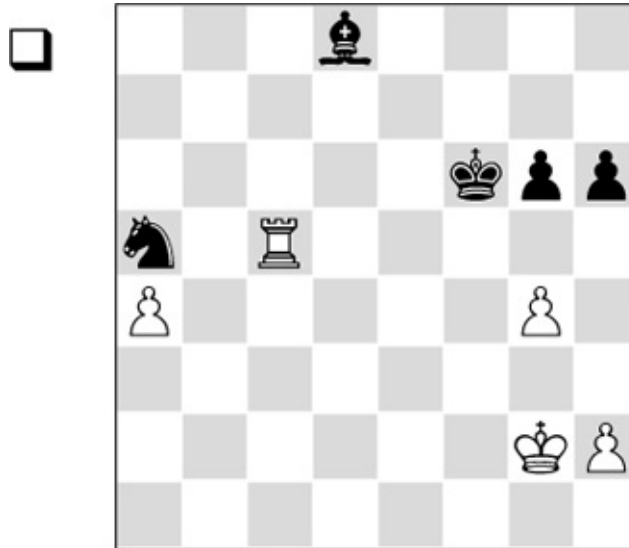
And White soon resigned.

In the following example, Black again does not manage to stop the passed a-pawn.

Yury Razuvaev

Nino Kirov

Sofia 1981



1. ♚ f3

The king heads into the centre!

1... ♚ e6 2. ♚ e4 ♙ b6 3. ♜ c8 ♚ f6 4. h4! ♚ e6 5. h5!

Fixing the h6-pawn. It was also possible to play immediately 5. ♜ h8 ♘ b7 6. ♜ xh6 ♘ c5+ 7. ♚ f4, and White should win, although he must avoid the trap 7. ♚ f3 ♚ f7, and if 8. h5, then 8... gxh5! 9. ♜xb6 hxg4+ 10. ♚xg4 ♘xa4.

5... ♚ f7

5... gxh5? 6. ♜h8!.

6. ♚ d5 gxh5 7. gxh5 ♚ f6 8. ♜ b8 ♙ e3 9. ♚ e4! ♙ d2 10. ♜ b2 ♙ e1 11. ♜ e2!

The rook chases the bishop all over the board.

11... ♖b4 12. ♜g2 ♔f7

If 12... ♔f8, then 13. ♜g6+ ♕f7 14. ♜a6, and the white a-pawn starts advancing.

13. ♜g6 ♖d2 14. ♜d6!



The bishop is overloaded. It must either give up the h6-pawn or allow the advance of the a-pawn.

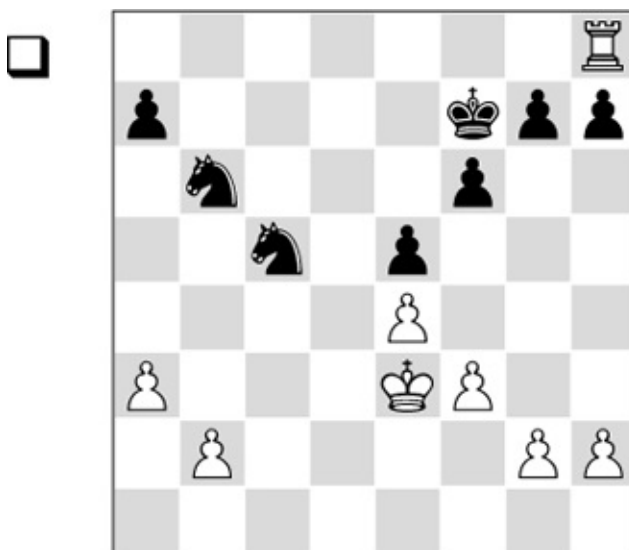
**14... ♖g5 15. ♜d5 ♘c6 16.a5 ♔e6 17.a6 ♖e3 18. ♜b5 ♖g1 19. ♜b1 ♖f2 20. ♜b2 ♖c5
21. ♜b7 ♘a7 22. ♜h7 ♔f6 23. ♔f4 ♖d6+ 24. ♔g4 ♖c5 25. ♜xh6+ ♔e5 26. ♜g6**

Black is helpless against the two passed pawns, so he resigned.

In the following game, the former World Champion first creates a passed pawn and then confidently promotes it.

Garry Kasparov
Yasser Seirawan

Thessaloniki 1988 (9)



Black has just played ...♘a6-c5 (instead of the correct ...h7-h6, with drawing chances). Kasparov immediately exploits this.

1. ♜b8

Of course not 1. ♖xh7 ♜c4+ and 2... ♜xb2.

1... ♔e7 2.b4 ♞c4+ 3. ♔e2 ♞d7 4. ♖g8!

Winning a tempo for the advance a2-a4.

4...g5

Not 4... ♜f7 5. ♖a8, winning immediately.

5.a4 a5

Otherwise 6. ♖a8.

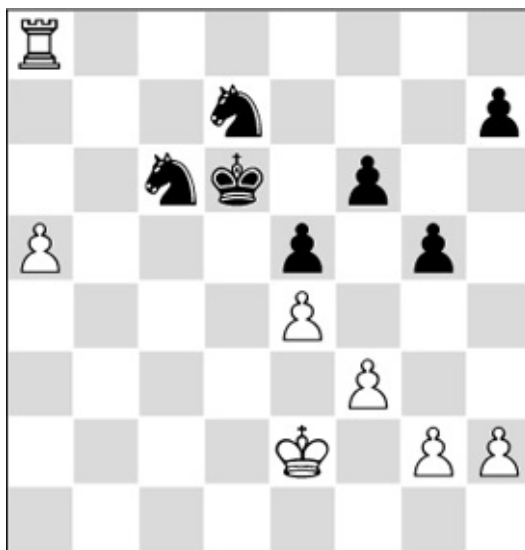
6.bxa5! ♞xa5 7. ♖a8?!

Stronger is 7. ♖g7+! ♜e6 8. ♖xh7 ♜c6 9.g3 ♜b6 10.h4 gxf4 11.gxf4 ♜xa4 12.h5 ♜d8 13. ♖c7! ♜f7 14. ♖c4 ♜b2 15. ♖b4, winning.

7... ♞c6 8.a5

White has created a passed pawn and starts to advance it.

8... ♔d6



9.g3!

Trying to advance the h-pawn as far as possible also.

9...h5 10.h4 gxf4 11.gxf4 ♞c5

On 11... ♜c7 White settles things with 12.a6 followed by 13. ♖h8 and the h-pawn marches forward!

12.a6 ♔c7 13.a7 ♔b7 14. ♖c8

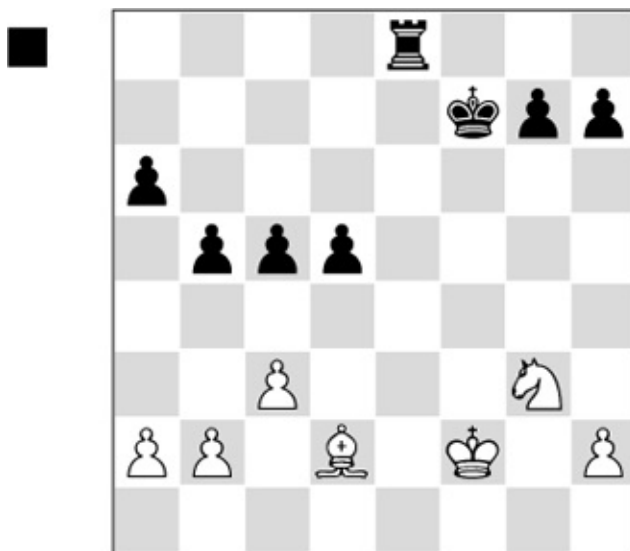
And Black resigned.

In the endgame, rook and two pawns are almost always stronger than two minor pieces. Sooner or later, the stronger side will manage to create a passed pawn, which will tie down the enemy pieces. Then it will be possible to try to create a second passed pawn, which should bring eventual success.

Ivan Morovic Fernandez

Artur Jussupow

Tunis 1985 (12)



We can say that positions of this type are theoretically winning and only require a certain amount of inaccuracy.

1... ♖e6 2. ♙e3 ♜f8+ 3. ♚e2 ♛d6 4. ♞h5 ♜f7! 5. ♞f4 ♘d4 6. cxd4 cxd4

One passed pawn has been created. Now it is time to create a second.

7. ♙d2 ♘g5 8. ♞d3 ♘g4 9. ♙h6

This blockade is only temporary.

9... ♚e6 10. ♞c5+ ♚f5 11. ♞d3 ♜c7

Deflecting the king from the kingside.

12. ♚d2 ♜c6 13. ♙g7 h5!

Black gives up the d4-pawn, but in return obtains a more dangerous passed pawn on the kingside.

14. ♙xd4 ♚e4 15. ♙c5

Or else 15... ♜d6.

15... h4 16. ♚e2 a5! 17. ♞f2+ ♚d5 18. b4 ♘g3 19. hxg3 hxg3 20. ♞d3 axb4 21. ♙e3

21. ♙xb4 ♜c2+ 22. ♚f1 ♚c4.

21... ♜c2+ 22. ♚d1 ♜c3 23. ♚e2 ♚e4 24. ♞c5+ ♚f5 25. ♞d3 ♚e4 26. ♞c5+ ♚d5 27. ♞d3 ♜c2+

The repetition of moves was just to gain time on the clock.

28. ♚d1 ♜h2 29. ♙g1

The threat was 29... ♚e4.

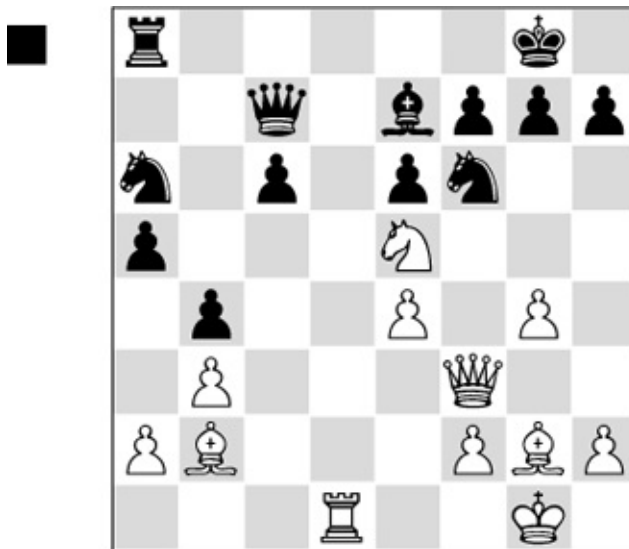
29... ♜h1 30. ♞f4+ ♚e4 31. ♞e2 ♚f3

After 32. ♚d2 the move 32... ♜h2 decides. White resigned.

Here, White wrongly won two pieces for a rook, and the endgame turned out to be very difficult.

Alexander Beliavsky Alexander Panchenko

Sukhumi 1971



Black has an extra pawn, but White's threats are very strong. It is hard to see a satisfactory defence against g4-g5. If 1...h6, then 2.h4, whilst after 1...♖d8 there follows 2.♖c1!

1... ♖d6! 2. ♖xd6?!

It was time to think about making a draw after 2.♙d3 ♗e7 3.♙f3, but White decides to win two pieces for a rook. This is tempting, but bad.

2... ♗xd6 3.g5 ♖d8!

It was this move, forcing the queen exchange, on which Black had based his hopes.

4.gxf6

4.♗f1 ♙d1 5.♙f4 ♙e1!

4... ♗d1+ 5. ♗f1 ♗xf3 6. ♗xf3 ♗c5

Black's chances are clearly superior.

7.fxg7

No better is 7.e5.

7... ♗xe4 8. ♗e2 f6!

Killing the bishop on b2.

9. ♗f1 ♗xg7 10. ♗e1 e5 11. ♗c1 ♗c3 12.a4 bxa3 13. ♗xa3 ♗xe2 14. ♗xe2 a4! 15.b4

There are more chances after 15.bxa4.

15...e4 16. ♗e1 f5 17. ♗b2+ ♗g6 18. ♗c2 ♖d3 19. ♗d4 a3! 20. ♗a1

White lost on time, but his position was hopeless anyway.

The middlegame

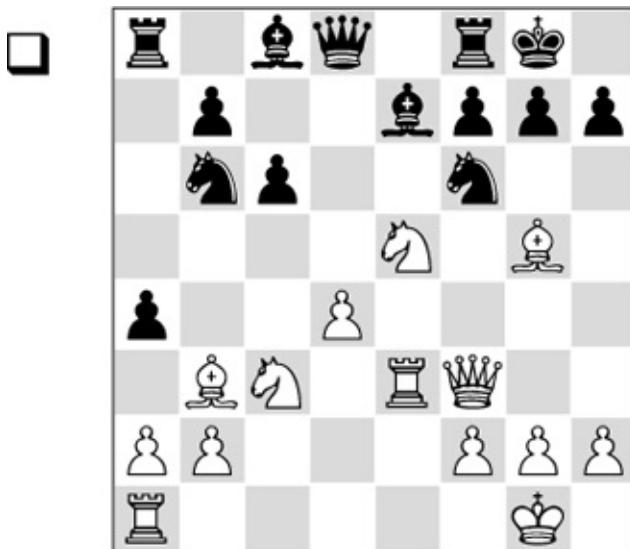
In the middlegame, the play in positions with rook and two pawns versus two pieces is somewhat different. Here one must take into account the opponent's attacking possibilities, and so there is usually no time to spend creating a passed pawn, for example. Everything is decided by the activity of the rooks. We will examine three basic cases, when the rook proves stronger than the pieces in the middlegame.

The attack on the king

If there are open lines on the board, then the rook can show itself to its best advantage.

Nigel Short Marcelo Tempone

Mexico 1981 (5)



By sacrificing two pieces for a rook, White obtains an irresistible attack. The rook works miracles on the e-file.

1. ♖xf7+! ♜xf7 2. ♘xf7 ♙xf7 3. ♖ae1 ♖f8

3... ♗d6 is even worse.

4. ♘e4 ♜a5

Nor is he saved by 4... ♗d5 5. ♗xf6 ♗xf6 6. ♗xf6 ♜xf6 (or 6... ♗xf6 7. ♗h5+ and 8. ♖g3+) 7. ♗h5+ ♗g8 8. ♖f3; and on 4... ♗g4 the simple 5. ♗xf6 ♗xf3 6. ♗xd8 wins.

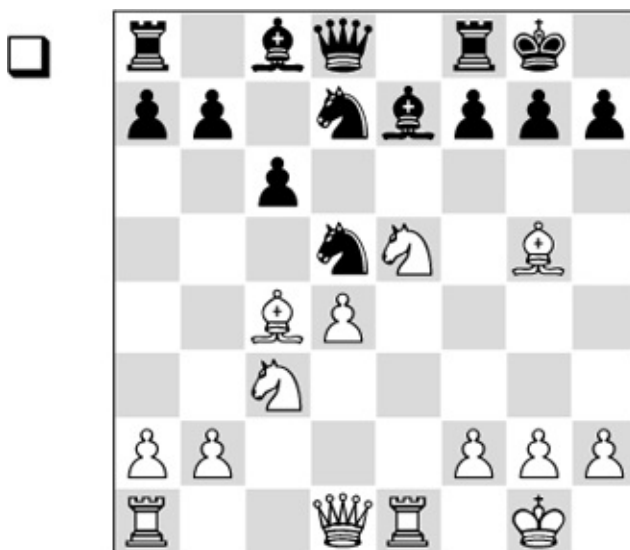
However, in this latter line 5... ♗d7 6. ♗g5+ ♗g8 7. ♗g3 ♗d5 8. ♗e5 ♗xe3 9. fxe3 would be far more tenacious.

5. ♘xf6 ♗xf6 6. ♖e8 ♙d6 7. ♗h5+ ♗g8 8. ♖1e7! ♙xe7 9. ♖xe7 ♖xe7 10. ♗e8+

Black resigned. Simply a crush.

Leonid Yurtaev Denis Frolov

Tømsk 1998 (9)



With his last move, Black incautiously played ... ♘f6-d5, striving for exchanges. This is what it led to:

1. ♖xd5! ♜xg5 2. ♜xf7+!

Of course.

2... ♖xf7 3. ♘xf7 ♙xf7 4. ♚h5+ ♜f8 5. ♚xh7 ♘f6 6. ♚h8+ ♘g8 7. d5!?

7. ♖ad1 is also good.

7... ♜d7

7...cxd5 8. ♖e5!?, but the move 7... ♜d2!? deserved consideration.

8. ♖ad1 ♜b6?

More tenacious was 8... ♙a5, keeping an eye on the rook at e1.

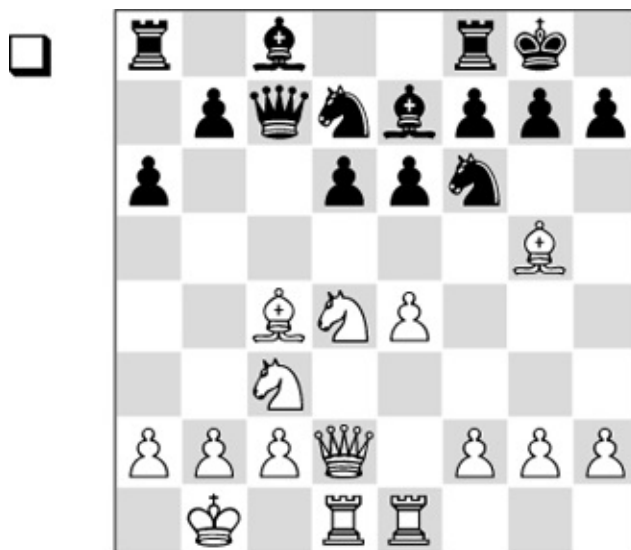
9. ♘e4 ♜f6 10. ♘xf6 gxf6 11. d6! ♜e8 12. ♖d3 ♙a5 13. ♖e7 ♜g5 14. h4

Black resigned: 14... ♙h6 15. ♖h7.

Vasily Byvshev

Semen Furman

Kiev 1954 (16)



1. ♜xe6!

In the middlegame, it is usually unfavourable to sacrifice two pieces for rook and two pawns, but here, the great strength of the white rooks in the centre decides matters.

1...fxe6 2. ♘xe6 ♙c4 3. ♘xf8 ♜xf8 4. f4!

White has a strong initiative.

4... ♘b6

On 4...b5 there would follow 5.e5 followed by the advance of the e-pawn.

5. ♜xf6 gxf6 6. ♚f2 ♙c7 7. ♚d4! ♜e6

If 7... ♜e7, then 8.e5!, decisively ripping open the black king, after which the white rooks will come into the attack, utilising all the open lines.

8. ♚xf6

White already has three pawns.

8... ♖e8 9. f5 ♜c8 10. ♖e3! ♜g7 11. ♖g3 ♙h8 12. ♚xd6

Now all is clear.

12... ♚xd6 13. ♖xd6 ♘c4 14. ♖d1 b5 15. ♖gd3 ♜f6 16. ♘d5 ♜xb2 17. ♘c7 ♖e7

18. ♖d8+ ♚g7 19. ♖xc8

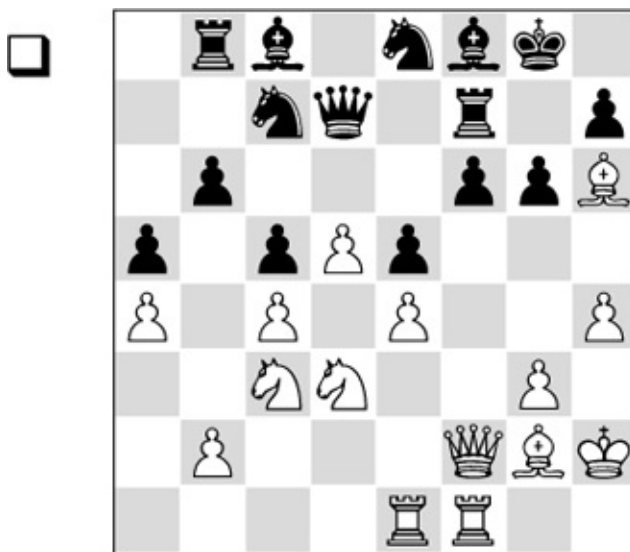
And White won easily.

Badly-placed enemy pieces

Predrag Nikolic

Anthony Miles

Zagreb 1987 (12)



White's position is superior, but the black position is not easy to breach. Nikolic gives up two pieces for a rook, hoping to exploit his opponent's passive minor pieces.

1. ♖xe5! fxe5 2. ♕xf7+ ♖xf7 3. ♖xf7 ♗xh6

Of course, not 3... ♕xf7? 4. ♖f1+.

4. ♖ef1 ♖b7 5. ♗h3! ♗xh3

If 5... ♘d6, then 6. ♗xc8 ♘xc8 7. ♘b5!.

6. ♕xh3 ♗d6 7. ♖7f6!

White tries to break down the blockade even at the cost of a pawn. However, 7. ♖d7 ♘ce8 8. ♖d8 was stronger, with the advantage.

7... ♗ce8!?

There was counterplay available with 7... ♘xc4 8. b3 ♘d2 9. ♖1f2 ♘e8 (after 9... ♖b8 — the threat was 10. ♖f7 — 10. ♖c6 ♘e8 11. d6 ♖d8 12. d7! White wins) 10. ♖e6 ♖b8.

8. ♖e6 ♖f7 9. ♖xf7 ♕xf7 10. b3

10. ♖xe5? ♘g7 is bad, and the white rook is trapped.

10... ♗f8

Black seems to have managed to build some kind of fortress, but his position remains difficult.

11. ♗b5 ♗xb5

Nor is 11... ♘xe4 12. ♖xb6 any better, whilst after the waiting tactics ... ♗e7-f8-e7, White improves his position by advancing his kingside pawns.

12. cxb5

12. axb5 is also good.

12... ♗d6 13. g4!

13. h5 is worse on account of 13... gxf5 14. ♗h4 ♗e7+.

13... ♗c7 14. g5

More accurate is 14. ♖c6 ♗e7 15. h5, retaining good winning chances.

14... ♗d6 15. ♖xe5 ♗xb5 16. ♖e6 ♗d4 17. ♖f6+ ♕e7

Not 17...♔g7 18.e5! ♕xe5 19.♖xb6, and Black is completely paralysed. But 17...♔e8 was more accurate.

18.h5 gxh5 19.♖h6

Stronger than 19.♔h4.



19...♕e5

The black pieces obtain some freedom, but it is too late. Now 19...♘xb3 was bad because of 20.♖xh7+ ♔d8 21.♖xc7 ♔xc7 22.g6, and the pawn promotes.

20.♖xh7+ ♔f8 21.♖b7 ♘xb3

Nor is he saved by 21...♘f3 22.♖xb6 ♘xg5+ 23.♔h4 ♘xe4 24.♖e6.

22.d6 ♗d4

22...♕xd6 23.♖xb6.

23.♖b8+ ♔f7 24.d7 ♗e6

24...♕c7 25.♖c8.

25.d8 ♖ ♗xd8 26.♖xd8 c4 27.♖c8 c3 28.♖c4!

Prophylaxis. The threat was 28...b5 29.axb5 a4.

28...♔e6 29.♔h4 ♔d6 30.g6 b5 31.axb5 a4 32.b6 a3 33.g7

1-0

Rustam Kasimdzhanov

Arkady Vul

Cappelle la Grande 1998 (2)



The poor position of the black pieces allows White to develop an irresistible attack on the black king.

1. ♖xf7! ♜xf7 2. ♖b5!

Worse is 2. ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 3. ♖b3+ ♔g6!.

2... ♜b8 3. ♖g6 cxb5 4. ♖xf7+ ♔h8 5. ♗e6 e4 6. f3! ♖b6 7. fxe4 ♗xe6 8. ♖xe6 ♖c4 9. ♜xc4! ♗h2+ 10. ♖h1 bxc4 11. ♜xf6!

Continuing the attack energetically.

11... ♗xf6 12. ♖xf6+ ♔h7 13. ♖f5+ ♖g7 14. ♗c3 ♖d6 15. d5+!

Worse is 15. e5 ♜f8! 16. ♖g4+ ♖g6.

15... ♖g8 16. e5 ♖f8 17. ♖g6+ ♖g7 18. ♖xg7+ ♖xg7 19. ♖xh2 ♖f7 20. e4 b5 21. e6+ ♖e7 22. e5 a5 23. ♗e1 b4 24. ♗h4+ ♖e8 25. d6

1-0

Vlatko Kovacevic

Julius Armas

Thessaloniki 1988 (9)



In this position, there suddenly followed:

1. ♖xf7+! ♜xf7 2. ♜xc8+ ♖xc8 3. ♘g5 d5 4. ♘xf7 ♚xf7

As a result of his sacrifice, White has obtained control of the c-file and weakened the enemy king. It is not easy to coordinate the black pieces, since they lack secure posts in the centre. White has a strong initiative.

5. ♘f3 ♖a6?!

It was worth considering the move 5... ♖b6.

6. ♘g5+ ♚g8 7. ♖d4 ♘b6

After 7...e5 both 8. ♖c5 and 8. ♖b2 are possible, but this was still the best decision for Black.

8. b5 ♖c8

8... ♖b7 9. ♗e6.

9. ♚b4 ♚b7 10. ♜c6 ♘e8

After 10... ♖d7 White decides things with 11. ♚xe7 ♖xc6 12. ♚e6+ and 13. bxc6.

11. a4 e5

Weakening the position, but it is not easy to know what else to recommend. After 11... ♖d7 12. ♚xe7 ♖xc6 13. ♚e6+ ♚h8 14. bxc6 ♚c8 15. ♗f7+ Black is mated.

12. ♖xb6 axb6 13. ♚b3 ♘f6



14. ♘e4!

The decisive blow.

14... ♘xe4 15. ♚xd5+ ♖e6 16. ♚xe6+ ♚f7 17. ♜xb6 ♚xe6 18. ♜xe6 ♘c5 19. b6! ♖f8 20. ♜xe5 ♘a6 21. ♜d5

1-0

Rook and two pawns for two minor pieces

Rook and two pawns can be stronger than two pieces in the middlegame, if there are not many pieces left on the board. It is important in such cases that the king is well protected. As we already know, the stronger side can go into an endgame, where his advantage will usually only be greater.

Ratmir Kholmov Constantin Ionescu

Baile Herculane 1984



White enhanced his advantage with a simple combination.

1. ♖xe6!

A chance not to be missed.

1... fxe6

1... ♖c6 fails to 2. ♕d5! ♜xd5 3. ♜xd8 ♜xd8 4. ♜xd5!

2. ♕xe6+ ♜f8 3. ♕xd7 ♜xd7 4. ♜xd7 ♜xd7 5.f3

Now White plays with no risk and with good winning chances.

5...h5

Otherwise 6.g4.

6. ♜e5 ♜f7 7.c4 ♜c8 8.b3

White strengthens his position, at the same time not fearing the exchange of queens.

8... ♜e6 9. ♜f2 ♜xe5

Otherwise the black king will feel very uncomfortable.

10. ♜xe5 g6 11. ♜e3

White's plan is to put his king on g5, whilst his rook attacks the queenside pawns.

11... ♜d7

11... ♜f5 12.c5.

12. ♜d5 ♜e6 13. ♜f4 ♜b7 14. ♜d2 ♜e7



15. ♖xd7+!?

And White won.

Another possibility, instead of this quite complicated liquidation, was the simple 15.g4 or 15.♔g5, and White's victory is only a matter of time.

Andrey Sokolov
Alexey Kuzmin

Sochi 1982



Black wants to strengthen his position with 1...♘d6, so White should do something quickly.

1. ♖g5+ ♔g8 2. ♖xf7!? ♖xf7 3. ♗xh6 ♘d6 4. ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 5. f3

In this game too, the rook and two pawns prove stronger than the two minor pieces.

5...♗b3 6. ♖c1 ♗xh6

6...♗b2!?.

7. ♗xh6 ♗e8 8. h4 ♗b2 9. ♗h2

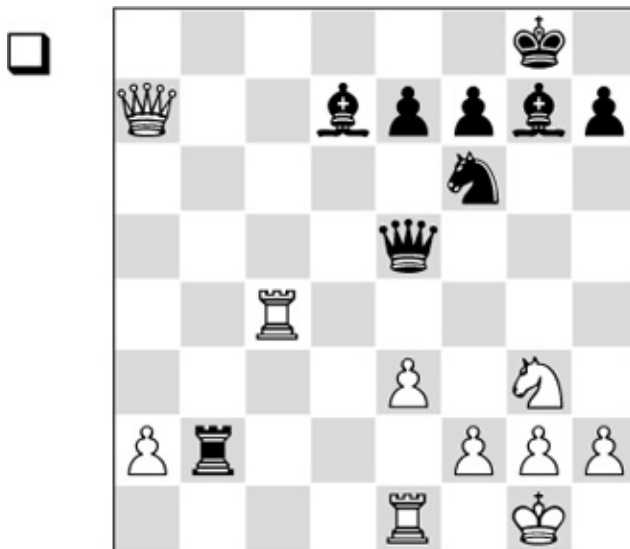
White's king is safe.

9...♗f7 10. ♗g5 ♗f8 11. ♗d8+ ♗g7 12. ♗g5 ♗f8 13. ♖d1! ♗xc3 14. ♖c1 ♗xb4 15. ♖xc7 ♗e8 16. ♖d7 ♗c5 17. f4

And White won.

Alexey Alexandrov Artyom Timofeev

Dubai 2003 (6)



White is better. He has sufficient material equivalent for the two minor pieces, and his king position is the more secure. He also has one other trump...

1.a4!

Passed pawns should be pushed. This endgame rule applies in the middle-game too.

1...h5 2.h3 ♖e6

Better is 2... ♜a2, keeping an eye on the pawn.

3. ♜d4 ♗d5 4. ♕c5

Now pushing the pawn any further is unfavourable, so White strengthens the position of his most important piece. After 4.a5 ♘e4 Black could create an attack.

4...e6 5. ♕c8+ ♗f8 6. ♕c1 ♜a2 7. ♜e2

Exchanging Black's most active piece.

7... ♜a3 8. ♜c2 ♗d6?



9. ♜c3! ♜xc3

After 9... ♜a2 10.f4 the queen dies in the centre of the board.

10. ♕xc3 ♕g5 11.h4

11.e4 h4.

11... ♔g6?!

Stronger 11... ♖g7, and if 12.e4, then 12... ♗xe4.

12. ♗d3! ♔g7

Exchanging queens is bad, but the text is even worse...

13.e4 ♗xg3 14.exd5 ♗e5 15. ♖c4 ♔h6 16.dxe6 fxe6 17.a5 ♘d5 18.a6 ♗f4 19. ♔e4

1-0

Positions for playing out

P56 (solution on page 253)



White to play

P57 (solution on page 254)



Black to play

[P58 \(solution on page 254\)](#)



White to play

[P59 \(solution on page 255\)](#)



White to play

P60 (solution on page 255)



Black to play

P61 (solution on page 256)



Black to play

P62 (solution on page 256)



White to play

P63 (solution on page 257)



White to play

[P64 \(solution on page 257\)](#)



White to play

[P65 \(solution on page 258\)](#)



Black to play

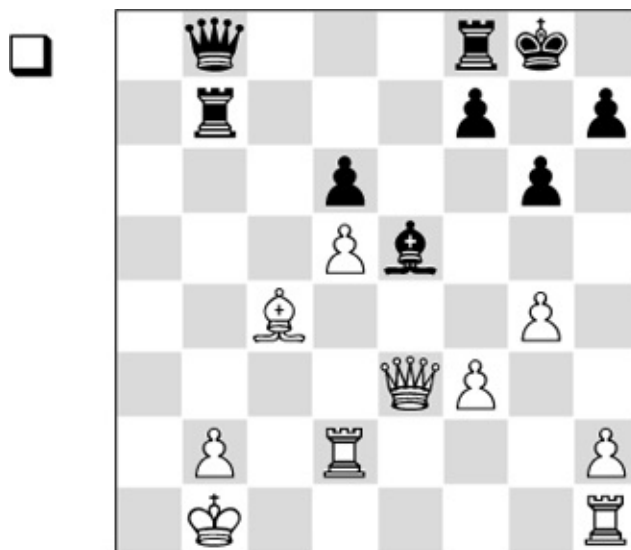
Chapter 9

Opposite-coloured bishops with many pieces on the board

In the middlegame, the presence of opposite-coloured bishops has a significant effect on the assessment of the position and the choice of plan. The more pieces are on the board, the harder it is for the weaker side to defend – a pure opposite coloured endgame is still too far off, and with it his drawing chances. The stronger side, utilising his extra bishop, has the possibility of including additional pieces in the attack also. At the same time, the advantage of the opposite-coloured bishops has a lasting character (because of the defender's inability to exchange bishops), and a lengthy defence often leads to errors and inaccuracies.

Gata Kamsky
Garry Kasparov

Manila 1992 (7)



Black's position is clearly superior, thanks to his active bishop and the possibility of creating an attack. The bishop on c4 is just a spectator and cannot help in the defence.

1. ♖e2

1.b3 ♜c8 2. ♕c2 ♜xc4+ 3.bxc4 ♜b2+.

1... ♖a7 2. ♜c1 ♜a8 3.b3

Now the dark squares in White's camp become hopelessly weak, but there was already no defence.

3... ♗f4 4. ♕c2 ♜e7 5. ♕d3 ♕c5 6. ♜b1 ♜e3 7. ♕d4 ♜a2+ 8. ♕d1

8. ♜b2 ♜xb2+ 9. ♖xb2 ♗e5 10. ♖a2 ♜c3+.



8... ♖xf3

Even stronger: 8... ♜e8!? 9. ♜d3 ♜b4 10. ♜c3 ♜xc3 11. ♜xc3 ♜d2+ 12. ♔c1 ♜e1#.

9. ♔xf4 ♖xf4 10. ♖xa2 ♔g1+ 11. ♔c2 ♔xh2+

0-1

Mihail-Viorel Ghinda Stefan Kindermann

Thessaloniki 1984 (4)



White brings his bishop to life with a pawn sacrifice and begins a strong attack. The light-squared bishop proves clearly stronger than its colleague.

1.d6! ♖xd6

1... ♜xd6? 2. ♜b7 g6 3.h6, but 1... ♜b8 is stronger.

2. ♔b7 e4

Or 2... ♜a7 3. ♜xg7.

3. ♖gxe4 ♔xh5

3... ♔f6 4. ♜f7 ♜dd8 5. ♜e8; 3... ♜dd8 4.h6.

4. ♔e7! ♜dd8 5. ♖h4

5. ♜xd4? ♜de8 6. ♜f4 ♜g8!.

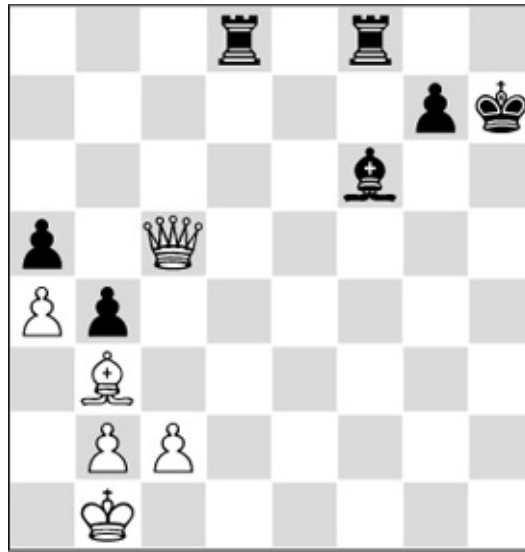
5... ♔f5

After 5...♖c5 there would follow 6.♗eh1! ♗f1+ 7.♕a2!, winning, whilst if 5...♖g6, then 6.♗xd4 ♗de8 7.♖h4.

6. ♗ eh1 ♗ f6

6... ♗ fe8 7. ♗ xd4; 6... ♗ de8 7. ♗ xh7+ ♖ xh7 8. ♗ xh7+ ♔ xh7 9. ♖ h4+.

7. ♗ xh7+ ♔ xh7 8. ♗ xh7+ ♖ xh7 9. ♖ c5!



The white attack is not stopped after the exchange of two rooks for the queen. Queen and bishop are almost always stronger than two rooks and a bishop of the opposite colour, because the queen is more mobile than the rooks.

9...g6 10. ♖ xa5 ♗ d4 11. ♖ c7+ ♔ h6 12. ♖ a2 g5 13. ♗ c4! g4 14. ♗ d3 ♗ g7 15. ♖ e7! ♗ f6 16. ♖ e3+

16. ♖ e1 ♔ g5 17. ♖ e5+.

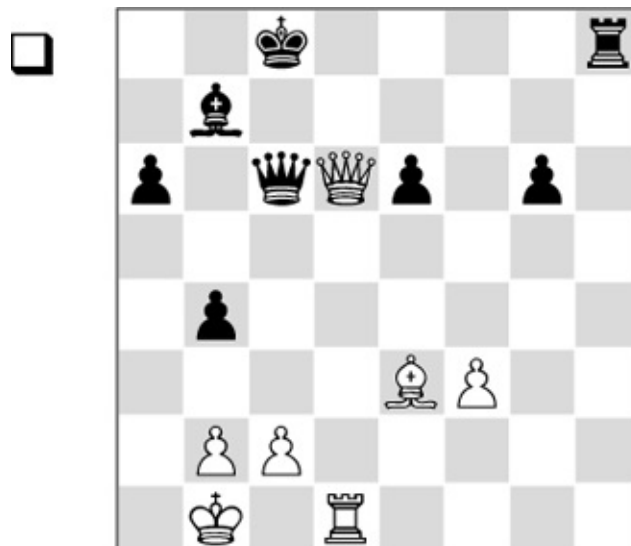
16... ♗ df4 17.a5 ♗ f8 18. ♖ e6+ ♗ 8f6 19. ♖ g8 ♗ f7 20.a6 ♗ g5 21. ♖ d8+ ♗ h5 22. ♖ a5+

Black resigned: the a6-pawn costs a rook.

John Nunn

John van der Wiel

Wijk aan Zee 1982 (12)



Black's position is clearly worse, since White has a strong attack on the insufficiently-defended

enemy king. A decisive role is played by the excellent cooperation of the white queen and bishop, whilst the black bishop remains a spectator.

1. ♖e5!

The queen should be centralised. By winning back the pawn with 1. ♖xb4 ♜d8 2. ♜xd8+ ♔xd8, White would squander part of his advantage.

1... ♜d8 2. ♜xd8+ ♔xd8 3. ♞g5+ ♜d7 4. ♖g7+ ♔d6 5. ♖f8+ ♔d5 6. ♖xb4

The pawn has been regained and the attack continues.

6... e5 7. ♖e4+ ♔d6 8. ♖xg6+ ♔d5 9. ♖f7+ ♔d4 10. ♖b3! e4 11. ♞e3+ ♜e5 12. f4+! ♜f6 13. ♖g8 ♜d5 14. ♞d4+ ♜e7 15. ♖g7+ ♔d6

Now White ends the game in technical style:

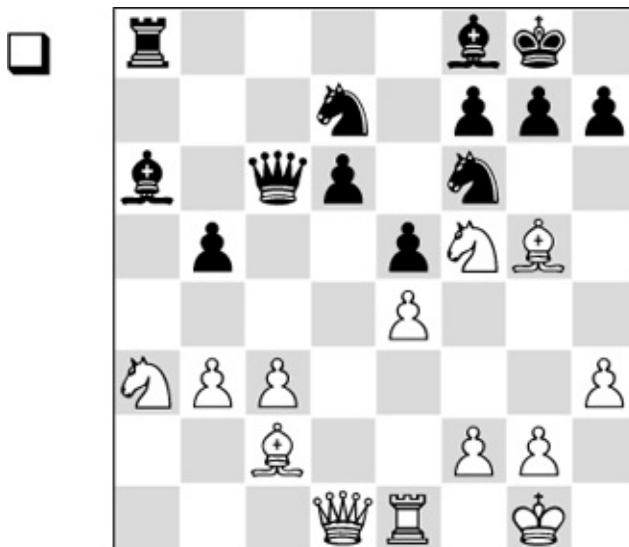


16. b3! ♔c6 17. ♞e5 ♔d7 18. ♖h6+ ♔d5 19. ♖b6 ♔c6 20. ♖d8+ ♔e6 21. ♖f6+ ♔d7 22. ♖g7+ ♔e6 23. ♖g4+ ♔f7 24. f5 ♜h6 25. f6

Black resigned: further material losses are unavoidable.

Garry Kasparov Anatoly Karpov

New York/Lyon 1990 (6)



White sacrifices a pawn to activate his light-squared bishop.

1.c4! bxc4 2.bxc4! ♖xc4 3.♗xc4 ♘xc4 4.♖b3 ♘c3?!

More cautious is 4...♗b4 5.♗e3 g6 6.♗h6+ ♖xh6 7.♖xh6 when White has compensation for the pawn. After 5...♗xe4 6.♖xf7+ ♘xf7 7.♗d5+ ♘g6 8.♗e6+ ♗df6 (8...♗ef6 9.♖xf6! ♗xf6 10.♗g3+ ♘h5 11.♗xg7+ ♖xg7 12.♗f5+, mating; 8...♘xg5 9.h4+ ♘h5 10.♗f7+ ♘g4 11.♗xe4+ ♗xe4 12.f3+ wins) 9.♖xf6 ♗b1+ (9...gxf6 10.♗g8+! and mate on g4) 10.♘h2 ♗xf6 11.♗g3+ ♘h5 12.♗xg7+ ♖xg7 13.♗f7+ ♘h4 14.♗xg7 White wins.

5.♗h2!

Preparing a rook transfer.

5...h6 6.♖xf6 ♗xf6 7.♗e3 ♘c7 8.♗f3! ♗h7

The threat was 9.♗xh6.

9.♗e3 ♘e7 10.♗d5 ♗xd5 11.♖xd5 ♗a7 12.♗b3 f6?

Weakening all the light squares around the king. Better is 12...♘g8! 13.♗xf7 (13.♗b8 ♗c7 14.♗xf7 ♗xb8 15.♗b7+ ♘h7 16.♗xb8 ♖e7 followed by g6, h5) 13...♗xf7 14.♖xf7+ ♗xf7 15.♗e6 g5! 16.♘g3! (16.♗g6+ ♖g7 17.♗xd6 ♗xf2 with a draw) 16...♘g7 17.f3 ♗f4, and it is very difficult for White to break through.

13.♗b8 g6 14.♗c3

Even better is 14.g4!? ♗d7 15.♗c3 ♗d8 16.♗b6 ♖g7 17.♗c7 ♗d7 18.♗c8 followed by ♗b8.

14...h5 15.g4 ♗h6



16.gxh5!?

Losing part of his advantage. After 16.♗c8! White retains the initiative.

16...♗xh5

16...gxh5? 17.♗g3.

17.♗c8?

White gets the advantage after 17.♗c8! ♘h6 18.♗g3 ♘h7 19.♗g4 ♗e8 20.♗h4+ ♘g7 (20...♖h6 21.♗f3) 21.♗h5 ♗a3 22.♗g4 ♗f3 23.♘g2 ♗f4 24.♗g3 and then ♖e6-f5.

17...♖g7 18.♗e8

After analysing the adjourned position, the players agreed a draw, in view of the possible line 18...♗d7 19.♗g8 f5! 20.exf5, and chances are equal. Bad is 19...♗a3? 20.♗h8+! ♖h6 (20...♖xh8 21.♗xh8+ ♘g5 22.h4+ ♘g4 23.♗xf6 with the threat of 24.♖e6+) 21.♖b3! with numerous threats.

Anatoly Karpov Garry Kasparov

Moscow 1985 (4)



White's position is clearly superior, on account of the weakened diagonal b1-h7 and the pawns on d5 and e6. The square c3 does not really give Black anything. Karpov gradually creates an irresistible attack on the black king.

1. ♖h5! b5 2. ♖g6 ♗d8 3. ♖d3 b4 4. ♘g4

Already the unpleasant 5. ♙g6 is threatened.

4... ♚e8 5.e4!

Opening the game, so as to get at the enemy king.

5... ♖g5 6. ♖c2 ♖xc2?

6... ♙f7!?, and 6... ♙c6!? were both worth considering.

7. ♖xc2 ♘c6 8. ♘e2 ♘c5 9. ♖f1 ♘c3 10.exd5 exd5 11. ♖b1 ♘d2 12. ♘e5!?

Also good is 12. ♙e6!? ♗h4 13. ♙g6 (13.g3 ♗xg3) 13... ♗xf2+ 14. ♖h1 ♖g8 15. ♙h7+ ♖f7 16. ♗g6+ ♖e6 17. ♙xg7 ♖f6 18. ♗h5.

12... ♖d8 13. ♘f5 ♗g8 14. ♘e6+ ♗h8 15. ♘g6 ♗g8 16. ♘e6+ ♗h8 17. ♖f5!

Preparing 18. ♖e1 and on 18... ♖f8, 19. ♙e8.

17... ♘c3 18. ♘g6 ♗g8 19. ♖e6+ ♗h8 20. ♖f5 ♗g8 21.g3!

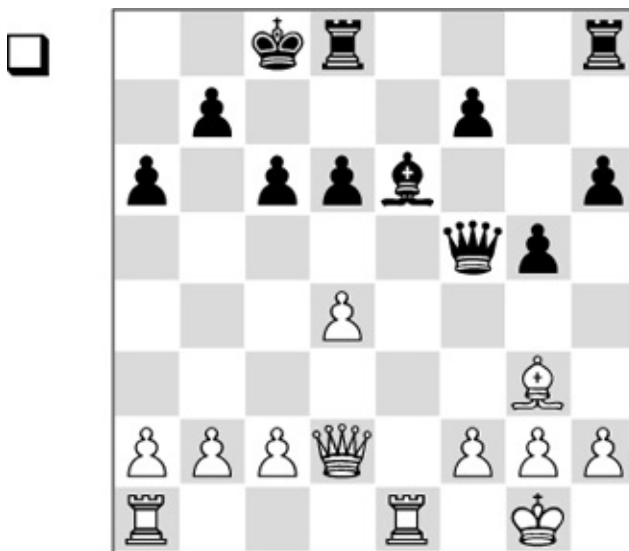
So as to be able to play ♖g2 and include the rook in the attack with ♖d1-d3-f3.

21... ♗f8 22. ♘g2 ♘f6 23. ♘h7 ♘f7 24.h4 ♖d2 25. ♖d1 ♖c3 26. ♖d3 ♖d6 27. ♖f3 ♗e7 28. ♘h8 d4 29. ♘c8 ♖f6 30. ♘c5+ ♗e8 31. ♖f4 ♗b7+ 32. ♖e4+ ♗f7 33. ♘c4+ ♗f8 34. ♖h7 ♖f7 35. ♘e6 ♗d7 36. ♘e5

White's threats can only be met by 36... ♙c8, but then there follows 37. ♗g6 and mate on e8 if the rook moves. Black resigned.

Leonid Yudasin Gennady Sagalchik

Kemerovo 1995 (6)



By exploiting the weakness of the dark squares around the enemy king, White quickly creates a decisive attack.

1. ♔b4! ♕d5

1... ♖b5 2. ♗xd6.

2. b3! h5

More logical was 2...f5!?, not fearing 3.c4 ♖xd4 4. ♖ad1 ♖c5 5. ♗d2 f4 6. ♗xf4 gxf4 7. ♖xe6 d5 with some counterplay.

3. ♖ad1! b5

Forced, because he loses at once after 3...h4 4.c4.

4. ♔a3! ♕c7

If 4...h4 5. ♖xa6+ ♔c7 (5...♔d7 6. ♗e5! h3 7.f3) 6.c4 and 7.d5 and the position collapses.

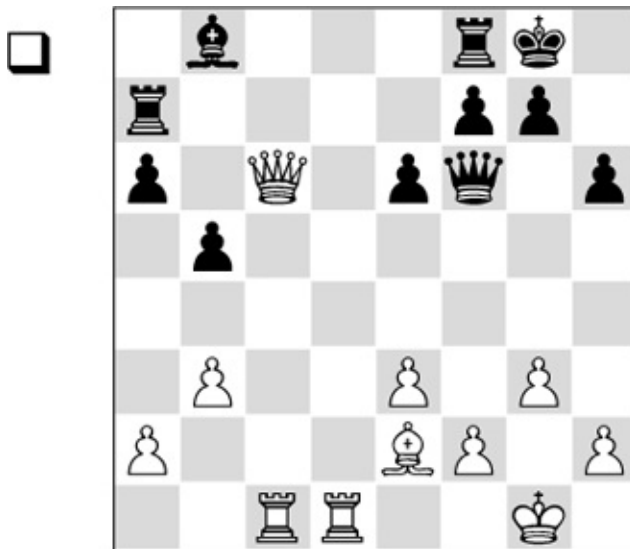
5.c4! bxc4 6.bxc4 ♕xc4 7.d5! ♗xd5 8. ♖e7+ ♕c8 9. ♗xd6 ♖d7 10. ♔b2! ♖xe7 11. ♔b8+

And in view of the forced line 11...♔d7 12. ♖c7+ ♔e6 13. ♖xe7+ ♔f5 14. ♖e5+ ♔g6 15. ♖xh8 Black resigned.

Even in a positional game, where it is not possible to start an immediate attack, it is not easy to defend. This is underlined by the following example.

Garry Kasparov Helgi Olafsson

Dubai 1986 (7)



Material is equal, but White controls the open files and his bishop on e2 is much stronger than the spectator on b8.

1. ♖b6! ♕e7 2. ♖c6 ♗e5 3. ♗f3 ♖b8 4. ♖a5!

Attacking the pawn on a6.

4... ♗c7 5. ♖c3 ♖b6 6. h4! g6 7. ♖c5! ♖b8 8. h5 g5 9. ♖c6 ♗b6

After 9... ♖b6 it would be hard to bring the rook a7 into play.

10. ♖g2 b4 11. ♖e5 ♖c7 12. ♖dd6 ♖xc6 13. ♖xc6 ♕d8 14. ♗g4! ♖b7

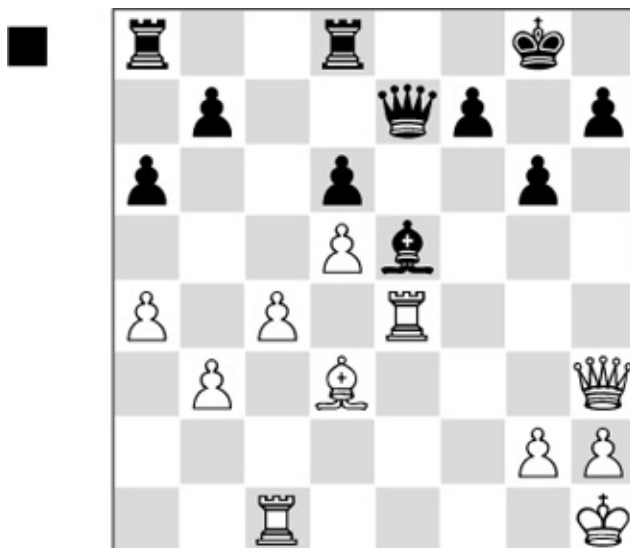
Black's position is also hopeless after 14... ♕d5+ 15. ♕xd5 exd5 16. ♖xh6.

15. ♗xe6 fxe6 16. ♖xe6+

Black resigned: material losses are unavoidable.

Devaki Prasad Gyula Sax

Subotica 1987 (5)



The difference in the strength of the bishops is enormous. Black confidently realised his advantage.

1...f5! 2. ♖e2 ♜ac8!

Preventing the break c4-c5.

3. ♜f1

He should have sought counterchances with 3.g4!?.

3... ♜f8 4. ♚h6 ♜ce8 5. ♜fe1 ♚c7 6. ♚h3 ♚g7 7. ♗b1 ♚c5!

Gradually strengthening the position. White can only wait.

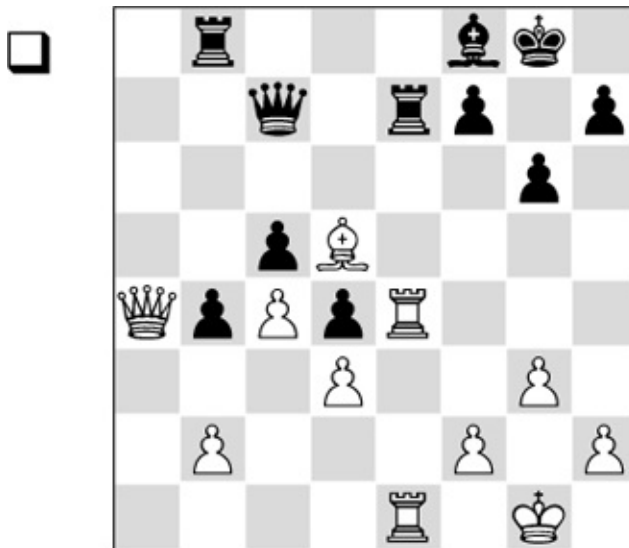
**8. ♚f3 ♚d4 9. ♚d3 ♚h4 10.g3 ♚h5 11.c5 f4! 12.gxf4 ♜xf4 13. ♜g2 ♜h4 14. ♜ee2 ♗xh2
15. ♜xh2 ♜xe2**

0-1

Miroslav Filip

Ludek Pachman

Prague 1953 (1)



White stands better, but Black's position is not easy to break down.

1.h4! ♚g7 2.h5 ♜d8 3. ♜xe7 ♗xe7 4. ♚d1!

On the queenside the queen has nothing to do – it is needed on the other wing.

4... ♜d6 5. ♚e2 ♗f6 6. ♚g2 ♜d7 7. ♚f3 ♚d6

The threat was 8.h6+.

8. ♜e4 g5

Otherwise 9. ♜f4!, with the same idea, is unpleasant.

9. ♚f5 h6 10. ♜e1

White wins with 10. ♜e6 fxe6 11. ♚g6+ ♚f8 12. ♚xf6+ ♜f7 13. ♚xh6+. Even more decisive is 10. ♜e8! ♜d8 11. ♗xf7!.

**10... ♜e7 11. ♗e4 ♚f8 12. ♜a1 ♜d7 13. ♜a5 ♗e7 14. ♗d5 ♗d8 15. ♜a8 ♚g7 16. ♗e4
♚f8 17. ♚h7 ♚f6 18. ♗d5 g4 19. ♜c8 ♜c7**

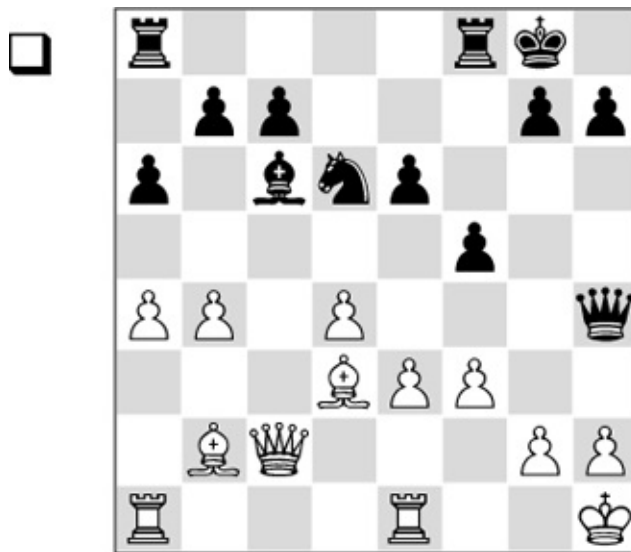


20. ♖xd8+ ♕xd8 21. ♔xh6+ ♕e7 22. ♔g5+ ♖f6 23. ♔xg4 ♕f8 24. ♔g6 ♕d6 25. h6 ♔h8
 26. ♔g8 ♖h7 27. ♔e6+ ♕c7 28. ♔c6+ ♕b8 29. ♖e4 ♖f5 30. ♔b6+

Black resigned.

Rudolf Spielmann
Peter Romanovsky

Moscow 1935 (17)



White by force establishes a position where he effectively has an extra bishop, which he then gradually realises.

1.b5! axb5 2.axb5 ♖xb5

2... ♗xb5 3. ♗xb5 ♘xb5 is bad because of 4. ♖b3 c6 5. ♖xe6+ with a clear advantage to White.

3.d5!

Opening up the bishop at b2. Weaker is 3. ♖b3 ♘d6 4. ♖xe6+ ♔h8 with typical counterplay for Black.

3...exd5 4. ♖xb5 ♖xa1

Or 4... ♗xb5 5. ♖xc7 ♖h6 6. ♖xa8 ♖xa8 7. ♖xb7 ♗c6 8. ♖c7! with an attack.

5. ♖xa1 ♖xb5 6. ♕xc7 ♕h6 7. ♕xb7 ♖c6 8. ♕c7 ♖f7 9. ♕b8+ ♖f8 10. ♕b6

With the threat of 11. ♖a7 ♖f7 12. ♖d8+ ♖f8 13. ♖e7.

10... ♖e8 11. ♕d4 ♖f7 12. ♖a6 ♕g5 13. ♖c6

White does not need to hurry.

13...h6?

Leading to the loss of a pawn. After 13... ♖e8 it was still possible to defend for a long time.

14.f4 ♘g4 15. ♖xh6 ♖b8 16.h3 ♘g3 17. ♖c6 ♖e8

Somewhat better is 17... ♖b3!?, and if 18. ♖c8+ ♘h7 19. ♖c7, then 19... ♖xe3.

18. ♖c3 ♖e4 19. ♘d2 ♘h7 20. ♖d3 ♘h4

The queen should not have retired voluntarily from g3.

21. ♘h2 ♘h5 22. ♖a3 ♖e7 23. ♘d4 ♘g6 24. ♖a6! ♖e6 25. ♖a7 ♖e4 26. ♘d2 ♖e6

27. ♘d4 ♖e4 28. ♘d2 ♖e6 29. ♗d4 ♖a6 30. ♖b7 ♖c6 31. ♘b2 ♖e6 32. ♘c2 ♖e4

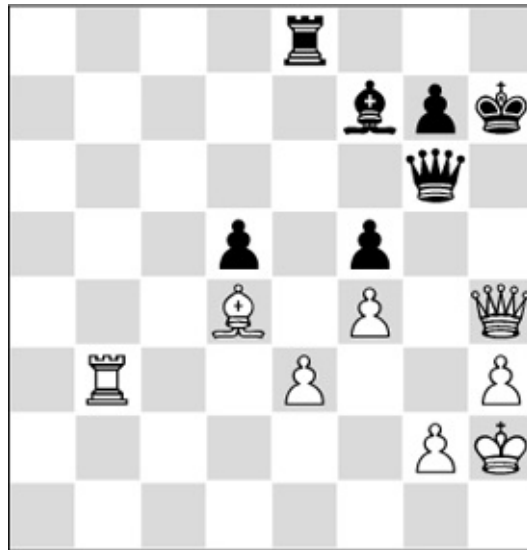
33. ♘c7 ♘g8 34. ♖b3!

Freeing the bishop from the defence of the pawn at e3.

34... ♘h7 35. ♖b7

Another good line was the immediate 35. ♗e5, and if 35...d4, then 36. ♖b6.

35... ♘g8 36. ♖b3 ♘h7 37. ♘d8 ♖e8 38. ♘h4+



38... ♘h6

On 38... ♘g8 there would follow 39.e4!, winning.

39. ♘xh6+! gxh6

Nor is he saved after 39... ♘xh6 40. ♖b7 ♘g6 41.g4 ♖f8 42. ♘g3 with a decisive attack.

40. ♖b7 ♘g8 41.g4 fxg4 42.hxg4 ♖c8 43. ♘g3 ♖e8 44. ♖d7 ♖e6 45. ♗e5 ♖e8 46. ♖d6

♗e6 47. ♗d4 ♘h7 48.f5! ♗f7 49. ♖d7 ♘g8 50. ♖d6 ♘h7 51. ♖f6! ♗g8 52. ♖g6 ♖e7

53. ♘h4

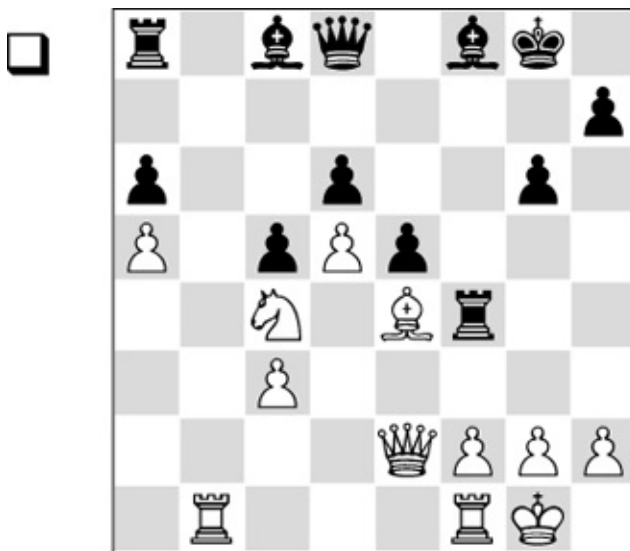
Black resigned. After 53... ♖b7 54.g5 hxg5+ 55. ♘xg5 he is mated.

A long, but very instructive game.

It frequently happens that the side with the advantage will deliberately head for a position with opposite-coloured bishops, believing that this is the easiest way to win.

Artur Jussupow Anthony Miles

Bugojno 1986 (5)



1. ♘b6

«There are other ways of strengthening the position, such as 1.g3 or 1.♖b6, but White plays to establish an effective extra bishop» (Jussupow).

1... ♜a7 2. ♘xc8! ♚xc8 3. ♜b6 ♙e7 4.g3 ♜f8 5. ♚g2 ♚d7 6. ♜a1!

Prophylaxis.

6... ♜fa8 7.h4!

Beginning play on the kingside, in which the white bishop can play its part.

7... ♙d8 8. ♜bb1 ♜b7 9. ♜xb7 ♚xb7 10.h5 g5 11. ♚g4! ♚e7 12.h6! ♜b8 13. ♙d3 ♚f7

Again, 13... ♜a8 is not possible; after 14.♚f5 ♜a7 15.♖b1 there is no defence.

14. ♙xa6 ♚xd5+ 15. ♚g1 e4 16. ♙c8! ♚e5



17. ♚e6+! ♚f8 18. ♚xe5 dxe5 19. ♙f5 ♜b7 20.a6 ♜a7 21. ♙xe4 g4 22. ♙b7 ♙g5 23. ♜a5 ♙e7 24. ♜a4 ♚f7 25. ♜xg4 ♙f8 26. ♚g2 ♙xh6 27. ♚f3 ♙f8 28. ♜h4 h6 29. ♚e4 ♚e6 30.c4

Black resigned.

On the basis of what we have said above, we can draw the following conclusions:

- 1) In opposite-coloured bishop positions, the advantage tends to be of a lasting character, since the defender cannot just exchange bishops.
- 2) It helps the stronger side to have major pieces (queens and rooks) on the board.
- 3) It is useful for the weaker side to have a knight, as he can then hope to exchange it for the enemy bishop.
- 4) The weaker side should strive for a pure opposite-bishop ending, by exchanging pieces.
- 5) The defender usually needs to sacrifice material (queen for rook and minor piece, or the exchange) with the aim of obtaining counterplay or building a fortress.

Positions for solving

These positions should all be solved together. Allow 2-3 hours.

[E79 \(solution on page 258\)](#)



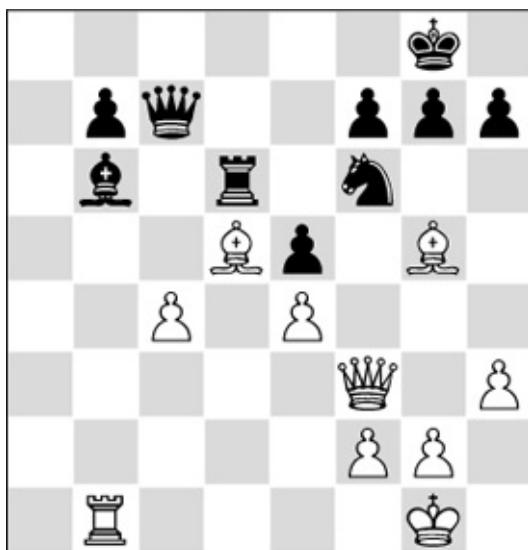
Black to play

[E80 \(solution on page 258\)](#)



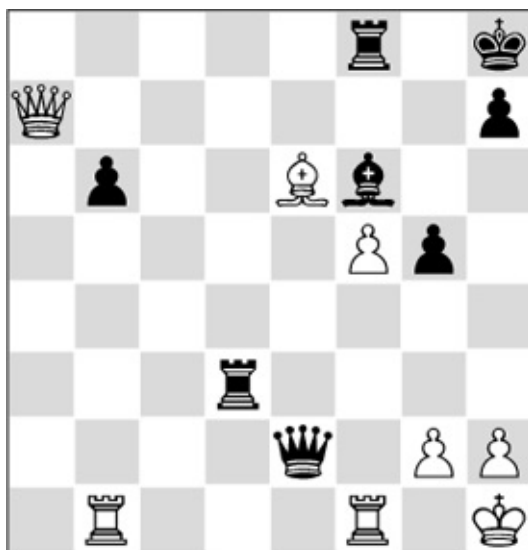
Black to play

[E81 \(solution on page 258\)](#)



White to play

[E82 \(solution on page 259\)](#)



Black to play

[E83 \(solution on page 259\)](#)



White to play

Positions for playing out

[P66 \(solution on page 259\)](#)



White to play (30 minutes)

[P67 \(solution on page 259\)](#)



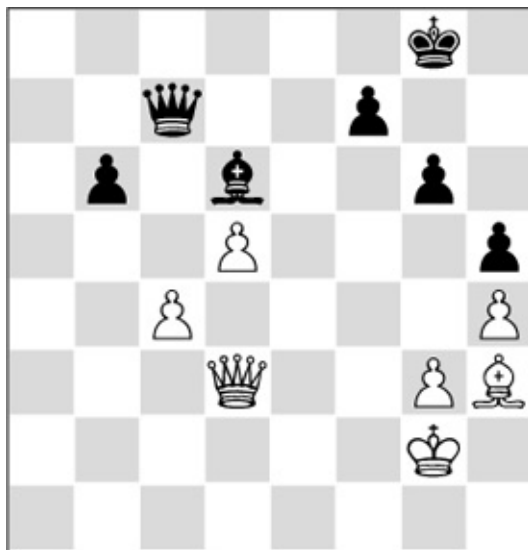
White to play (15-20 minutes)

[P68 \(solution on page 260\)](#)



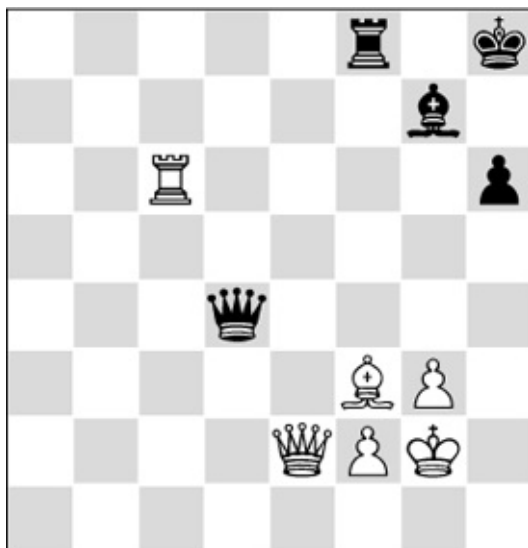
Black to play (15-20 minutes)

P69 (solution on page 260)



Black to play (15-20 minutes)

P70 (solution on page 260)



White to play (10-15 minutes)



White to play (15-20 minutes)

Chapter 10

Same-coloured bishops

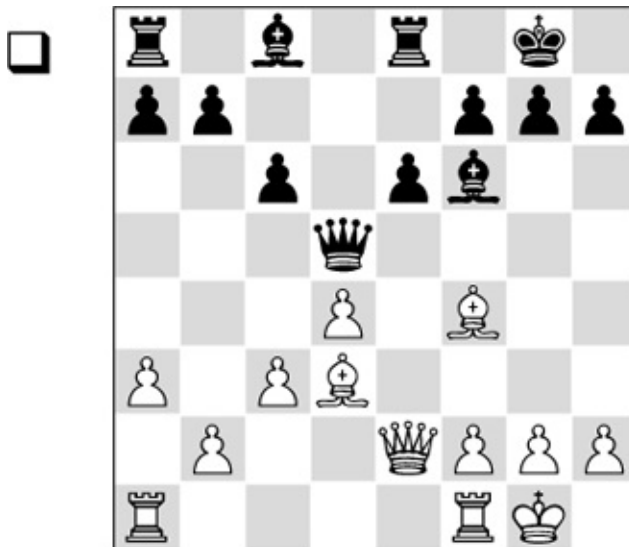
In the middlegame, as well as opposite-coloured bishops, where the presence of effectively an extra piece often leads to a decisive mating attack, one also frequently reaches positions with same-coloured bishops. In such cases, one can hardly speak of an extra piece, but one must consider the possibility of one bishop being stronger than the other. In several openings, for example the French Defence and Dutch Defence, the black light-squared bishop is obstructed by its own pawns and has significantly less freedom than its white counterpart. Naturally, this gives the stronger side a significant advantage. Of course, there are also other factors which influence the assessment of the position. Nonetheless, the presence on the board of good and bad bishops has a great influence on the choice of plan in the middlegame. Capablanca considered that one should keep one's pawns on squares of the opposite colour from one's bishop, regardless of whether or not the opponent also has a bishop.

We will examine some typical cases of good and bad bishops.

A bishop which is shut in by its own pawns will be bad. And the stronger side should certainly try to exploit this. We begin with a classic.

Emanuel Lasker
José Raul Capablanca

Moscow 1935 (9)



Capablanca had played the opening very poorly and obtained a difficult position against the 67-year old former champion. White accurately realised his advantage.

1. ♖ ad1 ♗ d7

This bishop cannot get into the game.

2. ♖ fe1

It was also worth considering 2. ♗ e5 ♗ e7 3. ♖ c2.

2... ♖ a5 3. ♖ c2 g6

3...h6 is no better.

4. ♗ e5 ♗ g7

Stronger is 4... ♖ d8, preventing the move 5.h4.

5.h4 ♖ d8 6.h5 ♖ g5 7. ♗ xg7 ♖ xg7 8. ♖ e5 ♖ e7 9. ♖ de1 ♖ g8 10. ♖ c1!

Preventing the black king fleeing via f8.

10... ♖ ad8 11. ♖ 1e3 ♗ c8 12. ♖ h3 ♖ f8 13. ♖ h6+ ♖ g7 14.hxg6 hxg6 15. ♗ xg6!

The 'good' bishop lands the decisive blow.

15... ♖ f6

15...fxg6 16. ♖ h8+.

16. ♖ g5!

This is stronger than 16. ♗ d3.

16... ♖ e7

Or 16... ♖ d5 17. ♖ xd5 cxd5 18. ♖ h8+.

17. ♖ f3 ♖ xf3 18.gxf3 ♖ dg8



19. ♔f1

Simpler was 19. ♖h4!.

19... ♜xg6 20. ♜xg6 ♜xg6 21. ♔h2

21. ♖f4!.

21... ♔d7 22. ♔f4 f6 23. c4 a6

Black cannot avoid this move, although it weakens b6.

24. ♔h4 ♜g5

He also loses after 24... ♔d6 25. ♖h8 ♗d7 26. ♖b8+.

25. ♔h7+ ♔d8 26. ♔h8+ ♔c7 27. ♔xf6

The rest is simple.

27... ♜f5 28. ♔g7+ ♗d7 29. ♔e2 ♔c8 30. ♔h8+ ♔c7 31. ♔h2+ ♔c8 32. ♔d6 ♜h5 33. ♔e3 ♜f5 34. ♔e4 ♜h5 35. ♔f8+ ♔c7 36. ♔f4+ ♔c8 37. ♔d6 ♜f5 38. ♔e3 ♜h5 39. ♔d3 ♜f5 40. ♔e2 ♜h5 41. ♔d2 ♜f5 42. ♔e3 ♜h5 43. ♔f8+ ♔c7 44. ♔f4+ ♔c8 45. ♔d6 ♜f5 46. ♔g3 ♜h5 47. ♔g4 ♜f5 48. ♔g8+ ♔c7 49. ♔g3+ ♔c8 50. ♔g6 ♔c7

The sealed move. Black resigned. White wins easily by transferring his king to b6, after c4-c5.

This game won Lasker a prize as the best of the tournament.

Akiba Rubinstein Esteban Canal

Rogaska Slatina 1929 (12)



With what should White recapture on c3? There followed:

1. ♖xc3!

White plays against the bishop on c8. After 1.bxc3 b6 Black would continue with ...♗b7 and ...c6-c5. Now, however, it will be very hard to play ...c6-c5.

1... ♖d6 2. ♖ac1 ♗d7 3. ♗e5 ♖ad8 4. ♖fd1 ♗c8

The bishop faces a miserable fate.

5.a3 ♗f6 6. ♖e3 ♖e7 7.h4!

Strengthening the position.

7... ♖d6 8.h5 ♖fd8 9. ♖c3 g6 10. ♗c2 ♖f8 11.hxg6 hxg6 12.g4 ♖e8 13.g5 ♗g7 14. ♗e4 ♖e7

Black must wait.

15. ♖g2 ♖c7 16.b4 a6 17. ♖cd3 b6?!

He should not have weakened the c6-pawn. It was worth considering 17... ♖e7.

18. ♖h3 ♗b7 19. ♖f3 ♖e7 20. ♖h2

The pawn is poisoned: 20.♗xc6 ♗xe5 21.♗xb7 ♗xf4.

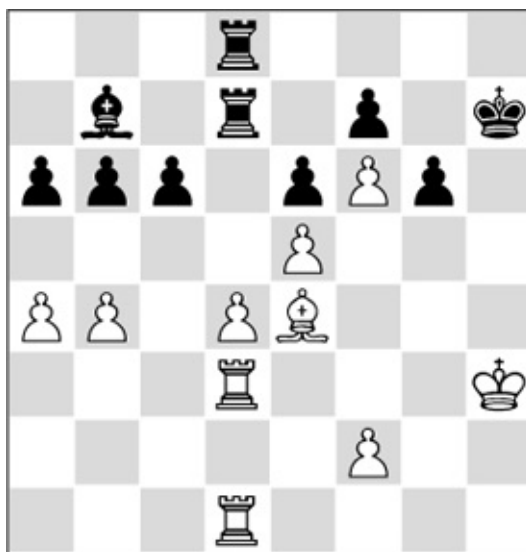
20... ♖c7 21. ♖h3 ♖e7 22.a4

Threatening the breakthrough 23.b5.

22... ♗xe5 23.fxe5 ♖6d7 24. ♖f6! ♖xf6

24... ♖xb4 is bad because of 25.♖g2!, planning 26.♖h1 and 27.♖dh3.

25.gxf6 ♖h7



26. ♖g4! ♖h8 27. ♖h1+ ♖g8 28. ♖xh8+ ♖xh8 29.b5! cxb5 30. ♗xb7 ♖xb7 31.axb5 axb5

More tenacious is 31...a5.

32.d5!

This decides.

32...exd5 33. ♖xd5 ♖h7 34. ♖xb5 ♖b8 35.f4 ♖h6 36. ♖b1 ♖h7 37. ♖g5 b5 38.e6! fxe6

39. ♖h1+ ♖g8 40. ♖xg6

Black resigned: 40... ♖f8 41.♖c1 with the idea of 42.♖c7, ♖g7+ and f7.

In the following game, White sacrifices a pawn to keep the enemy bishop shut in.

Anatoly Karpov

Joel Lautier

Biel 1992 (1)



This position arose from a variation of the Meran. Karpov accurately exploits the advantage of the better bishop:

1. ♖e5 ♗xe5

1... ♘a8 does not help either, because of 2. ♗xd7 ♜xd7 (or 2...c5 3. ♜g4) 3.c5!, and the bishop on a8 is out of play.

2.dxe5 ♙c7 3. ♘f3 ♘a8

A new attempt to free the position.

4. ♜xd8!

«With this exchange of rooks, Karpov gives his opponent the initiative and even sacrifices a pawn, but he manages to keep the enemy bishop shut in on a8, where it is blocked by the pawn on c6» (Gulko).

4... ♜xd8 5. ♜d1 ♜xd1+ 6. ♘xd1 ♙d8 7. ♘f3 ♙d2 8.b3 ♙xa2 9.b4 ♙a1+ 10. ♗h2 ♙a6



11. ♙d4!

Stronger than 11.b5 ♜c8 12.bxc6.

11... ♙c8 12.c5! bxc5 13. ♙xc5 a6

More tenacious is 13... ♜b8.

14. ♖e7 g6 15.h4 h5 16. ♖g3 ♖b7

The exchange of queens does not save Black, but nor was there any defence with them on the board.

17. ♖xb7 ♜xb7 18. ♖f4 ♖f8 19. ♖g5 ♖e7 20. ♜e4 ♜a8 21.f3 ♜b7 22.g4 ♜a8

Black's bishop plays a very sad role.

23.gxh5 gxh5 24.f4 ♜b7 25. ♜f3 ♜a8 26. ♖xh5

1-0

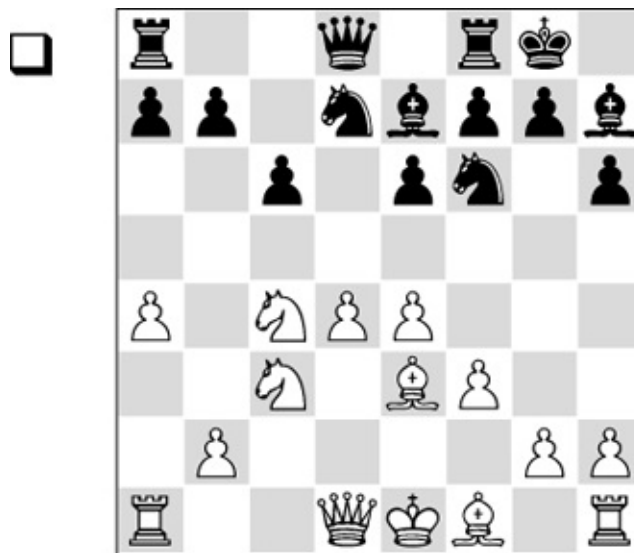
'Dead' bishops

A bishop can also be out of play because it is obstructed by the opponent's pawns. The stronger side has the chance to exploit his superior bishop on the other area of the board.

Alexander Alekhine

Efim Bogoljubow

Germany/Netherlands 1929 (5)



White's position is clearly superior, on account of the out-of-play bishop on h7. Alekhine accurately realises his advantage.

1. ♜e2 c5 2.dxc5 ♜xc5

2... ♘xc5 is no better.

3. ♜xc5 ♘xc5 4.b4 ♘a6

4... ♖xd1+ 5. ♖xd1 ♘xa4? is bad because of 6. ♘xa4 b5 7. ♘cb6! axb6 8. ♖xb5, and White is clearly better.

5. ♖xd8!

Stronger than 5. ♖b3 ♘h5 with counterplay on the kingside.

5... ♖fxd8 6. ♘a2!

After 6.b5 ♘c5 Black has a normal game.

6... ♘b8

Intending ... ♘b8-c6-d4.

7. ♖f2 ♘c6 8. ♖hd1 ♘d4 9. ♖ac1 ♖f8

Getting ready to bring the bishop into the game.

10. ♜f1 ♘e8 11. ♘c3

It was worth considering 11. ♘a5.

11...f6 12.♘a5 ♖ab8

If 12...b6, then 13.♗b7 ♜d7 14.♙b5 ♜xb7 15.♜xd4 ♜c7 16.♗e2!.



13.♘b5! ♘xb5 14.♜xd8 ♜xd8 15.♘b7! ♜b8

Or 15... ♜d2+ 16.♖e3 ♗bd6 17.♖xd2 ♗xb7 18.♜c8 and then ♜a8.

16.♘c5! ♖e7 17.axb5

17.♙xb5 is also good.

17... ♘d6 18. ♜a1 ♘c8 19. ♙c4 ♙g8 20.f4 ♙f7 21.e5 fxe5 22.fxe5 ♜b6 23.♖e3 ♙e8

24. ♜a5 ♙d7 25. ♖d4 ♙e8 26.h4 ♙d7 27. ♙e2 ♜b8

27... ♙e8 28. ♙f3! ♙xb5 29. ♙b7 ♙d7 30. ♙xc8 ♙xc8 31. ♜xa7+ or 28... ♜xb5 29. ♜xb5 ♙xb5 30. ♗xe6!.

28. ♘xd7 ♖xd7 29. ♙f3 ♜b6 30. ♖c5

With the threat of 31. ♜xa7+.

30... ♜b8 31.h5 ♖d8 32. ♙c6 ♖e7 33. ♜a3 ♖f7 34. ♙e4 ♖e7 35. ♖c6 ♖d8 36. ♜d3+

♖e7 37. ♖c7

1-0

Svetozar Gligoric

Vassily Smyslov

Bled/Zagreb/Belgrade 1959 (19)



1...f6!

Limiting the bishop on b2.

2.g4

After 2.♔d4 there would follow 2...e5 3.♔xb6 ♖xd1+! 4.♖xd1 axb6 with advantage to Black.

2...e5 3.♕f1 ♖ac8 4.♖xd8+ ♖xd8 5.♕e2 ♗xf2!

Exploiting White's bad bishop, Black wins a pawn.

6.♕xf2 ♖d3 7.♗c5 ♗xc5 8.bxc5 ♖d2+ 9.♕f3 ♖xb2

Smyslov realises his extra pawn with accurate technique in the rook ending.

10.♖d1 a6 11.♖d7 h6 12.♖c7 a5 13.♕e4 ♗h7 14.♕d5 a4 15.♕d6 ♗g6 16.♕d7?

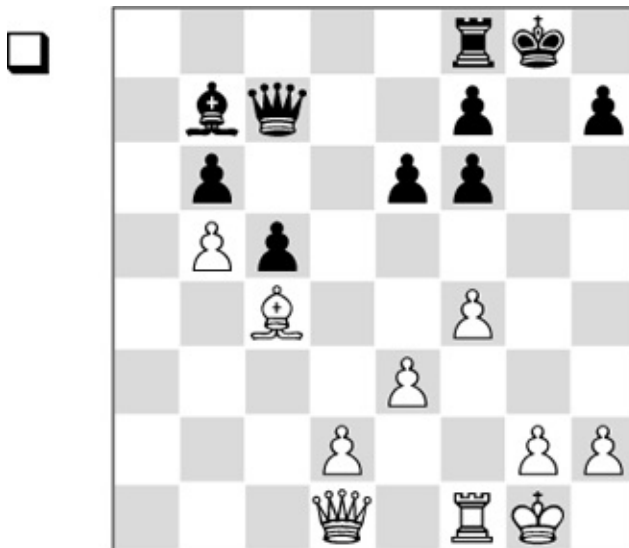
Stronger is 16.♕e6.

16...f5! 17.gxf5+ ♕xf5 18.♕d6 ♖d2+ 19.♕e7 ♖d5 20.♕f7 ♗e4 21.♕xg7 ♕xe3 22.♕xh6 e4 23.♖xb7 ♖xc5 24.g4 ♕f4 25.♖b4 ♕f3 26.g5 e3 27.g6 e2

White resigned: 28.♖b1 ♕f2 29.g7 ♖c8 30.♕h7 e1♔ 31.♖xe1 ♕xe1 32.g8♗ ♖xg8 33.♕xg8, and the last black pawn queens.

**Alexey Sokolsky
Abo Shagalovich**

Belorussia 1959



1.f5!

White plays for the exclusion of the ♔b7.

1...e5 2.♕g4+ ♕h8 3.e4! ♕d7 4.d3 ♕d4+ 5.♕h1 ♕e3 6.♕h5 ♕g7 7.h4!

Preparing 8.♖f3.

7...♕h6 8.♕xh6+ ♕xh6 9.♖a1!

After forcing play, the game goes into a difficult endgame for Black.

9...♖d8 10.♖a7 ♖d7 11.♕g1 ♕g7

11...♕h5 is worse because of 12.g3 ♕g4 13.♕f2 ♕h5 14.♔d5 ♔c6 15.♖xd7 ♔xd7 16.♔c6! ♔c8 17.♔e8.

12.♕f2 ♕f8 13.♕e3 ♕g7 14.♕d2?

This leads to equality. After 14.♔d5 ♔c6 15.♖xd7 ♔xd7 16.♔c6! White would retain winning chances.

14...♔c6! 15.♖xd7

15.♖a6 ♔xe4.

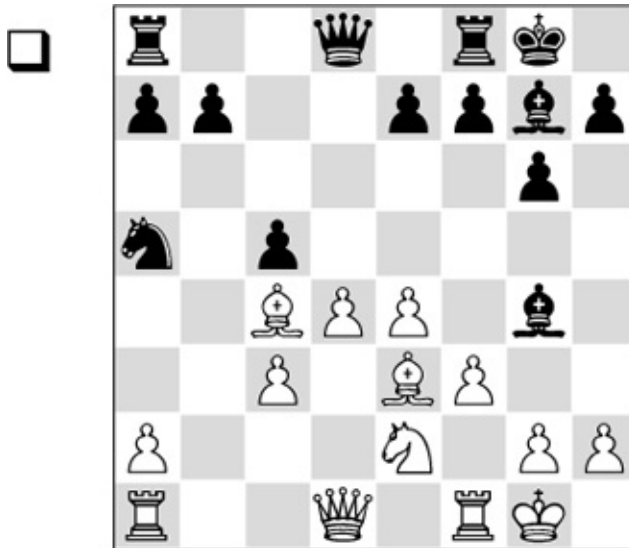
15...♔xd7 16.♕c3 ♕f8 17.♕b3 ♕e7 18.♕a4 ♔e8 19.♔d5 ♕d6 20.♔b7 ♕c7 21.♔d5

♔d6

Draw.

Anatoly Karpov
Garry Kasparov

Belfort 1988 (14)



1. ♖xf7+!?

A rare continuation in the Grünfeld, the usual move being 1. ♖d3. Karpov's idea is to play to exclude the ♖g7.

1... ♜xf7 2. fxg4 ♜xf1+ 3. ♔xf1 ♔d6 4. e5 ♔d5 5. ♖f2

A prophylactic move.

5... ♜d8 6. ♔a4!

It is useful to force ...b7-b6.

6... b6 7. ♔c2 ♜f8

After 7... ♔c4 there would follow 8. ♔e4 with the initiative. It was worth considering 7... ♜c8 8. ♔d1 ♜d8 with equality.

8. ♔g1 ♔c4 9. ♔d2 ♔e6

9... ♖h6 10. ♔xh6 ♔xe2 11. ♔e3; 9... ♔f7 10. ♖g3.

10. h3 ♖c4 11. ♔g5!

Not allowing the black bishop out of its box.

11... h6 12. ♔c1 ♔f7 13. ♖g3



13...g5?!

After 13...♖d5 a possible continuation is 14.♗f4 ♜e4 15.♘e6 cxd4! (15... ♜c8 16.♞b1! ♞e3+ 17.♙f2 ♞xc3 18.♞xg6 ♞xa1+ 19.♚h2; 15... ♘e3 16.♞d2 ♘c4 17.♞e1 ♘e3 18.♞e2 cxd4 19.♘xf8 ♙xf8 20.cxd4 ♞xd4 21.♜e1) 16.♘xf8 (16.cxd4 ♘e3 17.♞b2 ♜c8) 16... ♘e3 17.♞d2 dxc3 18.♞e2 ♙xf8 19.♞f3.

14.♞c2 ♞d5 15.♙f2 b5 16.♗g3 ♜f7

Bad is 16...b4 17.♘f5 ♜f7 18.e6 ♞xe6 19.♜e1 ♞d7 20.cxb4.

17. ♜ e1

It was worth considering 17.♜c1 with advantage.

17...b4 18.♞g6 ♞f8

18...bxc3 19.♘f5 ♞f8 20.e6 ♜xf5 21.gxf5 ♘d6 22.dxc5.

19.♗e4

With the idea of 20.e6.

19... ♜ xf2

19...bxc3 20.♘xc5.

20.♞xf2 bxc3 21.♞f5+ ♞g8 22.♞c8+ ♞h7 23.♞xc5 ♞f7+ 24.♞g1 c2 25.♗g3 ♙f8 26.♗f5 ♞g8 27. ♜ c1

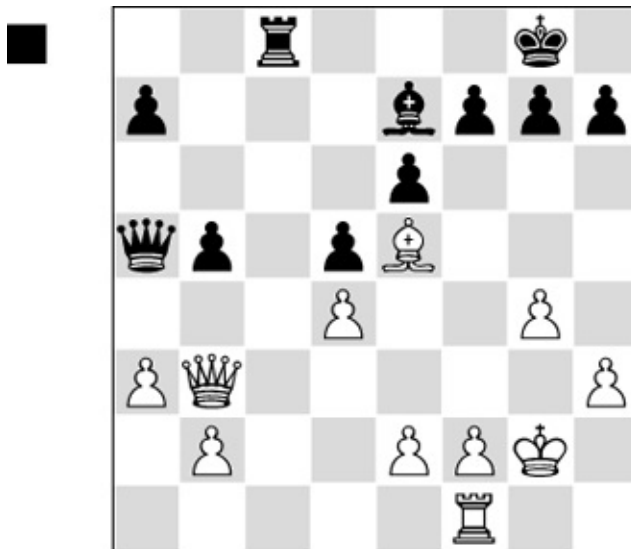
Black resigned. The bishop on g7 never did get into the game.

The 'blank-firing' bishop

Sometimes in a game we reach a position where we have a bishop that looks well-placed, but which actually turns out to be quite ineffective and unable to take a serious part in the action. It is almost as if it is a gun that is firing blanks. Naturally, the stronger side in such a case can expect to gain a clear advantage and chances of winning.

Alfred Tarnowski Mikhail Botvinnik

Leipzig 1960 (8)



The white bishop on e5 looks superbly placed, but it is just appearances – in reality, it has no prospects. In particular, it cannot influence the queenside, where the action is taking place. Exploiting this, Black quickly obtains a decisive advantage.

1... ♖c4 2. ♖d1 ♘b6 3. ♖d2 ♘c6 4.e3 a5

Black strengthens his position, whilst the bishop on e5 remains as a spectator.

5. ♗g3 ♖c1 6.f3 f6

Not hurrying to force matters, since White has no counterplay anyway.

7. ♗f2 ♘c4 8. ♘d3

If 8. ♙xc4, then 8...dxc4 with a decisive advantage.

8...a4 9.e4 ♘xd3 10. ♖xd3 b4!

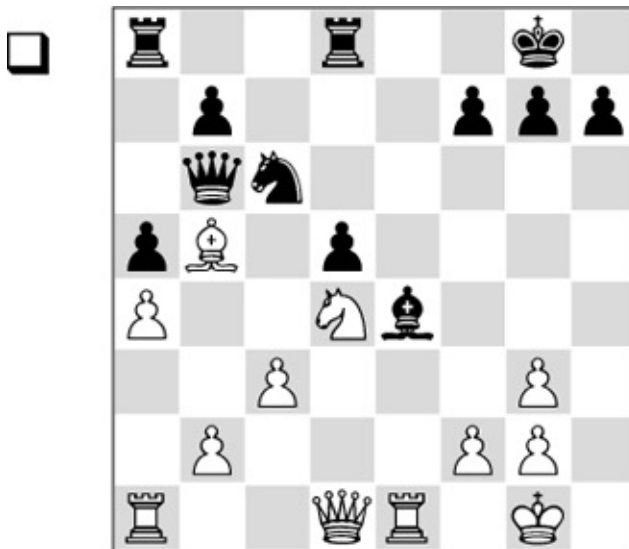
Now the black bishop comes into the game with decisive effect.

11.axb4 ♗xb4 12.exd5 exd5 13. ♖e3 ♖c2

White resigned: 14. ♖e8+ ♘f7 15. ♖a8 ♗e1.

Alexander Karpov Wolfgang Uhlmann

Madrid 1973 (12)



1.g4!

Karpov: «Such moves give me the greatest pleasure: White manages to look into the future. In the near future, he sees a transition into a major-piece ending with light-squared bishops on the board. The mobility of Black's bishop is restricted by the pawn on d5 and now my own pawn on g4 further limits it. It may be objected that White is placing a pawn on the same colour squares as his own bishop, but the point is that my bishop works on different diagonals».

White's main idea is not to allow the enemy bishop to retreat to e6, with a probable draw.

1... ♖xd4

Better is 1... ♜ac8.

2. ♔xd4 ♘xd4 3.cxd4 ♜ac8 4.f3

After this move, the black bishop is totally ineffective.

4... ♘g6 5. ♜e7 b6 6. ♜ae1 h6

He should have thought about playing 6...h5.

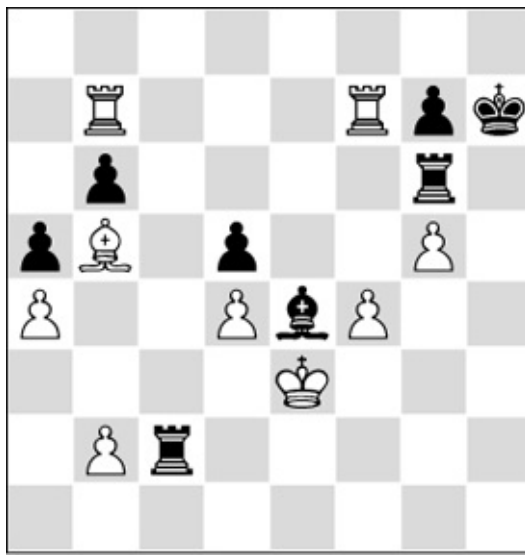
7. ♜b7 ♜d6 8. ♜ee7 h5

If 8... ♜c2, then 9. ♜e8+ ♔h7 10. ♜bb8 with a decisive advantage.

9.gxh5 ♘xh5 10.g4 ♘g6 11.f4 ♜c1+ 12. ♔f2 ♜c2+ 13. ♔e3 ♘e4

Nor is he saved by 13... ♜e6+ 14. ♜xe6 fxe6 15. ♜xb6.

14. ♜xf7 ♜g6 15.g5 ♔h7



16. ♖ fe7! ♜ xb2 17. ♙ e8 ♜ b3+ 18. ♚ e2 ♜ b2+ 19. ♚ e1 ♜ d6 20. ♖ xg7+ ♚ h8 21. ♖ ge7
1-0

Lajos Portisch
Ljubomir Ljubojevic
Moscow 1977 (1)



After 1. ♖xg7 Black is fine. Therefore, there followed:

1. ♙ e3!

By refraining from the exchange, White intends to use his bishop on the g1-a7 diagonal, to support the advance c4-c5. The bishop on g7 cannot prevent White's queenside play, even though on the face of it, it looks like a great piece. Black takes steps to create counterplay, since passively waiting is clearly not good.

1...f5 2.exf5 ♜ xf5 3. ♖ ac1 axb4 4.axb4 ♞ f8

The threat was 5.c5.

5. ♙ d3 ♜ h5

5... ♜f7 6.c5 is no better.

6. ♞ e4 ♜ a3 7. ♞ g3 ♜ h4 8. ♙ e4 ♜ xe3!? 9. ♚ xe3 ♙ h6 10. ♚ f2 ♙ xc1 11. ♜ xc1 ♙ c6 12. ♜ a1! ♙ xe4 13. ♞ xe4 ♜ h5 14. ♚ a2! ♜ e5 15. ♜ d1 ♚ d7?

Blundering a pawn in a difficult position.

16. ♖xd6! ♜f5

16...exd6 17. ♘f6+.

17. c5+ ♚g7 18. ♖d1 ♗e6 19. ♜b2 ♜h6 20. ♗f2! ♖d5 21. ♗g4+ ♚g5 22. ♖xd5 ♜xd5

23. ♜c1+ ♗f4 24. h4+ ♜f5 25. ♗h6+

1-0

Weak pawns

Alexander Panchenko

Andrey Zhdanov

Kiev 1983



In this position, as well as a bad bishop, hemmed in by his own pawns, Black also has a weak pawn on e6.

1. ♖fe1 ♖f6

With the idea of 2... ♗h6.

2. ♜e2 ♖d8 3. ♘b3 ♘c8 4. ♖ad1 ♖h6 5. h3 ♖f6

Black must mark time.

6. ♜f3 ♜f8 7. ♖e5 ♘d7 8. ♖de1 ♖e8 9. ♜h5 ♗h6 10. f4 ♖e7 11. ♜f3 ♖e8 12. ♜e3 ♜b8



13.g4!

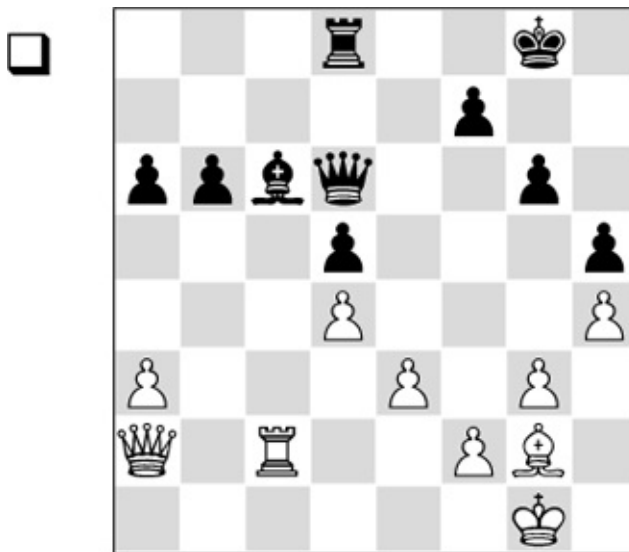
Having strengthened his position, White goes over to decisive action.

**13...g6 14. ♖h2 fxg4 15.hxg4 ♗g7 16. ♖g3! ♜ef8 17.f5 ♗h8 18.fxe6 ♜f2+ 19. ♖g1 ♘e8
20.e7 ♜8f6 21. ♖xf2! ♜xf2 22. ♖xf2 ♗g7 23. ♖g2 ♗d6 24. ♜f1 c5 25. ♜e6!**

1-0

Boris Gelfand
Veselin Topalov

Novgorod 1997 (3)



Black has a weak pawn not only on d5, but also his kingside pawns generally. Gelfand, by combining threats, gradually creates an attack on the enemy king.

1. ♜c3 ♘b5 2. ♖b2!

Preparing to seize the open file.

2... ♗e6

2... ♘c4 3.e4.

3. ♖c1 ♘c4 4.e4! b5 5.e5

Black's position is very difficult – his bishop is excluded from effective play.

5... ♜e8 6. ♖h2 ♗b6 7. ♖f4 ♜f8 8. ♜f3 a5 9. ♘h3 ♘e2 10. ♜e3 ♘c4 11. ♜f3

Repeating moves to gain time on the clock.

11... ♘e2 12. ♜e3 ♘c4 13. ♖g5

Stronger is 13. ♗h6!.

13... ♖xd4

Better is 13... ♗g7 with the idea of 14. ♜f3 f6.



14.e6 ♔b2 15. ♖f3 d4 16. ♖xf7

Black resigned: there is no defence to mate.

Positions for playing out

P72 (solution on page 261)



White to play (45 minutes)

P73 (solution on page 261)



White to play (45 minutes)

P74 (solution on page 262)



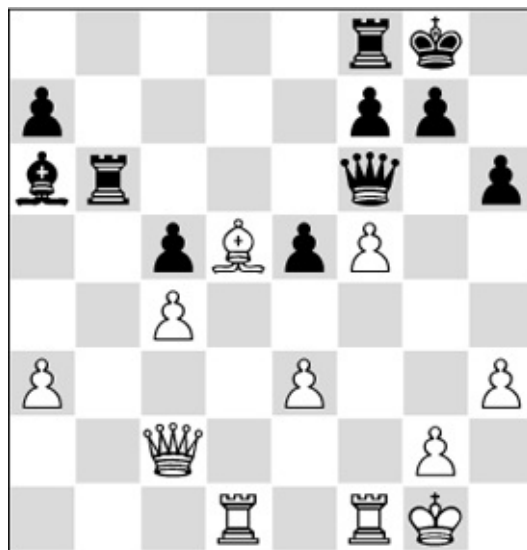
Black to play (30 minutes)

P75 (solution on page 262)



White to play (30 minutes against 40)

[P76 \(solution on page 262\)](#)



White to play (30 minutes)

[P77 \(solution on page 263\)](#)



White to play (40 minutes)

Chapter 11

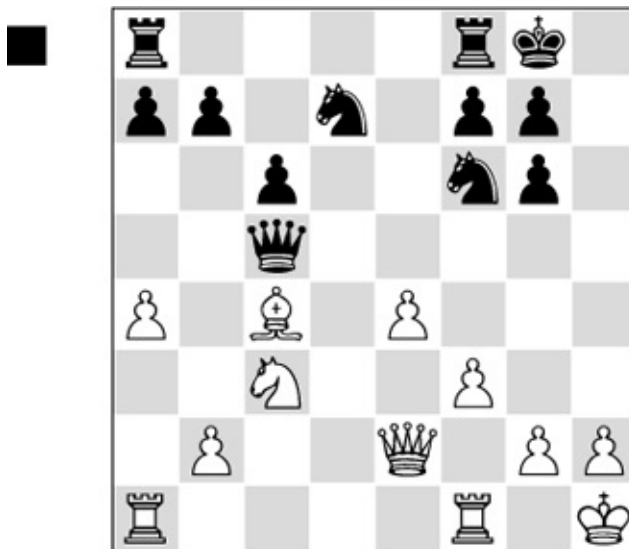
Bishop versus knight

In the middlegame (unlike the endgame), one can hardly speak of ‘the minor exchange’, ie. of the advantage of bishop over knight. Here there are too many factors influencing the assessment of the position, such as king safety, open lines, weak pawns, etc. But in open positions, a bishop can be a decisive factor in the assessment and the formation of a plan. It is important to be able to judge such positions and play them correctly, to feel the strength of the bishop and not give it away unnecessarily, because the bishop is often stronger than the knight in the middlegame.

The bishop is stronger than the knight in open positions. It often helps to create an attack on the enemy king and to take an active part in such. If the knight lacks secure outposts in the centre, then the weaker side may have trouble obtaining counterplay and can fall under a lasting press. In this regard, the stronger side should not fear exchanges, since in the endgame, his advantage will only increase. We will look at several typical examples, in which the bishop is superior to the knight.

Mikhail Botvinnik Vassily Smyslov

Moscow 1954 (12)



White stands better, thanks to his strong bishop and possible attack with the e and f-pawns.

1...g5 2.g3 ♖ad8 3.♗a2 ♜fe8 4.♜ad1 ♞f8 5.♜xd8 ♜xd8 6.e5!

The signal for the offensive.

6...♞d5 7.♞xd5 cxd5 8.♚d2!

Taking the squares d4 and b4 from the queen.

8...♞e6 9.f4 gxf4 10.gxf4 ♚c6

Better is 10...♚d4.

11.f5 ♞c5 12.♚g5 ♜d7

If 12...f6, then 13.♚g2 fxe5 14.b4 ♞d3 15.f6 ♚d7 16.♚e4!.

13.♜g1 f6 14.exf6 ♞e4



15.f7+

The long-planned blow, weakening the d5-square.

15...♜xf7 16.♚d8+ ♚h7 17.♗xd5 ♞f2+ 18.♚g2 ♚f6 19.♚xf6 ♜xf6 20.♚xf2 ♜xf5+ 21.♗f3 ♜f4 22.♜g4

Robert Fischer

Boris Spassky

Reykjavik 1972 (6)



1. ♖d4! ♔f8

The alternative is 1... ♜f6 2. ♜b3 ♜d7 3. ♝c3, and White is a little better.

2. ♖xe6 fxe6 3.e4! d4?

«This terrible positional error leads Spassky to defeat. With the queens on a3 and f8, Black had available the standard response ...c5-c4» (Botvinnik).

After 3...c4 a possible line is 4. ♖h3 ♖f7 5. ♗g4 ♝e8 6. exd5 exd5 7. ♝fe1. Now after both 7... ♝xe1+ 8. ♝xe1 ♜f8, and 7... ♜e5 8. ♗h5 g6 9. ♖g3 ♝ae7 10.f4 ♜h7, Black's position is defensible.

4.f4 ♔e7 5.e5!

Opening the b1-h7 diagonal for the attack.

5... ♜b8

Transferring the knight to the centre gives a little counterplay: 5... ♜b6 6. ♖b3 ♜d5 7.f5!, but White retains pressure.

6. ♗c4! ♔h8

6... ♜b6 7. ♖b3!.

7. ♔h3 ♖f8

On 7... ♝xb2 White is prepared to go into a winning endgame: 8. ♖xe6! ♖xe6 9. ♗xe6 d3 10. ♝fd1.

8.b3

Now Black has no counterplay at all – his knight is very badly placed.

8...a5 9.f5 exf5 10. ♜xf5 ♖h7 11. ♜cf1 ♔d8 12. ♔g3 ♜e7 13.h4!

White limits the knight and threatens an attack on the b1-h7 diagonal.

13... ♜bb7 14.e6 ♜bc7 15. ♔e5 ♔e8

15...d3 16. ♝5f3.



16.a4!

There is no hurry.

16... ♖d8 17. ♜f2 ♚e8 18. ♜2f3 ♚d8 19. ♙d3 ♚e8 20. ♚e4!

Threatening 21. ♜f8+ with mate.

20... ♞f6 21. ♜xf6! ♞xf6 22. ♜xf6 ♚g8 23. ♙c4 ♚h8 24. ♚f4

There is no defence against ♜f6-f7 and ♚xh6+. Black resigned.

Wolfgang Uhlmann

Cenek Kottnauer

Tel-Aviv 1964 (8)



Black's position is difficult, as White confidently shows.

1. ♜e5 a4 2. ♚g6 axb3 3. axb3 ♜c7 4. g4!

Not fearing the weakening of the king.

4... ♚c8 5. ♜e6 ♜c6 6. f5 ♜a2

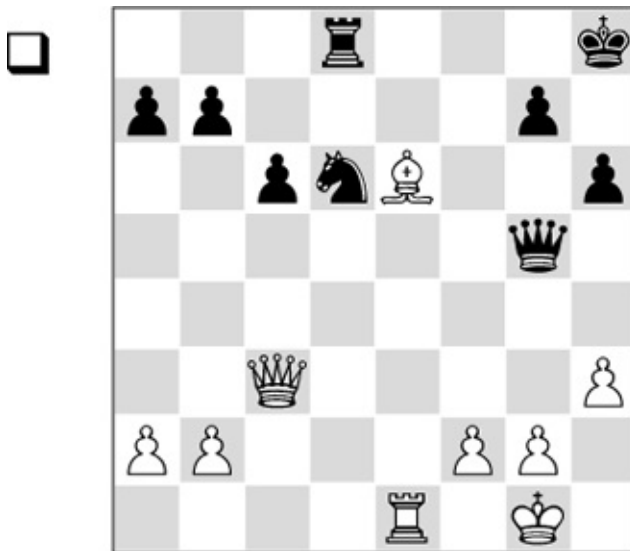
He also loses after 6... ♜xe6 7. fxe6 ♚d8 8. ♙d3 ♜a7 9. ♜xf6 ♞xf6 10. e7!.

7. ♜e7 ♚f8 8. ♜fe1

Black resigned.

Svetozar Gligoric Lajos Portisch

Zagreb 1965 (9)



The knight lacks secure outposts and the position of the black king is weakened also. By exploiting these factors, White quickly establishes a decisive advantage.

1. ♖e5 ♔f6 2. ♕e3 ♖f8

Preventing the move f2-f4, which would follow after 2... ♖e8.

3. ♗b3 ♞b5

Not the best post for the knight. He loses immediately after 3... a6 4. ♖e6 ♔d8 5. ♖xh6+. Stronger is 3... ♜f5, so as to keep the knight closer to the rest of its pieces.

4. ♖e6 ♔h4

4... ♔g5 5. ♔xg5 hxg5 6. ♖e5.

5. g3! ♔xh3 6. ♕e5 a5

6... ♔f5 7. ♔xf5 ♖xf5 8. ♖e8+ ♔h7 9. ♗c2.

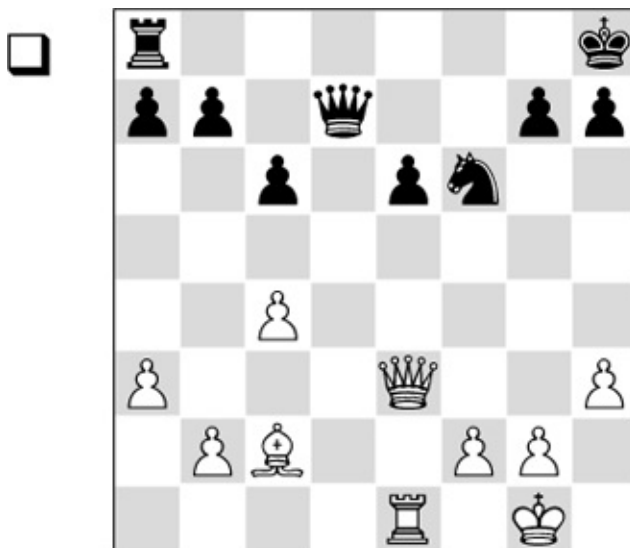
7. ♖e8

In view of the unavoidable mate, Black resigned.

Garry Kasparov

Robert Hübner

Brussels 1986 (8)



White has a large advantage, which he realises with simple moves.

1.g4 ♖e8 2.♚e5 ♛d8 3.♛g2 ♛b6 4.♖d1!

Complete domination.

4...c5 5.♗a4 ♖f8 6.♖d6 ♛c7 7.♖xe6 ♛f7

The exchange of queens does not ease Black's position.

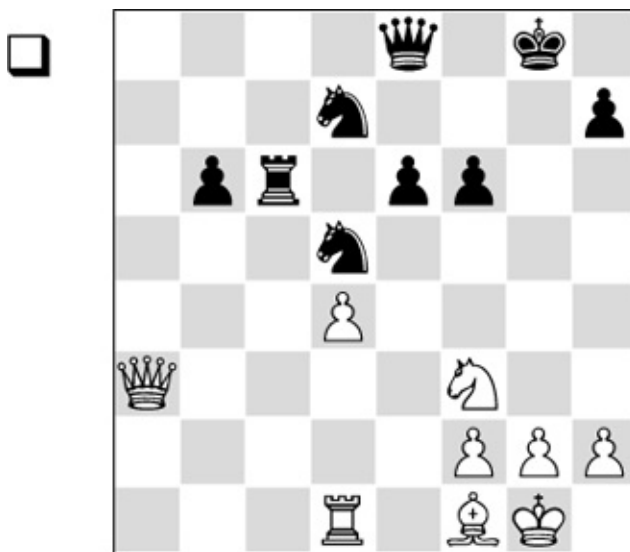
8.♛xc5 ♞xg4 9.♛xf8+! ♛xf8 10.hxg4

Black resigned: loss of the queen is inevitable.

José Raul Capablanca

Emanuel Lasker

Havana 1921 (11)



In the previous play, White had managed to create various weaknesses in the black position (b6, e6, h7) and now he tries to increase his advantage. Black's defence hangs on the strong position of his knight on d5, so it must be exchanged.

1.♖e1 ♛c8 2.♞d2!

Transferring the knight to a more active position.

2... ♖f8

It was worth considering 2... ♜c3!? 3. ♖d6 ♜f8 4. ♜e4 ♖c7.

3. ♖e4 ♜d8 4.h4! ♜c7?

The intended 4...f5 fails to 5. ♖g3+!? ♜h8 6. ♖e5+ ♜g8 7. ♜b5 ♜c7 8. ♜g5 ♜e7 9. ♜c4 ♜c7 10.h5! b5 11. ♜b3, and Black's position collapses because of the threat of d4-d5. But 4...h6!? was better.

5. ♜b3 ♜g7 6.g3 ♜a7 7. ♜c4

With the threat of 8. ♜xd5 exd5 9. ♖xd5+!.

7... ♜a5



8. ♖c3! ♖xc3 9. ♜xc3 ♜f7 10. ♜e3 ♜d6 11. ♜e4 ♜a4?!

Better is 11... ♜a7!? 12.d5 e5 13. ♜f1, but in such a position, individual moves cannot change fundamentally the assessment of the position.

12. ♜b7+ ♜g6

12... ♖e7 13. ♖c6 ♜a7 14.d5.

13. ♜c8 ♜b4?

There is no relief from 13... ♜a7 14. ♜xe6 ♜xe6 15. ♜xe6 ♖xd4 16. ♖g8+ ♜h5 17. ♜g2!.

14. ♜c1! ♜e7

On 14... ♖a3 there would follow 15. ♜d3+ f5 (15... ♖xd3 16. ♖e8+) 16. ♖e8+ ♜h6 17. ♜e1 ♜a8 18. ♜xe6+ ♜xe6 19. ♖xe6+ ♜g7 20. ♖e5+, winning.

15. ♜d3+ ♜h6

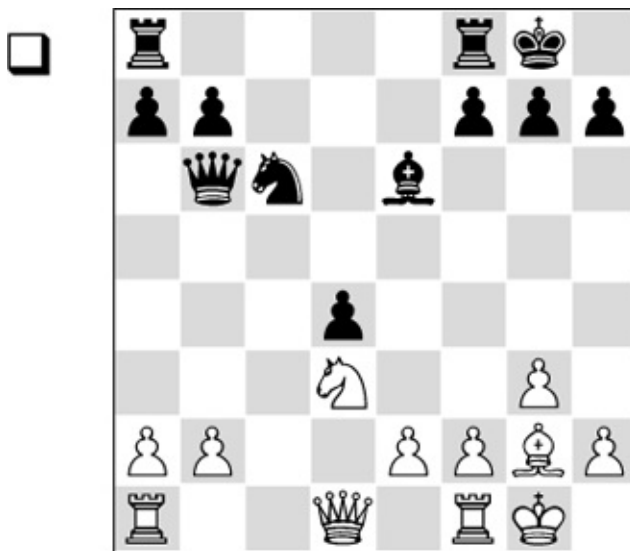
15...f5 16. ♜xf5+! ♜f6 17. ♜c7 ♖d6 18. ♜c6 ♖b4 19. ♜c5!.

16. ♜c7 ♜a1+ 17. ♜g2 ♜d6 18. ♜xf8+!

Black resigned: 18... ♖xf8 19. ♜xh7#.

Akiba Rubinstein Siegbert Tarrasch

Carlsbad 1923 (9)



Rubinstein sacrifices a pawn, to be left with a powerful bishop.

1. ♖f4! ♜xb2

1... ♗f5 was possible, maintaining the status quo.

2. ♖xe6 fxe6 3. ♖b1 ♜xa2 4. ♖xb7 ♜a6 5. ♜b3 ♖d8

5... ♘a5 6. ♙b5.

6. ♖d7 ♖c8 7. ♜b2 e5 8. ♖a1 ♜f6

8... ♙b6 9. ♖axa7!, threatening mate.

9. e3 dxe3 10. fxe3 ♖c6 11. ♜d2 ♖b8

11... e4 was essential, to win time for the defence.

12. ♖dxa7 ♖cd8 13. ♜e2 h6 14. ♗e4

Taking aim at the black king.

14... ♖d7 15. ♖a8 ♖dd8 16. ♖f1 ♜d6

The double exchange on f1 does not relieve him of difficulties.

17. ♖xf8+ ♖xf8 18. ♜g2 ♜b4 19. ♜d3 ♜h8 20. ♖a7 ♜b2+ 21. ♜h3 ♜b6 22. ♖a8 ♖d8

23. ♜c3 ♖d7 24. ♜c6 ♖xa8 25. ♜xa8+ ♖b8

Somewhat better is 25... ♙b8.

26. ♜d5 ♜c7 27. ♗f5 ♖c6 28. ♜c4 ♜d6 29. ♜f7 ♜d8 30. ♜g6

1-0

Mikhail Botvinnik Vitaly Chekhover

Leningrad 1938



White's knight consists in the fact that the black knight lacks a secure outpost in the centre. In addition, Black has a weak square on d5 where the enemy bishop will be superbly placed.

1.dxc5 dxc5 2. ♖ ad1 ♜ ad8 3. ♜ d5 b6 4. ♜ ed1 ♞ a5 5.h3 ♜ xd5 6. ♜ xd5

But not 6.cxd5 ♞d6 (6... ♘b7?! 7. ♞a4!) with a blockade.

6... ♞e7 7. ♞g4 ♞b7 8. ♞f5!!

«Now White's positional advantage becomes obvious: he threatens to seize the seventh rank with his rook, whilst after 8...g6 White wins at once: 9. ♞xg6 fxg6 10. ♞xg6+ ♜f8 11. ♜d6!» (Botvinnik).

8... ♞b8 9. ♜ d7 ♜ d8

The threat was 10. ♞h7+ ♜f8 11. ♞d5. But now the game goes into a winning endgame for White.

10. ♞xe5 ♞xc4 11. ♞xb8 ♜xb8 12. ♞e4!

The centralised bishop and the advance of the white e- and f-pawns will lead to a win, whereas after 12. ♜xa7?! ♘d6 13. ♞d3 c4 14. ♞f1 ♘b5 15. ♜a6 ♜c8 things are not so clear.

12... ♞a3 13. ♞d5 ♜f8 14.e4 a5

Black is also in a bad way after 14...c4 15. ♜xa7 ♘b5 16. ♜b7 ♘xc3 17. ♞xc4 ♘xe4 18. ♜xb6.

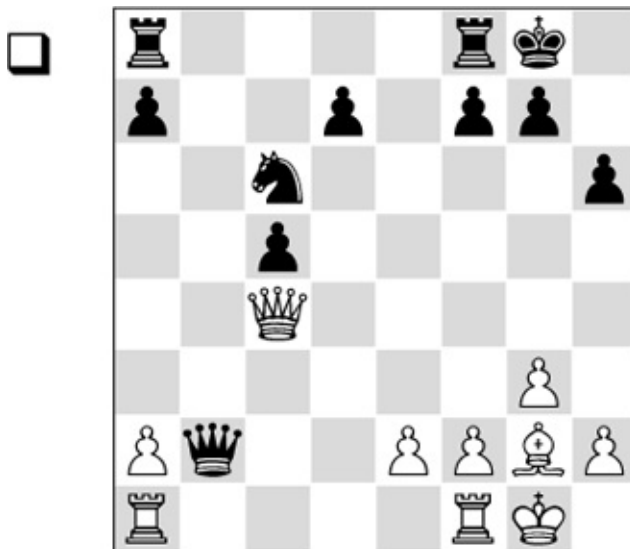
**15.c4 b5 16.cxb5 ♞xb5 17.e5 a4 18.f4! ♞d4 19. ♞f2 g5 20.g3! gxf4 21.gxf4 ♞e6
22. ♞e3 c4 23.f5 ♞c5 24. ♜c7 ♞d3 25.e6 fxe6 26.fxe6**

1-0

If 26... ♜e8 27.e7+ ♜g7 28. ♞c6.

Anatoly Karpov Viktor Gavrikov

Moscow 1988 (13)



In this position, the bishop is clearly stronger than the knight, which lacks a secure outpost in the centre.

1.e3 ♖ab8

1... ♜ac8!? 2. ♙xc5 ♘b4 3. ♙xa7 ♜c2 is an interesting try, with definite compensation for the pawn.

2. ♖xc5 ♜b6 3. ♜ad1! ♘b8 4. ♙d5 ♙b5 5. ♖c7 ♙a6 6. ♜c1 ♙a5 7. ♜fd1 ♜b5 8. ♖d6 ♙b6 9. ♖e7 ♙g6

If 9...g6, then 10.a4! ♜b2 11.a5 ♙b4 12.♙xf7+ ♜xf7 13.♜c8+ ♙g7 14.♙e5+ ♜f6 15.♜xb8 ♙xb8 16.♜xd7+ with a quick mate, whilst 9...♙f6 10.♙xf6 gxf6 11.♜c7 ♜a5 12.♙b3 gives White a noticeably better endgame.

10. ♙e4 ♙e6 11. ♙h7+ ♙xh7 12. ♖xf8 ♙xa2 13. ♖d6 ♙a6 14. ♖d3+ ♙f5 15. ♜b1 ♙e6 16. ♜xb5 ♙xb5 17. ♖xb5

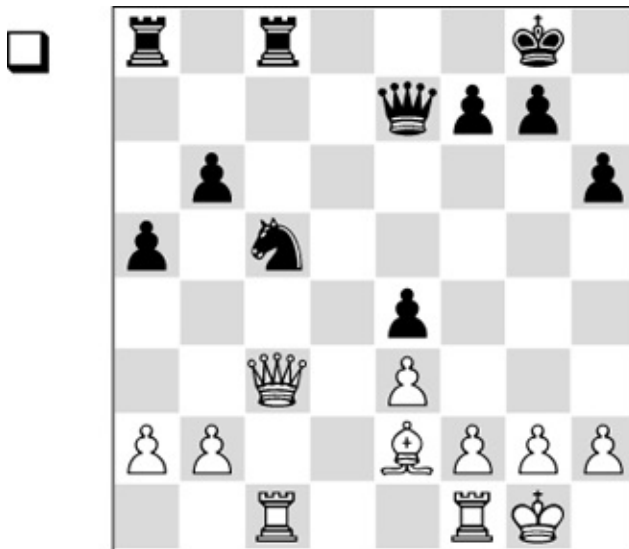
And White easily realised the extra exchange:

17... ♘c6 18. ♜d5 ♙g6 19. ♖c5 ♙e4 20. ♜d6+ ♙h7 21. ♖d5 ♙b1+ 22. ♖d1 ♙e4 23. ♖d3 ♙g4 24. ♜d5

Black resigned.

**Andrey Kharitonov
Vladimir Gusev**

Gomel 1983



White's position is superior, thanks to the ambitious pawn on e4, which is in need of defence.

1.a3 ♖d8 2.♗fd1 ♜xd1+ 3.♖xd1 ♜d8 4.♖xd8+ ♚xd8 5.b4 axb4 6.axb4 ♞e6

Better is 6...♞d3 7.♞c4 ♞d6.

7.h3 ♚d6 8.♞g4 g6 9.h4 h5

Otherwise White himself plays h4-h5.

10.♞e2 ♚c7 11.♚b2 ♚d6 12.g3 ♞d8 13.♚b1 ♞c6?!

13...♞d5 is somewhat more tenacious, but then there follows 14.♞d1.

14.♚xe4! ♞xb4 15.♞c4 ♚g7 16.♚b7 ♚f6 17.e4 ♞c2?

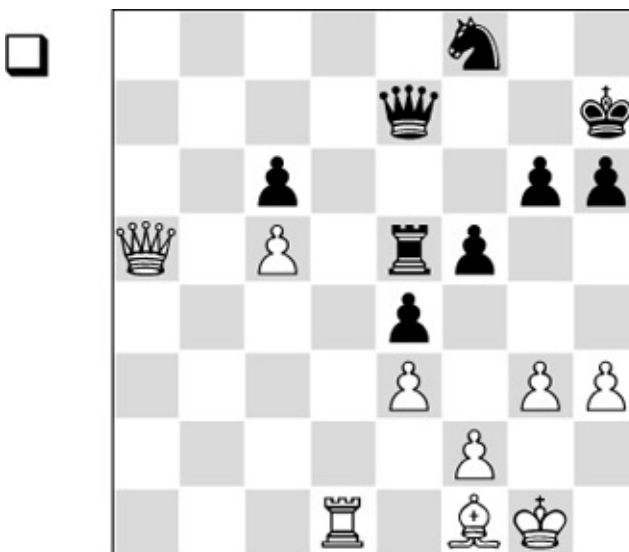
Losing. He could prolong his resistance with 17...♞c6!? 18.♞xb6 ♞e5.

18.e5 ♚xe5 19.♚xf7+ ♚h6 20.♞d3

Black resigned.

**Jörg Hickl
Rüdiger Seger**

Altenkirchen 1999 (2)



Black has an exposed king and a bad knight. White exploits these to end the game with a direct attack.

1. ♖b1! ♜xc5

1... ♗xc5 2. ♜b7+ ♔g8 3. ♗c7.

2. ♕a8 ♖g8

Or 2... ♘d7 3. ♜b7 ♜c1 4. ♗c8 ♜d1 5. ♗xc6 with the threat of ♔g2 and ♙b5. But stronger is 2... ♜d5 and ♜d7.

3. ♜b7 ♕f6 4. ♕a2+! ♕e6

4... ♔h8 5. ♜f7 ♗d6 6. ♗b2+; 4... ♘e6 5. ♜b8+ ♔g7 6. ♗a7+ ♗f7 7. ♜b7.

5. ♕a1 ♕e5

5... ♜e5 6. ♙c4; 5... ♘d7 6. ♗d4 ♜d5 7. ♙c4!.

6. ♙c4+ ♖h8 7. ♕a8 ♕d6 8. ♜d7! ♜a5 9. ♕d8 ♕a3 10. ♕f6#!

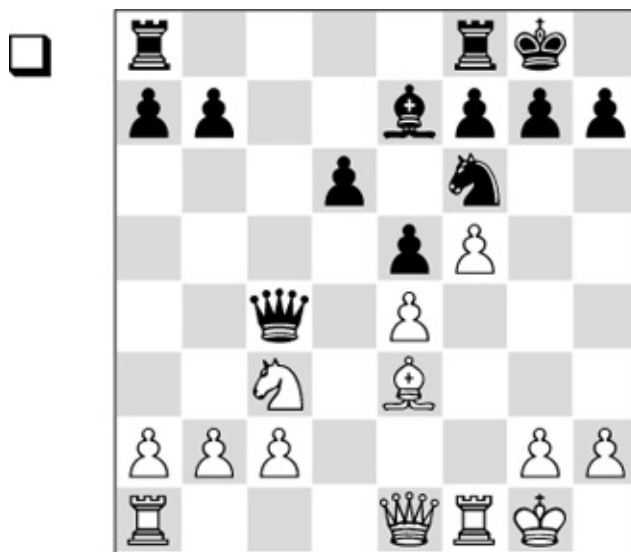
When the knight is stronger than the bishop

It would be wrong to claim that a bishop is always stronger than a knight in the middlegame. In closed positions the knight has a clear superiority, because the bishop is restricted in its movements, by its own, or the opponent's pawns. By exploiting his extra knight, the stronger side can quietly and unhurriedly strengthen his position and then turn to decisive action (an attack on the opponent's king or his weak pawns). It is important not to give the weaker side counterplay or to allow his bishop out of its prison. How this is done will be seen in the following examples. We start with a classic.

Vassily Smyslov

Iosif Rudakovsky

Moscow 1945 (2)



1. ♙g5!

«An instructive example of the fact that, in such positions, one must utilise the weakness of d5. Now the exchange on f6 is unavoidable, after which the white knight firmly seizes the square d5. This circumstance opens the prospect of a direct attack on the black king» (Smyslov).

1... ♜fe8

Interesting is 1...b5, so there will be no fork on c7, as in the next note.

2. ♙xf6 ♙xf6 3. ♘d5 ♙d8

3... ♗xc2 is bad because of 4. ♜f2 ♗c5 5. ♜c1 and 6. ♘c7 winning the exchange.

4.c3 b5 5.b3 ♕c5+ 6. ♕h1 ♜c8 7. ♜f3!?

Banking on the attack, and not on the endgame, which may not be winning.

7... ♔h8 8.f6! gxf6

8...g6 9.♖d2.

9.♕h4 ♖g8 10.♞xf6

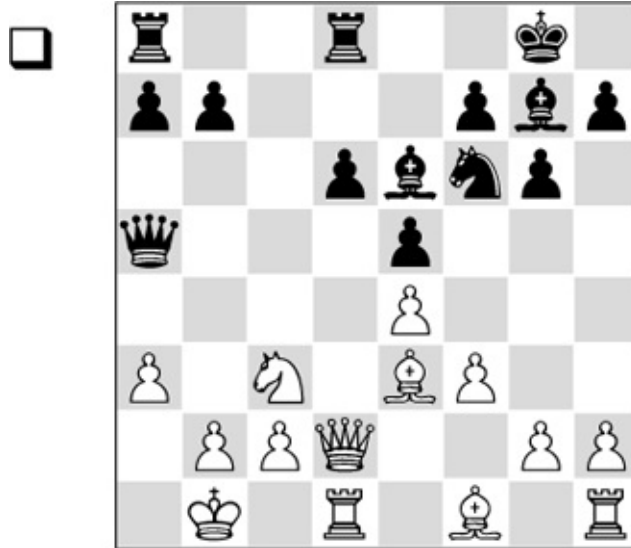
The knight which was dominating the position is exchanged off, for a significant role in the attack.

10... ♖g7 11. ♖g3 ♗xf6 12. ♕xf6 ♖g8 13. ♖d1 d5 14. ♖xg7

Black resigned.

Isaak Boleslavsky Georgy Lisitsin

Leningrad 1956 (13)



1. ♞b5!

White begins an operation aimed at securing an ‘eternal knight’. The pawn is of no significance in this.

1... ♔a4

Better is 1... ♖xd2 2. ♖xd2 d5 3. ♘c7 with advantage to White.

2.c4!

Played out of positional considerations. He could win material with 2. ♘c7.

2... ♗xc4 3. ♞c3 ♕b3 4. ♗xc4 ♕xc4 5. ♗g5! ♕e6 6. ♗xf6 ♕xf6 7. ♞d5

The white knight has occupied its dream position and Black’s game is now hopeless.

7... ♕h4 8. ♕e2 ♗f8 9. ♕f1 ♖ac8 10.g3 ♕g5 11.h4 ♕h6 12.g4 g5 13.hxg5 ♕xg5 14. ♖h5

♕g6 15.g5! h6

15... ♖xh5 16. ♘f6+.

16. ♖xh6! ♕xg5 17. ♖h5!

And Black resigned.

Anatoly Karpov Sergey Dolmatov

Amsterdam 1980 (5)



The knight on d5 is clearly stronger than the bishop on f8. White gradually creates an attack on the king. Exchanging on c6 would ease Black's task:

1. ♖6a3! ♜c5 2. ♖f3!

But the rook on f7, which defends the king, should be exchanged.

2... ♜xf3 3. ♕xf3 ♖f7

3... ♜xc4? 4. ♖f6+ ♕g8 5. ♘b6

**4. ♕g4 h5 5. ♕e4 ♜c8 6. ♜a3 ♕f5 7. ♜a7+ ♖h6 8. ♕e3+ g5 9. ♕e2 ♜b8 10. g4! hxg4
11. hxg4 ♖b1+ 12. ♕g2 ♜b7 13. ♜xb7 ♕xb7 14. ♕f3 ♕c8 15. ♕f6+ ♖h7 16. ♕f7+!**

And Black resigned, since after 16... ♖h6 there follows 17. ♘e3, whilst after 16... ♕g7 — 17. ♘f6+ ♕h8 18. ♖h5+.

Judit Polgar Viswanathan Anand

Wijk aan Zee 1998 (6)



White's advantage is not in doubt ('eternal knight'), but it is not so easy to realise. Polgar copes with

this task splendidly.

1. ♖e3 ♜e7 2. ♖d3 ♜d8 3. ♖d2 ♖c6 4. ♖d1 ♔g8 5. h4!?

After strengthening the position, White goes over to active operations.

5... ♗g7?!

The blockading 5... h5!? deserved consideration.

6. h5! ♜g5 7. ♖f3 ♖c8 8. ♖d1 ♖c6

Neither now, nor in the future, can Black play ...a5-a4, because after bxa4 the white passed pawn decides.

9. ♖e2 ♖c8 10. ♖h1 ♔g8 11. f3 ♖b8 12. ♖f2 ♖b7 13. hxg6 fxg6

On 13...hxg6 there is the very unpleasant 14. ♖g1 ♜f6 15. ♖h2 ♜g7 16. ♖h4 ♖b8 17. ♖a1, and there is no way to defend the pawn.



14. c5! dxc5 15. ♖xc5 ♜d8 16. ♖c1 ♔f7 17. ♖e3 ♔g7 18. ♖c4 ♖d7 19. ♖c1 h5 20. ♖c6
♖d6 21. ♖c8 ♖d7 22. ♖c5 ♔h6 23. ♖b8 ♜f6 24. ♖e3+ ♜g5

24... ♗g7 25. ♖a8!.

25. f4 exf4

The sacrifice also fails: 25... ♜xf4 26. gxf4 ♖g4+ 27. ♖g3 ♖e2+ 28. ♗h3 ♖f1+ 29. ♖g2.

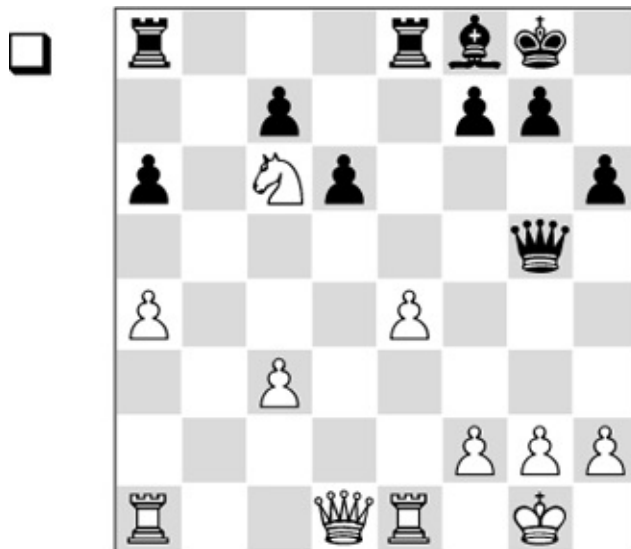
26. ♖h8+!

Black resigned: 26... ♗g7 27. ♖d4+ ♜f6 28. ♖xf6+! ♖xf6 29. ♖h7+! ♗xh7 30. ♗xf6+ ♗g7 31. ♗xd7.

Michael Adams

Zoltan Almasi

Dortmund 1998 (3)



The powerful knight on c6 paralyses the entire black position. White confidently realises his advantage, by taking play into an endgame:

1. ♔d5! ♚xd5 2. exd5 ♗g6 3. ♖ab1 ♘g7 4. c4 ♘c3 5. ♜ec1 ♘f6 6. ♚f1 ♜e4 7. g3 ♘g5 8. ♜c2 ♜ae8 9. ♞b8!

Time to start harvesting!

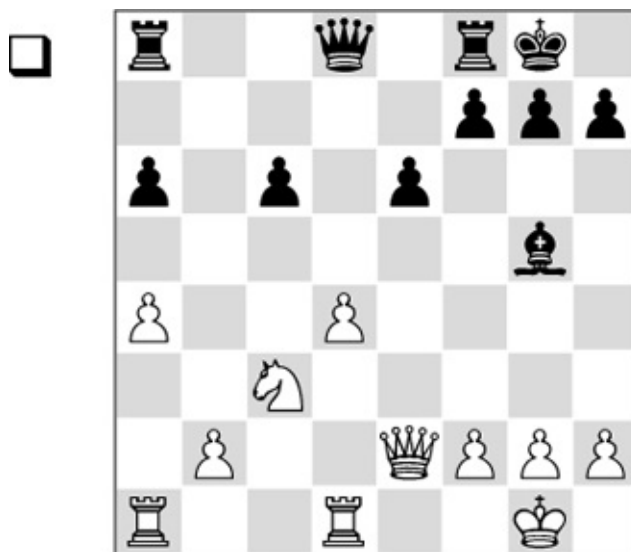
9...a5 10. ♞c6 ♚g7 11. ♞xa5 ♜a8 12. ♜b5 ♘f6 13. ♜a2 ♘c3 14. ♞c6 ♜xc4 15. a5 ♜a6 16. ♜c2 ♜cxc6 17. dxc6 ♜xa5 18. ♜b7 ♜a1+ 19. ♚g2 ♘a5 20. ♜a7

1-0

Svetozar Gligoric

Laszlo Szabo

Hamburg 1965 (6)



1.a5!

«The key move of the game, fixing the weakness on a6 and taking b6 from the black queen. If the black pawn were on a5, he would have a good game» (Gligoric).

1... ♖e7 2. ♘c4 ♘d6 3. ♞a4

By putting his knight on b6, White enables himself to pressurise the pawns on a6 and c6.

3... ♜fd8 4. ♜ac1?

He should have included 4. ♘b6 ♞a7 and only now 5. ♞ac1, with advantage.

4... ♘b4?

4... ♙f6! gave counterplay.

5. ♞b6 ♜a7 6. ♘xc6 ♘xa5



7. d5! exd5 8. ♞xd5 ♘f8

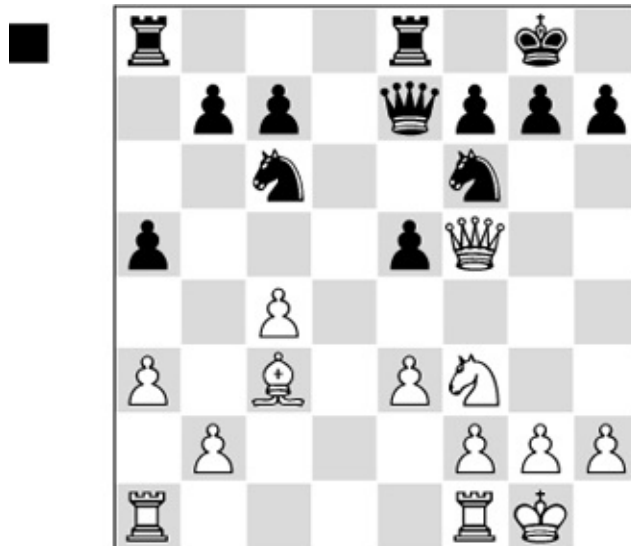
No better is 8... h6 9. ♜a1 ♘c5 10. ♘xc5 ♙xc5 11. ♘f6+.

9. b4 ♘b5 10. ♞xe7 ♜xd1+ 11. ♜xd1 ♘xe7 12. ♜e1+

1-0

Machgielis Euwe Samuel Reshevsky

The Hague/Moscow 1948 (20)



Black is better, because the white bishop is hampered by the pawns on a5 and e5, and lacks prospects.

1... ♘e6! 2. ♘xe6 ♜xe6 3. b4?

The decisive weakening of the position. He had to play 3. ♘d2 with chances of a successful defence.

3... ♖e4 4. ♙b2 f6! 5. b5 ♗e7 6. ♖fd1 ♖d6 7. ♚f1

7. ♜xd6 cxd6 8. ♜d1 fails to 8... ♜c8 9. ♗d2 ♗xd2 10. ♜xd2 ♜xc4, and after 11. ♜xd6 the bad bishop is lost — 11... ♜c2.



7... ♗c8!

While the bishop does nothing, the knight comes to attack the weak pawns.

8. ♜dc1

The course of the game could have been changed by 8. ♗xe5!?

8... c5 9. ♙c3 ♗xc3!

White threatened by 10. ♗e1 to keep the pressure against the pawn on a5. Now, as often happens, one form of advantage (bad bishop) is transformed into another (open lines).

10. ♜xc3 e4 11. ♗g1 ♗b6 12. ♗e2 f5 13. ♚e1 ♖ad8 14. ♜c2 ♚f7 15. ♗g3?

Stronger is 15. ♗c3.

15... ♚e6 16. ♗f1 ♖d3 17. ♗g3 g5 18. ♗e2 ♗a4 19. ♗g3 ♚e5 20. ♗f1 h5 21. f3

There is already no defence.

21... ♜b3 22. fxe4 fxe4 23. ♜f2 ♗b2 24. ♜c2 ♗d3+ 25. ♚e2 ♜f8 26. ♗d2 ♜f2+ 27. ♚d1 ♜b2 28. ♜xb2 ♗xb2+ 29. ♚c1 ♜xg2

0-1

Positions for playing out

P78 (solution on page 264)



White to play (20 minutes)

P79 (solution on page 264)



White to play (30 minutes)

[P80 \(solution on page 264\)](#)



White to play (30 minutes)

[P81 \(solution on page 265\)](#)



White to play (20 minutes)

P82 (solution on page 265)



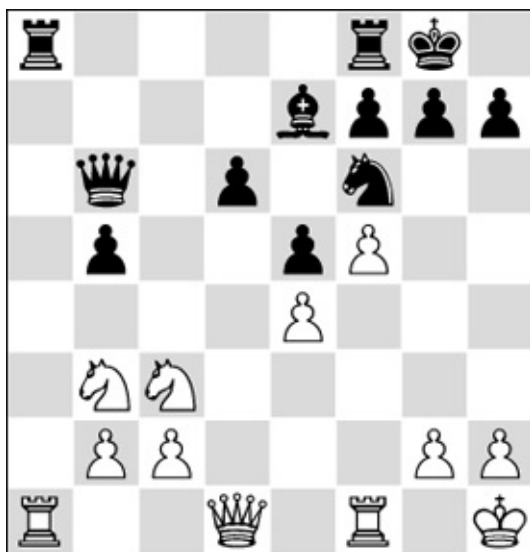
White to play (40-50 minutes)

P83 (solution on page 265)



Black to play (30 minutes)

[P84 \(solution on page 265\)](#)



White to play (25-30 minutes)

[P85 \(solution on page 266\)](#)



White to play (45-60 minutes)

[P86 \(solution on page 266\)](#)



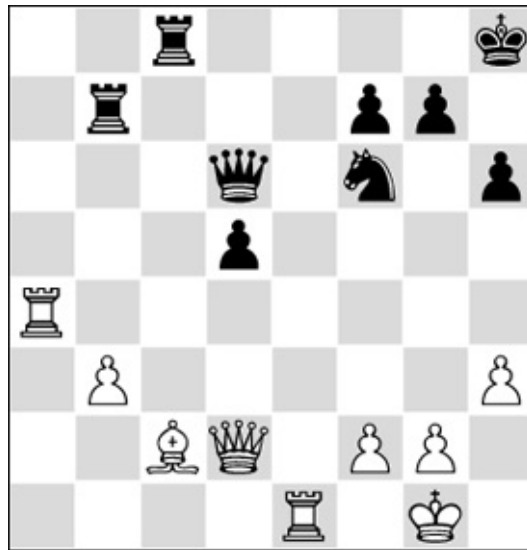
Black to play (45-60 minutes)

[P87 \(solution on page 267\)](#)



White to play (45-60 minutes)

P88 (solution on page 267)



Black to play (45 minutes)

P89 (solution on page 267)



White to play (25 minutes)



White to play (25 minutes)

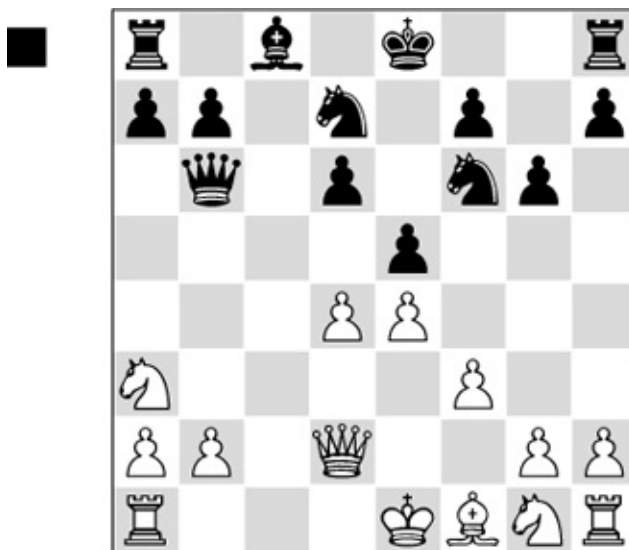
Chapter 12

Sample games and endings

In this chapter, we present some instructive games and fragments, which will help you better absorb the material examined above. The examples should be carefully studied and analysed, as this will help you improve and raise the class of your play.

Alexander Kotov
Isaak Boleslavsky

Moscow 1945 (9)



With his next move, Black begins counterplay in the centre and on the kingside.

1...d5! 2.dxe5

Evidently, better is 2.exd5 ♞xd5 3.♞c4 (3.dxe5 ♞e3 4.♞c4 ♞xc4 5.♠xc4 ♞xe5 6.♞e2 ♞b4+ 7.♞d1 0-0, and the white king is not very comfortable) 3...♞xd4 4.♞xd4 exd4 5.0-0-0 0-0 6.♞xd4 ♞7f6.

2...♞xe5 3.♠b5+ ♞f8!

After 3...♠d7? 4.♠xd7+ ♞exd7 5.exd5 White has a normal position.

4.exd5 ♞g7 5.♞e2 a6 6.♠c4 ♞e8

Black has fully adequate compensation for the pawn.

7.♞d1?

Now White loses quickly. 7.♞f1 was essential.

7...♠h3!

Effectively developing the attack.

8.♞f1

He is not saved by 8.f4 ♠xg2 9.fxe5 ♞xe5 10.♞f1 ♠xf1 11.♞xf1 ♞f5+ 12.♞g2 ♞f2+ 13.♞h3 ♞d6 14.♞h1 ♞d7+ 15.♞g3 ♞e4+, and Black wins.

8...♞xf3 9.♞f4

Or 9.♞c3 ♞e3! 10.♠d3 (10.♞d3 ♠xg2+) 10...♞c8 11.♞c4 ♞xc4 12.♞xc4 ♞g4 13.♞d4 ♞e1+ 14.♞xe1 ♞d2+ 15.♞e2 ♞xc4.

9...♞g4 10.♞xf3 ♞e3+ 11.♞e1 ♠xg2 12.♞f2 ♠xh1 13.♞d3 ♞b4+ 14.♞d2 ♞ac8

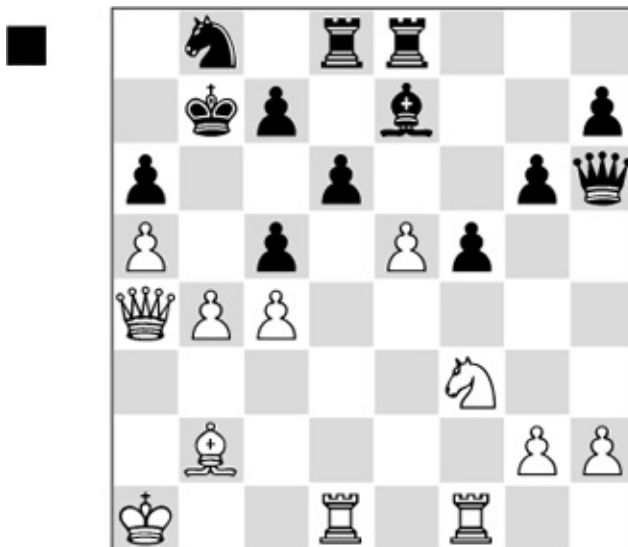
15. ♖b3 ♙xd5 16. ♙xd5 ♜xd5 17. ♞d4+ ♚xd4 18. ♜xd4 ♞f6

White resigned.

Nikola Padevsky

Ratmir Kholmov

Dresden 1956 (12)



Black's position looks suspicious, as his king is weak and his queen offside. Kholmov, one of the best defenders in chess, finds a surprising saving chance.

1...cxb4!? 2. ♚xb4+ ♛c8 3. ♜b1 dxe5!

Allowing 4. ♙xb8+ ♜xb8 5. ♙c1+ ♜c8 6. ♙xh6 e4 7. ♞e1 ♙f6+ 8. ♜a2 ♜e5, when Black is fine. If instead 4. ♙b3, then 4... ♙f6! 5. ♙c1 ♙g7 6. ♙xb8+ ♜d7 7. ♙b7 e4+ 8. ♜a2 exf3 with mutual chances.

4.c5 ♚f4 5. ♚b3 ♙xc5 6. ♙c3 ♞c6 7. ♚b7+ ♛d7 8. ♞xe5+ ♚xe5 9. ♙xe5 ♜xe5 10. ♜b3?

A time-trouble mistake. Correct is 10. ♜fd1+ ♙d4+ 11. ♜xd4+ ♞xd4 12. ♙xa6 ♜d5 maintains rough equality.

10... ♙d4+ 11. ♚b1 ♜b8

An alternative was 11... ♞xa5 12. ♙xa6 ♞xb3 13. ♙a4+ c6, and Black should win.

12. ♚xb8 ♞xb8 13. ♜xb8 ♜xa5

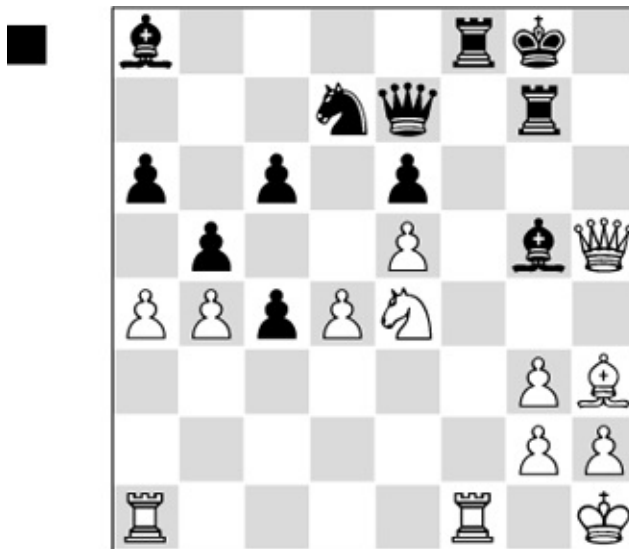
Three pawns for the exchange in the endgame is more than sufficient compensation. White's position is hopeless.

14. ♜d1 c5 15. ♜d2 ♜b5+ 16. ♜xb5 axb5 17. ♜a2 ♚c6 18. ♜a7 c4 19. ♜xh7 b4 20.g4 b3 21.gxf5 c3 22. ♜h3 gxf5 23. ♜f3 f4

0-1

Vladimir Kramnik Viswanathan Anand

Belgrade 1997 (2)



1...c5!

By returning the piece, Black strengthens his position (especially the square e6) and then advances his queenside pawns.

2. ♖xg5

Not 2. ♙xe6+ ♜xe6 3. ♘xg5 ♜xf1+ 4. ♜xf1 ♜g6, and White's attack is beaten off.

2... ♗d5!!

Bad is 2... ♜xg5? 3. ♙xe6+ ♔g7 4. ♜h4 with advantage – 4... ♜h8 5. ♜f7+!.

3. ♗f3 cxb4 4. axb5 axb5 5. ♗h4

5. ♜a7!? deserves attention.

5... ♔g5 6. ♜xf8+ ♗xf8 7. ♔e8 ♜f7 8. ♗f3 ♔g6 9. ♔xb5 b3 10. ♜f1 ♔d3

Despite White's extra pawns, the outcome of the game is decided.

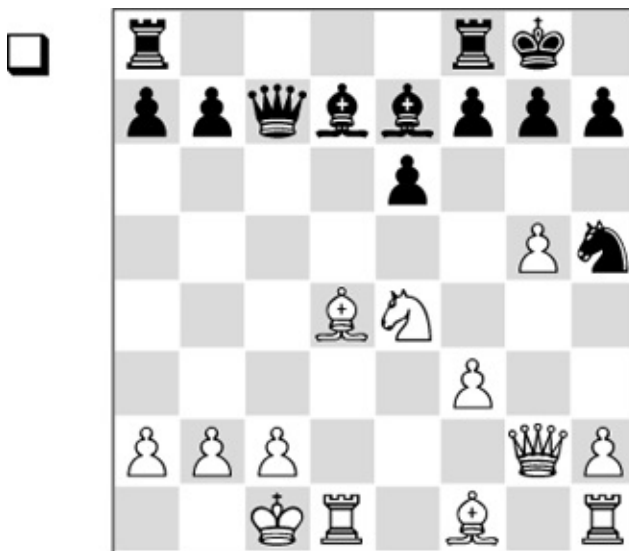
11. ♔g1 ♔e3+ 12. ♔h1 c3 13. ♗xe6 ♗xe6 14. d5 ♜xf3! 15. gxf3 ♗h3 16. ♔c4 ♗xf1 17. ♔g4+ ♔h7 18. e6 ♗g6

0-1

Sergei Tiviakov

Valery Salov

Madrid 1994 (6)



The position is about equal. It was worth considering 1.♖g4!?, and if 1...♜f4+?, then 2.♜xf4 ♘xf4 3.♙xg7, winning. White played more weakly:

1.♙f6+ ♙xf6 2.gxf6 ♙c6! 3.♚g4 ♜fd8!

And Black obtained counterplay:

4.♜g1

Bad is 4.♜xh5? ♜f4+ 5.♙b1 ♙xf3, winning.

4...g6 5.c3?!

After 5.f4 ♜xf4+ 6.♜xf4 ♘xf4 7.♙e5 ♜xd1+ 8.♙xd1 ♜d8+ 9.♙c1 ♘d5 Black has a healthy extra pawn, but it was worth considering 5.♜d2!.

5...♚h8 6.♙c4 e5!

Seizing the initiative. After 6...b5? 7.♙xe6! fxe6 8.♜xe6 ♜f4+ (8...♘f4?? 9.f7+ ♜xd4 10.♜f6+#) 9.♙b1 ♜d6 10.f7+ ♜xd4 11.♜xd6 ♜xd6 12.♜xd6 and White is better, whilst 6...♙xf3 7.♜xf3 ♜xc4 8.♜xb7 ♜db8 9.♜xf7 ♜xa2 10.b4 leads to a very complicated double-edged battle.

7.♙e3 ♙xf3! 8.♚xf3 ♚xc4 9.♚xb7 ♚xa2 10.♜xd8+

Or 10.♜xa7!? ♜e6.

10...♜xd8 11.♚xa7 ♚d5!

If 11...♜xa7 12.♙xa7 ♘xf6, the position is equal.

12.♚e7?

It was possible to resist after 12.♜c5 ♜e4 13.♜d1 ♜xd1+ 14.♙xd1 ♘xf6 15.♜f8+ ♘g8 or 12.♙b6 ♜d2+ 13.♙b1 ♜d3+ 14.♙a1 ♜e8.

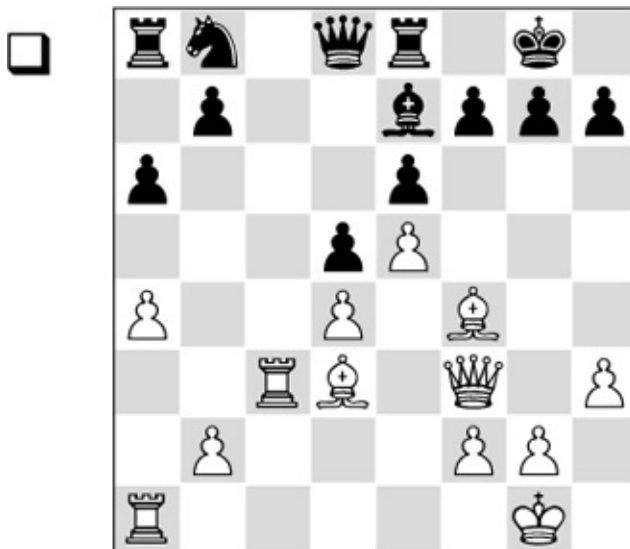
12...♙f4 13.♙xf4 exf4 14.♜e1 h5 15.h4 ♚d2+ 16.♚b1 ♚d3+ 17.♚a2

17.♙c1 ♜a8.

17...♜a8+ 18.♚b3 ♜b8+ 19.♚a2 ♚d2! 20.♜b1 ♚d5+! 21.b3 ♜a8+

Lev Polugaevsky Eugenio Torre

London 1984 (3)



Black is behind in development, and Polugaevsky starts an energetic attack on the enemy king.

1. ♖xh7+! ♜xh7 2. ♚h5+ ♜g8 3. ♖g3

Threatening 4. ♘h6 ♘f8 5. ♘xg7 ♘xg7 6. ♗h6.

3...g6

No better is 3...♘f8 4. ♘g5 ♗b6 (4...♝e7 5. ♘f6 ♘d7 6. ♗h6) 5. ♘f6 ♗xb2 6. ♝xg7+ ♘xg7 7. ♗g5 ♗xa1+ 8. ♘h2, and Black loses. But it was worth trying 4...♗c8!? 5. ♝c1 ♘c6 6. ♘f6 ♘xd4 with chances of a successful defence.

4. ♝xg6+ fxg6 5. ♚xg6+ ♜h8 6. ♚h6+ ♜g8 7. ♚xe6+ ♜h8 8. ♚h6+ ♜g8 9. ♚g6+ ♜h8 10. ♚h5+! ♜g8 11. ♘h6 ♘f8

White also wins after 11...♘h7 12. ♘f8+ ♘g8 13. ♗g6+ ♘xf8 14.e6.

12. ♚g6+ ♜h8 13. ♘xf8 ♝xf8

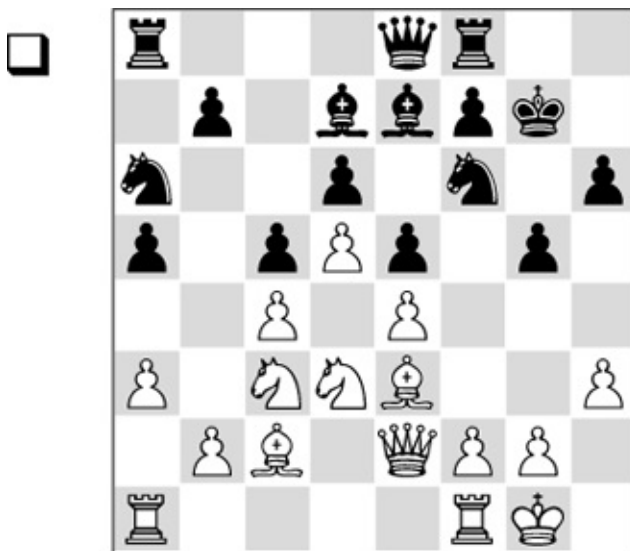
He also loses after 13...♗d7 14. ♘g7+ ♗xg7 (14...♘g8 15. ♘f6+ ♘f8 16. ♝a3) 15. ♗xe8+.

14. ♚h6+ ♜g8 15. ♝a3 ♜f7 16. ♝f3+ ♜e7 17. ♚g7+

1-0

Peter Svidler Vladimir Malaniuk

Maikop 1998 (5)



The position of the black king is weakened, and White, not fearing to sacrifice, breaks through to it.

1.f4! gxf4

The move 1...exf4 gives the bishop on c2 the chance to enter the game with decisive effect after e4-e5.

2.♖xf4 ♜h8

Or 2...exf4 3.♙xf4 followed by e4-e5.

3.♜f2!

Calmly strengthening his position. After 3.♘h5+ ♘xh5 4.♙xh5 f6 Black holds.

3...exf4 4.♙xf4 ♘h7 5.e5! ♙h4 6.e6! fxe6 7.♚g4+ ♙g5 8.♙xd6 exd5 9.♚f3

Threatening 10.♙e5+, mating.

9...♜f8 10.♙xf8+ ♘xf8 11.♙xd5 ♙e6 12.♜e1 ♚c6 13.♚c3+ ♚g8 14.♚g3 ♙xd5 15.cxd5 ♚c7 16.d6 ♚g7 17.♚h2 c4? 18.h4

1-0

18...♙d8 19.♜xf8+! ♚xf8 20.♜e8+ ♚f7 21.♙f3+ ♚xe8 22.♙a4+.

The following game is instructive in all its stages.

Akiba Rubinstein Oldrich Duras

Karlsbad 1911 (2)

1.c4 e5 2.♖c3 ♖f6 3.g3 ♙b4 4.♙g2 0-0 5.♖f3 ♜e8 6.0-0 ♖c6 7.♖d5 ♙f8 8.d3 h6 9.b3

Many years later in the game Petrosian-Gheorghiu, Moscow 1967, White played 9.♘xf6+ ♙xf6 10.♘d2 d6 11.♘e4 ♙d8 12.♘c3 with a small advantage.

9...d6 10.♙b2 ♖xd5

It was worth considering 10...g6!?

11.cxd5 ♖e7 12.e4 c5 13.dxc6 ♖xc6 14.d4 ♙g4 15.d5 ♖e7 16.♚d3 ♚d7 17.♖d2 ♙h3 18.a4! ♙xg2 19.♚xg2 ♜eb8?

Black tries to play in the area where White is stronger, thanks to his extra space. He should have played 19...g6 followed by ...♙g7 and ...f7-f5.

20. ♖c4 b5 21. axb5 ♜xb5 22. ♖a3 ♗g6?

A loss of time in an inferior position. The knight should have headed to c8.

23. ♖fa1 a6 24. ♟c1 ♖b7 25. ♟e3 f6 26. f3 ♗e7



27. ♜f1! ♗c8 28. ♗d2! ♜b4 29. ♜c4!

Without the queens, the weaknesses on the queenside can be exploited more easily.

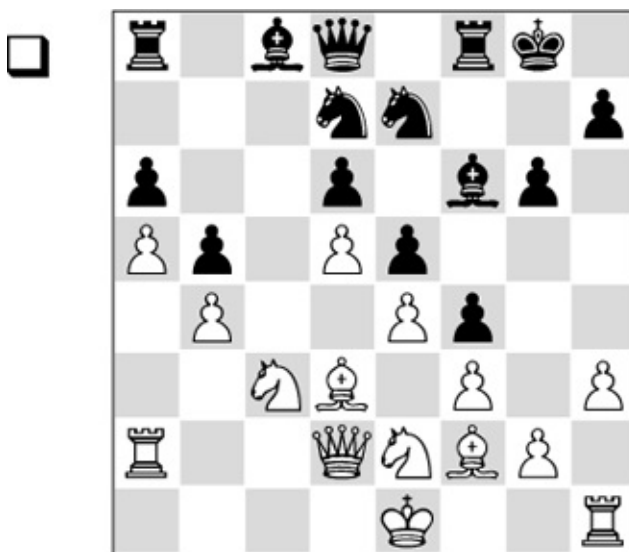
29... ♜xc4 30. ♗xc4 ♖ab8 31. ♗d2 ♖c7 32. ♖xa6 ♖c2 33. ♖6a2 ♖xa2 34. ♖xa2 ♟e7
 35. ♜f2 ♜f7 36. ♜e2 ♜e8 37. ♜d3 ♜d7 38. ♜c3 ♟d8 39. ♗c4 ♟c7 40. g4 ♟d8 41. ♖a6
 ♟c7 42. h4 ♟d8 43. h5 ♟c7 44. b4 ♖b7 45. ♖a8 ♜d8 46. ♜b3 ♖b8 47. ♖xb8 ♟xb8 48. b5
 ♗e7 49. b6 f5 50. gxf5 ♗g8 51. ♟f2 ♜c8 52. ♟h4

1-0

Mikhail Botvinnik

Predrag Ostojic

Belgrade 1969 (9)



1. ♜d1!

«A move which my opponent had certainly not anticipated. The advance b7-b5 may have secured Black's queenside, but has also secured White's...» (Botvinnik).

1... ♖f7 2. ♜c1 ♜c7 3. ♜b1 ♜b7 4. ♖c1

Having completed artificial long castling, which is extremely rare in practice, White is ready to begin active operations.

4... ♖f8 5. ♘c2

The bishop will stand better on b3.

5... ♖d7 6. ♘b3 ♔g7 7. ♖ac2 ♗g8 8. ♗d1 ♘d8 9. ♗b2 ♗f6 10. ♗d3 ♗e8 11. h4 h6
12. ♕d1 ♖c8

In the hope of relieving his cramped position by exchanges.

13. ♕g1!

Preparing to open the game on the kingside.

13... ♖xc2 14. ♖xc2 ♘c8 15. g3 fxg3 16. ♕xg3 ♗f6 17. ♕g2 ♗h5 18. ♗g3!

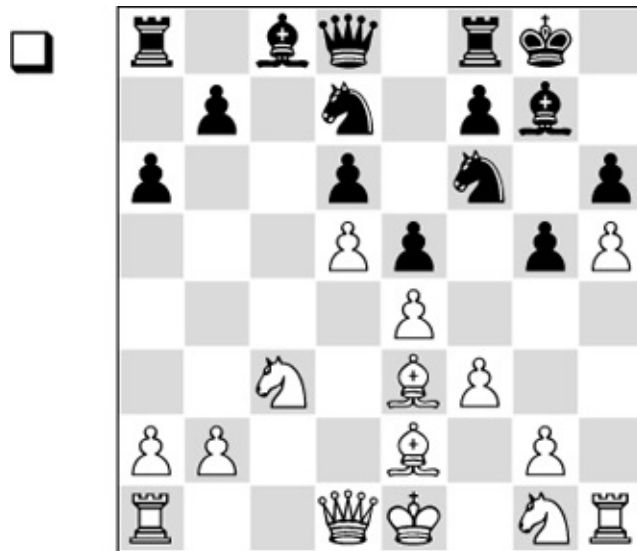
Exchanging the only active black piece.

18... ♗xg3 19. ♕xg3 ♖c7 20. f4! ♖xc2 21. ♘xc2 exf4 22. ♘d4+ ♔h7 23. ♕xf4 ♕e7 24. e5
dxe5 25. ♘xe5 ♗d7 26. ♘b2 ♕f8 27. h5 ♕xf4 28. ♗xf4 ♕g8 29. hxg6

1-0

Tigran Petrosian Samuel Schweber

Stockholm 1962 (20)



1.g4

Sealing up the kingside and transferring the weight of the struggle to the other wing, where White effectively has an extra piece, thanks to the dead bishop on g7.

1... b5 2. a4! b4 3. ♗b1 a5 4. ♗d2 ♗c5 5. ♖xc5! dxc5 6. ♖b5! ♖b7 7. ♗e2 ♗e8 8. ♖xe8!

Else after ... ♗e8-d6 Black has counterplay.

8... ♖xe8 9. ♗c4 ♖a6 10. ♕b3 ♕f6?

Better is 10... f6 and then ... ♕g7-f8.

11. ♖c1 ♖f8 12. ♗g3 ♖c8

12... ♕f4 is bad because of 13. ♕f2 ♖xc4 14. ♖xc4 ♕d2+? 15. ♗e2, trapping the queen.

13. 0-0 ♖d8 14. ♕g2 ♖a7 15. ♖f2 ♕h7 16. ♖fc2 ♕a6

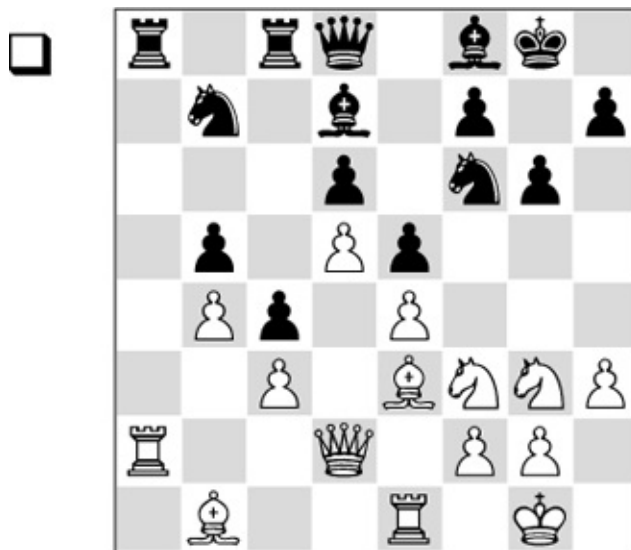
The pawn sacrifice is Black's last chance.

17. ♗xe5 ♖c7 18. ♗c4 ♖g7 19. ♕d3 ♕g8 20. ♖d2 ♖e7 21. e5 ♖xe5 22. ♗xe5 ♖xe5
23. ♕xa6 ♖xa6 24. ♖xc5 ♖c8 25. ♖xa5 f5 26. gxh5 ♖xf5 27. ♗xf5 ♖xf5 28. ♖b5 ♖df8
29. d6 ♖xb5 30. axb5 ♕f7 31. d7

And in view of the variation 31... ♖d8 32.b6 ♜e7 33.b7 b3 34.♜g3 Black resigned.

Anatoly Karpov Wolfgang Unzicker

Nice 1974 (3)



1. ♖a7!

«Under cover of the bishop, White will carry out a powerful queenside regrouping. All of his pieces obtain the chance to occupy natural and strong positions. Meanwhile, Black finds normal communications within his camp disrupted, principally by the knight on b7» (Karpov).

1... ♖e8 2. ♖c2 ♖c7 3. ♖ea1 ♜e7 4. ♖b1 ♖e8 5. ♖e2 ♖d8 6. ♖h2 ♖g7 7.f4! f6

Too passive. He should try 7...exf4 8.♗xf4 f6 followed by ...♗d8-f7-e5.

8.f5 g5 9. ♖c2!

Taking control of h5.

9... ♖f7 10. ♖g3 ♖b7 11. ♖d1 h6?!

He should not have weakened g6.

**12. ♖h5 ♜e8 13. ♜d1 ♖d8 14. ♖a3 ♜f8 15. ♖1a2 ♜g8 16. ♖g4! ♜f8 17. ♖e3 ♜g8
18. ♖xf7+ ♖xf7 19. ♜h5 ♖d8**

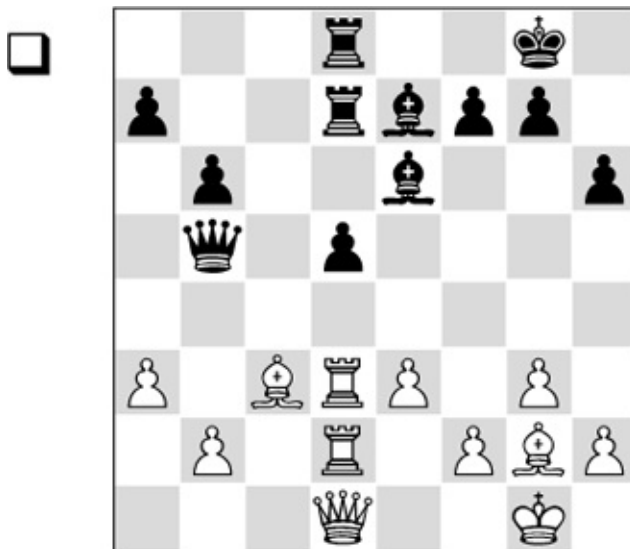
Or 19...♗h8 20.♗g4 ♜xh5 21.♗xh5 ♜f7 22.♖b6 ♖xa3 23.♖xa3 ♖a8 24.♖xa8 ♗xa8 25.♖d8.

20. ♜g6! ♜f8 21. ♖h5

1-0

Anatoly Karpov Boris Spassky

Montreal 1979 (4)



White has tied down all Black's forces to the defence of d5 and now starts an offensive on the kingside, to increase his advantage.

1. ♔h5! a6 2.h3 ♕c6 3. ♔h2 a5 4.f4 f6 5. ♔d1! ♕b5?

Stronger is 5... ♖d6! with chances of defending.

6.g4 g5 7. ♔h1 ♕c6 8.f5 ♗f7 9.e4

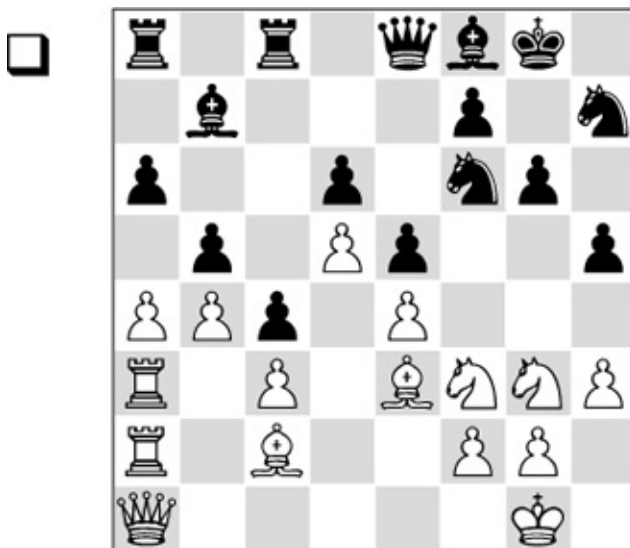
This is why the rook should have gone to d6. Now White wins a pawn.

9... ♕g7 10.exd5 ♕c7 11. ♖e2 b5? 12. ♖xe7 ♖xe7 13.d6 ♕c4 14.b3

Black resigned.

Robert Fischer Boris Spassky

Belgrade 1992 (1)



1. ♞f1!

The knight moves via f1-d2-b1 with the aim after axb5 axb5 and the exchange of all the major pieces, to win the undefended b5-pawn with ♞b1-a3.

1... ♖e7 2. ♗d2 ♔g7 3. ♗b1 ♗xe4!?

White is carrying out his plan, so Spassky sacrifices a piece, changing the course of the battle and obtaining practical chances.

4. ♖xe4 f5 5. ♖c2 ♗xd5 6. axb5 axb5 7. ♖a7 ♔f6 8. ♗bd2 ♖xa7 9. ♖xa7 ♖a8 10. g4 hxg4 11. hxg4 ♖xa7 12. ♔xa7 f4 13. ♖xf4

Also good is 13. ♗b6, but the move in the game is more energetic.

13... exf4 14. ♗h4 ♖f7

On 14... ♗f8 the simplest is 15. ♖d4+ ♔e6 16. ♗xg6 ♗xg6 17. ♗f5+.

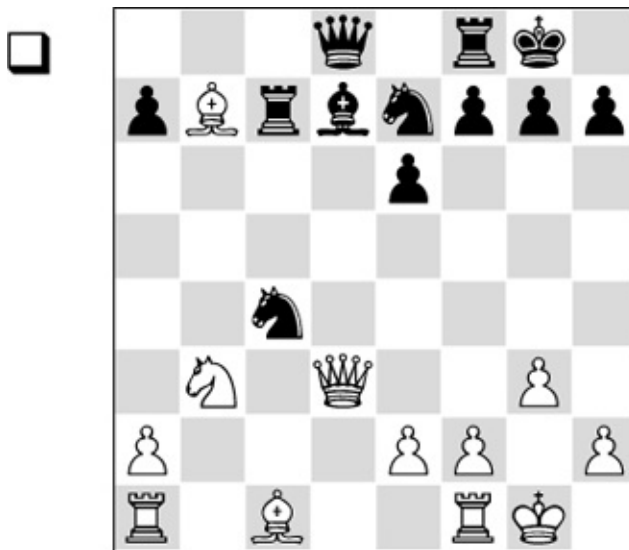
15. ♔d4+ ♔e6 16. ♗f5 ♖f8 17. ♔xf4 ♔d7 18. ♗d4 ♔e1+ 19. ♔g2 ♖d5+ 20. ♖e4 ♖xe4+ 21. ♗xe4 ♖e7 22. ♗xb5 ♗f8 23. ♗bxd6 ♗e6 24. ♔e5

Black resigned.

Garry Kasparov

Anatoly Karpov

London/Leningrad 1986 (4)



1. ♖a6!

An unexpected and very strong move, the aim of which is to drive the knight from the square c4.

1... ♗e5 2. ♔e3 ♗c4 3. ♔e4 ♗d6

3... ♖a8 was worth considering) 4. ♖d3 «This three-move circle has ended in White's favour – his queen has returned to her best square, whilst the black knight has not managed to do the same» (Kasparov).

4... ♖c6 5. ♖a3 ♖c8 6. ♖xc8 ♗dxc8 7. ♖fd1 ♔xd3 8. ♖xd3 ♖e8 9. ♖ad1 f6 10. ♗d4 ♖b6 10... ♖a6 11. ♗b5

11. ♖c5 ♖a6 12. ♗b5 ♖c6

Bad is 12... ♖xa2 13. ♗c7 ♖f8 14. ♗xe6 ♖e8 15. ♗c7 ♖f8 16. ♖e3, winning.

13. ♖xe7! ♗xe7

13... ♖xe7 14. ♖d8+ ♔f7 15. ♖xc8.

14. ♖d7 ♗g6 15. ♖xa7 ♗f8 16. a4 ♖b8 17. e3 h5 18. ♔g2 e5 19. ♖d3 ♔h7 20. ♖c3 ♖bc8 21. ♖xc6 ♖xc6 22. ♗c7 ♗e6 23. ♗d5 ♔h6 24. a5 e4 25. a6

In this position, the game was adjourned and Black resigned without resuming.

Vladimir Kramnik

Veselin Topalov

Novgorod 1997 (1)



White stands better.

1. ♖ b1!

Preventing the move ...a7-a5 with counterplay.

1...b6

If 1...f5, then 2.exf5 gxf5 3.f4 ♔h6 4.g3 with advantage.

2.c5 b5 3.a4 bxa4

3...a6 4.♘b3.

4.♙xa4 f5 5.exf5 gxf5 6.♗c4 ♗d5 7.♙d2 e4 8.♗a5 ♖c8

8...♘e5 9.♙a6.

9.♙a6 ♖c7 10.♗c3!

Exchanging the opponent's most active piece.

**10...♗xc3 11.♙xc3+ ♙g7 12.♙d2 ♙a2 13.♖c1 ♙e5 14.♗c4 ♙xc4 15.♙xc4 ♔g7 16.b5
cxb5 17.♙xb5 ♙d4 18.c6 ♚f6 19.♖d1 ♙e5 20.♙a5 ♖e7 21.♙c4 f4**

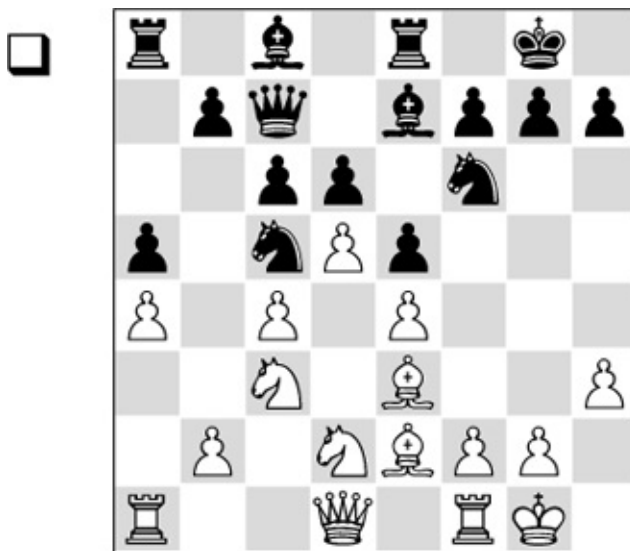
Or 21...♘d6 22.♙d8 ♘xc4 23.♖d7.

22. ♖ d7

Black resigned.

Artur Jussupow Jorge Rubinetti

Toluca 1982 (13)



White starts an attack on the kingside.

1. ♖h2! ♜d8 2. ♖g1!!

A very strong move. White prepares g2-g3, which is not possible at once because of 2...♞d7. Now, however, the latter would be met by the bishop retreat to f1.

2... ♞b6

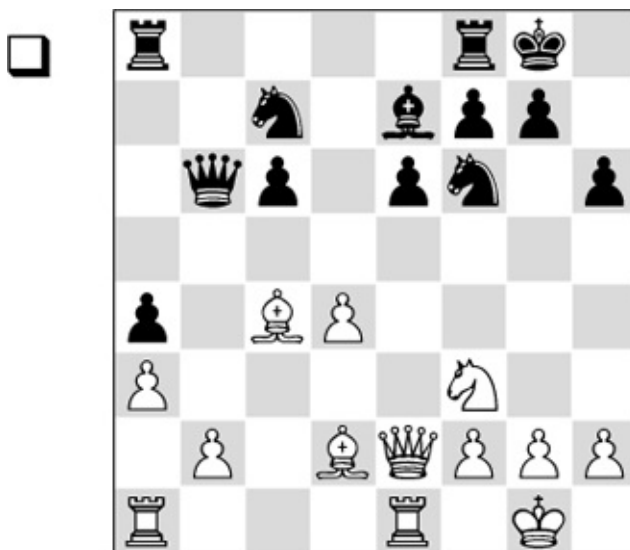
It was better to put the bishop here, with the idea of an exchange.

**3. ♖b1 ♜a7 4.g4 ♖f8 5. ♘f1 ♞e8 6. ♘g3 ♜f6 7. ♘f5 ♜xf5 8.gxf5 ♜b6 9. ♜h5! ♖d8
10. ♜h6 ♖d7 11. ♜xe8 ♖xe8 12. ♜h5 ♜b8 13. ♜xg7**

Black resigned.

Anatoly Karpov Tigran Petrosian

Tilburg 1982 (2)



White is better on account of the weak pawn on a4.

1. ♜f4 ♞cd5 2. ♜e5 ♖fd8 3. ♖ad1 ♜d6 4. ♖d2 ♜xe5

Maybe 4...c5 was better.

5.dxe5! ♘d7 6.g3 ♘f8 7.♖ed1 ♖d7

After 7...♗e7 8.♗xd8 ♗xd8 9.♗xd8 ♗xd8 10.♗c2 the a4-pawn drops: ♗c4-e2-d1.

8.♙e4 ♖b7 9.♖c2 ♖ab8 10.♖dd2 ♘e7 11.♙g2 ♙a5 12.h4 ♖d7 13.♗e2 ♖d5 14.♖d4 ♖xd4 15.♙xd4 ♘d5?

More tenacious is 15...♗b7, not giving up the pawn.

16.♖xc6 ♙a8 17.♖c4 ♙b7 18.♖c2 ♘b6 19.♙b5 ♘g6 20.♙d6!

Now 21.♗c7 is threatened.

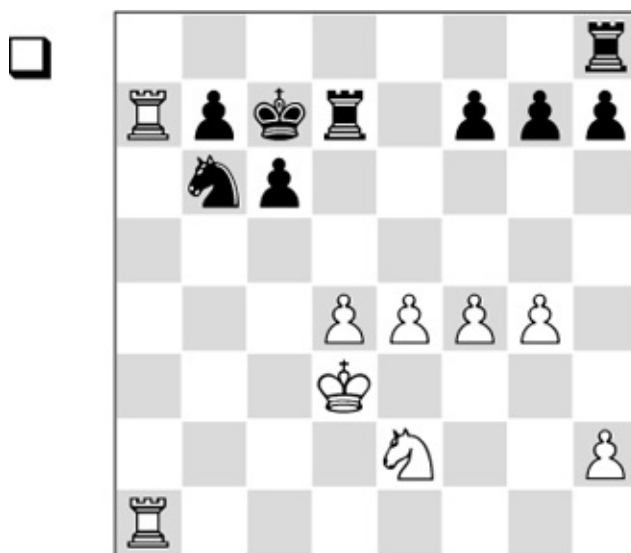
20...♙a8 21.♗c6

Black resigned.

Alexander Kotov

Erich Eliskases

Stockholm 1952 (1)



White has a positional advantage, thanks to his compact pawn mass. But Black has no weaknesses and so White must create some.

1.♖7a5! ♖hd8 2.♖g5 f6 3.♖ga5 ♘c8 4.f5

Stronger is 4.h4! ♗d6 5.♗c3 and only then f4-f5.

4...g5!

Not allowing the white knight to f4 and then e6.

5.h4 h6 6.hxg5 hxg5 7.♖h1 ♘d6 8.♖h6 ♖e7 9.♘c3 ♖de8 10.e5

«This combination gives White a somewhat better rook endgame» (Kotov).

10...fxe5 11.♘d5+ cxd5 12.♖c5+ ♙b8 13.♖xd6 exd4

Of course, better was 13...e4+ 14.♙e3 ♖h8, and Black has adequate play.

14.♖cxd5 ♖e3+ 15.♙c4!

15.♙xd4 ♖8e4+.

15...♖c8+ 16.♙xd4 ♖g3 17.f6!

This pawn is destined to decide the game.

17...♖xg4+ 18.♙e5 ♖f4 19.♖d8 ♖xd8 20.♖xd8+ ♙c7 21.♖g8 ♙d7 22.♖g7+ ♙e8

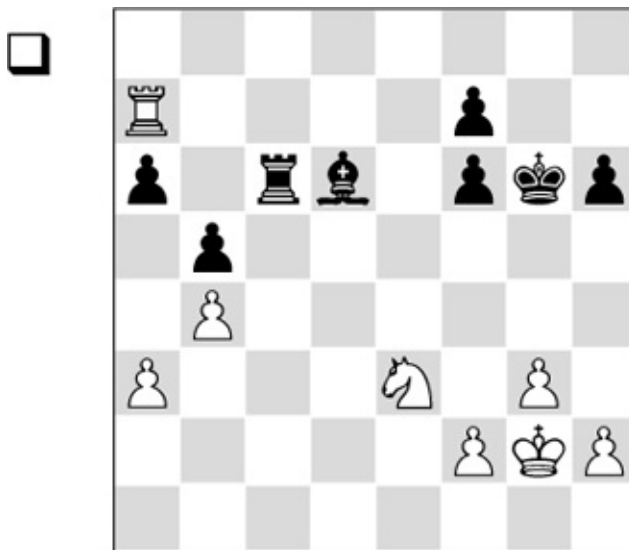
White is winning after 22...♙c6 23.♗xg5 ♖f1 24.♙e6 ♖e1+ 25.♙f7 b5 26.♙g7 ♙b6 27.f7 ♖e7 28.♙g8 ♖xf7 29.♙xf7 ♙a5 30.♙e6 ♙a4 31.♙d5 b4 32.♙c4.

23. ♖xb7! ♜f2 24. ♚e6 ♜e2+ 25. ♚f5 g4 26. ♚g6 ♜f2 27. f7+ ♚f8 28. ♜b8+ ♚e7
 29. ♜e8+

1-0

Anatoly Karpov Vladimir Kramnik

Vienna 1996 (2)



Black's position is clearly inferior, because of his weak pawns, but he has defensive chances, as White also has weak pawns on a3 and b4. Karpov wins, demonstrating virtuoso technique and accurate calculation.

1. ♚f3 ♘e5

1...f5 2. ♘d5.

2. ♘d5 ♚g7 3. ♘e7!

White organises an attack on the king, with minimal forces.

3... ♜c3+

It was worth considering 3... ♜e6 4. ♘f5+ ♚g6 5. ♘h4+ ♚g7 6. ♚g4 ♘b2 7. f4 ♘xa3 8. ♚h5 ♘xb4 9. ♘f5+ ♚f8 10. ♜a8+ ♜e8 11. ♜xa6 ♜b8 with mutual chances.

4. ♚g4 ♜xa3 5. f4! ♘c3 6. ♚h5 ♘xb4 7. ♘f5+ ♚g8 8. ♜a8+ ♚h7 9. ♜a7 ♚g8 10. ♘h6+ ♚f8 11. ♜xf7+ ♚e8 12. ♚g6! ♘c3

12... ♘e7 13. ♘f5 ♘d8 14. ♘d6#.

13. ♘f5 ♚b4 14. ♜b7! ♜a2

14...b3 loses to 15. ♘d6+ ♚d8 16. ♚f7 ♚b2 17. ♚e6 ♜a1 18. ♜d7#.

15. h4 a5 16. h5 a4 17. h6 ♜h2 18. h7 ♚d8 19. ♘h4 f5 20. ♜xb4! ♜h3 21. ♜xa4 ♜xg3+ 22. ♚xf5

1-0

Isaak Boleslavsky

Mikhail Tal

Moscow 1957 (12)



1. ♖xd6!

Not 1.c8♖, since after 1...♗f3+ Black gives perpetual check. Now, however, White keeps an extra piece, but it is very hard to realise the advantage, as little material remains on the board, and White has the wrong rook's pawn for his bishop. After a long battle, Boleslavsky manages to cope with this tough task and achieve the win.

1... ♜xd6 2.c8♖ gxf2 3. ♖b7+ ♗e6

Black tries to get as close as possible to the safe square a8, so he can then exchange queens.

4. ♖xe4+ ♗d7 5. ♖b7+ ♗e6 6. ♖b3+ ♗d7

On 6...♗d5+ a good reply is 7.♕xf2!, and now Black loses after 7...♗xb3 8.axb3 a5 9.♙c1! (but not 9.♕e2 a4! =).

7. ♕xf2 ♗h2+ 8. ♖f3 ♗h3+ 9. ♖e4 ♗f5+ 10. ♖d4 ♗c6 11. ♖c3 ♗e5+

There is little to say about all these checks, until White finds the right plan to strengthen his position.

12. ♖c2 ♗e4+ 13. ♖c1 ♗d7 14. ♖d2 ♗g2+ 15. ♖d3 ♗c6 16. ♖d4 ♗f6+ 17. ♖c4 ♗c6+ 18. ♖d3 ♗b5+ 19. ♖d4 ♗c6 20. ♙f4 ♗f6+ 21. ♖e3 ♗c6 22. ♖d4 ♗f6+ 23. ♙e5 ♗f2+

23... ♗c6 24. ♗d5+!

24. ♗d5 ♗f7+ 25. ♖c5



Trying to break through to the queenside with the king.

25... ♖e7+ 26. ♔d4 ♜h4+ 27. ♔d5 ♜h1+ 28. ♔c5 ♜c1+ 29. ♔b4

29. ♘b6? ♜c6+!

29... ♔c6 30. ♔f7+ ♜c8 31. ♔f8+ ♜d7 32. ♔c5 g5

After 32... ♜e4+ 33. ♘a5 ♜e1+ 34. ♘xa6 ♜e2+ 35. ♜b5+! White wins.

33.a4 a5+!?

The last chance. After 33...g4 there would follow 34. ♜d4+ ♘e6 35. ♘a5.

34. ♘xa5 ♜e4+ 35. ♔a3

The king escapes the checks.

35... ♔e3+ 36. ♙c3 ♜c1+ 37. ♔b3 ♜b1+ 38. ♔a3 ♜c1+ 39. ♔b4 ♜b1+ 40. ♔c5 ♜g1+

40... ♜f5+ 41. ♘b6 ♜xa5+ 42. ♙xa5! g4 43. ♙e1.

41. ♔b5 g4 42. ♔a6 g3 43. ♔d5+ ♔e7 44. ♔b7+ ♔e8 45. ♔b8+

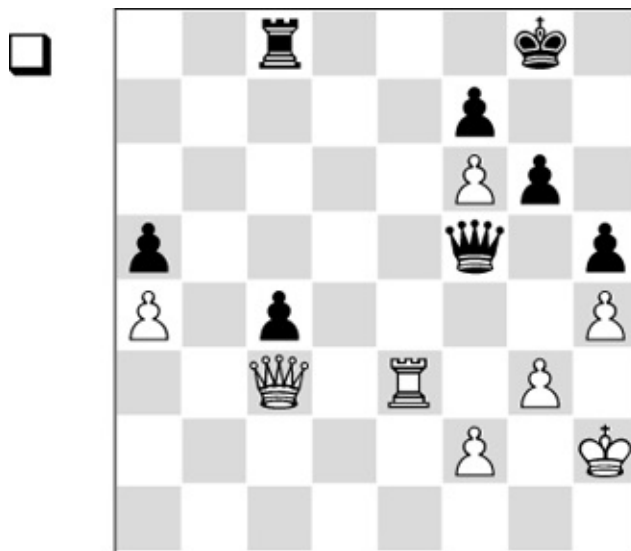
1-0

A difficult ending, in which it is almost impossible to understand whether Black could have held.

José Raul Capablanca

Alexander Alekhine

Buenos Aires 1927 (11)



Black has the advantage, thanks to the passed pawn on c4, but realising this is very difficult. The remaining struggle is extremely tense.

1. ♖f3 ♔c5

With the idea of 2... ♜b4.

2. ♖f4!

If now 2... ♜b4, then 3. ♜e3! ♜xa4 4. ♖f5! (but not 4. ♖xc4? ♖xc4 5. ♜h6 ♖xh4+!, and Black wins) 4... ♜b4 5. ♖xh5! gxh5 6. ♜h6 ♜f8 7. ♜g5+ with perpetual check.

2... ♔h7 3. ♖d4 ♔c6!?

Only a draw results from 3... ♜b4 4. ♜e3 ♜xa4 5. ♜e7 ♜e8 6. ♖xc4!.

4. ♔xa5

The best chance, else the a4-pawn is lost.

4...c3 5. ♔a7 ♔g8 6. ♔e7! ♔b6!

Or 6...c2 7. ♖d8+ ♖xd8 8. ♜xd8+ ♔h7 9. ♜e7.

7. ♖d7?

Stronger, as Tarrasch showed, was 7. ♖d7! ♗f8 (nothing comes from 7... ♖xf2+ 8. ♘h1!) 8. ♖e3! ♖xf6 9. ♖c7 or 8... ♖c6 9. ♖c7! with a draw.

7... ♖c5!

Preparing 8...c2.

8. ♖e4 ♖xf2+

After 8...c2 9. ♖e8+ ♗xe8 10. ♖xe8+ ♖f8 11. ♖c6 it's a draw.

9. ♖h3 ♖f1+ 10. ♖h2 ♖f2+ 11. ♖h3 ♖f8 12. ♖c6

12. ♖f4 ♖c5.

12... ♖f1+

12...c2? 13. ♖c4.

13. ♖h2 ♖f2+ 14. ♖h3 ♖f3! 15. ♖h2!

15. ♖c4? ♖f1+ 16. ♘h2 ♖d8!.

15... ♖h7

With the idea of ... ♖d8.

16. ♖c4 ♖f2+

But not 16... ♖xf6 17. ♖f4 ♖g7 18. ♖f3.

17. ♖h3 ♖g1! 18. ♖e2

He loses after 18.g4? c2! 19. ♖xc2 ♖e8!! 20. ♖xe8 hxc4#.

18... ♖f1+ 19. ♖h2 ♖xf6 20.a5?

The losing move. He had to play 20. ♖c2! ♖e8 21. ♘g2! (21. ♖xc3? ♖e2+) with a probable draw.

20... ♖d8! 21.a6

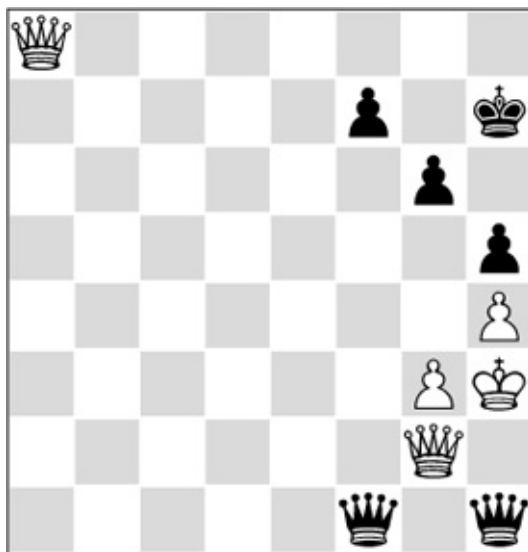
As Levenfish and Romanovsky showed, White is not saving himself, even after the strongest line 21. ♘g2 ♘g7! 22.a6 ♖d1! 23. ♖f2 (23. ♖f4 ♖xf4 24.gxf4 ♖d2 25. ♘f3 c2) 23... ♖d2 24. ♖xd2 (or 24. ♖c5 ♖xf2+ 25. ♖xf2 ♖c6+! 26. ♖f3 ♖xf3+ 27. ♘xf3 c2 28.a7 c1♖ 29.a8♖ ♖h1+) 24...cxd2 25. ♖d5 ♖b2 26. ♘h3 ♖c2 27.a7 ♖f5+! 28. ♖xf5 gxf5 29.a8♖ d1♖, eg: 30. ♖c6 f4! or 30. ♖g2 ♖g4+ 31. ♘h2 f4 32.gxf4 ♖xg2+ 33. ♘g2 ♘f6 34. ♘f2 ♘f5 35. ♘f3 f6, and Black wins.

21... ♖f1! 22. ♖e4

22.a7 ♖d2.

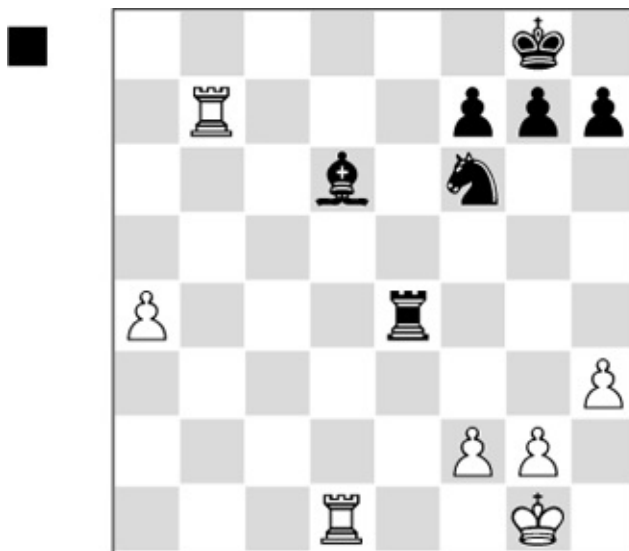
22... ♖d2 23. ♖xd2 cxd2 24.a7 d1♖ 25.a8♖ ♖g1+ 26. ♖h3 ♖df1+ 27. ♖g2 ♖h1#

The final position deserves a diagram.



Mikhail Tal Anatoly Karpov

Leningrad 1973 (8)



Karpov manages to coordinate his pieces and save the game.

1... ♕e8 2. a5 ♖f8 3. a6 ♜a4 4. ♜a7

After 4.a7 ♔c5 5. ♚dd7 f6 Black's position is suspicious, but it is not clear how it can be breached, since both rooks must defend the a-pawn.

4... g5 5. ♜a8 ♙e5 6. g3

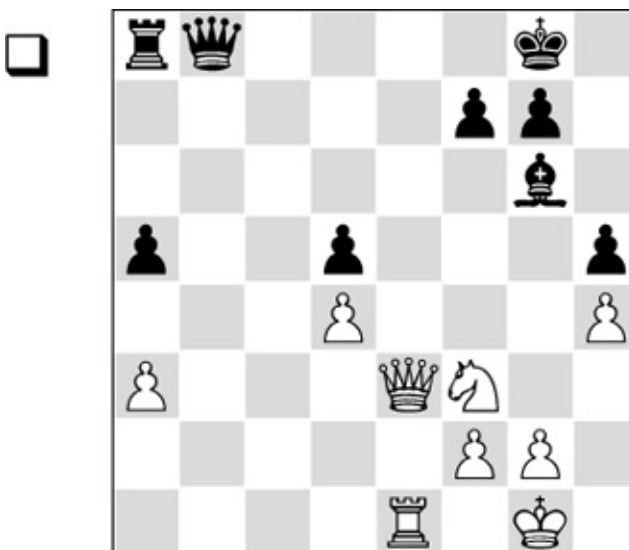
It was worth considering 6.f4 ♜xf4 7.a7 ♜a4 8. ♚dd8 ♙g7 9. ♚xe8 ♜xa7, although even here, a win is unlikely.

6... ♕e7 7. ♜e1 f6 8. a7 ♘c7 9. ♜h8 ♜xa7 10. f4 gxf4 11. gxf4 ♜a1 12. ♜xh7+ ♕d8

1/2-1/2

Garry Kasparov Anatoly Karpov

London/Leningrad 1986 (22)



White accurately realised his advantage – his knight is stronger than the bishop in this position.

1. ♘e5! ♕d8

1... ♖d6 2. ♜c1 and 3. ♜c6.

2. ♕f3 ♜a6 3. ♜c1 ♕h7?!

3... ♖xh4!? deserved consideration.

4. ♕h3!

«Preparing to break in. Admittedly, Black also obtains this chance, but the difference is that the white knight takes a part in the attack, whereas the black bishop is not able to» (Kasparov).

4... ♜b6 5. ♜c8 ♕d6 6. ♕g3 a4 7. ♜a8! ♕e6

Both 7... ♜b3 8. ♜h8+!, and 7... ♜a6 8. ♖xf7! ♗xf7 9. ♖d3+ lose.

8. ♜xa4 ♕f5 9. ♜a7 ♜b1+ 10. ♕h2 ♜c1

He also loses after 10... ♜b2 11. ♖f3 f6 12. ♖c7.

11. ♜b7 ♜c2 12. f3

12. ♖f3 f6.

12... ♜d2 13. ♖d7!

After 13. ♜b4 f6 14. ♖xg6 ♖xg6 15. ♖xg6+ ♕xg6 Black has good drawing chances.

13... ♜xd4 14. ♖f8+ ♕h6 15. ♜b4! ♜c4

He loses after 15... ♜xb4 16. axb4 d4 17. b5 d3 18. b6 d2 19. b7 d1 ♖ 20. b8 ♖ ♖c1 21. ♖xg6 ♖xg6 22. ♖h8+ ♖h7 23. ♖gxg7#.

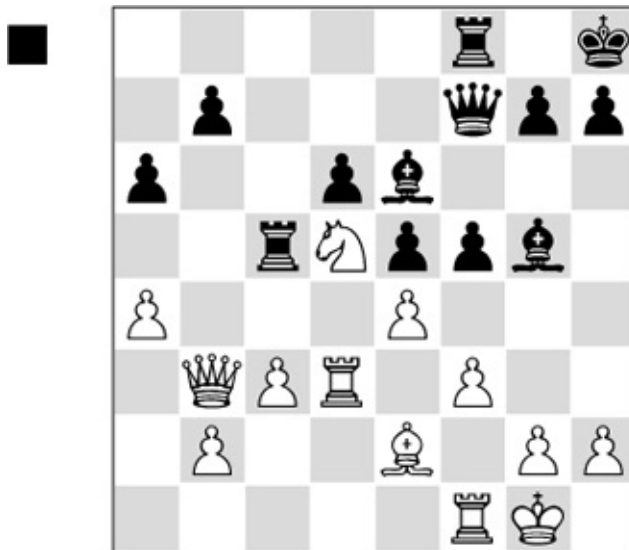
16. ♜xc4 dxc4 17. ♕d6 c3 18. ♕d4!

With the idea of 19. ♖e3+. Black resigned.

Yacov Estrin

Isaak Boleslavsky

Moscow 1964 (14)



1... ♗xd5!

Black goes into a superior opposite-coloured bishops position.

2. exd5 ♕e7 3. ♕d1 a5 4. b4?

Easing the opponent's task.

4... axb4 5. cxb4 ♜c1 6. ♕b3 ♜xf1+ 7. ♗xf1 e4 8. ♜c3 ♕e5 9. ♕c4 ♗f6 10. ♜a3 ♕d4+!

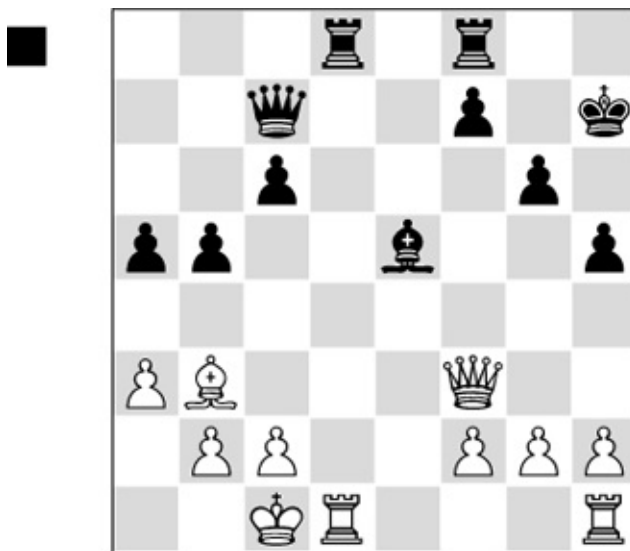
The simplest.

11. ♕xd4 ♗xd4+ 12. ♕h1 ♜c8 13. fxe4 fxe4 14. g3 ♜c1 15. ♕g2 ♜c2+ 16. ♕h3 h5! 17. g4 e3 18. a5 e2 19. ♗xe2 ♜xe2 20. gxh5 ♜b2

White resigned.

Milan Matulovic Mikhail Botvinnik

Belgrade 1970 (1)



Black's position is clearly better, since his bishop is significantly the more active. Botvinnik realises the advantage accurately.

1... ♖g7 2. ♖he1 ♘f6 3.c3

There is nothing better.

3...c5 4. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 5.g3

5.h3!?

5...c4 6. ♘c2 b4! 7.axb4 axb4 8.cxb4 ♘b6

«Simpler was 8... ♖a7 9. ♘b1 ♖a8 (or 9... ♖d4 10. ♖c3 ♖xf2 11. ♖e3 ♖xh2) 10. ♖a3! ♖xf2 11. ♖e3 ♖xh2» (Botvinnik).

9. ♖d1 ♘xb4? 10. ♖xd8 ♘xb2+ 11. ♖d1 ♘xd8 12. ♖d5 ♖f6 13. ♖e2?

Stronger is 13.f4!

13... ♘b6 14.f4 ♖c3 15. ♖e4 ♘d4 16.f5 gxf5 17. ♖xf5 ♖e3+ 18. ♖f1

18. ♘d1 ♘c3.

18... ♖g1+ 19. ♖e2 ♖xh2+ 20. ♖d1 ♖g1+ 21. ♖e2 ♖e3+ 22. ♖f1 ♖xg3 23. ♖h7+ ♖f8

White resigned.

In the following game, White played from the very first moves for a superior endgame.

Efim Geller Vlastimil Hort

Skopje 1968 (1)

1.e4 c6 2.d4 d5 3. ♘d2 dxe4 4. ♘xe4 ♘f5 5. ♘g3 ♘g6 6. ♘f3 ♘d7 7.h4 h6 8.h5 ♘h7 9. ♘d3 ♘xd3 10. ♖xd3 ♖c7 11. ♘d2 e6 12.0-0-0

In more recent times, White has preferred 12. ♖e2 0-0-0 13. ♘e5 or 12... ♘gf6 13.0-0-0 0-0-0 14. ♘e5, with a small advantage to White.

12... ♘gf6 13. ♘e4

Striving for exchanges.

13... ♘xe4 14. ♖xe4 0-0-0 15.g3 ♘e7

Or 15... ♘d6 16. ♖he1 ♘f6 17. ♖h4 followed by ♘f3-e5.

16. ♔b1 ♖he8 17.c4 c5 18. ♗f4 ♗d6 19. ♗e5 ♗xe5

19...f5 is bad because of the unexpected reply 20. ♗f7! ♗f6 (20...fxe4 21. ♗xd6+) 21. ♗xd6+ ♖xd6
22. ♖e2.

20.dxe5 ♗f8



21. ♗e3

White's position is clearly superior, thanks to his active bishop and the weakness of the pawns on g7 and h6. Geller realises the advantage in excellent technical style.

21... ♖xd1+ 22. ♖xd1 ♖d8 23. ♖xd8+ ♔xd8 24. ♔c2 ♔a5 25.a3 ♔a4+ 26. ♔c1 ♔c7?

The decisive mistake. «He should have played 26... ♗e7, keeping his queen in an active position, and being prepared if necessary to sacrifice one of the kingside pawns to get some counterplay. Incidentally, then the direct 27. ♖g4 gives White nothing after 27... ♗g5!, and this same move is also the reply to 27. ♖f4. Therefore I intended 27.f4, threatening 28.f5, whilst after 27... ♔c7 there is 28.g4. Black played his king move to prepare 27...b5» (Geller).

27. ♖f4! ♔d7

Bad is 27... ♗e7 28. ♖xf7 ♖xc4+ 29. ♔d2 ♖d5+ 30. ♔e1 ♖h1+ 31. ♔e2.

28.b3 ♔d8 29. ♔c2 ♔e8 30. ♔e4

«All the black pawns are defended, but his pieces are condemned to be passive observers of the growing activity of White's forces» (Geller).

30... ♔c7 31.f4 ♗e7 32.g4 ♗h4 33. ♔d3

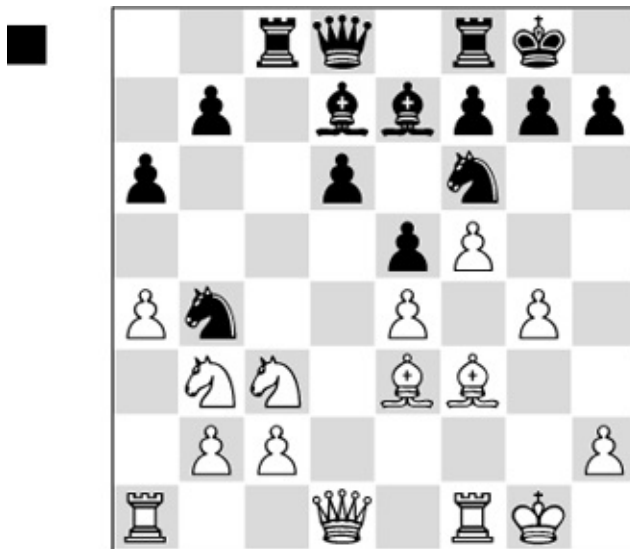
Worse is 33.g5 hxg5 34.fxg5 ♗g3.

33...b6 34.f5 ♗g3 35.fxe6 fxe6 36. ♖g6+ ♔f8 37. ♖xe6 ♗xe5 38. ♔e4 ♗h2 39. ♖f5 ♗g3
40. ♗d2 ♗h2 41. ♗c3 ♖f7+

Black resigned: 42. ♖xf7+ ♔xf7 43. ♔e4 and 44. ♔d5.

Joel Benjamin Vadim Zviagintsev

Groningen 1997/98 (1)



Black's position looks very dangerous, since g4-g5 is threatened, with a strong attack, and the standard central counterblow ...d6-d5 does not work, because the bishop on d7 is so badly placed. After 2.exd5 e4 3.♙g2 White would be clearly better. Zviagintsev goes over to a counterattack.

1...h5!

Of course, this move had been prepared in advance.

2.g5

Not 2.h3? hxg4 3.hxg4 ♘h7!.

2...♘g4 3.♙xg4 ♙xg5!

But not 3...hxg4? 4.♗f2 ♙xg5 5.♙xg5 ♚xg5 6.♚xd6 g3 7.♗g2!.

4.♗e1

4.♙xg5? ♚xg5 5.♚xd6 ♚xg4+ 6.♙h1 ♗xc3!.

4...hxg4 5.♚h1!

If 5.♚xg4? ♙xe3+ 6.♗xe3 ♚b6 7.♗e1 ♗xc3! 8.bxc3 ♘xc2 with advantage to Black.

5...g6 6.♚xg4 ♙xe3 7.♗xe3 ♘xc2 8.♗g3



8...♗xc3!

Eliminating White's most dangerous piece. If 8...♗xa1, then 9.♖h5 ♕f6 10.♗d5! ♖h8 11.♗e7+ (the decisive check) 11...♔g7 12.♙xg6+ fxg6 13.♖xg6#.

9.bxc3 ♗xa1 10.♖h5

10.♗xa1 ♕f6.

10...♗e8! 11.fxg6

11.♗xa1? ♕b6 12.fxg6 ♕b1+ 13.♔g2 ♕xe4+ and 14...fxg6.

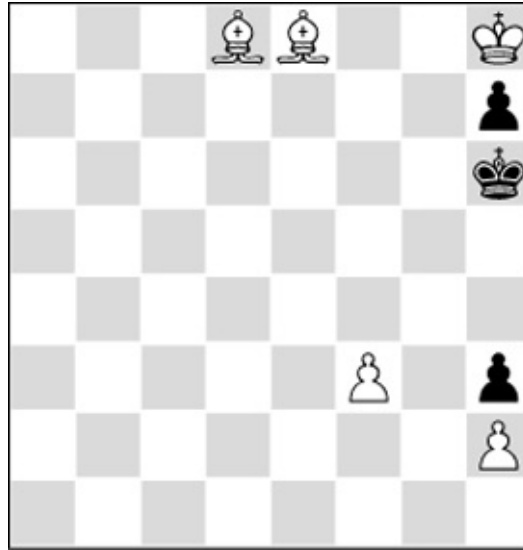
11...fxg6 12.♖xg6+ ♗xg6 13.♖xg6+

Draw. A sharp battle.

Solutions

Chapter 1 – The attack on the king

E1 Problem by Adolf Anderssen, 1842



1. ♖h5! ♔xh5 2. ♚g7 h6 3. ♜f6 ♗h4 4. ♚g6#

The last two moves are known as the Anderssen Theme.

E2 Bogoljubow - Spielmann Stockholm 1919



1. ♖e4! With the idea of ♖xd5.

1...dxe4 2. ♗xe4 ♗8d7 3. ♔c3!? 3...♗h4 ♗e7 4. ♘d6+ ♔f8 5. ♗h6+ ♔g8 6. ♘h5 ♗f8; 3. ♘d6+! ♔d8 4. ♘h3!

3... ♗e7 4. ♗f6+ ♗xf6

4... ♔f8 5. ♘xh7+ ♔g7 6. ♘f6+.

5. exf6 ♗f8 6. ♗c7 ♗d7 7. ♗d5! exd5 8. ♖he1+ ♗e5 9. ♖xe5+ ♗e6 10. ♗b1 ♖d8 11. ♖dxd5 ♖xd5 12. ♖xd5 ♗xd5 13. ♗c8#

E3 Steinitz - Paulsen Baden-Baden 1870



1. b6!

A typical device to break up the king's pawn cover. Now the opening of lines is inevitable, and the black king comes under a mating attack.

1...axb6 2. ♖xf6! ♗xf6 3. ♗g4+ ♗b8 4. ♗d5 ♗g7 5. a5 f5 6. axb6 cxb6 7. ♗xb6 ♗e7 8. exf5 ♗f7 9. f6 ♗c6 10. c4 ♗a7 11. ♗a2 ♗b5 12. ♗d5 ♗xd5 13. cxd5 ♗xd4 14. ♗a7+ ♗c7 15. ♖c1+ ♗c6 16. ♖xc6#

E4 Gunsberg - Chigorin Havana 1890



1...g5!! 2. ♖xg4 White loses after both 2.fxg5 f4! 3. ♗xg4 (relatively better is 3. ♗xf4 ♗xf4 4. ♖d1) 3...hxg4 4. ♖gg2 (4. ♖f1 fxg3+) 4... ♗xg5 5. ♘g1 ♖xg2+! 6. ♖xg2 ♗f3+ 7. ♘f1 ♗xe1, and 2. ♖e2 gxh4 3. ♖xf3 ♗xf3 4. ♗xg4 hxg4 5. gxh4 ♖xh4+ 6. ♘g3 ♖h3+ 7. ♘f2 ♗e4 8. ♘e1 d3 with the idea of ... ♗d4.

2...hxg4 3. ♖f1 ♖xh4+! 4. gxh4 g3+ 5. ♖xg3 ♖xf1 6. ♖g1 ♖f3 7. fxg5 ♗f4 8. ♗xf4 ♖xf4+ 9. ♖h3 ♗f3

And Black won.

E5 Tarrasch - Schlechter Monte Carlo 1903



By brilliant play, Black has obtained a winning position, but he fails to find the decisive blow.

1... ♗f3!

1...e3 2.fxe3 ♖xc2 with advantage was also possible, but the text is more energetic.

2.gxf3 ♖h5 3. ♖g1 ♖xf3+ 4. ♖g2 e3 5.fxe3 ♖g6??

Black wins after 5... ♖g7! 6. ♗d2 (or 6. ♘g1 ♖eg8) 6... ♖eg8 7. ♖g1 ♖g3!.

6. ♗d2 ♖eg8 7. ♖e5+ ♖8g7 8. ♖e8+ ♖g8 9. ♖e5+

Perpetual check.

E6 Bronstein - Keres Gothenburg 1955



1. ♖xh6!

Worse is 1. ♗f5 ♜e8 2. ♗bd6 ♙xd6 3. ♗xd6 ♜e6 4. ♗xb7 ♜c7 with unclear play.

1...gxf6 2. ♚d2 ♘h7

2... ♗c5!?

3. ♚xh6 f5 4. ♗xf5 ♜xf5 5. ♖xf5

And White achieved a great advantage.

E7 Rubinstein - Teichmann Vienna 1908



In such positions, when all the pieces are aimed at the king, a decisive continuation is often available.

1. ♖xh7+!

After 1.g6 h6 Black stabilises his position.

1... ♕xh7 2.g6+ ♕g8

2...fxg6 is weaker because of 3.♘xe4 dxe4 4.♘g5+ ♖h6 (4...♕g8 5.♖xc4+) 5.♘f7+ ♖h7 6.hxg6+ ♕g8 7.♗h8#.

3. ♘xe4 dxe4 4.h6 f6

4...exf3 5.gxf7+ ♖xf7 6.♖h7+ ♖xh7 7.hxg7+ ♕g8 8.♗h8#.

5.hxg7 exf3 6. ♖h8+ ♕xg7 7. ♖h7+ ♕g8 8. ♖f5 c3 9. ♖xe7

1-0

E8 Tarrasch - Walbrodt Hastings 1895



The king and queen are on the same diagonal, which gives the idea for a combination!

1. ♖xd4! ♗xg3

1... ♗f6? 2. ♖xd5 ♜xb2 3. ♖xd8+–; 1... ♗f6 2. ♖xd5 ♜xb2 3. ♗e4.

2. ♗xg3 ♖xg3+ 3.hxg3 ♖xg3+ 4. ♔f1!

Black had missed this.

4... ♖xd3 5. ♖g4

And White won.

E9 Rubinstein - Hromadka Mährisch Ostrau 1923



1. ♖b6! ♖d7

1... axb6 2. axb6+ ♗a7 3. ♖xa7+ ♖b8 4. ♖fxb7+ ♖c8 5. ♗a6!+–.

2. ♗c5! ♖xf7!

2... ♜c7 3. ♜xc7+–.

3. ♗xd6 ♖f2+ 4. ♖xf2! ♗xf2 5. ♗c5

Black resigned.

E10 Fischer - Panno Buenos Aires 1970



Yes, by including his bishop in the attack:

1. ♖e4! ♔e7 2. ♗xh7! ♗xh7 3. hxg6 fxg6 4. ♖xg6 ♗g5 5. ♗h5! ♗f3+ 6. ♚g2 ♗h4+ 7. ♚g3 ♗xg6 8. ♗f6+! ♔f7 9. ♚h7+

Black is mated.

E11 Smyslov - Oll Rostov-on-Don 1993



1.f4! White found a remarkable mating idea in the centre of the board. Also good is 1. ♗xe5 ♗xe5 2. ♗xe5+ ♔f7 3. ♗xe7+ ♗xe7+ 4. ♔f3±. **1... ♚f5** Or 1... ♗f6 2. fxe5 ♔f5 3. ♗f1+ ♔xe4 (3... ♔g6 4. ♗b4!+-) 4. exf6 ♗f7 5. ♗b4! with the idea of 6. ♗f4#. **2.g4+ ♔xe4 3. ♗f2+ ♔xf4 4. ♗g1!**

With the unavoidable 5. ♗d2#. Black resigned.

E12 Capablanca - Chajes New York 1913



1. **♖xf7!** Starting an attack on the light squares. **1... ♕xf7 2. ♖f5+ ♗g8 3. ♖xg6 ♘xe3 4. ♖h7+ ♕f7 5. ♗b3+!** The whole point! **5... ♘c4** If 5... ♖e7, then 6. ♗g6! ♘c4 (on 6... ♗d7 the simplest is 7. ♗fd1 ♘xd1 8. ♗xd1 ♗xd1+ 9. ♗xd1-) 7. ♗fd1 ♗b8 8. e6 ♗b6+ 9. ♖f1! ♘d6 10. ♗xd6! ♗xd6 11. ♗f7+ ♖d8 12. ♗d1 ♗e7 13. ♗xg7+-. **6. ♗fd1 ♗b8 7. ♗xc4! bxc4 8. ♗xc4+ ♕e7 9. ♖f5! ♗b6+ 10. ♖f1 1-0**

E13 Schlechter - Gunsberg Monte Carlo 1901



1. **♖xd5!** Black's position collapses. If 1. ♗d1 ♗f7.
1... ♗xd5 Mate follows 1... ♗xh5 2. ♘xf6+ ♖h8 3. ♗xh5+ ♗h6 4. ♗xh6+ ♖g7 5. ♘e8+ ♖xh6 6. ♗h3# or
 1... ♗f7 2. ♘xf6+ ♗xf6 (2... ♗xf6 3. ♗h8+) 3. ♗xf7+ ♗xf7 4. ♗h8+!. **2. ♗xd5 ♗f7 3. ♗xd7 3. ♗xf7+!**
3... ♖xd7 4. ♗d3 ♗xb3 5. ♗xd7 ♖xd7 6. ♖e8+ ♖f8 7. ♖c6 ♖h7 8. a4

1-0

E14 Bronstein - Keene Teesside 1975



- 1. ♖g5!** The alternative is 1. ♗h3 c3 (the only move; 1... ♗xf3 2. ♖xd7) 2. ♗xc3 ♖xc3 3. ♖xd5 ♘c5±.
1... ♖c5 1... fxc5 2. ♗d4+-; 1... ♗xg2 2. ♖xd7 ♖xd7 3. ♗xf6 c3 (3... ♖g7 4. ♗e6+ ♘h8 5. ♘f7+-)
 4. ♗xc3 ♖xc3 5. ♗e6+ ♘h8 6. ♗xd7±.
2. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 3. bxc4 fxc5 4. ♗g4 ♖f5 5. ♗xa8 ♖xa8 6. ♗e4 ♖d8 7. ♗d4 ♗f7 8. g4
 Black resigned.

E15 Tal - Tolush Moscow 1957



- 1. e5! ♖xe5**
 1... fxc5 2. ♗xg6 hxg6 (2... ♖e7 3. ♘e4 ♘xc6 4. ♘f6+ ♘h8 5. ♗xh7+ ♖xh7 6. ♖xh7#) 3. ♗h8+ ♘f7
 4. ♖h7+ ♘xh7 5. ♗xh7+ ♘f8 6. ♖f1+-; 1... ♗b6 2. ♖g2.
2. ♗xg6 ♖b7
 2... ♖xc5 3. ♗xh7+ ♘f7 4. ♘e4! ♖g7 5. ♘xf6+-.
3. ♗e4! fxc5 4. ♖f1! With the idea of ♘f6+.
4... ♖xe4 5. ♗xe4 ♖g7 6. ♖f6 ♗xg4 7. ♖hf1 ♗d7 8. ♖xd6 ♗e7 9. ♖xa6 ♗h8 10. ♗xh7!
♗b8 11. ♗f5+ ♗g8 12. ♗e6+ ♗xe6 13. ♖xe6
 Black resigned.

E16 Tal - Leonov Riga 1949



1. ♖f6!

Erecting a barrier. The threat is ♖xh6. If 1...♗f2 f5 it would be difficult to attack.

1... ♕f8

Bad is 1...gxf6 2.♙xh7+ ♜xh7 3.♘g4 ♚f8 4.♖f1! (there is no defence against the transfer of the rook to g3) 4...f5 5.♞f6+ ♜h8 6.♖f3 with the idea of ♖g3-g8.

2. ♖f4 ♙d7 3. ♞g4! ♙e8 4. ♞f6+! ♞xf6 5. exf6 ♖c7 6. fxg7 ♚xg7 7. ♚e5+

Black resigned.

E17 Kuindzhi - Jansa Lviv 1961



1. ♞d5! exd5

1...♚a5 2.♞xe7 ♜xe7 3.♞f5+ exf5 4. exf5+ and ♚xb7; 1...♙xd5 2. exd5+-.

2. exd5 ♞b6?

Better 2...♞e5 3. fxe5 ♙xg5+ 4. ♜b1 0-0 5. ♞c6±.

3. ♖xe7+! ♚xe7 4. ♚e4+

Winning the queen.

E18 Rodriguez - Chaviano Cuba 2000



Yes, White has a strong attack.

1. ♖d5! exd5 1... ♗xd5 2. exd5 e5 3. ♖xe5! dxe5 4. d6+-; 1... ♔d8 2. ♗xe7 ♕xe7 3. e5 dxe5 4. ♖xe5 0-0 5. h5 with an attack. **2. exd5 ♖xg4** If 2... ♗f8, then 3. ♖xe7! ♗xe7 4. ♖e3+ ♗f8 5. ♕xf6 ♖h7 6. ♗e6+ ♗xe6 7. dxe6 ♕e7 8. ♕d4 f6 (8... f5 9. gxf5 gxf5 10. ♕d5) 9. ♖f3 ♗g7 10. g5 hxg5 11. hxg5 ♖f8 12. ♖c3+- with the idea of ♖c6. **3. ♖c6 ♗xc6** **4. dxc6 f5** 4... ♗e5 5. ♖xe5 0-0 6. ♕e4!+- **5. h5! ♗xc6** 5... ♗e5 6. ♖xe5 dxe5 7. hxg6 ♗f6 8. g7 ♕xg7 9. ♕h5+ ♗f8 10. ♕xf5 ♖e8 11. ♖d6+-; 5... ♗f8 6. hxg6 ♗g7 7. ♕xf5 ♗f6 8. ♕e6 ♗d8 9. ♖xd6 ♖e8 10. ♖d7+!. **6. ♖c3! ♗a8** 6... ♕xf3 7. ♖xc8+ ♗d7 8. ♗e6#. **7. hxg6 ♖e5** **8. ♖xe5! dxe5** **9. g7** Black resigned.

P1 Steinitz - Chigorin by telegraph, 1890



Black's position is superior, but requires resolute play from him, so as to exploit the bad position of the white king on f1. **1...f3! 2.gxf3** Also insufficient is 2.♘xe4 fxe2+ 3.♙xe2 ♖b6 4.♘f6+ ♔f7! or 4.c5 ♖b5 5.♙xb5 cxb5 6.a3 ♘xb3 7.axb4 ♘xa1 8.♙xa1 a5!. **2...exf3 3.♙xf3** Or 3.♘xf3 ♙h3+ 4.♔e1 ♙xf3! 5.♙xf3 ♗e8 6.♙e2 ♘g6 with attack.

3...♙f5 4.♗e4 If 4.♗d1 ♖h4 Black retains counterplay.

4...♙xe4! 5.♙e2! Worse is 5.♙xe4 ♖xb2 6.♗b1 ♖xa2 or 5.♙xe4 ♗xf2+ 6.♙xf2 ♖xe4 7.♘f3 ♗f8 8.♔g2 ♘g6-+.

5...♙xf3!! Another possibility was 5...♙c3 6.♗d1 ♙xf3 7.♙e6+ (7.♘xf3 ♖g4 8.♙xc3 ♖h3+ etc.) 7... ♗f7 8.♗xd4 ♙xd4 9.♘xf3 ♙xb2, but the text is more effective.

6.♙e6+ ♖h7 7.♙xd4 ♙xh1 8.♙h3 ♗f5 9.♙e5 ♗ae8 10.♙f4 10.f4 ♗xe5 11.fxe5 ♘g3#.

10...♗d4!

Or 10...♗e4 11.♘e2 ♗xe2! 12.♔xe2 ♘d4+ 13.♔d3 ♗xf4.

11.♙d3+ ♙e4 12.♙xd4 ♗xf4 13.f3 ♗ef8 14.♙xa7 c5 15.♙c7 ♗c6! 16.a3 ♗xf3+! 17.♗xf3 ♗xf3+ 18.♙g1 ♙d2!

P2 Botvinnik - Chekover Moscow 1935



1. ♖g5! White commences a decisive action.

1... ♗xg5 2. ♗fxg5 ♖8d7 3. ♖xf7 He also wins with 3. ♘xd7 ♘xd7 (3... ♗xd7 4. gxf6 ♗xf6 5. ♗xf6 gxf6 6. ♖g4+) 4. ♗xf7 ♖xf7 5. ♖h5+ ♖f8 6. ♖h8+ ♖f7 7. g6+ ♖f6 8. ♖h4#.

3... ♗xf7 4. g6+ ♗g8 It was worth considering 4... ♖f8!? 5. ♖xe6 ♘e5 6. ♗xf6+! (6.dxe5 ♗c5+ 7. ♖h1 ♗xg2+ 8. ♖xg2 ♗xd3 with the idea of 9. exf6 ♖a8+--+) 6... gxf6 7. ♖h3 (7. g7+ ♖xg7 8. ♖xe7+ ♘f7) 7... ♗b4 8. ♖h8+ (8. ♗f1) 8... ♖e7 9. ♖h7+ with the further variations:

A) 9... ♖e8 10. g7 ♗d5 11. cxd5 ♗xg7 12. ♖xg7 ♘xd3 13. ♖g8+;

B) 9... ♖e6 10. ♖h3+ ♖e7 11. dxe5 ♗c5+ 12. ♖h1 ♗xg2+ 13. ♖xg2 (13. ♖xg2 ♖a8+ 14. ♖f1 ♗xd3 15. exf6+ ♖d8 16. ♖xd3+ ♗d7) 13... ♗xd3 14. exf6+ ♖f8 15. f7+--;

C) 9... ♖d6 10. dxe5+ with attack.

5. ♗xe6+ ♗h8 6. ♗h3+ ♗g8 7. ♗f5 ♖f8 8. ♗e6+ ♖xe6 9. ♗xe6+ ♗h8 10. ♗h3+ ♗g8 11. ♗xf6 ♗xf6 12. ♗h7+ ♗f8 13. ♗e1 ♗e5 14. ♗h8+ ♗e7 15. ♗xg7+ ♗d6 16. ♗xe5+ ♗d7 17. ♗f5+ ♗c6 18. d5+ ♗c5 19. ♗a3+ ♗xc4 20. ♗e4+ ♗c3 21. ♗b4+ ♗b2 22. ♗b1#

P3 Smyslov - Ribli London 1983



The queen is on her own on h7, and needs help.

1. ♖e5 ♗de7

1... ♙xe5 2.dxe5 ♜e7 3.♚xg7 ♜h8 4.♗f5+ exf5 5.e6- or 1... ♗df4 2.♙xf4 ♗xf4 3.♗f5 ♗g6 4.♗xh6! with an attack.

2. ♙xh6! ♗xe5 2... ♙xe5 3.♞xe5! ♗xe5 4.♚xg7+ ♜e8 5.dxe5 ♚xb2 6.♚f8+ ♜d7 7.♞d1+.

3. ♗h5! The point. 3... ♗f3+

If 3...gxf6, then 4.♚xh6+ ♜e8 5.♗xf6+♯; or 3...♗f5 4.♗xf6 ♗xh6 5.dxe5 ♗f5 6.♞ac1 gxf6 7.♚h8+ ♜e7 8.♞c7+ ♞d7 9.exf6+.

4.gxf3 ♗f5 5.♗xf6 ♗xh6 6.d5! ♚xb2

If 6...♗f5 7.♚g8+ ♜e7 8.♞xe6+ fxe6 9.♚xe6+ ♜f8 10.♗h7#. Or 6...gxf6 7.dxe6 ♚g5+ 8.♜h1 fxe6 9.♞g1 ♚f4 10.♞g7! ♚xf3+ 11.♜g1 ♞d1+ 12.♞xd1 ♚xd1+ 13.♜g2 ♚d5+ 14.f3 ♚d2+ 15.♜h3+.

7. ♚h8+ ♜e7 8. ♞xe6+! fxe6 9. ♚xg7+ ♗f7 10.d6+! ♞xd6

10... ♜xd6 11.♗e4+.

11. ♗d5+ ♞xd5 12. ♚xb2 b6 13. ♚b4+ ♜f6 14. ♞e1 ♞h8 15.h4 and White won.

P4 Tartakower - Euwe Venice 1948



1... Nf4+! It turns out that the white king stands worse than its colleague. Euwe organises an attack with subtle play.

2.gxf4 ♖h3+ **3.♗g3** ♖g1 gxf4 **4.♙c5** ♗g7 with the idea of ♖h6+. **3...exf4+** **4.♙xf4** ♖d7!
5.Nh2 gxf4+ **6.♗xf4** ♖h4+ **7.♗e3** Equally hopeless is **7.♖f3** ♙g2+! **8.♖xg2** ♗h3+ **9.♖g1** ♗xh2+
10.♖f1 ♗h1+ **11.♖e2** ♗xe4+ **12.♖d2** ♗xc4-+ or **7.♖g3** ♖g4+ **8.♖f3** (8.♖xh3 ♖g5+ **9.♖h4** ♗h7#) **8... ♙g2+** **9.♖e3** ♖xe4#.

7... ♙g2 **8.Nf3** ♖xe4+! **9.♗xe4** ♖d6+ **10.♗d3** ♖f5+ **11.♗d4** ♖f4+ **12.♗d3** Or **12.♖c5** ♗xc4+ **13.♖xd6** ♗d5+ **14.♖e7** (14.♖c7 ♗d8+ **15.♖xb7** ♗c8#) **14...♗f7+** **15.♖d6** ♗f8+ **16.♖d7** (16.♖e7 ♖d8+ **17.♖e6** ♙h3#) **16... ♙h3+**. **12... ♖xc4+** **13.♗c2** ♙xf3 **14.b3?** Better is **14.♗d4**.
14... ♙e4+ **15.♗b2** ♖d3 **16.♖g1+** ♖f7 **17.♖ac1?** Better **17.♖gc1**. **17... ♖d2+** **18.♗a3** ♖c4+
19.bxc4 ♖xa4+ **20.♗xa4** ♖a2+ **21.♗b4** ♖b2+

White resigned.

P5 Tal - Smyslov Bled/Zagreb/Belgrade 1959



White has a bishop hanging, but Tal does not even think about defending it. **1. ♖h4!** 1. ♗b3 c5. **1... bxc4 2. ♖g5 ♘h5!** 2...g6 3. ♗c3. **3. ♘h6+ ♙h8 4. ♖xh5 ♙xa2 5. ♗c3 ♘f6?** Better is 5... ♗f6. **6. ♖xf7! ♙a1+ 7. ♖d2 ♜xf7 8. ♘xf7+ ♙g8 9. ♜xa1 ♙xf7 10. ♘e5+ ♙e6 11. ♘xc6 ♘e4+ 12. ♖e3 ♗b6+ 13. ♗d4**
Black resigned.

P6 Morphy - Löwenthal London 1858



1.e6! Beginning active operations. **1... ♗f5** 1...0-0 2. ♜ac1 ♗f5 3. ♘xf5 gxf5 4. ♙a7 ♙xe6 5. ♜fd1+- or 2... ♗a4 3.b3 ♗b5 4. ♙a7 ♙xe6 5. ♜fd1.
2. ♘xf5 gxf5 3.exf7+ ♙xf7 4. ♖h3 ♙f6 5. ♜ae1 Black's extra pawn is not felt, and White will always have play against the exposed king. **5... ♜he8 6. ♜e5! ♙g6 7. ♜fe1 ♜xe5 8. ♜xe5 ♜d8 9. ♖g3+ ♙h7 10.h3 ♜d7 11. ♖e3 b6 12. ♖h2 c5 13. ♖e2 ♙g6 14. ♜e6 ♙g7 15. ♖h5 ♜d5 16.b3 Zugzwang! 16...b5 17. ♜xa6 ♜d6 18. ♖xf5+ ♙g6 19. ♖xg6+ ♙xg6 20. ♜a5 ♜b6** Better 20...c6. **21.g4**
And White won.

P7 Spassky - Bronstein Leningrad 1960



White's position is better. Spassky opens the b1-h7 diagonal, with the aim of mating his opponent.

1. ♖d6!? The quiet 1. ♖f2 retains the advantage. **1... ♖f8?** The only defence was 1...exf1♙+ 2. ♖xf1 ♗xd6! (bad is 2... ♗f6 3. ♗xf7 ♘xf7 4. ♗b3+ ♗e6 5. ♗e5+ ♘f8 6. ♗xe6+-) 3. ♗h7+ ♘f8 4. cxd6 cxd6 5. ♗h8+ ♘e7 6. ♖e1+ ♗e5 7. ♗xg7 ♖g8 8. ♗xh6 ♗b6 9. ♘h1 ♗e6 10. dxe5=.

2. ♖xf7! exf1♙+ 3. ♖xf1 ♗f5 3... ♘xf7 4. ♗e5+ ♘g8 5. ♗h7+! ♗xh7 6. ♗b3+ ♘h8 7. ♗g6#; 3... ♗d5 4. ♗b3 ♗xf7 5. ♗xf7+ ♘xf7 6. ♗c4+ ♘g6 7. ♗g8! ♗f6 8. ♗h4+ ♗xh4 9. ♗f7+ ♘h7 10. ♗xe8+- . **4. ♗xf5 ♗d7 5. ♗f4 ♗f6 6. ♖3e5 ♗e7 7. ♗b3 ♗xe5 8. ♖xe5+ ♗h7 9. ♗e4+** Black resigned.

P8 Rogoff - Fuller (Bognor Regis 1969)



1. ♖d5! A positional knight sacrifice for the attack.

1...exd5 1... ♗d8 2. ♗h5. 2.exd5+ ♗d8 3. ♗f3 ♗e7 3... ♗g7 4. ♗e3! with the idea of 4... ♗xd5 5. ♗f5. **4. ♖f5 ♖e8** 4... ♗f8. **5. ♖xe7 ♖xe7 6. ♗xf6 ♗xd5 7. ♗e4?** 7. ♗f5!, and Black stands badly. **7... ♗xe4? 8. ♖xe4 d5 9. ♖d1** It was worth considering 9. ♗h8+! ♘d7 10. ♖xe7+ ♘xe7 11. ♖e1+ ♘d7 12. ♗e8+ ♘d6 13. ♗f8+ ♘c6 14. ♖e7!, with a decisive attack. **9... ♖a7 10. ♖e3 ♖c6?** Better is 10... ♗c6. **11. ♗h8+!**

Black resigned.

P9 Geller - Grigorian Moscow 1973



1. ♖d5! exd5 2. exd5 ♔d8 3. ♕e3! 3. ♗f5 ♙f8.

3... ♜e8 Worse is 3... ♗b6 4. ♗f5 ♗bxd5 5. ♖d4 with an attack. 4. ♖f5 ♖xd5!? 5. ♕e2 ♖7b6 6. ♕h5! ♙xg5 6... ♗f6 7. ♖xf7. 7. ♕xg5+ ♖f6 7... ♔d7 8. ♖xg7. 8. ♜xe8+ ♔xe8 9. ♖xg7+ ♔f7 10. ♕h6 ♜g8 11. ♜e1! ♖xf4 12. ♖f5! ♖xd3+ 13. ♕b1 ♖xe1 14. ♕xh7+ ♔e6 15. ♖d4+?! 15. ♖xc7 ♗xf5 16. ♖xb7, and further material losses are inevitable for Black. 15... ♕e5 16. ♕xc7 ♙e4 17. ♕xb6 ♜xg2 18. ♕c1 ♜xh2 19. ♕xb4? ♖xc2? After 19... ♜xc2+! 20. ♔d1 ♗d3! Black is better.

20. ♖xc2 ♜xc2+ 21. ♕d1 ♖f5 22. ♕a5+ ♔d5 23. ♖b4 ♙d3 24. ♖a4 ♖f4 25. ♕d8 ♖f3 26. ♕h8+ ♔e4 27. ♕h4+ ♔e3 28. ♕g5+ ♔d4 29. ♕f6+

Draw.



The position arose after the following initial moves: 1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♘xd4 ♘f6 5.♗c3 a6 6.♙c4 e6 7.♙b3 b5 8.0-0 ♙b7 9.♚e1 ♗bd7 10.♙g5 ♚b6. All of White's pieces are in active positions and it is time to act.

11.a4 This advance proves necessary in the subsequent play. Another possibility is 11.♗xe6!? fxe6 12.♙xe6 ♙e7 13.♗d5 ♙xd5 14.exd5 ♗f8 (14...0-0-0 15.b4) 15.♙f5 ♖f7 16.♚e2 ♚c7 17.a4 b4 18.c4!? h6 (18...bxc3 19.♚ac1) 19.♙h4 g5 20.♙g3 ♚e8 21.f4 gxf4 22.♙xf4 ♗g6 23.♙e3 ♖g7 24.♙d4 ♙d8 25.♚d3 (25.♚g4+-) 25...♚f7 26.♚e6 ♚xe6 27.dxe6 ♚e8 28.♚e1 ♙e7 29.♚e3 ♗e5 30.♚f1 ♚d8 31.♚f4 ♗c6 32.♚g3+ ♖f8 33.♙e3 ♗e5 34.♚h4 ♗g8 35.♚h5 ♚e8 36.♚xg8+, Black resigned, Panchenko-Zaichik, Tashkent 1986. **11...b4 12.♗d5! exd5 13.exd5+ ♗e5** 13...♗d8 14.♗c6+!. **14.a5** 14.f4 0-0-0 15.fxe5 dxe5 16.♚xe5 ♙c5!.

14...♚c5 15.♙e3! ♚c8 16.♙a4+ ♚e7 On 16...♗fd7 there follows 17.f4 ♗g6 18.♗f5 ♙e7 19.♙d4 or 17...♙xd5 18.fxe5 dxe5 19.♙f4 ♙c5 20.♚xe5+ ♙e6 21.♙xd7+ (21.♖h1) 21...♖xd7 22.♖h1 etc.

17.f4 ♗xd5 18.fxe5 dxe5 19.♚h5
Better is 19.♙g5+ f6 20.♚xe5+ ♖f7 21.♙xf6!!.

19...f6 20.♙f2! g6 21.♚xe5+ ♚f7

Or 21...♖d6 22.♙g3! gxh5 23.♚e6+ ♖c5 24.♗b3+ ♖c4 25.♚e4#.

22.♚f3 ♗c7 23.♚b3+ ♚g7 24.♗f5+ gxf5 25.♚g3+ ♚f7 26.♙b3+ ♗d5 27.♚xd5
Black resigned.

Chapter 2 – Defence

E19 Gavrikov - Yakovich Kiev 1986



1... ♖f6?

Equality could be maintained by 1... ♜c8!, avoiding the exchange of rooks.

2. ♖f1 ♔g8 3. ♜xf6 gxf6 4. ♔f2 ♕f7 5. ♕e3 ♖e6 6. ♕d4 ♕f5 7. ♕d5

Black resigned.

E20 Jussupow - Dolmatov Wijk aan Zee 1991



1.e5!

Eliminating Black's strong bishops and, at the cost of a pawn, going into a rook ending.

1... ♖xg2 2. ♕xg2 ♖xe5 3. ♘xe5 ♜xe5 4. ♖d7 a5 5. ♖b7 ♜e6 6. ♖c3 ♜d8 7. ♖f3 f6 8. ♖b3 ♜dd6 9. g4 g5 10. a4 h6 11. h4 ♜e4 12. hxg5 hxg5 13. ♕g3 ♜ee6 14. ♕f3 ♕f8 15. ♕g2 ♜e4 16. ♕g3 ♜xa4 17. ♖e3 ♜f4 18. ♖ee7 ♜d3+ 19. ♕g2 ♜xg4+ 20. ♕f1 ♜d8 21. ♖f7+ ♕g8 22. ♖g7+ ♕h8 23. ♖h7+ ♕g8 24. ♖hg7+ ♕f8 25. ♖gf7+

1/2-1/2

E21 Kamsky - Anand Las Palmas 1995



White will inevitably regain his pawn, and thanks to his active pieces and strong central pawns, will have good chances.

1... ♔d6! After 1... ♖fe8 2. ♖xb7 ♔d3 3. ♗e5 a5 4. ♖xe7 ♖xe7 5. ♗xe7 ♖b8 6.h4 White has an undoubted advantage.

2. ♖xb7 ♗xc7 3. ♖xc7 a5!

Activity is necessary in the rook ending: 3... ♖fe8 4. ♖a1 leaves White every chance of success.

4. ♖a1 ♖fb8! 5.h4 a4 6. ♗h2 ♗f8 7. ♖a3 ♖b3 8. ♖xb3 axb3 9. ♖b7 ♖a4! 10.f3 f5! 11.exf5 ♖xh4+ 12. ♗g3 ♖h5! 13.fxg6 ♖g5+ 14. ♗h4 ♖xd5 15.g4 ♖g5 16.f4 ♖xg6 17.f5 ♖d6 18. ♖xb3 ♗f7 19. ♗h5 ♖a6 20. ♖e3 ♖d6 21. ♖e6 ♖xe6 22.fxe6+ ♗g7 23.g5

Draw.

E22 Study by Gleb Zakhodyakin 1930



1.g7+ ♖xg7 1... ♔g8 2. ♖g4. 2. ♖f7+ ♗g8 3. ♖c5 f1 ♗ 4. ♖h6+ ♗h8 5. ♖d6

The black king is caught in the corner, the knight cannot move because of ♖d6-e5+, and taking the bishop with the queen on d6 or e5 allows ♖h6-f7+. Draw.

E23 Keres - Smyslov Zurich 1953



1...dxc4! 2. ♖xh7 c3 3. ♔c1 ♕xd4 4. ♕h6 ♜fd8 5. ♗c1 ♞g7 6. ♕g5 ♖f6 7. ♕g4 c2 8. ♗e2 ♜d4 9. f4 ♜d1+ 10. ♗xd1 ♕d4+

White resigned.

E24 Chigorin - Tarrasch St Petersburg 1893



In the first instance, h2-h4 and a sacrifice on h6 is threatened, so the black king quits the danger zone.
 1... ♕f8! 2. ♗e2 ♗f6 3. h4 ♕d6 4. ♞fh2 ♞e7 5. ♜af1 ♞g8 6. ♗d1 ♜c7 7. ♗b3 ♜ec8 8. ♞f2 ♗d8

And, having repulsed the threats against his king, Black holds the initiative on the queenside.

E25 Capablanca - Molina Buenos Aires 1911



It leads to a winning attack:

1. ♖xh7+ ♔xh7 2. ♘g5+ ♚g6 3. ♗g4 f5

Or 3...e5 4. ♘e6+ ♖f6 5. f4 e4 6. ♗g5+ ♖xe6 7. ♗e5+ ♖d7 8. ♖fd1+ ♘d3 9. ♘xe4 ♖c6 10. ♖xd3 ♗xd3 11. ♖c1+ ♖b6 12. ♗c7+, mating.

4. ♗g3 ♔h6

Stronger is 4...f4 5. exf4 ♘f5 6. ♗g4 ♘h6, and Black does not lose at once.

5. ♗h4+ ♔g6 6. ♗h7+ ♔f6 7. e4 ♘g6 8. exf5 exf5 9. ♖ad1 ♘d3 10. ♗h3 ♘df4 11. ♗g3 ♖c7 12. ♖fe1 ♘e2+

12...♙e6 13. ♖xe6+ ♘xe6 14. ♘d5#.

13. ♖xe2 ♗xg3 14. ♘h7+

And White won.

E26 Zaitsev - Shamkovich Voronezh 1959



1...g5

The tempting 1... ♖cd8 is premature because of 2. ♗h7+ ♜h8 3.fxg7+ ♜xh7 4. ♖xh6+ ♜xh6 5. ♗xf4+, and Black is mated. The same is true after 1...g6 2. ♖xf4 ♗xe4 3. ♖xh6 ♖cd8 4. ♖h8+ ♜xh8 5. ♖h4+ ♜g8 6. ♖h8+ ♜xh8 7. ♗h6+.

2. ♗h7+

2. ♖xh6 ♗xe4 3. ♖xg5+ ♗g6.

2... ♜xh7 3. ♖xg5 ♖g8 4. ♜c2+ ♖g6 5. ♖xg6 fxg6 6. ♖e3 ♖d8 7. ♖e1 ♗xg2 8. ♖e7+ ♜h8

And White resigned.

E27 V.Scherbakov - Furman Moscow 1955



Yes, since after

1...fxe6 2. ♜xg6+ ♗g7 3. ♗e4 ♖f8 4.g3 ♜xe4! 5. ♗xe4 ♗e8

the white queen is caught:

6.dxe6 ♗xg6 7. ♗xg6 ♖c8

White resigned.

E28 Grechkin - Geller Sverdlovsk 1951



Yes, because after

1... ♖xe5 2. ♔xh7+ ♕f8 3. ♗f4 ♜xe1+

(also good is 3... ♗e6 4. ♗xe5 ♗xe5)

4. ♜xe1 ♞e2+ 5. ♜xe2 ♟e6! 6.g3 ♜d1+ 7. ♔g2 ♕c4

Black has a strong attack:

8. ♜xe6 ♕xe6 9. ♔c2 ♕d5+ 10. ♔h3 ♗g6 11. ♗h6+ ♕g8 12. ♗e3 ♜g1 13. ♔g4 ♕h5+ 14. ♔f4 ♗g5+ 15. ♔e4 ♕g6+ 16. ♔f3 ♜xb1

White resigned.

E29 Buturin - Voskanian Moscow 1962



This sacrifice is mistaken, whereas 1.♘g4 ♘xe5 (1...♙xf6 2.exf6 ♖xe4 3.♙xh6) 2.♙xh6 ♙xf6 3.♙e3+ wins.

1. ♘xe6 fxe6

1...dxe6? 2.♙xh6 ♙xf6 3.exf6.

2. ♙xh6 ♖xf6

2...♙xf6? 3.exf6 ♖xf6 4.♙e3+ ♖h6 5.♙xh6 gxf6 6.♖xh6+.

3. ♙e3+ ♖h6 4. ♙xh6 gxf6 5. ♖xh6+ ♖g8 6. ♖g6+ ♖f8

And Black realised his material advantage.

E30 Randviir - Flohr Parnu 1947



After 1.♙f5, White lost:

1...exd4 2. ♖xe7 Stronger is 2.♘xe7+! ♖xe7 3.♖xe7 ♖e8 4.♙e4, but the advantage is still on Black's side.

2...g6 3. ♙h6+ 3. ♖xd8 gxf5. 3... ♖g7 4. ♖xf7+ ♖xh6 5. ♖d3 ♗h5 6. ♖h3 ♙f6

Not 6... ♖xe1 7. ♖xh5+ ♗xh5 8. ♖xh7+ ♗g4 9. ♖h3#.

7. ♙xg6 hxg6 8.f5 gxf5 9. ♙f3 ♖g8 10. ♖f2 ♖g7

And the white queen can escape only at the cost of further material losses.

E31 Smyslov - Polugaevsky Moscow 1961



Yes.

1. ♖f6+ ♗xf6!

1...gxf6 2. ♕xh7+! ♔g7 3. ♖g4+ ♔h8 4. ♖f4! and Black will have to give his queen to prevent mate.

2. exf6 ♞xb2

And now White already forced a draw:

3. ♗xh7+! ♔h8 4. ♖g4 gxf6 5. ♖f4 f5 6. ♗xf5 exf5 7. ♖xf5 ♗d3 8. ♖h5+

Draw.

E32 Karpov - Hübner Leningrad 1973



1... ♖a5 1... ♖b8 is also possible.

2. ♖d6 ♞xe5 3. ♗xe5 ♖xd6 4. ♗xg7

4. ♗xd6 is bad due to 4... ♗d4 5. ♖e3 ♖a1+.

4... ♖xg7 5. ♖b1 ♖d8 6. ♖b2+ ♖g8 7. b7 ♖b8 8. ♖c2 ♖g7 9. ♖c8 ♖a2 10. ♖c3+ ♖g8

11. ♖a1 ♗d5 12. ♖c8+ ♖g7

And the game ended in a draw.

E33 Landa - Timofeev Tomsk 2006



Black is a pawn down. The threat is g3-g4.

1... ♖xb4! Sharply changing the character of the struggle!

2. ♖xd6 e3 3.fxe3 ♔d2 4. ♖c4 ♗d3 5. ♗xd3

White has a technically winning position after 5. ♖e5! ♗xc4 6. ♗e6 fxe6 7. ♖xe6+ ♔h7 8. ♖d7+ ♔h6 9. ♖xc8 ♖xe3+ 10. ♔h2.

5... ♖xe3+ 6. ♖h2 ♖xc4 7. ♗f4

If 7. ♗e5, then 7... ♖c2, and perpetual check cannot be avoided. But better is 7. ♖b8+ ♔h7 8. ♖b3.

7...h4! 8. ♖d8+ ♔g7 9. ♖xh4 ♖c1 10. ♗e6+ fxe6 11. ♖e7+ ♔h6 12. ♖h4+ ♔g7 13. ♖e7+ ♔h6 14. ♖f8+ ♔h7 15. ♖f7+ ♔h6 16. ♖f8+ ♔h7

Draw.

P11 Botvinnik - Smyslov Moscow 1954



1...c4! Not 1... ♖xg5 2. ♗g4, and Black loses the exchange, whilst after 1... ♗xg5 there follows 2. ♖f3, and after ♖f3-g4 an attack on the light squares.

2.bxc4 After 2. ♖f3 cxb3 3. ♖g4 ♖e8 Black has his play.

2... ♖a3 3. ♖xa3 ♗xa3 4. ♗f5 gxf5 5.g6 ♗f8

Black loses after 5... ♖h8 6.g7 ♖g8 7.h4 ♗e7 8.h5 ♗f6 9.h6 ♖e7 10. ♖g6.

6.exf5 ♗g7 7.f6 ♗xf6 8.g7 ♗xg7 9. ♖xg7 f3! 10. ♖g4 ♖h3 11. ♖g3 11. ♖e4 ♖d7 12. ♖xe5 ♖h4.

11... ♖h4 12. ♖xf3 ♖xc4 13. ♖a3 ♖d7 14. ♖g2 ♖d6 15. ♖g3 ♖xd5 16.h3 Worse is 16.h4 ♖e6 with the idea of ♖e6-f5-g6-h5 and taking on h4.

16... ♖e6 17. ♖f3 ♖f5 18. ♖g3 ♖g5 19. ♖f3 ♖f4+ 20. ♖g3

Draw.

P12 Karpov - Polugaevsky Moscow 1973



1... ♖c8! 2. ♗xd5 ♖xc2 3. ♖xc2 ♗xd5 4. ♖c8+ ♔g7 5. ♖xh8 ♔xh8 6. ♗xh6 ♕c7

But not 6... ♗xa2 7. ♘g5 with a very strong attack on the king, with minimal forces.

7.b3 ♕c3! Black has fully adequate compensation for the pawn, in the shape of his active pieces.

8.h4 a5 9. ♗g5! ♗xf3 10. ♕xf3 ♗xg5 11.hxg5 ♕e1+ 12. ♕h2 ♕xe5+ 13. ♕g3 ♕b2

14. ♕b8+ ♕g7 15.f4 ♕xa2 16. ♕e5+

Draw.

P13 Fischer - Spassky Sveti Stefan/Belgrade 1992



1... ♖e8! 2. ♖xe8+ ♕xe8 3. ♗f6+ ♕d8 4. ♗xb7 ♗f4 5. ♗e4 ♗c1 6.a4 ♗xb2 7. ♗xc5 ♗c1
8. ♗e4

8. ♗e4 ♕e7 and ♗f5-d6.

8... ♗xg5 9. ♗xf5 gxf5 10. ♗b3 ♗f6

and the game ended in a draw.

P14 Tal - Keres Moscow 1959



1... ♖xg7 2. ♗e5 ♜h8

The exchange 2... ♗xe5 3. ♘xe5 gives White an attack.

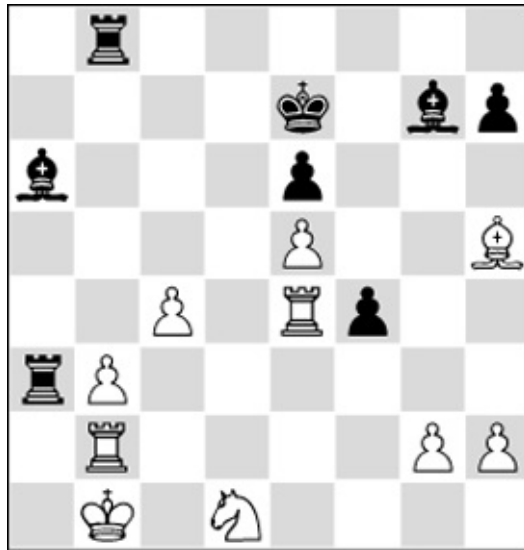
3. ♘h3 ♜h7 4.c4

Not 4. ♗xf7 ♘xf7 5. ♖xe6+ ♘e8 6. ♘d6 ♗d5.

4... ♗f8 5. ♜ad1 ♜d8 6. ♘d2 ♖b6 7. ♘c3 ♗g8 8. ♜e3 ♗e8 9. ♜g3+ ♗g7 10. ♜dd3 f6
 11. ♗g6 ♗xg6 12. ♜xg6 ♖f7 13.h5 ♖a6 14.b3 ♖xa2 15.d5 cxd5 16.cxd5 ♜xd5 17. ♜xd5
 exd5 18. ♖d3 ♖a6 19. ♖xd5+ ♖e6 20. ♖f3 ♜h8 21. ♘d2 ♜d8 22. ♘h6 ♖e1+ 23. ♖h2
 ♖e5+ 24. ♖g1 ♗f5 25. ♘f4 ♖e1+ 26. ♖h2 ♜d1 27. ♖h3 ♜d4 28. ♜g4 ♖d1 29.h6 ♜d3
 30.h7 ♜xf3+ 31.gxf3 ♖xf3+ 32. ♘g3 ♗xg3

White resigned.

P15 Zhuravlev - Panchenko Sochi 1977



1... ♖a5! Worse is 1... ♖axb3 2. ♖xb3 ♖xb3+ 3. ♔c2 ♖a3 4. ♗b2 ♖a5 5. ♗d3 ♖a2+ 6. ♔c3 ♖xg2 7. ♖xf4, and the threat of ♖f4-f7+ gives White good chances. Now, however, the game takes on a double-edged character, and also in mutual time-trouble.

2. ♖xf4 ♗xe5 3. ♖f7+ ♔d6 4. ♗e2 ♗b7! After 4... ♗xb2 5. ♔xb2 White has the advantage. **5. ♗d3** If 5. ♖d2+ ♔c5 6. ♗b2 ♗c3 7. ♖c7+ (7. ♖dd7 ♗e4+ 8. ♗d3+ ♗xd3+ 9. ♗xd3 ♖xb3+ 10. ♔c2 ♖aa3) 7... ♗c6 8. ♗f3 ♗xd2 9. ♖xc6+ ♔b4 10. ♔c2 ♖a2 Black has excellent play. **5... ♗xg2 6. ♖xh7** Or 6. ♖xg2 ♖a1+ 7. ♔c2 ♖a2+, and if 6. ♗c3 ♗xc3 7. ♖xg2 ♖xb3+ is winning. **6... ♖a3 7. c5+! ♔xc5 8. ♖h5 ♗d6 9. ♖xe5 ♗xe5 10. ♖xg2 ♖axb3+ 11. ♗b2**

Draw.



1... ♖b4 Pinning the powerful white knight. After 1... ♖f8 2. ♗e4 ♖g7 (2... f5 3.gxf6 ♖a7 4. ♖xa7 ♗xa7+ 5. ♖h1, and White has a strong attack) 3. ♗f6+ White is attacking, and if 1... exf4, then 2. ♖f2 followed by 3. ♖h3.

2.f5 f6 3.gxf6 3. ♖h3 ♗g7 4.gxf6 ♗xf6, and Black holds.

3... ♖h7 4. ♖g5? Also bad is 4.fxg6 ♗xh4 5.f7+ ♖f8 6.g7+ ♖xg7 7.fxe8 ♗ ♗xe1+, but the attack could be maintained with 4.f7+!

4... ♖f7 5. ♖h3 ♖g8 6. ♖h8 gxf5 7. ♖g7+ ♖xg7+ 8.fxg7 ♖d7

And White's attack fizzles out.

Chapter 3 – Counterplay

E34 Balashov - Polugaevsky Manila 1976



1... ♖b7 2. ♖xh7 ♖xd5 3. ♖xh6 ♖b8 4. ♖d2 ♖xa2+ 5. ♖c1 ♖c8+ 6. ♖c2 ♖xc2+ 7. ♖xc2 ♖c4+ 8. ♖d2 ♖b4+ 9. ♖e2 ♖c4+ 10. ♖d1 ♖xb2 11. ♖e5 fxe5 12. ♖g5+ ♖d7

White resigned.

E35 Najdorf - Polugaevsky Mar del Plata 1971



1...b3 2. ♖xb3 ♗e4 3. ♘d1 Not 3. ♜xe4 ♘xb3 4. ♚xb3 ♘xe4 5. ♘xe6 ♚d6 or 5...♚a5 with advantage to Black.

3...♘xb3 4. ♘xb3 ♗c2 5. ♘a2 ♘g4 6. ♘xe6

Otherwise the bishop on h6 is lost for nothing.

6...♘b6 7. ♘g7 ♗b3 8. ♘b1 ♜ed8! 9. ♘f5 gxf5 10. ♜xe7 ♘xh6 11. ♘d3 ♘f6 12. ♜a7 ♗c4 13. ♘d2 ♗d5 14. ♘e5 ♘g4 15. ♘f4 ♘xe5 16. dxe5 ♘g6 17. g3 ♗e4 18. ♜e1 ♜d3 19. e6 ♘xe6

White resigned.

E36 Gligoric - Fischer Bled 1961



1...a6 1...♙e5 2.f4.

2.♖bxd6 d3 3.♘xd3 3...♙xd3 ♙d4+ 4.♔h1 (interesting is 4.♖f2) 4...♘xg3+ 5.♘xg3 ♖xd6 6.♗c2 ♙h3 with great complications. **3...♙d4+** 4.♗g2 Again, 4.♖f2 is stronger.

4...♖xg3 5.♖xc8 ♖xf1 6.♖b6 ♗c7 7.♖xf1

7.♘xa8? ♖xh2+ 8.♔xf1 ♗g1#.

7...♗xb6 8.b4 ♗xb4 8...cxb4 9.c5 ♙xc5 10.♘xc5 ♖xc5 11.♗xg6+ ♔h8 12.♗xh6+ ♔g8 13.♔h1.

9.♖b1 ♗a5 10.♖xc5 ♗xc5 11.♗xg6+ ♙g7 12.♖xb7 ♗d4 13.♙d3 ♖f4 14.♗e6+ ♗h8 15.♗g6

Draw.

E37 Anand - Kasparov Dos Hermanas 1996



1... ♖fc8 2. ♙c3

2.fxg7 ♜b4 3. ♚xe5 ♜xc2+ 4. ♜b1 ♜xd2+, and Black wins.

2... ♞b4 The inventive but less initiative-seeking 2... ♚xg3 3.hxg3 ♜f8 4. ♙d3 ♜xd3 5. ♜xd3 ♜e5 6. ♙xe5 dxe5 7.g4 ♜c6 8. ♜dh3 ♜g7 9. ♜h7 leads Black to defeat.

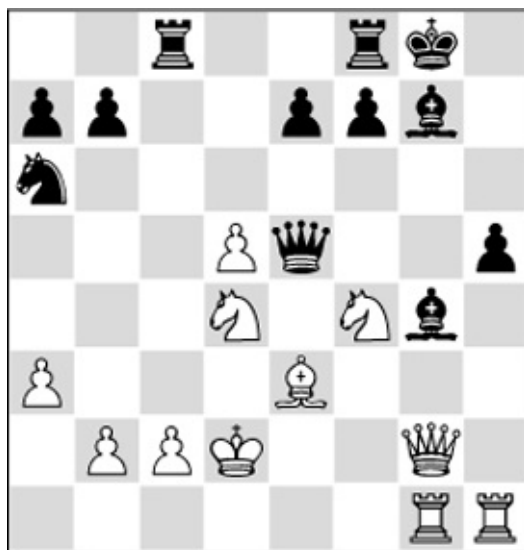
3. ♙xe5 ♜xc2+ 4. ♚b1 ♜e2+

4... ♜d2+ 5. ♙d3 ♜xd3+ 6. ♚xd3 ♜xd3 7. ♙c3.

5. ♚a1 ♞c2+ 6. ♚b1 ♞a3+

Draw.

E38 Yakovich - Sadler Køge 1997



1... ♜xc2+ 2. ♚xc2

2. ♜xc2 ♚xb2 3. ♜e2 ♜c8 4. ♜c1 ♙f5 5. ♜d4 ♙g6, and there is no defence to the blow ♙xd4; 4. ♚e4 ♜c5 with a complicated battle.

2... ♚xe3 3. ♞xh5 ♙f5+ 4. ♞xf5 ♜c8+ 5. ♚b1 ♚d3+ 6. ♚a2

6. ♚a1 ♚xa3+.

6... ♞b4+ 7.axb4 ♚c4+ 8. ♚b1

Draw.

E39 Andreev - Lutikov USSR 1949



- 1... ♔g5 2. ♕xb5 ♖xc4 3. ♕xc4 ♗e3 4. ♕d3**
4. ♖xb4 ♘f4 5. ♖e1 ♙d4 6. ♖a6 ♗g1+ 7. ♕e2 ♖e3+.
4... ♗f4 5. ♕d1
5. ♖a6 ♗g1+ 6. ♕e2 ♖xg2+ 7. ♕d1 ♘xf3.
5... ♕g1+ 6. ♕e2 ♕xg2+ 7. ♕d3 ♕b2 8. ♖a6 ♕c3+
 Draw.

P17 Vajda - Kotov Moscow-Budapest 1949



Black meets White's kingside attacking gestures with a counterattack in the centre.

1...b4! Driving the knight away from the square d5.

2. ♖e2 2. ♘a4 ♜db8 3. ♚f2 ♙d8, with the threat of ♘e7, is dangerous.

2...e5! A typical idea. Without a knight on c3, weakening d5 is not so dangerous, and in addition, the knight on b3 is out of play.

3.f5 3.g5 fails to 3... ♘g4 4. ♙xg4 ♙xg4 5.f5 d5 6.f6 ♙f8 with advantage to Black.

3...d5! 4.g5?! Better is 4.exd5 e4 5.dxc6 exf3 6.cxd7 fxe2 7.♚xe2 ♜xd7 with unclear play. Now, however, Black seizes the initiative.

4... ♖xe4 5. ♙xe4 dxe4 6.f6 ♙f8 7.fxg7 ♙xg7 8. ♚h4 ♖e7!

With the threat of ... ♘e7-f5.

9. ♖g3 ♖g6 10. ♚h5 ♚c8! 11. ♚e2 ♙g4 12. ♚f2 ♙f3+ 13. ♚g1 ♖f4 14. ♙xf4 exf4 15. ♖xe4 ♙xe4 16. ♚xf4 ♙g6 White resigned.

P18 Konstantinopolsky - Veltmänder Tartu 1950



1. ♖xh6!?

An interesting move which, however, does not lead to an advantage.

1... ♘g4!

If 1...g6, then 2. ♖xe6! with a crushing attack. The alternative is 1...♖xf3 2. ♗xf3 ♖xh2+ 3. ♘f1 g6 4. ♗xf6 ♗f4. **2. ♗g5** 2. ♖xe6 fails because of 2...♖xh2+ 3. ♘f1 ♖f4 4. ♖xf4 ♗xf4 5. ♖ee1 ♖xf3 6. gxf3 ♖xd4.

2... ♖xh2+ 3. ♗f1 ♖a6!

Both 3...g6 4. ♖xe6! and 3...♖xh6 4. ♗h7+ ♘f8 5. ♖xe6! lose.

4. ♗xa6 ♗f4! 5. ♗e2 ♗xh6 6. ♗h3 ♗h4 7. ♗e4.

Draw agreed.

P19 Tal - Smyslov Leningrad 1977



1... ♖g5

If 1... ♗c5, then 2. ♕h6, but 1... ♕c5+ 2. ♖h1 ♗f2+ 3. ♖xf2 ♕xf2 4. ♕g5 h5! is possible, although a draw is the limit of Black's ambitions here.

2.f4 ♗e4 3.f5 ♖h8 4. ♖f3?

Better is 4. ♕e3, whereas now the counterattack starts.

4... ♕c5+ 5. ♖f1 5. ♕e3 ♖e7!, and not 6.f6 because of 6... ♕xe3+ 7. ♖xe3 ♗xf6.

5...d6! 6.f6 g6 7. ♖h4 dxe5 8. ♖e2 ♖d4! 9. ♖h3 ♖f2+ 10. ♖xf2 ♗xf2 11. ♖h4 ♗e4 12. ♕h6 ♗xf6 13. ♕xf8 ♖xf8 14. ♖f1 ♖d8 15.c4 g5 16. ♖h3 g4 17. ♖c3 b4 18. ♖c1 ♖d4 19.g3 ♕f3 20.a3 a5 21.axb4 axb4 22. ♖a5 ♗d7 23. ♕c2 e4 24. ♖e1 ♕b6 25. ♖a8+ ♖g7 26. ♖d8 f5 27. ♕a4 ♗e5 28. ♖xd4 ♕xd4 29. ♗d2 ♕xb2 30. ♗b3 ♕c3

White resigned.

P20 Uhlmann - Fischer Siegen 1970



Black stands worse. There is a threat of ♙c3 , with a crush, whilst after $1... \text{♙d4}$ $2. \text{♜xd4}$ ♞xe1+ $3. \text{♙xe1}$ ♞xd4 $4. \text{♙c3}$ his king is very weak. Fischer finds the best chance.

$1... \text{a6!}$ $2. \text{♜xd6}$ ♙d4! $3. \text{♜xe8!}$ Not $3. \text{♙e3}$ ♞xe3! $4. \text{♞xe3}$ ♙xe3 $5. \text{fxe3}$ ♞e1+ $6. \text{♝h2}$ ♞g3+ or $3. \text{♙c3}$ ♞xe1+ $4. \text{♙xe1}$ ♞e7 , and Black wins.

$3... \text{♞xf2+}$ $4. \text{♞h2}$ $4. \text{♝h1}$ ♜g3+ $5. \text{♝h2}$ ♜f1+ $6. \text{♞xf1}$ ♙e5+ . **$4... \text{♜f4}$ $5. \text{♙xf4!}$** Worse is $5. \text{♞e7+}$ ♝h8 $6. \text{♙xf4}$ ♞xc2 with the threat of $7... \text{♞f2}$.

$5... \text{♞xe1!}$ $5... \text{♞xc2}$ $6. \text{d6}$ $6. \text{♞c1}$ ♞xe8 $7. \text{♙xh6}$ ♞e4

Black is a pawn down, but has very active pieces.

$8. \text{♙f4}$ ♞g8 $9. \text{♞f1}$ ♞f7 $10. \text{h4?}$

Stronger is $10. \text{a4}$.

$10... \text{b5!}$ $11. \text{♙g3}$ bxc4 $12. \text{bxc4}$ ♙f6 $13. \text{♞f4}$ ♞xf4 $14. \text{♙xf4}$ ♙xh4 $15. \text{♙e3}$ ♙e7 $16. \text{♞g3}$ g5

Draw.

P21 Tal - Bhend Zürich 1959



The move 1. ♖xg6?! is dubious. Better was 1. ♘f4 with a small advantage.

1... ♗xd5! 1... hxg6? 2. ♘e7 ♜f5 3. ♚h4+ ♜h5 4. ♘xg6+.

2. ♜e7 2. ♚h5 ♖g8.

2... ♚d8 3. ♜fe1 Bad is 3. ♖xh7 ♖f6! 4. ♚h6 ♚xe7 5. ♖e4+ ♘g8 6. ♖xd5+ ♜f7.

3... ♖f7?! Stronger is 3... hxg6! 4. cxd5 ♜b7 or 4. ♚xd5 ♖f6, and Black should win.

4. ♖c2?

Losing. A draw results from 4. ♖xh7! ♘xh7 5. ♜1e3.

4... ♜b7 5. h4 ♜xe7 6. ♜xe7 h6! 7. ♚f5 ♖g8 8. ♚e4 d5 9. cxd5 ♚xd5 10. ♚g6 ♚d4 11. ♚g3

♜f7 12. ♜e4 ♚b2 13. ♖d3 ♖d4

And Black easily realised his advantage.

P22 Polugaevsky - Torre Manila 1976



After 1... ♖d3+ the position is a draw: 2. ♚xd3 (2. ♚f3 ♘e4) 2... ♚d4+ 3. ♚e2 ♘e4 4. ♚h6 ♚xf2+ 5. ♚d3 ♚d4+.

In the game, Torre played:

1... ♘xd5 and lost after 2. ♜g4 ♘f4+ 3. ♚e3 ♘d5+ 4. ♚xe4 ♚d4+ 5. ♚f3 ♜c3+ 6. ♖xc3 ♚d3+ 7. ♚g2 ♘f4+ 8. ♜xf4 ♚xd6 9. ♘f3 ♚xa3 10. ♖xe5+ ♚g8 11. ♜g4+ ♚f7 12. ♜g7+ ♚e6 13. ♜xh7



1...hxg5! 2.hxg5 ♖xc3! 3.♗d3

Or 3.bxc3 ♜d5 4.♙xd5 (4.♙h3 ♜xc3+ 5.♙c1 ♗xg5+) 4...exd5 5.♙g3 ♗a3, winning. After 3.♙d3 there would follow 3...♙xd3 4.♗xd3 (4.cxd3 ♜h5 5.♗xh5 ♗b5 or 5.♙xh5 ♙e1+) 4...♜h5 5.♙xh5 g6!, and again Black wins.

3... ♖xd3 4.cxd3

4.♙xd3 ♜h5! 5.♙xh5 ♗b5! 6.♙xd8+ ♙xd8 7.♙h1 ♗xg5 is also winning for Black.

4... ♗g4! 5.♙h3 ♗h6! 6.gxh6 ♙xe5

The white attack had fizzled out and the material advantage promises Black victory.

7. ♖de1 ♙g5 8.hxg7 ♙xg7 9. ♖e3 ♗g5 10. ♖g3 f6 11. ♙g4 ♙f7 12. ♙d4 ♙g8 13. ♙e4 ♗c6 14. ♖h7+ ♙e8 15. ♙h4 ♙g6 16. ♙h3 ♖d6 17.a3 ♙d8 18. ♙a1 ♙f5 19. ♙h1 ♗d7 20.d4 ♖c6 21. ♙h2 e5

P24 Sakharov - Kholmov Kiev 1964



1... ♞e4!

Going over to a long-prepared and decisive counterattack.

2. ♞xe4

«On 2. ♞d3 Black decides with 2... ♜xg2+! 3. ♜xg2 ♜g6+ 4. ♜h1 ♜g3 5. ♞xe4 ♜xd3 6. ♞f6+ ♜xf6 7. ♜xf6 ♜xd1+ 8. ♜h2 ♜d2+ 9. ♜g3 gxf6 10. ♜b8 ♜xa2, and with two extra pawns, Black should win» (Kholmov).

Even stronger in this variation is 4... ♜f5! (instead of 4... ♜g3) 5. ♜f1 ♞g3+ 6. ♜h2 ♜c7!.

2... ♜g6 3. ♜b8? White seeks salvation in active play. An unusual chance was 3. ♜f1! ♜e8 4. ♜f8+!.

3... dxe4! 4. ♜xc8+ ♜h7 5. ♜b8

If 5. ♜c7, then 5... ♜xg2+! 6. ♜h1 ♜2xg3 7. ♜xf7 ♜xh3#.

5... ♜exg2+ 6. ♜h1 ♜h2+! 7. ♜xh2 ♜xh2 ♜xa2+!

7... ♜f3+

White resigned.

P25 Tal - Portisch Niksic 1983



1... ♖c8+!

The threat was 2. ♖xh6+ gxh6 3. ♖f6. After 1... ♔c7+ 2. ♖b1 ♕e2 the move 3. ♘f5 decides, but another possibility was 1... ♕e2 2. ♖xh6+ gxh6 3. ♖f6 ♔c7+ 4. ♘c6! (4. ♖d2 ♔a5+ and 5... ♔g5) 4... ♔xc6+ 5. ♖d2 ♕h5 6. ♗xh5 ♗b5, and White has nothing more than perpetual check: 7. ♗xh6+ ♖g8 8. ♖g6+.

2. ♘xc8 ♖c7+! 3. ♗b1 ♖xc8 4. ♖6f2 ♕e6

With the threat of 5... ♔a5!.

5. ♖h5 b5 6. ♖d1 ♖a5 7. b3 7.a3?! b4 8. ♗d2 ♖b8!.

7... ♖c3 8. ♖xf7! ♕xf7

A draw results from 8... ♕xb3 (or 8... ♗b4 9. ♖b2) 9. axb3 ♔a3 10. ♖xg7+ ♖h8 11. ♖g8+!.

9. ♖xf7 ♖a3 10. ♖f1 ♖c5 11. ♖f5 ♖c7 12. ♖e1 ♖c3 13. ♖f1 ♖c7 14. e5 ♖c5 15. exd6

Draw agreed.

Chapter 4 – Prophylaxis

E40 Skembris - Torre Lucerne 1982



Black stands better. White wants to simplify the game with 2.♙e2, and if 2...♚xb3, then 3.♙b5. This idea works after 1...♘e7 or 1...h6. This must be prevented.

1...a6! 2.g4

If 2...♘e2, then 2...♙d2 3.♘c3 ♙e1 4.♘b1 ♙b4.

2...♗e7 3.♗e2 ♙d2 4.♗g1 ♗c6 5.♙c7 ♗b4 6.♙a5 ♗c2! 7.♙xd2 ♚xd2 8.♙g3 ♗xe3!

9.♙a3 ♗d1 10.♗f3 ♚xf2+ 11.♙f4 g5+

White resigned.

E41 Geller - Spassky Riga 1965



First, Black should prevent the move g2-g3, fixing the weak pawn on f5 and freeing the rook from the defence of g2.

1... ♖h6! 2.h3 ♖e8 3.♙d3 ♚f6 4.♙c2 ♖h4!

Now Black exchanges off the weakness on f5.

5. ♖d6+ ♖e6 6. ♖d2 f4!

6...h6 is bad because of 7.♙d1! f4 8.♙g4 fxe3 9.♖e2!.

7.exf4 ♖xf4 8.♙xh7 ♙e4! 9.♙xe4 ♖exe4 10. ♖d7 ♖xf2 11. ♖gd1

Draw.

E42 Lerner - Lukin USSR 1977



Black wants to strengthen the knight by means of ...b6-b5, so as to bring the bishop on a6 into play. This could have been prevented by the move 1.a4!, retaining the advantage for White.

However, in the game, there occurred:

1. ♖ad1 b5!

And now 2. ♗d7 fails to 2... ♕c8 3. ♗xe7 ♕xg4 4. ♗xa7 ♕xf3 5. ♕xf3 ♘xe5 or 3.e6 ♕xd7 4.exd7 ♖xe1+ 5. ♘xe1 ♗xe1+ 6. ♕f1 ♗d8. Black has a good game.

E43 Alekhine - Asztalos Kecskemet 1927



White's position is better, but by ...f7-f5, Black threatens to somewhat improve his situation. Therefore:

1. ♖a2! b4!?

If 1... ♗e7?, then 2. ♘xg6! and 3. ♝xe6.

2. ♖c4!

Worse is 2.axb4 a3 with counterplay.

2...bxa3 3.bxa3 ♔a5 4. ♖e4

4. ♘xg6? ♝xd4!

4... ♖c7 5. ♖f4 ♜ab8 6.h5!

Going over to decisive action.

6...gxf5 7. ♖h1 ♜b7 8. ♜g1

Black is helpless.

8... ♖e7 9. ♜xg7+! ♖xg7 10. ♜g1+ ♔h7 11. ♘xf7!

The concluding blow. There is no defence. Black resigned.

E44 Kortchnoi - Jussupow Lone Pine 1981



1. ♔f1!

White defends his bishop and wants to move his king away from the weak back rank. After 1. ♖xb5?! ♜a1 2. ♙xc4 ♜xe1+ he is not winning.

1... ♖a1?!

Better was 1... ♜b8, since now his own back rank is weakened!

2. ♔e2! Here the king is entirely safe.

2... ♔g7 3. ♙b4!

With the idea of 4. ♖e8.

3... ♘b6

3... ♜a8 4. ♖xb5.

4. ♜d6! ♜c1 5. ♜xf6 ♔xf6 6. ♔d4+ ♔g5

6... ♖e5 7. ♙e7+.

7. ♙e7+ ♔xe7 8. ♔f4+

Black resigned: 8... ♔h5 9. g4+ ♔h4 10. ♖h6#.

E45 Jussupow - Van der Wiel Lucerne 1982



White's plan is to attack the king, but first he needs to prevent the black knight coming to d5, via b4.

1. ♖ab1! ♔d5

1... ♞b4 now loses to 2. ♖xb4! ♙xb4 3. ♘f6+ ♜h8 4. ♚h4.

2. ♜f4! ♜d8 3. ♖b3 ♖c8 4. h4

Now the attack can start.

4... ♖c7 5. ♖f3 ♖f8 6. ♙xf8 ♜xf8 7. d5! exd5 8. ♖xd5 ♞b4 9. ♖d1 ♖c6 10. ♘d6 ♞xa2

11. ♜a4

And White won.

E46 Petrosian - Gufeld Leningrad 1960



1. ♞b1!

An excellent prophylactic move. If now 1...f4, then 2. ♖b3, whilst after 1...fxe4 the white knight occupies the square e4. On the queenside, Black is doomed.

1... ♜h7 2. ♖b3 fxe4 3. ♜xe4 ♖f5 4. ♖a3 ♜b7 5. ♞c3 ♖ef8 6. ♜c4 ♖f3 7. ♖xa6 ♙e3!?

The last chance.

8. ♞e4! ♙h6 9. ♖xa7

Black resigned.

E47 Vaganian - Timman London 1984



White's plan consists in the exchange of light-squared bishops after ♞a1 and ♝a4 , seizing the square f5 for his knight. But first it was necessary to prevent Black castling, by means of $1.\text{♞bf2!}$, forcing $1...\text{♞h7}$ ($1...\text{♞f8}$ or $1...0-0 — 2.\text{♜g6}$), and only now $2.\text{♞a1}$ with a large advantage. Vaganian missed this possibility.

E48 Nevednichy - Panchenko Bucharest 1994



1.g3!

An excellent prophylactic move. Worse is $1.\text{fxe5 ♝xe5}$ or $1.\text{♞d5 exf4}$ with good chances of saving the game for Black. Now $2.\text{♞d5}$ and $3.\text{fxe5}$ is the threat, and there is no defence.

1...♞g7 2.♞d5 ♜e8 3.fxe5 ♝xe5 4.♞xb4

White has a clear advantage which, however, in time-trouble he was unable to convert.

E49 Hübner - Smyslov Tilburg 1982



White wants to play ♖d3 and then b2-b3 and ♙b2 with advantage. This must be prevented.

1...a5!

If now 2.♖d3, then 2...a4!. After 2.a4 there follows 2...♜fd8 3.♖d3 ♙a6 4.♖d2 ♜ac8. Black has a normal game.

E50 Johner - Rubinstein Teplitz-Schönau 1922



White wants to begin a storm with g2-g4, h2-h4 and g4-g5. Black prevents this.

1...♙g4! 2.h3 ♙xf3 3.gxf3 White has the open g-file, but the square g7 will be reliably defended by the bishop. Meanwhile, Black's attack on the queenside can become dangerous. **3...a5 4.♙b1 ♘d7 5.♘e2 ♙b6 6.♙f5 ♜fd8 7.♙xd7 ♜xd7 8.♘f4 ♜d6 9.♜hg1 ♙h8 10.♜g4 ♜g8 11.♜dg1 ♙c7 12.♘d3?** Stronger is 12.♘h5 and then 13.♘xf6.

12...b6 13.f4 c5! 14.dxc5 14...♘e5!?. 14...bxc5 15.♙xc5 ♜c6 Black has a strong attack for his pawn.

16.♙a3 Bad is 16.♖xd5? ♜d8 17.♖f5 ♜c2!.

16...♜c8 17.♜d1 ♙xb2! 18.♙xb2 ♜c3! 19.♙a4 ♜c2+

White resigned.

E51 Lerner - Panchenko Beltsi 1979



1... ♗h4!

From here, the bishop not only prevents the advance h3-h4 with an attack, but also ties down White's forces.

2. ♗xd7 ♕xd7 3. ♖hg1 ♜ac8 4. ♘f4 ♙g6

Black has defended all the paths towards his king and is ready for the advance ...c6-c5. In addition, almost any endgame will favour him.

5. ♞d3 ♛d6 6. ♜g2 ♞e6

Black has a good game.



With his last move, White played ♔c2-c1 with the intention of transferring the queen to a1 and pressing further in the centre.

1... ♘h6! Black tries to prevent the white bishop moving from b2 to an active position. 1...d4 2.exd4 exd4 3.♗d2, and the bishop comes to c1.

2. ♖a1 It was stronger to change plans — 2.cxd5 ♘xd5 3.b4 with a transition into a superior endgame.

2...d4 3.exd4 exd4 4.b4 ♘6d7 5. ♘c1 ♘xc1 6. ♖xc1 ♔g7 Now Black has no clear weaknesses. White's task is to create some, by advancing the a-pawn. **7.b5 ♘e5 8. ♘xe5 ♖xe5 9. ♘c6?!** The position remains equal after 9. ♖xe5 ♔xe5 10. ♖e1 ♔f5. **9...a5!** Now it is very difficult to break down the black defences. **10. ♔g2 ♘e6 11.h4 ♖xe1 12. ♖xe1 ♖d6 13. ♖e4 ♔d8 14. ♔d2 ♔f6 15. ♘d5 ♘c7! 16. ♘c6** If 16. ♖f4, then 16... ♘xd5 17. ♖xf6 ♘xf6. In a closed position, the strength of the queen is not felt.

16... ♖e6 17. ♖e2 ♔e7 18. ♔d2 ♔f6

Draw.

Chapter 5 – Realising an advantage

E53 Alekhine - Lasker Paris 1913



1. ♖d3 ♜f6

1... ♜f6 2.f4.

2.g4! c6 3.gxf5 ♖xd5

3...cxd5 4.♙g3 c4 5.♚d1.

4.♜e4 h4 5.♜g4 ♜h6 6.♙e3 ♜f6 7.♖g2 ♖g8 8.f4! exf4 9.♙xc5

Black resigned.

E54 Kobalia - Chepukaitis St Petersburg 1997



1. ♖xf7! ♖e4 1... ♜xf7 2. ♘g4 followed by ♖f3 and ♜xg6.

2. ♖g5 Even more effective is 2. ♖d4! ♙xd4 (2... ♖xd4 3. ♜xg6 ♜c8 4. ♘f5) 3. ♜xe4 ♜xf7 4. ♜xd4 with a winning attack. 2... ♖xh4 3. ♖d4! ♖h6 4. ♖g4 ♙xd4 5. ♖xh6+ ♜g7 6. ♖e6+ ♜xh6 7. ♜d2+ And in view of the variation 7...g5 8. ♜xd4 ♜g6 9.g4 with unavoidable mate, Black resigned.

E55 Anand - Polgar Dortmund 1994



1. ♖fxe5!

1. ♖xa5 ♜f5 2. ♘h2 ♙d6.

1...fxe5 2. ♖xe5+ ♚d7 3. ♖d5+ ♚c8 4. ♖xf8! ♜dxf8 5. ♖xc5+ ♚b8 6. ♖xa5 ♜h4 7. ♖b5+ ♚c7 8. ♙xb4 ♜e8 9. ♙d6+ ♚d7 10. ♖b7+ ♚e6 11. ♙e5!

And faced with further losses, Black resigned.

E56 Petrosian - Ivkov Hamburg 1965



1. ♙xg6 fxg6 2. ♚xg6 ♚xd4

Nor does he save himself with 2... ♜h8 3. ♚d6+ ♚e8 (3... ♚f7 4.e6+ ♚g8 5. ♚xf4 ♜xf4 6. ♜xh8+ ♚xh8 7.e7) 4. ♚b8+ ♚e7 5. ♚xb7+ ♚e6 6. ♚xc6+ ♚f5 7. ♚d7+ ♚g5 8. ♜g1+ ♚h6 9. ♚e6+ ♚h7 10. ♚g6+ ♚g8 11. ♜c1. But the position remains double-edged after 2... ♜f8.

3. ♚xh5 ♚d3+ 4. ♚a1 ♜d8 5. ♜g1 ♜d7 6. ♜xg7+ ♚d8 7. ♜g1 ♚c7 8.e6 ♜d5 9. ♚g4 b3

(9... ♜e5 10. ♚g7+ ♚d6 11. ♚d7+) **10.e7 ♜e5 11. ♚g7 ♚d6 12. ♚xe5+**

Black resigned.

E57 Polgar - Tiviakov Madrid 1994



1.h6 ♖xh6 2.♗g4 ♜xe2 3.♗xh6+ ♚g7 4.♜xe2 ♚xh6 5.♚e1 ♚g7 6.♜e7 ♚b6 7.♗xc4 bxc4 8.♚e5+ ♚g8 9.♗e3 f6 10.♚f4 ♚f8 11.♜xh7 ♚e8 12.♚h6
 Black resigned.

E58 Kamsky - Anand Dos Hermanas 1996



1.g4 ♗f6 2.gxf5 ♗xe5 3.fxe5 ♚c6 4.♜e3 ♚h1+ 5.♚f2 ♚xh2+ 6.♚e1 ♗e4 7.♗xe4 ♚h4+ 8.♚d1 ♗xe4 9.♗e1 ♚h2 10.♜xe4 ♚h3 11.♚e2
 Black resigned.

E59 Kramnik - Beliavsky Belgrade 1995



1.e4! fxe4

1... ♗xf3 2. ♗xf3 fxe4 3. ♘xe4 dxe4 4. ♖xe6+ ♖e7 5. ♗xe4, winning.

2. ♖g5! ♗f7 2... ♖xg5 3. ♘xe4 ♖e7 4. ♗g5! ♘f6 (4... ♖f8 5. ♖xd5!! exd5 6. ♘xd6#) 5. ♘xf6+ gxf6 6. ♗xh6.

3. ♖dx4! dx4 4. ♖xe6! ♗xe6 5. ♖xe6+ ♖e7 6. ♖xe4! ♗d8

6... ♖xe6 7. ♗xe6+ ♗e7 8. ♗xh6 ♘f7 9. ♗xe7+ ♘xe7 10. ♗xg7.

7. ♖d5 And Black resigned because of 7... ♖f8 8. ♗e6 ♘f7 (8... ♗e7 9. ♗xe7!) 9. ♗g5+ ♘xg5 10. ♗xd6 ♖e7 11. h4 ♘f7 12. ♗e6 ♖b4 13. ♗h3.

E60 Ivanchuk - Nenashev Frunze 1988



1.f5 gxf5 2. ♖a7 ♖c7 3.exd6 ♖xd6 4. ♖g5+ ♖h8 5. ♖d1 ♖e5 6. ♖g4 ♖xe2 7. ♖d8

Black resigned: after 7... ♗xd8 he is mated in two.

E61 Sadler - Dreev Groningen 1997/98



1...♖d7
1...bxc2 2.♗f7+ ♕d7 3.♗xd6 ♕xd6 4.♖xc2.
2.♗f7+ ♕e7 3.♗xd6 ♗xc5 4.♗f5+ ♕f6 5.♖b1 h5 6.g3 ♗xa4 7.♕d2 ♖d5 8.♗e3 ♖e6
9.♖d3 ♗xb2 10.♖xa6 ♕e5 11.♖b5 ♕d4 12.h4 g4 13.♗g2 ♗c4+ 14.♖xc4 ♖xc4 15.♗f4
♖f7
 And Black won.

E62 Mateo - Popchev Prokuplje 1987



1.♗xg5 fxg5 2.♕xg5+ ♕f8 3.♖xh4 ♕f6 4.♕xf6 ♗xf6 5.♖h8+ ♗g8 6.f6 ♖d8 7.g4 ♖xd4
8.g5 ♖d5 9.h4 ♖f5 10.h5 ♖xg5 11.h6 ♖g6 12.h7 ♖g2 13.a4 c5 14.♕b1 c4 15.♕c1 ♖g4
16.♕c2 ♖g3 17.♕d2 ♖g2+ 18.♕c3 ♖g4 19.♖xg8+
 Black resigned.

P26 Kramnik - Kamsky Linares 1993



«... It is time to take decisive action, whilst the difference in piece activity is so great» (Kramnik).

1.f4! ♖xd4 **2.♗xd4!** Stronger than 2.exd4 ♜b6 3.♘b3 ♚d6, although after 4.f5 White is still better.
2...♜xe3 3.♜fd1! Strengthening the position. **3...♞f8** If 3...♞e7, then 4.♜b5! ♚b6 5.♜d6, and Black has no moves, whilst after 3...a6 there is the very strong 4.♜e4! with a clear advantage to White. **4.f5 ♚e7** After 4...♞e7 (4...♞e5 5.♘f4) 5.♘xf6 gxf6 6.♚f2! ♘d7 7.♞g4+ ♜h8 8.♚h4 ♚e5 9.♚h6! ♚e3+ 10.♚xe3 ♜xe3 11.♘xf7 h6 12.♞g8+ ♜h7 13.♞xd7 and Black remains a piece down.
5.♘xe3 ♚xe3+ 6.♚f2!

The simplest. The endgame is hopeless for Black.

6...♚xf2+ 7.♚xf2 ♘xf5 8.♜d8! ♜xd8 9.♜xd8 b5 10.♘e2 a5 11.♘f3 ♘d7 12.♜a8 g5 12... a4 13.♞a6.

13.♜a6 ♞e6 14.♘xc6 ♘xc6 15.♜xc6 b4 16.♞e2 a4 17.♜c4 ♞d5 18.g3

And Black soon resigned.

P27 Motwani - Adams Moscow 1994



1.d5! exd5 2.e6! ♔f6

He loses after 2...fxe6 3.♘d4 ♘c5 4.♙1xc5 or 3...♙f7 4.♘c6.

3.♘g5! h6 4.♖xe7! hxg5

Or 4...♙xe7 5.♙b4+ (worse is 5.♖c7+ ♘d7) 5...♙e8 6.♖c7 fxe6 7.♖e7+ ♙f8 8.♘xe6+ ♙g8 9.♖xg7+ with a winning position.

5.♙b4! ♖e8

5...fxe6 6.♖cc7.

6.♖xe8+ ♙xe8 7.♖c7 fxe6 8.♖e7+ ♙d8 9.♖xg7 ♘e8 10.♖xg5 ♖a7 11.♖g6

11.h4 is also possible.

11... ♖h7 12.♖xe6 ♖xh2 13.♙f3 ♖h4 14.♙e1 ♖h1 15.♙g3 ♖d1?

Losing a piece, but Black's position is hopeless anyway!

16.♙h4+ ♙d7 17.♖e7+ ♙c6 18.♖xe8 ♖b4 19.♙e2

Black resigned.

P28 Ivanchuk - Ehlvest Yerevan 1996



1.f5! ♖xe5 2.♔g3 ♜d7

2...exf5? 3.♘xf5.

3.fxe6 fxe6 4.♞c3! ♞7f6

4...♚f7? 5.♘xe6!.

5.♞f5 ♜h5 6.♚f3 ♔h8 7.♞xe6 ♞hf4 8.♞xd5 ♞xd5 9.♚f2! ♞f6 10.♞xc8 ♚xc8 11.h3 h6

12.♞e6 ♚d7 13.♚d4 ♞d5 14.♞xg7! ♚xg7

Black resigned: 15.♞e8+ ♔h7 16.♚e4+ ♚g6 17.♞h8+!.

P29 Kasparov - Short Amsterdam 1994



1. ♖d6! ♜f6 2.f5!

By sacrificing a pawn, White exchanges off the rook on f8, a defender of the black king.

2... ♜h6+

Bad is 2... ♜xf5 3. ♖f3 ♜g4 4. ♖xf8+ ♘xf8 5. ♘b6.

3. ♜b1 ♜xf5 4. ♖f3! ♜xf3 5.gxf3 ♜f6 6. ♙h3 ♜f7 7.c4!

Not giving the opponent a breathing-space.

7...dxc4

Or else 8.c5.

**8. ♘c3 ♜e7 9. ♜c6 ♜b8 10. ♘e4 ♘b6 11. ♘g5+ ♜g8 12. ♜e4 ♘g6 13. ♜xe5 ♜b7 14. ♖d6! c3
15. ♙xe6+ ♙xe6 16. ♖xe6**

Black resigned.

P30 Taimanov - Sanchez Stockholm 1952



White's position is superior. He continues to strengthen it and creates new weaknesses in Black's position.

1.g4! a5 2. ♖hg1 axb4 3.g5 ♜a5

On 3...f5 a good reply is 4.e4.

4.gxf6 gxf6 5. ♗f4 ♜e5

5...e5? 6. ♖g8+ ♚e7 7. ♘d5+.

6. ♜c4 b6?!

It is hard to know what to recommend for Black.

7. ♜c6! ♗a6+

This check is what Sanchez had been counting on, but disappointment awaits him.

8. ♚e1! ♚e7

The exchange is lost after 8... ♖xe3+ 9. ♚f2.

9. ♜xb6 ♜d6 10. ♜xd6 ♚xd6 11. ♚f2 ♗c7

Otherwise 12. ♖g8 and 13. ♖h8.

12. ♜g7 ♜c5 13. ♜xh7 ♗c4

Trying to create counterplay on the queenside.

14.h4 ♗xb3 15.axb3 ♜c3 16.h5

This pawn cannot be held.

16... ♜xb3 17.h6 ♜b2+ 18. ♚g3 e5

The threat was 19. ♖xc7 and 20.h7.

19. ♗d3 If 19. ♖xc7, then 19...exf4+ 20.exf4 ♖a2 21.h7 ♖a8. **19... ♜b1 20. ♚h2! ♜a1**

On 20... ♘e6 White wins with 21. ♖g7!, and on 20...b3 with 21. ♖h8.

21. ♜h8 ♜a2+ 22. ♚g3 ♜a1 23.h7 ♜h1 24. ♜d8+ ♚c6 25.h8 ♚ ♜xh8 26. ♜xh8 b3 27. ♜b8 ♗b5 28. ♚g4

Black resigned.

P31 Eliskases - Prins Stockholm 1952



1.dxc5!

A good deal stronger than 1.♘c6 bxc6 2.♙xb8 cxd4.

1...♚c7 Bad is 1...♙xc5 2.♘c6, and Black has no compensation for the exchange.

2.e4 ♘f6 3.♙e3 ♙xc5 3...♙xe5 4.♙f4.

4.♖ac1 b6 5.♚c3 ♚b7 6.♖fd1

White strengthens his position and gradually presses Black.

6...♙xe3 7.♚xe3 ♙d7 8.♘xd7! ♘xd7 9.e5 ♚a7

With a queen like this, it was already possible to resign.

10.a5 ♖fd8 11.♖d6 ♚f8 12.♖cc6 ♖bc8 13.axb6 ♚b8 14.♖xd7!

Black resigned: 14...♖xd7 15.♙c5+.

P32 Chernin - Dlugy Tunis 1985



1. ♖d3! ♗f8 2. ♘e3 ♘d6 3. ♙b5!

The white pieces work very actively together against the enemy queenside. **3...a6 4. ♙a5 ♖d7 5. ♘f4 ♘d3**

It was worth considering 5...♙e7 and then 6...♙f7.

6. ♘c7! ♙b5 7. ♖fe1 ♙f7?

Leads to a hopeless position. After 7...♙xa5 8. ♘xa5 ♙f7 it was possible to resist tenaciously.

8. ♙xb5 axb5 9. ♘xb7 ♖a7

If 9...♖xa3, then 10. ♘c8 ♖e7 11. ♘d6.

10. ♘c8 ♖axc7 11. ♖xc7 ♖xc7 12. ♘xe6+ ♙g6 13. ♖d1 ♖c3 14. ♖d8!

White organises a powerful attack, with only minimal forces.

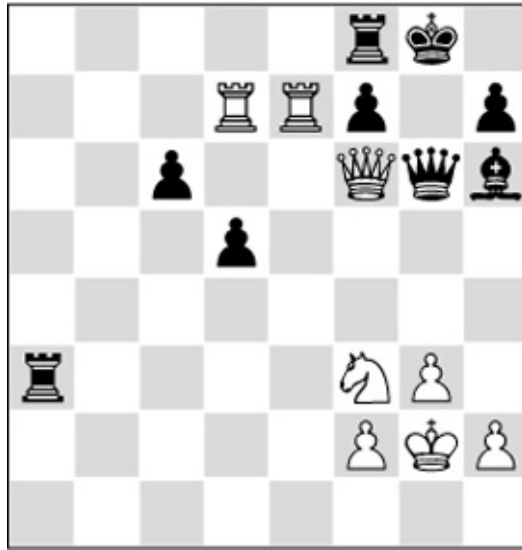
14... ♘e7 15. ♖d7 ♘f8 16. ♘f7+ ♙h6.

Nor is he saved by 16...♙f5 because of 17.f3! ♖xf3 18. ♖d5+ ♙e4 (18...♙g4 19. ♘h5+) 19. ♖d8 ♘e7 20. ♖e8.

17. ♖d8 ♘e7 18. ♖d5 g6 19. ♖xb5 ♖xa3 20. ♖b7 ♘d6 21. ♘g8 ♖a8 22. ♖xh7+ ♙g5 23. h4+ ♙f5 24. ♘b3 g5 25. ♘c2+ ♙g4 26. ♙g2

Black resigned.

P33 Karpov - Miles Oslo 1984



The white pieces are all in a single group, whereas Black's are scattered around the board. Karpov confidently realises his advantage.

1. ♖xg6+ hxg6

1...fxg6 2. ♗e5 with the threat of 3. ♗g4.

2. ♗e5

It is hard to believe that White can win, but this happens quite quickly!

2... ♘g5

If 2...♘g7, counting on 3. ♗xg6 ♘f6, then 3. ♗xc6.

3. ♖xf7 ♖xf7 4. ♗xf7 ♘f6 5. ♗h6+ ♚h8 6. ♖d6 ♘g7

6...♗g7 7. ♖xc6 or 6...♘g5 7. ♗f7+.

7. ♗f7+ ♚g8

More stubborn is 7...♗h7.

8. ♗g5 ♖a8 9. ♖xc6 d4 10. ♖xg6 ♚h8 11. ♖d6 ♖e8 12. ♗f3

Black resigned.

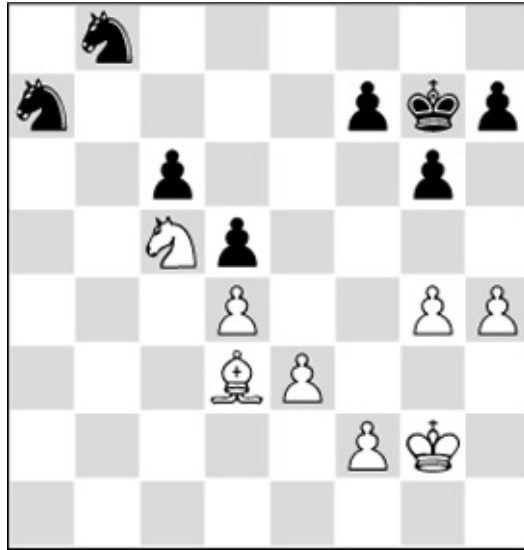
Simple, but this simplicity is only there when you have seen the game to the end. It is not so clear at the start.

P34 Polugaevsky - Biyasis Petropolis 1973



- 1. ♖f1!** If immediately 1.a4, then 1...c4! 2.bxc4 b4 with counterplay for Black.
1... ♜e8 2.a4 b4 Now 2...c4 is bad because of 3.axb5 axb5 4.bxc4 b4 5.♘b5!.
3.♘b1 ♘b6 4.♘bd2 ♜e7 5.♖b2 Stronger is 5.a5!.
5...♘e8 6.♜c1 f6 7.a5 ♘a8 8.♘c4 ♜c7
 8...♘ac7 9.♚c2.
9.♘fd2 ♗d7 10.f4 ♚e7 10...exf4 11.e5 fxe5 12.♘e4.
11.fxe5 fxe5 12.♘xd6 ♘xd6 13.♘c4 ♘xc4 14.♗xc4
 In view of the threat d5-d6, Black resigned.

P35 Polugaevsky - Veltmander Saratov 1953



White's position is clearly superior, because the knight on b8 cannot come into play immediately. However, winning is not so easy.

1. ♖g3 f6 On 1... ♜f6 there is the possibility of 2.g5+ ♜e7 3.h5 ♜d7 4. ♜xd7 ♜xd7 5.h6 and then f4-f5.

2. ♜f4 ♜f7 3.g5 ♜b5 4.f3 ♜c7 5.e4 ♜e6+ 6. ♜xe6 ♜xe6 7. ♜f1 ♜e7 8.gxf6+ ♜xf6 9.e5+ ♜e7 10. ♜g5 c5

The only chance.

11.dxc5 ♜d7 12. ♜f4! 12.f4 is bad because of 12... ♜xc5 13. ♜h6 ♜e6, drawing.

12... ♜xc5 13. ♜e3 ♜b3

It was worth considering 13... ♜e6, and if now 14. ♜h3, then 14...d4+ 15. ♜e4 d3.

14. ♜h3 h6 Else ♜d3-c3-d4.

15.f4 ♜f7 16.h5 gxh5 17.f5 h4 18. ♜g2 d4+ 19. ♜d3 ♜e7 20. ♜c4 ♜c1 21. ♜xd4

And White realised his advantage.

Chapter 6 – Equal positions

P36 Andersson - Gruenfeld Lucerne 1982



1. ♖d2 ♜c7 2.e3!

Prophylaxis against Black ever playing ...d6-d5 – the pawn on e2 will not hang.

2... ♗f8 3. ♕b1 ♘d7 4. ♜fd1 ♙f6 5.a4! Intending ♖a2 and a4-a5. **5... ♜c5**

The immediate 5...d5!? 6.cxd5 exd5 and then ♘e4 deserved consideration.

6. ♜c2

Threatening the regrouping ♜dc1 followed by the advance b3-b4-b5, securing the square c6.

6...e5?! Rather safer was 6...d5 or 6...♜e7.

7. ♘e2 b5 8.axb5 axb5 9. ♘c3 bxc4 10.b4 ♜c7 11. ♘d5 ♘xd5 12. ♗xd5 The pawn on b4 is very dangerous, whilst the bishop on d5 is much stronger than the one on f8.

12... ♕b8 13.b5 ♜c5? 13... ♕b6!?. 14.b6 ♜ec8 15.e4 g6 16. ♕b4 ♜8c6 17. ♜b1 ♜c8

18. ♕a4

Black resigned.

P37 Petrosian - Fischer Belgrade 1970



1... ♗ f5! Black forces g2-g4. **2.g4 a6!** **3. ♖ c3** Or 3. ♘c7 ♜ac8 4. ♘xa6 ♙e4 5.f3 ♙xf3 6. ♙xf3 bxa6 with equality.

3... ♙ e6 4.f4 ♜fd8 5. ♚f2 ♞b4 After 5... ♜xd1 6. ♜xd1 ♜d8 7. ♜xd8 ♘xd8 White is slightly better.

6.a3 ♞d5 7. ♞e4 ♞f6 8. ♞xf6 exf6

In Fischer's opinion, equality also results from 8... ♜xf6 9.g5+ ♜g7 10. ♙f3 ♜ac8 11. ♙xb7 ♜c2+ 12. ♜g3 ♜xd1 13. ♜xd1 ♜xb2 14. ♙xa6 ♜b3!.

9. ♙f3 ♜ac8 10. ♜xd8 ♜xd8 11. ♜d1 ♜c8 12. ♜d2 ♜c7 13.h4 h6 14. ♚g3 b5! Parrying the possible manoeuvre ♜d6-b6. **15. ♜d6 ♜c2 16.b4 ♜c3 17. ♜xa6 ♙c4 18.f5 g5 19.hxg5 hxg5 20. ♚f2 ♜c2+ 21. ♚g1 ♜c1+ 22. ♚g2 ♜c2+ 23. ♚g3 ♜c3 24. ♚f2 ♜c2+ 25. ♚e1 ♜c3 26. ♜a5 ♜xe3+ 27. ♚f2 ♜d3 28. ♙c6 ♚f8 29. ♙xb5 ♙xb5 30. ♜xb5 ♜xa3 31. ♜d5 ♜b3 32. ♜d4 ♚e7 33. ♚e2 ♜a3 34. ♚d2 ♜b3 35. ♚c2 ♜e3 36. ♚b2** Only a draw results from 36.b5 ♜e5 37. ♜b4 ♜d7 38.b6 ♜c8 39.b7+ ♜b8 40. ♜d3 ♜e7 41. ♜b6 ♜xb7 42. ♜xf6 ♜b4.

36... ♚e8 37. ♚c1 ♜e2 38. ♚d1 ♜a2 39. ♚e1 ♜b2

Draw.

P38 Kasparov - Petrosian Niksic 1983



The position is about equal. If Black plays ...♘f6, then it is completely equal. Kasparov makes an interesting attempt to change the situation on the board.

1.d5! ♚xd5 **2. ♖ed1 ♗c5** There is nothing else.

3. ♖xd5 ♗xf2+ 4. ♚xf2 exd5 5. ♗xf5 ♘b6 5... ♗e6 6. ♘e7+. **6. ♗xc8 ♘xc8 7. ♗a3 h6 8. ♖b1!**

Completely stalemating the black knight.

8... ♖e6 9. ♘d4 ♖a6 10. ♗c5 ♘d6 11. ♖b8+ ♚h7 12.g4!

Starting to surround the enemy king, with extremely limited forces.

12... ♖a4 13. ♚e3 ♘c4+ 14. ♚f4 g5+?

More solid is 14... ♗a6.

15. ♚g3 ♖a2 16. ♖b7 ♚g6 17. ♘f5! ♖a6 18.h4 gxh4+ 19. ♘h4+ ♚g7 20. ♘f5+ ♚g6

21. ♗d4

Black resigned: he has no defence against a knight check on h4, winning a piece.

P39 Kasparov - Karpov London/Leningrad 1986



1. ♖d3 ♜hc8 2. ♖c5 ♜ab8 3. ♜c3 ♘d8 4. ♜ac1 ♙c6?!

Equality can be maintained by 4...b6.

5. ♖d3 ♙d7 6. ♖e5 ♜xc3 7. ♜xc3 ♙e8 8. b4 a6 9. ♙e4!?

It is hard for White to strengthen his position, so he tries to weaken Black's.

9...h6 10.a3 f6 11. ♖d3 ♙c6 12. ♙xc6 ♘xc6 13. ♖c5 ♘e5 13...a5!? 14.b5 ♘d4 15.a4 b6 looks more attractive.

14.f4 ♘d7 15. ♖b3 ♙d6 16.e4 g5 17. ♙e3 e5 18.fxg5 fxg5 19. ♖a5 g4 20. ♜c2 h5 21. ♜c1!

Giving Black the move.

21...b6 (21...♘f6 22. ♜c5) 22. ♜c6+ ♙e7 23. ♖c4 ♜f8 24. ♙e2! ♜f3?

Black is only a little worse after 24... ♜f6 25. ♜c8 b5.

25. ♖e3??

White wins with 25. ♜c7 ♜c3 26. ♙d2.

25...♖f6 26. ♜xb6 ♘xe4 27. ♜xa6 ♜f2+ 28. ♙d3 ♘d6 29. ♜a7+ ♙e6 30. ♜h7 e4+ 31. ♙c3 ♘b5+ 32. ♙c4 ♘xa3+ 33. ♙d4 ♜xh2 34. ♜h6+ ♙d7 35. ♖d5 h4 36. ♜xh4 ♜xh4 37.gxh4 g3 38. ♖f4 ♖c2+

1/2-1/2

P40 Torre - Karpov Bad Lauterberg 1977



We have a position of dynamic equality, characteristic of the so-called Hedgehog System. Both sides manoeuvre and await a mistake from the opponent.

1. ♖e2 ♜fe8 2.h3 ♞d7 3. ♗f2 ♠a8 4. ♝c2 ♚b8 5. ♝fc1 ♞h4!

Forcing a weakening.

6.g3

Better is 6. ♗d2.

6... ♠d8 7. ♞d2 ♠f6

«The manoeuvres of the two sides are hard to comment on, since they are largely waiting tactics and only partly of a preparatory character» (Karpov).

8.h4 h6 9.h5 ♞gf8 10.g4? ♞h7 11.e5?

Fanciful and unfounded.

11...dxe5 12.g5 exf4! 13. ♠xf4 ♠e5 14.g6 fxg6 15.hxg6 ♠xf4 16.gxh7+ ♚h8 17. ♝f1 ♝f8 18. ♠e4 ♞e5 19. ♗g2 ♞xc4

White resigned.

P41 Boleslavsky - Zurakhov Kiev 1958



1. ♖d2 ♜xd2 1... ♖b4 2. ♗f1! followed by ♗f1-e3.

2. ♘xd2 ♙d6 3. ♜e3! ♜ac8 3...f6 4. ♜ae1 ♜fe8 5. ♖c3!, and now Black loses after 5... ♜ac8? 6. ♜xe6!, whilst if 5... ♗f7, then 6. ♜xe8+ ♜xe8 7. ♜xe8+ ♗xe8 8. ♖c8!; 3... ♜fe8 4. ♜ae1 ♗d7 5. ♜e5! ♗c6 6. ♖a5!.

4. ♜ae1 ♜c6 5. ♜e5 ♜b6 6. ♜1e3 ♙b4 7. ♘d3!

7. ♖xb4 ♜xb4 with equality.

7... ♜c6 8. h4 g6 9. ♜e1 ♗f5 10. ♘e3 ♗e6?

More energetic is 10... ♗e4! 11. a5! ♘g7! 12. ♗xd5 ♗xd5 13. ♜xd5 ♜e6! 14. ♜e5 ♜fe8 15. h5 ♜xe5 16. dxe5 ♖xa5 17. h6+ ♘f8.

11. h5! ♜b6 12. ♗c2 ♗d7 13. b3 ♜c6 After 13... ♜c8 14. ♜e7! ♗c6 15. hxc6 hxc6 White decides with 16. ♗xc6!. **14. ♗d1 ♜e6 15. ♜xe6 ♗xe6 16. ♗f3 ♜c8 17. ♘e5 ♙d2 18. ♜d1 ♜c1 19. ♜xc1 ♙xc1+ 20. ♙h2 gxh5 21. ♗xh5 ♙h6 22. ♙g3 ♙g7+ 23. ♙xg7+ ♙xg7 24. ♙f4 ♙f6 25. a5! h6** Black spoils his pawns, placing them on the same colour squares as his bishop. On 25... ♗c8 the move 26. ♗g4! wins, and on 25... ♗d7 – 26. ♗g4 ♗b5 27. ♗f5! h6 28. ♗c8 ♗c6 29. f3 ♘e7 30. ♘e5 ♘d8 31. ♗g4 ♘e7 32. ♗h5! f6+ 33. ♘f5!.

26. ♗g4 ♗xg4 27. ♙xg4 ♙g6 28. ♙f4 ♙f6 29. f3 ♙e6 30. ♙g4 ♙f6 31. ♙h5 ♙g7 32. g4 f6 33. f4

Black resigned. It was still possible to recommend 33... ♘h7 34. g5 hxc5 35. fxc5 f5 36. g6+ ♘g7 37. ♘g5 f4 38. ♘xf4 ♘xc6 39. ♘e5.

P42 Alekhine - Euwe The Netherlands 1937



In the endgame, White has a small advantage, thanks to his more active bishop, but Black should not lose.

1. ♖g2 ♜d8 2. ♔e3 ♞a6?!

Better is 2...e5!? 3. ♘b5 ♘c6 4. ♘c7 ♜b8 5. ♘d5+ ♝f8.

3. ♜ac1 ♜b8 4.a3 ♙d7

There was nothing to stop the intermediate 4...e5!? 5. ♘b5 ♙d7.

5.f4 f6 6. ♙e4! ♙e8 7.b4! ♜d7 8.f5! ♞c7

Defending the e6-square.

9.fxe6 ♞xe6 10. ♞xe6 ♔xe6 11. ♙xh7

Now White has an extra pawn and good winning chances.

11...f5 12. ♜c5! g6 13. ♙g8+ ♔f6 14. ♜hc1 ♜e7+ 15. ♔f2 ♙c6 16. ♙d5! ♜be8 17. ♜e1 ♙xd5 18. ♜xd5 g5 19. ♜d6+ ♔e5?

It was essential to move the king from the line of fire — 19...♝f7.

20. ♜ed1 g4 21. ♜1d5+ ♔e4 22. ♜d4+ ♔e5 23. ♔e3 ♜e6 23...f4+? 24. ♝d3 fxg3 25. ♜4d5+ ♝f4 26. ♜f6#. 24. ♜4d5+ ♔f6+ 25. ♔f4 ♔g6 26. ♜xe6+ ♜xe6 27. ♜e5 ♜a6 27...♜f6 28.e4! fxe4+ 29. ♝xg4 ♜f2 30.h4. 28. ♜xf5 ♜xa3 29. ♜b5 b6 30. ♔xg4

And in view of the variation 30...♜e3 31. ♜g5+ ♝h6 32.b5! ♜xe2 33.h4, Black resigned.

P43 Flores - Smyslov Santiago 1965



«In the endgame, the two sides' chances are roughly equal. However, despite the exchange of queens, there remain many double-edged possibilities to continue the battle» (Smyslov).

1... ♖d7 2. ♗f1 ♜ed8 3. ♗e3 ♝e7 4. ♞b3 ♚f8 5. ♛e2 ♞b7 6. ♜xd7 ♝xd7 7. ♗d5 ♞d6 8.g5?

8. ♗e3! maintains equality.

8...h5! 9. ♞e3 c6 10. ♗b6 ♝e8 11.a4 ♞c5 12.axb5 axb5 13. ♜a7 ♝xe3 14. ♛xe3 ♞c5 15. ♞a2

15. ♗c2 h4.

15... ♗d3 16.g6? fxg6 17. ♗d5 ♞xb2 18. ♗c7 ♞d1+ 19. ♛e2 ♞xc3+ 20. ♛e1 ♜d1+ 21. ♛f2 ♜d2+ 22. ♛g3

22. ♛e3 ♜xa2.

22... ♞d7 23. ♗e6+ ♛e7 24. ♞b3 ♞e2+

White resigned.

Chapter 7 – The battle of the major pieces

E63 Lowcki - Tartakower Jurata 1937



1... ♖c5+ 2. ♔h1 ♘c4! 3. ♔g1 ♘d4+ 4. ♔h1 ♘e4!

4... ♖d2 is bad because of 5. ♗xe5.

5. ♘c1

5. ♖d1 ♗f4 or 5. ♖g1 ♖e2.

5... ♘d3 6. ♔g1 ♘d4+ 7. ♔h1 ♘d2!

White resigned.

E64 Lobron - Spraggett Wijk aan Zee 1985



1. ♖b3 ♖d8 2. ♖b6 ♘e7 3. ♖d6 ♖dd7 4. ♖h5

Black resigned. The threat of a sacrifice on h6 and a mating attack against the black king decides the game.

E65 Gligoric - Averbakh Titovo Uzice 1966



35. ♖h6!

In this unusual way, White not only defends the d-pawn, but also ensures its further advance.

35... ♕d7

If 35...gxf6, then 36.♖d4+ ♔g8 37.♖d5+ and ♕xc6. An interesting try for Black is 35...♗g5!?, but after 36.f4 (36.d7 ♜c1 37.d8♗+ ♗xd8 38.♖xc1 gxf6) 36...♗xf4 37.d7 White wins (as pointed out by Ruslan Scherbakov).

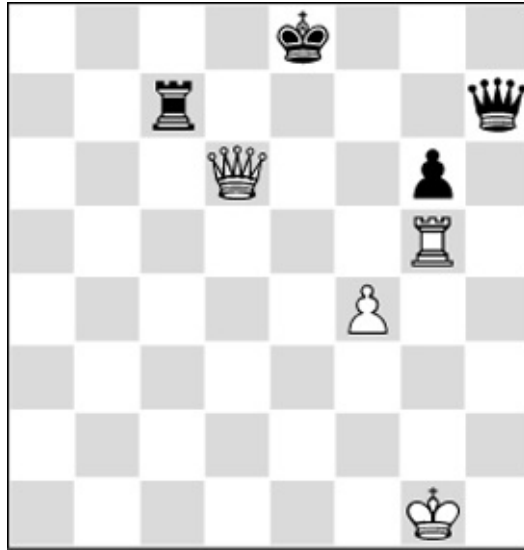
36. ♖e6! ♕xe6 37.d7 ♜d6 38.d8♗+ ♜xd8 39.♗xd8+ ♔g8 40.♗xb6

And White won:

40... ♕c8 41. ♕d4 ♕c1+ 42. ♕f2 ♕c2+ 43. ♕g3 h6 44.h3 ♕h7 45. ♕h2 a5 46.f4 h5 47. ♕d5 ♕xa4 48. ♕xf5+ g6 49. ♕f7+ ♕h6 50. ♕f6 ♕h7 51. ♕e7+ ♕g8 52. ♕e6+ ♕h7 53. ♕g3 ♕c2 54. ♕f7+ ♕h6 55. ♕f6 ♕h7 56. ♕e7+ ♕g8 57. ♕e6+ ♕h7 58. ♕d7+ ♕h6 59. ♕d4 ♕h7 60. ♕a7+ ♕h6 61. ♕xa5 ♕xb2 62. ♕g5+ ♕h7 63. ♕h4 ♕f2+ 64.g3 ♕d4 65. ♕e7+ ♕h6 66. ♕f8+ ♕h7 67. ♕f7+ ♕h6 68. ♕e7 ♕a1 69. ♕f8+ ♕h7 70. ♕d6 ♕a5 71. ♕e7+ ♕g8 72. ♕e8+ ♕h7 73. ♕f7+ ♕h6 74. ♕g8 ♕a1 75. ♕d8 ♕c3 76. ♕g5+ ♕h7 77. ♕e7+ ♕h6 78.g4 hxg4 79.hxg4 g5+ 80.fxg5+ ♕g6 81. ♕f6+ ♕xf6 82.gxf6 ♕xf6 83. ♕h5 ♕g7 84. ♕g5 ♕h7 85. ♕f6 ♕h6 86.g5+ ♕h7 87. ♕f7

Black resigned.

E66 Kuznetsov - Sakharov USSR 1961



1. ♖e5+ ♜e7 2. ♔c6+ ♚d8 3. ♜d5+ ♜d7 4. ♔b6+ ♚c8 5. ♜c5+ ♜c7 6. ♔a7! ♚e7 7. ♔a8+ ♚d7 8. ♜d5+

Winning.

E67 Stein - Kholmov Tbilisi 1967



1. g6 ♜f8

1... ♜xe7 2. ♔b8+.

2. ♔c7 ♚d4 3. ♜f7! ♜e8 4. ♜f5!

Black resigned.

E68 Androvitzky - Kozma Vigrú 1970



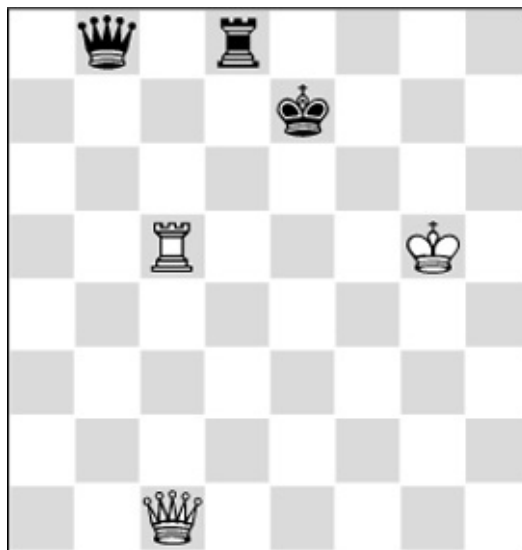
1. ♖e5! ♜f6

If 1... ♜d8, then 2. ♗e7+ ♘h5 3. ♜g5+ hxg5 4. ♗h7#.

2. ♖g5+!

Black resigned.

E69 Study by Henri Rinck 1926



1. ♜c7+ ♜d7

Or 1... ♘e6 2. ♗e3+ ♘d6 3. ♗c5+ ♘e6 4. ♜e7#.

2. ♖c5+!

2. ♗e3+? ♘d8 3. ♗c5 ♜d5+! with equality.

2... ♘d8 3. ♖h6!

And White wins: 3... ♜xc7 4. ♗f8+; 3... ♗a8 4. ♗f8+; 3... ♗xc7 4. ♗f8#; 3... ♗b1 4. ♜c8#.

E70 Ermenkov - Sax Warsaw 1969



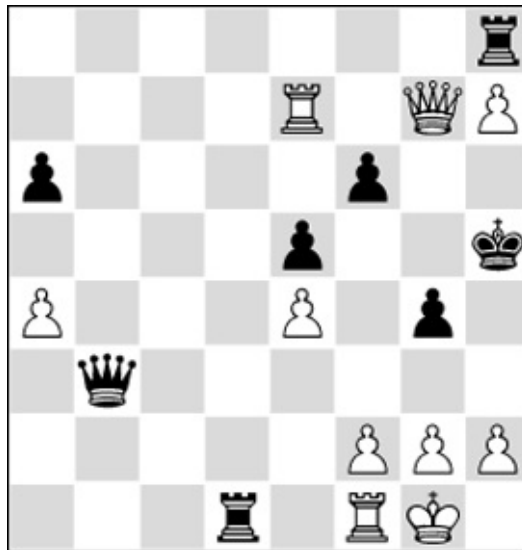
1.d7

Worse is 1.♖a1+? ♜h7 2.d7 ♜e7! 3.♖d4 ♜e2!.

1... ♜xf1+ 2. ♜xf1 d2 3. ♜xf3

And Black resigned because of the variation 3... ♜c1+ 4.♖d1 ♜xd1+ 5.♜e2 ♜b1 6.d8♜ d1♖+ 7.♖xd1 ♜xd1 8.♜xd1.

E71 Gaprindashvili - Veröci Belgrade 1974



1.h3! ♜xf1+ 2. ♜h2 g3+

Bad is 2... ♜d1 3.♖f7+ ♜g5 4.h4+.

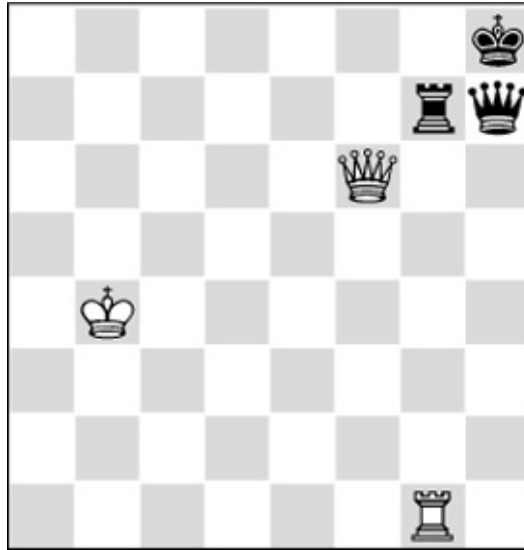
3.fxg3 ♜e3

In serious time-trouble, White forced a draw:

4. ♜g4+ ♜h6 5. ♜g7+ ♜h5 6. ♜g4+

But she could have won with 4. ♜xe5+ fxe5 5.g4+ ♜h4 6.♖e7+ ♖g5 7.g3#.

E72 Study by Bernhard Horwitz 1862



1. ♔a5! ♕h5+ 2. ♔b6 ♕h7

Or 2... ♖f7 3. ♗h1+ ♔g8 4. ♖d8+ ♖f8 5. ♗h8+, winning.

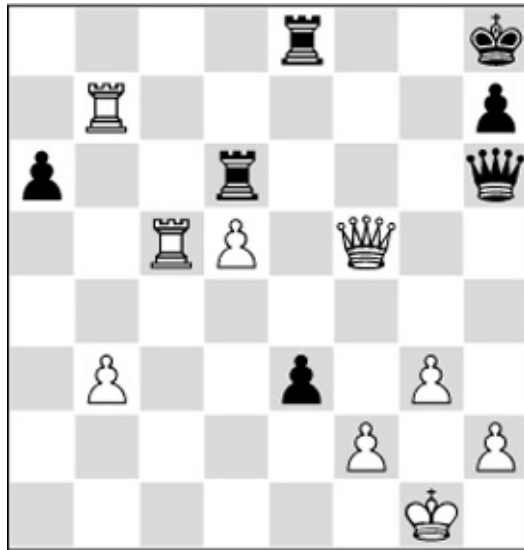
3. ♕d8+ ♖g8

3... ♖g8 4. ♖h4+ ♖h7 5. ♖f6.

4. ♕d4+ ♖g7 5. ♕f6 ♔g8 6. ♕d8+ ♔f7 7. ♖f1+

Winning.

E73 Slobodjan - Bruch Altenkirchen 1999



1...e2?? There was a win after 1...exf2+ 2. ♖xf2 ♗f6. 2. ♖e7?? 2. ♖e5+! wins at once. 2...e1♔+ 3. ♖xe1 ♖xe1+ 4. ♖g2 ♖e8 5. ♖c8 ♖g8 After 5... ♗xc8 6. ♖xc8+ ♔g7 7. ♖c7+ ♔g8 Black wins. 6. ♖c7 ♖dg6 Better is 6... ♗gd8. 7. ♖e5+ ♖g7? 8. h4? ♖g6? 9. d6 h6? 10. ♖e7 ♔h7 11. d7 ♖d8 12. ♖e6 ♖d3! 13. ♖d6 ♖c2? 14. ♖e3! ♖f5 15. ♖xh6+ ♖g8 16. ♖e8+ ♖f8 17. ♖h5 and Black soon resigned. A dramatic game.

E74 Nunn - Portisch Budapest 1987

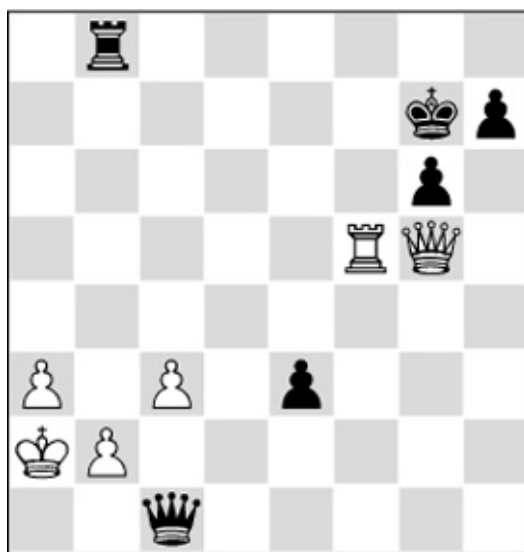


1... ♖h7!

A fantastic way of including the queen in defence of the king.

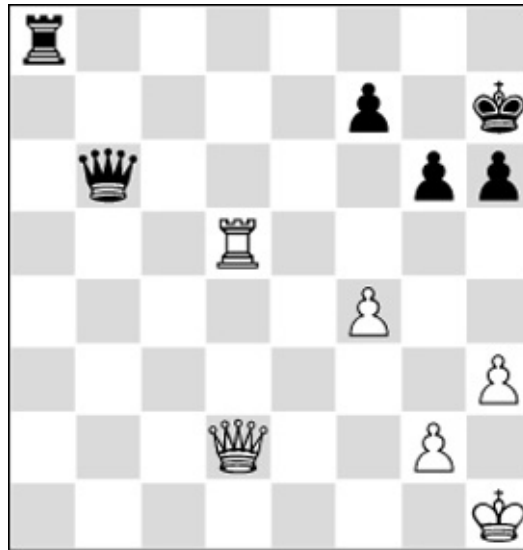
2. ♖a3 2. ♜f2+ ♔a8 3. ♖b6 ♜d3. 2... ♜g8! 3. ♜f2+ ♜a8 4. ♜b6 ♜c8!
with equality.

E75 Study by Giambattista Lolli 1763



1. ♜e7+ ♜h6 2. ♜h4+ ♜g7 3. ♜d4+ ♜h6 3... ♜g8 4. ♜d5+ ♜g7 5. ♜e5+ etc. 4. ♜f4+ ♜g7 5. ♜e5+ ♜h6 6. ♜h5+! gxh5 7. ♜f6#

E76 Bogatirev - Zagorovsky USSR 1947



1... ♖a1+ 2. ♔h2 ♘g1+ 3. ♔g3 ♖a3+ 4. ♖d3

If 4. ♘g4, then 4... ♙h2 5. ♗f2 ♖xh3! 6. ♖d7 ♖g3+! 7. ♗xg3 ♙h5#.

4... ♘d4!

White resigned.

E77 Winants - Kasparov Brussels 1987



Black wins by force:

1... ♔d1+ 2. ♔g2 ♘e2+ 3. ♔h3 ♘xf3 4. ♔xa7 ♘h1+ 5. ♔g4 h5+ 6. ♔f4 ♘f1+ 7. ♔e5 ♘f5+ 8. ♔d6 8. ♔d4 c2 9. ♗c7 ♙e4+. 8... ♘e6+ 9. ♔c7 9. ♔c5 ♙xe3+ 10. ♖d4 c2. 9... ♘e7+ 10. ♔b6 ♘xa7+ 11. ♔xa7 c2

White resigned.

E78 Karaklaic - Carnic Subotica 1999



1...g4

The immediate attack gives nothing: 1...♖h1+ 2.♔f2 ♜f1+ 3.♔e3 ♞g1+ 4.♔d2 ♜d1+ 5.♔c2 ♜a1 (5... ♜c1+ 6.♔b2 ♜a1 7.♞c2) 6.♔c3!.

2. ♞f2

2.e8♞? ♞h1+ 3.♔f2 ♞g1#; 2.♞xg4 ♞h1+ 3.♔f2 ♞g1+ 4.♔f3 ♜f1+ 5.♔e4 ♞d4#.

2... ♔h2+ 3. ♔g2 ♔h8 4. ♔e4

In reply to 4.e8♞ White is mated in two: 4...♞f6+ 5.♔e3 ♞d4#.

4... ♔h2+ 5. ♔g2 ♔h8

Draw.

P44 Ruzele - Smirin USSR 1986



1.g3! White plays against the enemy king. **1... ♔a8** The threat was ♔g2 and ♜h1+. **2. ♜e1 ♔f3**
3. ♔d6! Attacking both the square f8 and the b4-pawn. **3... ♔xb3** 3...♔g7 4.♜e8. **4. ♔f8+ ♔g5**
5. ♔xf7 ♔c3 **6. ♔e7+ ♔h6** **7. ♔g2 ♜g5** **8. ♔f8+ ♔g7** **9. ♜h1+ ♜h5** **10. ♔f4+ g5** **11. ♔d6+**
 Black resigned: 11...♞g6 12.♞f8+.

P45 Chandler - Langeweg Amsterdam 1984



1. ♖c3+ Beginning an attack on the black king.

1... ♕g6 2. ♖d7 ♖a1+ 3. ♕d2 ♖g8 4. ♖g3+ ♕f6 4... ♔h6 5.f4+-. **5.h4! h6**

If 5... ♗xb2, then 6. ♗g5+ ♔e5 7.f4+ ♔e4 8. ♗g3 ♗b4+ 9. ♔e2 ♗c4+ 10. ♔e1 ♗b4+ 11. ♖d2, mating with ♗f3#.

6.h5 ♖xb2 7. ♖h4+ ♕e5

He also loses after 7...g5 8.hxg6++ ♔xg6 9. ♗g3+ ♔f6 10. ♗xg8 ♗b4+ 11. ♔c1 ♗a3+ (11... ♗e1+ 12. ♖d1) 12. ♔d1.

8.f4+ ♕e4 9. ♖g3

Black resigned: 9... ♗b4+ 10. ♔c1 and then ♗f3#.

P46 Galliamova - Umanskaya Elista 1997



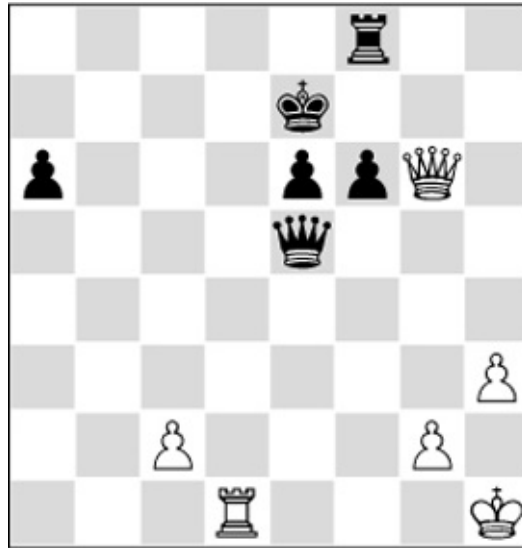
1. ♕d5!

With the idea of ♖c3, ♗d2, ♖d3 and White wins a pawn. There is no defence to this:

1... ♖fe8 2. ♕d2 ♕g7 3. ♖c3 ♖f8 4. ♖d3 ♖f6 5. ♖d5 ♕c7 6. ♖xe5 ♖df8 7. ♖d5 ♖xf2 8. ♕c3+ ♕g8 9. ♖xd6 ♕f7 10. ♖d7 ♖f1+ 11. ♖xf1 ♕xf1+ 12. ♕h2 ♕f4+ 13. ♕g3 ♕xe4 14. ♖xa7 ♖f4 15. ♖a4

Black resigned.

P47 Ghinda - Ungureanu Bucharest 1978



1. ♖d3 ♜b5 2. ♖d6+ ♜f7 3. ♖c7+ ♜g6 3... ♜g8 4. ♜d3. 4. ♜d3 ♜b1+ 5. ♜h2 ♜b8 6. ♜g3+ ♜f5 7. ♜h7+ ♜e5 8. ♜b3! ♜d6 9. ♜d3 ♜b6 9... ♜b8 10. ♜h4 ♜d8 11. g3!. 10. ♜g7 ♜c8 11. ♜g3+ ♜e4

Or 11... ♜f5 12. ♜f3+! ♜e4 13. ♜e1+ ♜d5 14. ♜d3+ ♜c6 15. ♜c3+.

12. ♜d6 ♜c7 13. ♜g4+

Black resigned.

P48 Kasparov - Karpov London/Leningrad 1986



1.e4!

Worse is 1. ♜xh7? ♜f8 2. ♜h6 ♜g7 3. ♜e6+ ♜f7 4. ♜xg6+ ♜h7 5. ♜h6+ ♜g7 6. ♜d6 ♜d8! 7. ♜xd8 ♜xh6 8. ♜h4+ ♜g6, and the win is still a long way away.

1... ♜c1+ Or 1... g5 2. ♜f5 ♜a8 3. ♜h2! (3. ♜xg5+ ♜h8 4.e5? ♜c1+ 5. ♜h2 ♜f4+) 3... ♜d4 4.e5 winning.

2. ♜h2 ♜h6 3.e5 ♜f8 3... ♜b8 4. ♜f6. 4.e6 g5 5. ♜xf8+ 5. ♜d7 g4!. 5... ♜xf8 6. ♜xg5+ ♜h8 6... ♜g7 7. ♜d8+ ♜f8 8.e7. 7.e7 ♜e8 8.h4!

With the idea of 8...h5 9.g4 hxg4 10.h5 ♜h7 11. ♜g6+ (variations by Kasparov). Black resigned.

P49 Vyzhmanavin - Bareev Lviv 1990



1. ♖d3! Seizing the d-file. **1... ♖a5**

After 1... ♖ff8 a possible line is 2. ♖e5 ♖ad8 3. ♗e2, and White has the advantage.

2. ♖ad1 ♖b8 3. ♖d2 ♖ff8 If 3... ♖b3 4. ♗xb3 ♗xd2, then 5. ♗e3! **4. ♖e3 ♖h8 5. ♖d7 ♖b3**

6. ♖xe6 ♖xa3 Not 6... ♗xa3 on account of 7. ♗f7 ♖g8 8. ♖d8!. **7. ♖e5?**

White wins at once with 7. ♖xg7! ♖xg7 8. ♗e7+ ♖g8 9. ♖e5 h6 10. ♖e6 ♖a1+ 11. ♖g2 ♖xf2+ 12. ♖xf2 ♗d2+ 13. ♖e2 ♗d4+ 14. ♖g2.

7... ♖c3! 8. ♖f7 ♖g8 9. ♖e6 ♖a6

Even after his error at move 7, White has the advantage.

10. ♖e4 ♖d6 11. ♖xa7 ♖d4 12. ♖e8 ♖d8?

After 12... ♗xc4! White has only a symbolic advantage.

13. ♖e6 h6 14. ♖c7 ♖d6 15. ♖e5 ♖d2 16. ♖xc5

And White won:

16... ♖f8 17. ♖e2 ♖c1+ 18. ♖g2 ♖d1 19. ♖c7 ♖g8 20. f4 ♖h1 21. ♖h3 ♖f1+ 22. ♖g2 ♖g1 23. ♖e2 ♖b1 24. ♖xg1 ♖xg1 25. c5 ♖f8 26. ♖e5 ♖f1+ 27. ♖h4 ♖g8 28. ♖e7 ♖g2 29. h3 ♖a8 30. c6

Black resigned.

P50 Alekhine - Colle Baden-Baden 1925



1. ♖f4!

White's task is to force the advance ...a6-a5.

1... ♜h7 2. ♖e4+ ♜h8 3. ♖e3 ♜g7 4. ♖d3! a5

If 4... ♜a8 5. ♜g3+. Now White should induce the advance ...f6-f5.

5. ♜e3 ♜g8 6. ♜h3 ♜d7 7. ♖e3 f5

7... ♜h8 worsens the position: 8. ♜g3+ ♜h7 9. ♜e4+ f5 10. ♜d4 ♜g8, although this was the lesser evil.

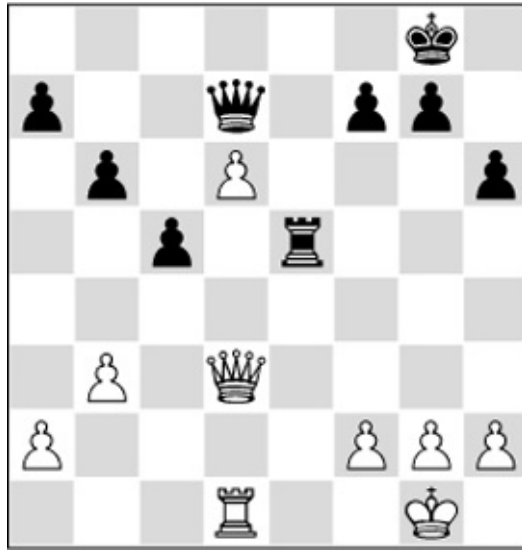
8. ♜g3+ ♜h7 (8... ♜g6 9.d6) 9. ♜xg8 ♜xg8 10. ♖g3+ ♜h7 11. ♖b3 ♜g7 12.h3 ♜d8 13. ♖g3+ ♜h7 14. ♖e5! ♜d7 15. ♜d3 f6 16. ♖d4 ♜d8

16...b5 17.axb5 ♜xb5 18.♜c3! ♜xd5 19.♜c7+ (Alekhine), but after 19...♜g6 Black holds on by a miracle.

17. ♖c4 ♜d7 18. ♜d4 ♜g7 19. ♖d3 ♜f7 20.g4! ♜f8 20...fxg4 21.♜h7+ ♜f8 22.♜h8+. 21.gxf5 ♜e8 22. ♜e4 ♜h5 23. ♜g4 ♜f7 24. ♖e3 ♜h7 25. ♜g6

Black resigned: 25... ♜f7 26.♜c3.

P51 Mikhalchishin - Filipenko Ordzhonikidze 1978



1.f4 ♖e6 **2.♗d5** Preventing ...b6-b5 and ...c5-c4. **2...g6** **3.h3** ♔g7 **4.♕h2** Threatening f4-f5 at some moment. **4... ♖e2** **5.a4** ♖e3 **6.a5!?** Planning a5-a6 and then ♗b7. But stronger is b4-b5 and ♗c6. **6...bxa5** **7.♕xc5** ♖xb3 **8.♗d4+** Simpler and better is 8.♗xa5, retaining the advantage. **8... ♕h7** **9. ♖e1** ♖b8?

The decisive mistake. After 9... ♖b4! the whole battle lies ahead.

10. ♖e7 ♕f5 **11.d7** g5 **12. ♖e8**

Black resigned.

P52 Taimanov - Mikhalchishin Baku 1983



It is hard for White to achieve success, because his king is exposed. Black should not exchange pieces.

1... ♖f7! **2. ♖c4** ♕h7 **3.♗d4** ♕e6! **4. ♖c2** ♖d7 **5.♗e3** ♖e7 **6.h4** a5 **7.bxa5** bxa5 **8. ♖e2** ♕e5! **9.♗f4** ♕c5 **10. ♖e3** ♖b7!

Black's piece activity compensates for the pawn. Draw.

P53 Suetin - Jansa Sochi 1980



1... ♖g5! 2. ♔f4 ♕c2 3. ♖e2

3. ♗e4 b5! 4. ♜e3 ♗xf5+ 5. ♗f4 ♗e5 6. ♗e4 ♗xe4 7. ♜xe4 ♜xc3+ 8. ♜e3 ♜xe3+ 9. ♔xe3 f5, and Black wins.

3... ♕d3+! 4. ♕e3 4. ♗e3 ♜f1+ 5. ♔e4 ♗g4. 4... ♕xf5+ 5. ♕f4 5. ♔g2 h4. 5... ♕h3! 6. ♕e3 ♗xg3+!

7. ♕d2 ♗d3+ 8. ♕e1 ♗xc3 9. ♖f2 ♕e6+ 10. ♕f1 ♗xa3 11. ♕g1 ♗a1+ 12. ♕h2 ♕e5 13. ♕h3 ♗g1

White resigned.

P54 Romanishin - Gulko Leningrad 1974



White manages to start a quick attack against the exposed black king.

1.c4! d4 2. ♖b3 ♕e7 3. ♕e4 ♗c6 4.g3!

Having tied down the black forces, White opens the position.

4...fxg3+ 5. ♖xg3+ ♕h6 5... ♕f8 6. ♜g4. 6. ♖g4 ♕f6 7. ♕g3! ♕f1 8. ♖h4+ ♕g7 9. ♕h7+ ♕f8

10. ♕h8+ ♕e7 11. ♕xe5+

Black resigned.



1... ♔d5! 1... ♕xe5?? 2. ♖xe5 ♖c1+ 3. ♖e1 would be a bad mistake. **2.b4 ♕xe5! 3.h3 ♕e1+ 4. ♕h2 ♜e8! 5. ♕xa7?** Nor is he saved by 5. ♕c7 ♕d2 6. ♕d6 ♕xb4 (but not 6... ♖e2? 7. ♖c8 with a draw). **5...f4!**

There is no defence against the threat of 6... ♕g3+ and 7... ♖e1#. White resigned.

Chapter 8 – Two pieces against a rook

P56 Gavrikov - Piesina Beltsi 1981



1. ♖xg5!

Of course. By sacrificing two pieces for a rook, White obtains clearly the better chances.

1... ♖xd2+ 2. ♖xd2 ♖xd2+ 3. ♔xd2 ♗e4+ 4. ♔c2 ♗xg5 5. ♖d1 ♗e6 6. b4 ♔f8 7. ♖d7 ♗cd8 8. ♔c3 Black is helpless. **8... ♔e8 9. ♖d5 f6 10. a4 ♗f7 11. ♔c4 e4?**

Better is 11... ♔e7, but it was hard to save the game in any event.

12. ♖f5 ♔e7 13. ♔d5 ♗e5 14. ♖h5! ♗f8 15. ♔xe4 ♗c6 16. b5 axb5 17. axb5 ♗a7 18. ♔f5! ♗xb5 19. ♖h4 ♗c3 The pawn on b7 cannot be saved. **20. ♖b4 ♗d5 21. ♖xb7+ ♔e8 22. c6 ♗e7+** There is nothing else. **23. ♔xf6 ♗xc6 24. ♖c7 ♗d7+ 25. ♔g7 ♗ce5 26. ♔xh7 ♗g4 27. ♔g6**

Also possible is 27. h3 ♗xe3 28. g4 ♗xg4 29. hxg4 ♗f6+ 30. ♔g7 ♗xg4 31. ♖c4.

27... ♗xe3 28. ♔g5 ♔d8 28... ♗xg2 29. ♖c2 and **30. ♖e2. 29. ♖c6 ♗f8 29... ♗xg2 30. ♖e6** and **31. ♖e2. 30. g4**

And White promoted his pawn.

P57 Hübner - Karpov Tilburg 1977



1... ♖xe3! 2.fxe3 ♜xe3+ 3.♚f3 ♜xf1 4.♞xf1 ♜xc1 5.♞xc1 ♜c8 6.♞b2 ♜c2! Winning the a2-pawn. The simple 6...e5 7.♞e3 ♚e6 was also good. 7.♞xf6 ♜a2 8.♚e3 ♜xa3 9.♞d2 The best defence. 9...b5 10.♞e4 b4? He should not concede the c4-square, correct was 10...a5. 11.♚d4 a5 12.♚c4 Threatening 13.♞b2 ♜a2 14.♚b3. 12... ♜a2 13.h4 ♚c6 14.♞d4 ♜e2

The rook transfers to the first rank and at the same time ties down the knight (because of ...e6-e5).

15.♞e5 ♜e1 16.♞f6 ♜b1! Threatening 17...a4. 17.♞e7 17.♞d2 ♜c1+ 18.♚b3 ♚b5. 17...e5 18.g4 ♜c1+ 19.♚b3 ♚d5 Heading for the pawn on d3.

20.♞g5
20.♞d8 ♚d4 21.♞xa5 ♚xd3 22.♞f6 ♜b1+ 23.♚a2 ♚c2. 20... ♜b1+ 21.♚c2 ♜h1 22.♚b3 ♜h3!
23.♞f6+ ♚d4 24.♞xh7 ♜xd3+ 25.♚c2 a4 26.♞e7 ♜c3+ 27.♚b1 ♜c7

White resigned.

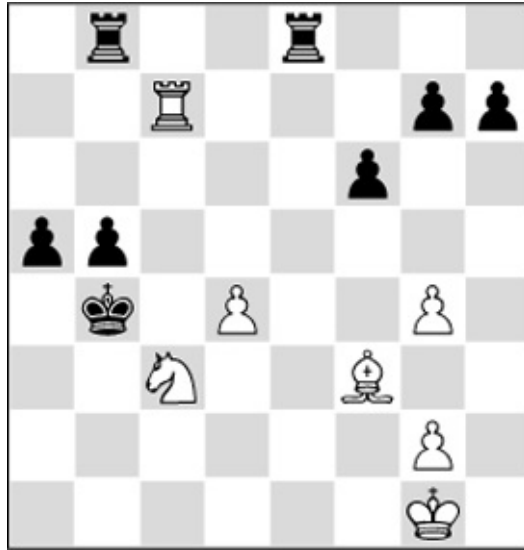
P58 Farago - Jansa Sochi 1980



1. ♖d3! Threatening **2. ♖fd1. 1...e5 2. ♗xf7! ♖xf7 3. ♙xf7+ ♚xf7 4. ♖fd1 exf4** There is no choice. **5. ♖xd7+ ♚xd7 6. ♖xd7+ ♚g8 7. exf4** This is the position White was heading for. The rook on d7 is very active and the knight at a5 is out of play. **7... ♖xc5 8. h4 ♖f5** It was worth considering **8... ♙xc3!?. 9. g3 ♖f7 10. ♖cd1!** So as to transfer the rook to the seventh rank, White gives up a pawn. **10... ♙xc3 11. ♖xf7 ♚xf7 12. ♖d7+ ♚g8** He needs to keep the h-pawn. **13. ♚g2** White's plan is to activate his king and advance the pawns on the kingside. Black has difficulties bringing his knight on a5 into play, without losing a pawn. **13... ♙b4 14. g4** Stronger is ♙f3-g4 and then f4-f5 or h4-h5. **14...b6** Sooner or later, the a-pawn will have to be surrendered. **15. ♖xa7 ♗c6 16. ♖d7 ♗e7 17. ♚f3 h5 18. gxh5 gxh5 19. ♖d4 ♙c5 20. ♖e4 ♗f5 21. ♖e5 ♗xh4+ 22. ♚g3 ♗g6 23. ♖xh5 ♚f7** Black's position has become somewhat easier after the exchange of pawns, but his position remains inferior. **24. a4 ♙d6 25. ♚f3 ♚g7?** Losing at once. After **25... ♙f6** there were still defensive chances. **26. ♖b5 ♙c7 27. a5**

Black resigned.

P59 Dus-Khotimirsky - Kotov Moscow 1941



White's position is clearly worse and he lost rapidly after... **1. ♖e2? ♜bc8! 2. ♞d5+ ♚b3 3. ♜xb5 ♜xc7 4. ♜xe8 ♜c4 5. ♜f7 ♜xd4 6. ♞xf6+ ♚b2 7. ♞xh7 ♜xg4** The a-pawn has remained! **8. ♜g8 a4 9. ♚f2 a3 10. ♚f3 ♜b4 11. ♞g5 ♜b3+ 12. ♜xb3 ♚xb3**

And White resigned. The correct decision was the following set-up: the white rook stays on c5, the king on f2 and bishop on d5, or, if Black plays ... ♜ec8, then the bishop goes to c6. The continuation could be: 1. ♜c5 a4 2. ♚f2 ♜ec8 3. ♜c6, and then 4. ♚e3 and 5. ♚d3. The most likely outcome is a draw. If you found this set-up for White, then very well done.

P60 Karpov - Kasparov Moscow 1985



1...d5!

The only move, but Black had long planned to sacrifice two pieces for the rook.

2.b3 2.exd5 ♖b4. 2... ♗b4 3. ♗a2 ♗a3 4.bxc4 ♗xc1 5. ♗xc1 ♔xc4

Black is better, because his forces tie White down.

6.exd5 e4 7. ♗e2 ♔xc2 7... ♔xd5 was also good. **8. ♔d4 ♖bc8 9.h3 e3 10.d6 ♔d2 11. ♗d3 ♔xe2 11... ♗d7. 12.d7 ♗xd7 13. ♔xd7 ♔d2 14. ♖e1 e2 15. ♔g1 15.a5 ♖f8!. 15...a5 16.g3 16. ♗f2? ♖cd8. 16... ♔h6 17. ♗f2 ♔c6?!**

With **17... ♔xh3 18. ♖xe2 ♖ed8** White would be in a bad way. After the queen exchange, Karpov managed to draw, with some help from his opponent. I suggest you analyse the rest of the game yourself.

18. ♔xc6 ♖xc6 19. ♖b1 ♖c4 20. ♖xb7 ♖xa4 21. ♗e1 ♖a3 22. ♖d7 a4 23. ♔f2

Here the game was adjourned.

23... ♖b3 24. ♗c1 ♖b1 25. ♗a2 ♖a8 26. ♖e7 ♖b2 27. ♖xe2 ♖xe2+ 28. ♔xe2 ♖e8+ 29. ♔f2 h5 30. ♗c3 ♖b8 31. ♗b4 ♖d8 32. ♔e2 a3 33. ♗c3 f6 34. ♗b4 ♔f7 35. ♗c3 ♖b8 36. ♗a2 ♖b5 37.g4 ♖b8 38. ♔d3 ♖d8+ 39. ♔c4 ♖d1 40. ♗xa3 ♖a1 41. ♔b3 ♖h1 42.gxh5 ♖xh3+ 43. ♗c3 ♖f3 44. ♗c1 ♖xf5 45.h6 g6 46. ♗e4 ♖h5 47. ♗b2

Draw.

P61 Stetsko - Gipslis Moscow 1975



Black's position is clearly better (he would be worse without a pair of rooks!). One ought to win such a position.

1...♖c1 Preparing to attack the pawns on b2 and f2. **2.f4 ♜b5 3.♜b8 ♜c5 4.♚f3 4.b4 ♜c2+**

5.♙g3 ♜c3+ 6.♙h4 ♞e2 is dangerous. **4...♚f6 5.♜h8** Stronger is **5.♜b6** followed by h3-h4.

5...h5! 6.gxh5 gxh5 7.♜h6+ ♚g7 8.♜bh8 ♞b3 9.♜6h7+ ♚f6 10.♜h6+ ♚e7 11.♜xh5

White has won a pawn, but now his rooks are out of play. Black's pieces start to develop some activity.

11...♞d4+ 12.♚e4 ♞f5 13.♚d3 The pawn on f4 cannot be kept. **13...♜b5 14.♚c2 ♜b4**

15.♜g5 ♜xf4 16.♜gg8 ♜f2+ 17.♚c3 ♜f3+ 18.♚d2 ♞d6

Organising an attack on the king.

19.h4 ♞e4+ 20.♚e2 ♜h3 21.b4 ♞c4+ 22.♚d1 ♜h1+ 23.♚c2 ♜h2+ 24.♚c1 ♞c3 25.♜c8 ♞a2+ 26.♚d1 ♞b3+ 27.♚e1 ♞xb4

The rest is a matter of technique.

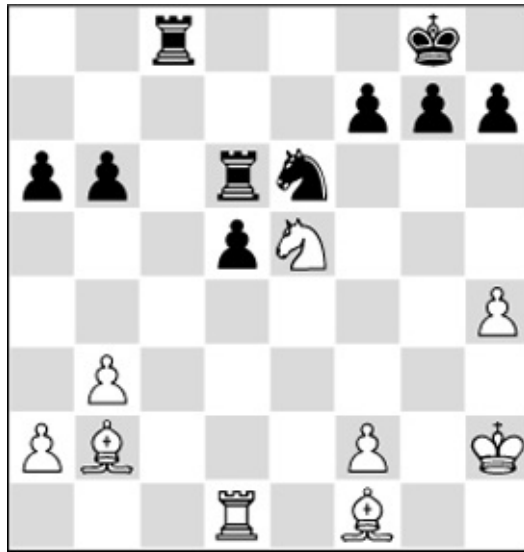
28.♜ce8+ ♚f6 29.♜e2 ♜h3 30.♚d2 ♚g7 31.♜b8 ♞c6 32.♜g2+ ♚f6 33.♜f2+ ♚e7

34.♜b7+ ♚f8 35.♜f4 ♞e5 36.♜e4 More tenacious is **36.♜b5 ♞g6 37.♜fb4 ♞e6 38.h5. 36... ♞f3+ 37.♚e2 ♞d5 38.♜b8+ ♚g7 39.♜g4+ ♚f6 40.♜bb4 ♚e5 41.♚f2 f5 42.♜g3 ♜h2+**

43.♜g2 ♜h1 44.♜g7 ♞e4 45.♜g3 ♞xh4

And Black won.

P62 Karpov - Smyslov Linares 1987



White is better, but it is difficult to win. Everything depends on how he can coordinate his pieces.

1. ♖d2 d4 The pawn cannot be defended on d5. **2. ♗g2 ♘f4 3. ♗f3 d3 4. ♘c4 ♜h6** The only chance. **5. ♚g3 ♙e2+ 6. ♗xe2 dxe2 7. ♜xe2 b5 8. ♙e3 ♜e6** Black must wait. **9. ♜d2 h5 10. ♚f4 ♜c7 11. ♜d5 f6!**

A trap. On 12. ♜xh5 there follows 12... ♜d6! with counterplay!

12. ♗a3 g6 13. ♗c5 ♚f7 14. b4 ♚e8 15. ♜d1!

Black wanted to exchange rooks, after which he would have real drawing chances.

15... ♜d7 16. ♜a1 ♜d2 17. ♚f3 ♚f7 18. a4 bxa4 19. ♜xa4 g5 20. ♜a3 ♚g6 21. ♚g2 gxh4?

There was no need to hurry with this move.

22. ♙f1 ♜c2 23. ♙h2 ♜c4 24. ♙f3 ♚f7 25. ♚h2 ♜f4 26. ♚g2 ♜ee4 27. ♙d2 27. ♜xa6? h3+ 28. ♚g3 h4+. 27... ♜e6 28. ♙f1 ♜g4+ 29. ♚h3 ♜f4 30. ♜a2 ♜f3+ 31. ♚g2 ♜c3 32. ♙e3 ♚g6 33. ♜a1 f5?

The decisive mistake. He should have waited.

34. ♚h2 f4 35. ♜g1+ ♚f7 36. ♙g2 ♜c6 37. ♙xf4 ♜f3 38. ♙h3

Bad is 38. ♙xh5 ♜xc5 39. bxc5 ♜xf2+ 40. ♚h3 ♜c2.

38... ♚f6 39. ♜e1 ♜f5 39... a5 40. ♗d4+ and 41. bxa5. 40. ♜e4 a5 41. ♗e3 axb4 42. ♜xb4 ♜a6 43. ♜xh4 ♜aa5 44. ♜c4 ♜fb5 45. ♚g3 ♜a8 46. ♚h4 ♜g8

Here the game was adjourned and Black resigned without waiting for the resumption.

P63 Sax - Kortchnoi Wijk aan Zee 1991



1. ♖xb7!

In this way, White gets rook and two pawns for two pieces. **1... ♜xb7 2. ♖xc6 ♜xb3** Or else **3. ♗xd5 ♜xd5 4. ♖xd5 3. ♖xb3 ♜d7 4. ♖a3 ♖a8 5. b4 ♖g6** Black manages to create counterplay. **6. b5 h6 7. ♖f3 ♖b7 8. ♜c5! ♖f6 9. a4 ♗d5 10. ♖g3! ♖e4 11. ♖b8+! ♖xb8 12. ♖xb8 ♖xc5 13. ♜e8+! ♖h7 14. dxc5** Such pawns are hard to stop. **14... ♜e7 15. ♜xe7 ♖xe7 16. a5 ♖g6?** Stronger is **16... ♗c8. 17. a6! ♖c8** After **17... ♗f5 18. b6 ♗e6 19. b7** Black is in a curious zugzwang. **18. ♖d7 ♖f5 18... ♗e6 19. b6 ♗xd7 20. b7. 19. b6 ♖e7 20. bxa7!** **20. b7** is bad because of **20... ♗c6 21. b8 ♖ ♗xb8 22. ♗xb8 ♗e6.** **20... ♖c8 21. ♖b6 ♖xa7 22. ♖xd5 ♖e5 23. ♖e3 h5 24. ♖h2 g6 25. ♖g3 ♖d4 26. ♖f4 f6 27. g4**

Black resigned.

P64 Kasparov - Karpov New York/Lyon 1990



By sacrificing two pawns for a rook, White obtains a strong attack:

1. ♖xh6! ♖xh6 2. ♗xh6 ♗xh6 3. ♗xd6 ♔b6 4. ♗xe8 ♔xd4+ 5. ♕h1 ♔d8 6. ♖d1 ♔xe8 7. ♕g5!

White's threats are very dangerous.

7... ♖a7 8. ♖d8 ♔e6 9.f4! ♖a6?! More tenacious was 9...f6 10.♔c5 ♖d7. 10.f5 ♔e7 11.♔d2 ♔e5 11...♗d5 12.♖h8+. 12.♕f2 ♔e7 13.♕d4 ♗g8 14.e5! ♗d5 15.fxg6+ Decisively exposing the black king. 15...fxg6 16.♖xc6 ♔xd8 17.♕xa7+ ♗de7 18.♖xa6 ♔d1+ 19.♕g1 ♔d2 20.♕f1

Black resigned.



1...g5! With this move, Black gets two pieces for a rook and chances to take the initiative. **2.♖xg5** Worse is 2.♗f5 ♕c8 3.♗xg5 ♖g8 4.♗h6 ♜xe4 5.♜xe4 ♖g6 6.♗f4 ♕g4! 7.♚d2 ♕f3 8.♜g3 (8.g3 ♗d7 9.♗h4 ♗f5) 8... ♖f6! 9.♗g5 (or 9.♗h4) 9... ♕xg2!.

2... ♖g8 3.♖h6 ♖xg3 4.hxg3 ♜xe4 5.f3! The best chance. **5... ♜xg3 6.e4! ♖f8! 7.♖xf8+ ♖xf8 8.♖f2 ♖g8 9.♕f4 ♜h5 10.♕xe5+ dxe5 11.♖h1** Now he should have played 11... ♜f4! 12.g3 ♜d3+ 13.♖g2 (13.♖e3 ♜b2!) 13... ♕xc4 14.♖h6 ♖g6 15.♖ah1 ♜f4+ 16.♖f2 ♖xh6 17.♖xh6 ♜g6 18.♖e3 ♖g7 19.♖h2 f6 followed by ... ♜g6-h8-f7-d6 with winning chances. In the game **11... ♜f6** was played, and Black did not manage to win.

Chapter 9 – Opposite-coloured bishops in the middlegame

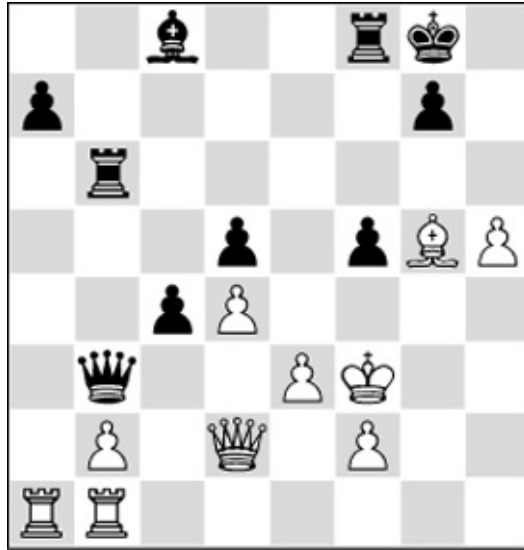
E79 Alekhine - Rubinstein Moscow 1910



1...b5! Now the threat is 2...a5. **2. ♖g4 ♕e2 3. ♖xd7 ♖xd7 4. ♖g1 ♕h5 5. ♖e1 ♖d3 6. ♖e7 h6 7. ♖g1 ♖h7 8. ♕f2? ♖h3 9. ♕d4 ♕f3 10. ♖f2 ♖g2+ 11. ♖e3 ♕xe4 12. ♖e2 exd4+ 13.cxd4 ♖f3+**

White resigned.

E80 Yakubovich - Simagin Moscow 1936



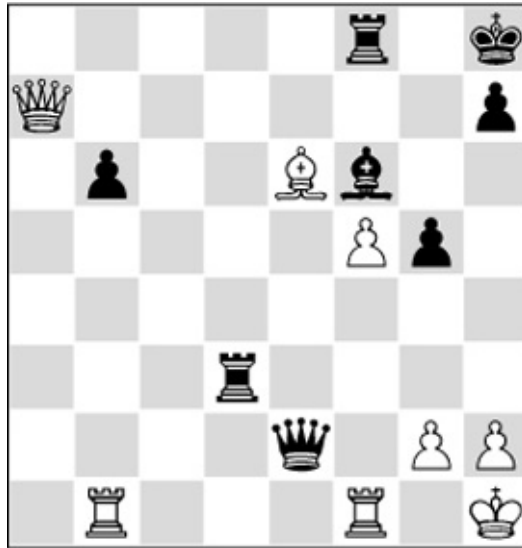
1...f4! 2. ♖xf4 g5! 3.hxg6 ♜xf4+ 4. ♚xf4 ♜f6+ 5. ♚g3 ♜xg6+ 6. ♚f3 ♖g4+ 7. ♚g3 ♖e2+
 8. ♚h4 ♗b7 9. ♚xe2 ♗e7+
 White resigned.

E81 Lilienthal - Aronin Moscow 1948



1.c5! ♗xc5 2. ♜c1 ♗a5 3. ♖xf6! ♜xf6 He also loses after 3...gxf6 4. ♜c8+ ♜d8 (4...♗d8 5. ♗h5, and the square f7 is indefensible, since after 5...♜d7 there is 6. ♗g4+) 5. ♗h5! ♗xd5 6.exd5 ♜xc8 7. ♗g4+. 4. ♜c8+ ♖d8 5. ♗c3 Even better is 5. ♗d1! ♗f8 6. ♖c6!. 5...♗b6 6. ♗b2! ♗d6 7.f4! exf4 7...♜xf4 8. ♗xe5. 8.e5 ♗d7 9. ♗xb7! ♗e8 10. ♗b8 ♜d6 11. ♗xd6 ♖b6+ 12. ♗xb6 ♗xc8 13.e6 g5 14.e7 ♗g7 15. ♖c6
 Black resigned.

E82 Corden - Littlewood Hastings 1969/70



Black begins a decisive attack: 1... ♖h3! 2. ♖be1 2.gxh3 ♔e4+ 3. ♔g1 ♘d4+. 2... ♖xh2+! 3. ♔xh2 ♘e5+ 4. ♔g1 4. ♔h1 ♔h5+ 5. ♔g1 ♔h2+ 6. ♔f2 ♔f4+, mating. 4... ♘d4+ 5. ♔h2 ♔h5+ 6. ♔g3 ♔h4+ 7. ♔f3 ♔f4+ 8. ♔e2 ♔e3+ 9. ♔d1 ♔d3+ 10. ♔c1 ♔c3+ 11. ♔d1 ♖d8 12. ♘d7 ♔b3+ 13. ♔e2 ♔e3+ 14. ♔d1 ♔d3+ 15. ♔c1 ♘e3+ 16. ♔b2 16. ♖xe3 ♔xe3+ 17. ♔d1 ♔d4+. 16... ♔d4+ 17. ♔b3 ♔d5+ 18. ♔c2 ♔c4+ 19. ♔b2 ♘d4+ 20. ♔a3 ♔c3+ 21. ♔a4 ♔b5+ White resigned.

E83 Portisch - Petrosian Palma de Mallorca 1974



With some nice introductory play, White obtains a decisive attack with opposite-coloured bishops: 1.e6! gxf5 If 1...f6, then 2. ♘xg6! hxg6 3. ♔h6 with a decisive attack. 2. ♖xe7! ♖xe7 3. ♔g3+ ♔h8 4. ♘h6 fxe6 Forced. After 4... ♖g8 5. ♔e5+ f6 6. ♔xf6+ ♖eg7 7. ♖d1 White wins. 5. ♘xf8 ♖d7 6. ♘h6 ♔a5 6... ♔c5 7. ♘g5 ♖f7 8. ♘f4. 7. ♔b8+ ♔d8 8. ♔e5+ ♔g8 9. ♔xe6+ ♖f7 10. ♖xf5 Black resigned.

P66 Karpov - Hübner Montreal 1979



White is better, but it is very hard to win. **1. ♖d5 f5** If 1... ♜f8, then 2. ♚b5. **2. e4 f4 3. ♘d3 ♜b6 4. ♜c8 fxc3 5. fxc3 ♘d7?** An oversight, after which White could have achieved success. **6. ♘c4?** He wins with 6. ♜g8+ ♔h7 7. ♜xc6, and a discovered check with the bishop next move. **6... ♜f6 7. ♜c7 ♘d6 8. h4 ♜f8 9. ♜a7 h5 10. ♘c6 ♘xc6 11. ♖xc6 ♜c8 12. ♜a6 ♖c5 13. g4 hxg4 14. ♘g3 ♜f8 15. ♜xa5 ♖f2+ 16. ♘g4 ♜f4+ 17. ♘h3 ♜xh4+ 18. ♘g2 ♖d4 19. a4 bxa3 20. ♜xa3 ♜g4+**

Draw.

P67 Karpov - Byrne Hastings 1971/72



White can carry out one of two promising plans: pressure against the pawns on h4 and h5, and an attack on the king, which is what happens in the game.

1. a4 ♜f4 2. ♜a3 ♜g4 3. a5 ♖h6+ 4. ♘b1 bxa5 5. ♜dxa5 ♘c7 6. ♜b5! ♜g3 7. ♜a7 ♜b8 8. ♖d5 ♜g1+ 9. ♘a2 ♜f1 10. ♜axb7+ ♜xb7 11. ♜xb7+ ♘d8 12. ♖e6 h3 13. ♜d7+ ♘e8 Or 13... ♔c8 14. ♜h7+ ♔d8 15. ♜xh6 h2 16. ♖d5 h1 ♚ 17. ♖xh1 ♜xh1 18. ♜h8+ and 19. f7. **14. ♜c7**

Black resigned.

P68 Timman - Salov St John 1988



Black stands worse. After... **1...bxa5 2.bxa5 c5!** he takes the game into a typical drawn position with opposite-coloured bishops. **3. ♖xc5 ♗xc5 4. ♖xc5 ♗xc5 5. ♔xc5 ♔xc5 6. ♙xc5 a6 7. ♙b6 ♙d7 8. ♙d4 g6 9. ♗h4 ♙e6 10. ♗g5 ♙d7 11. ♗h6** After 11.g4 fxg4 12.hxg4 ♙c8 13.f5 gxf5 14.gxf5 ♙d7 the black bishop has the squares c8 and d7 – this guarantees a draw, whilst after 15.e6+ ♙xe6 16.fxe6+ ♙xe6 Black is saved by the wrong rook's pawn.

11... ♙e6 12. ♙c5

And the game was soon agreed drawn.

P69 Khuzman - Kasparov Tel Aviv 1998



Black quickly creates decisive threats.

1... ♔e7! 2. ♔h1

2. ♔f3 ♔e5.

2... ♔e5 3. ♔h2 ♔f6!

Threatening the capture on h4.

4. ♔g2 ♔b2+ 5. ♔f1 5. ♔g1 ♙c5+. 5... ♔h2

White resigned.

P70 Gheorghiu - Grigorov Prague 1985



To win, White needs to create a battery with ♔+♕ along the a2-g8 diagonal (with the queen in front of the bishop). **1. ♖e4! ♜e8 2. ♜c4 ♘e5** 2...♗b2 does not save the game, because of **3. ♗g4 ♜f8 4. ♝c2 ♖f6 5. ♙d3 ♜e8 6. ♝c7 ♗g5 7. ♗d7 ♜f8** (7... ♝d8 8. ♝c8; 7... ♗e5 8. ♝c8 ♜g8 9. ♝xg8+ ♘xg8 10. ♙c4+ ♘h7 11. ♗d3+ ♘h8 12. ♗d8+ ♘h7 13. ♙d3+) **8.f4 ♖f6 9. ♗d5 ♜e8 10. ♝c6 ♖b2+ 11. ♙c2! ♗a1 12. ♗d7 ♖a8** (12... ♝e2+ 13. ♘f3 ♖f1+ 14. ♘g4 h5+ 15. ♘g5) **13. ♘h3 ♜g8 14. ♝xh6+ ♙xh6 15. ♗h7#.**
3. ♗g4 ♘g5 4. ♘d7 ♜f8 5. ♝c6 ♗g8 6. ♘e6+ ♘h8 7. ♝c8! h5 8. ♝xf8+ ♙xf8 9. ♘f7 ♘h6 10. ♙d5 ♘g7 11. ♘xh5+
 Black resigned.

P71 Lein - Lapienis Gladenbach 1999



1.g4! ♜b6 2.f5! ♙e5
 2...gxf5 3.gxf5.
3. ♜f1 ♜bb8 4.f6! a4 5. ♘d2 d5 6. ♝h3 dxc4
 6...♗f8 7.♗g5.
7. ♘h6 ♙xf6 8. ♘xh7+ ♘f8 9. ♝hf3
 Black resigned.

Chapter 10 – Same-coloured bishops

P72 Dementiev - Kholmov Riga 1970



White is better. His first task is to prevent the freeing breaks ...c6-c5 and ...e6-e5.

1. ♖f4 b6 1... ♙d7 is too passive. **2. ♖d3 ♗b7** 2...c5 3. ♚f3 ♙d7 4. ♙e4. **3. ♘f3!** Preventing ...c6-c5. **3... ♘d7** 4. ♙e4 ♖ac8 5. ♖ad1 ♖fd8 6. ♖fe1 ♘e7 7. h3 g6 8. g3 White is in no hurry. **8... ♗g7** 9. ♘e3 ♖e8 10. ♙g2 ♖cd8 11. ♘e4 ♙a8 12. ♘c2 c5

Black has managed to carry out this break all the same, but now White seizes the d-file.

13. ♙xa8 ♖xa8 14. dxc5 ♘xc5 14...bxc5? 15. ♙d6. **15. ♖d7 e5** 16. ♘b3! ♘f8 17. ♙e3 ♖e7 18. ♖ed1 ♖xd7 19. ♖xd7 ♙f6 20. ♘b5 ♘e8 21. ♘c6 ♗g7 22. ♘b7 h5 23. b3 e4 24. ♖xf7+ ♘xf7 25. ♘xa8 ♙xc3 26. ♘xe4 ♘d7 27. ♘g2 b5 28. ♘a8 ♙d4 29. ♙f4 ♙b6 30. ♘e4 ♘f7 31. ♘f3 ♗g8 32. ♙e5 ♙d8 33. ♙b2 b4 34. ♘e4 ♘f7 35. ♘c4+ ♘e6 36. ♘xb4 ♗d5+ 37. ♘g1 ♘d1+ 38. ♘h2 ♙b6 39. ♘f4+ ♘e8 40. ♘e4+

And White soon won.

P73 Alekhine - Bogoljubow The Netherlands 1929



1. ♖f2!

Intending to transfer the bishop to h4. At the same time, the square e3 is freed for the queen. White should play against the bishop on g7.

1...b6 2. ♕e3 f5

Fearing f4-f5 in the near future.

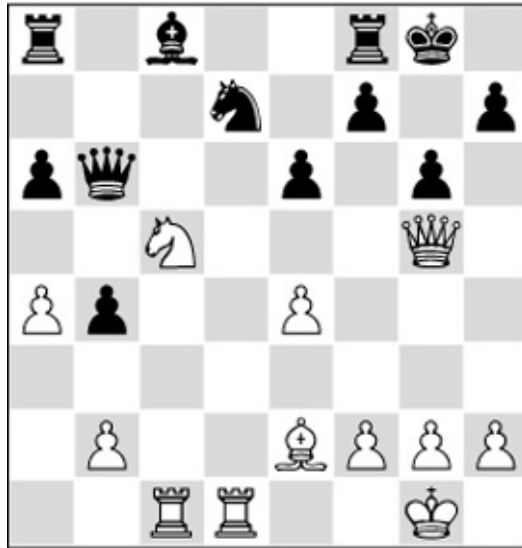
3. ♖h4 ♜d7

Now, it was essential to play 4. ♜c1!, and if 4...e6, then 5.d5! exd5 6. ♘d4, or 4...♞b7 5.d5! ♙xd5 6. ♘xd5 ♜xd5 7. ♜xc8+ ♞xc8 8. ♙xe7. The best reply to 4. ♜c1 is 4... ♜e8. The game went on:

4.b4 ♙xe2 5. ♘xe2 ♘c4 6. ♕b3 b5 7. ♜d1 e6 8. ♖f2 ♙f8 9. ♜d3 a5! 10.bxa5 ♘xa5 11. ♕b1 ♘c4 12. ♜c1 ♜a8 13.d5 ♜xd5 14. ♜xd5 ♕xd5 15. ♘c3 ♕d2 16. ♘xb5 ♘xa3 17. ♘xa3 ♜xa3 18.g3 ♜a2 19. ♜f1 ♜b2 20. ♕c1 ♕b4 21. ♕c6 ♕b3 22. ♕a8 ♕c4 23. ♕d8 ♕c6 24. ♜d1 ♕f3 25. ♜f1 ♕c6 26. ♜d1 ♕f3

Draw.

P74 Alekhine - Flohr Bled 1931



1... ♖xc5 1... ♜a7!?. **2. ♜xc5 a5** The threat was 3.a5. **3.h4 ♘a6** **4. ♘f3!** With the threat of 5. ♜xa5, 5.h5. **4... f6** **5. ♚e3 ♜ad8** **6. ♜xd8 ♜xd8** **7.e5 f5?** After 7...fxe5 8.h5 White also has a clear advantage. **8. ♜c8!**
Black resigned.

P75 Petrosian - Spassky Moscow 1969



After **1.e4** Black's position is very difficult, as White shows: **1... ♖fd8** Somewhat better is **1... ♖c5+**.
2. ♘e1 ♘c5+ Now this check is a loss of time. **3. ♘f2 ♘e7** No better is **3... ♖xf2+** **4. ♘xf2 ♘d3+**
5. ♘xd3 ♖xd3 **6. ♘e3**. **4. ♖a3** With the move **1.e4** White shut out of play the bishop on b7 and knight on f6. Now he prepares to attack the weak pawn on a7.

4... ♗e8 **5. ♘f4! ♗g6** **6. ♘e3 ♗d6** On **6... ♖b4** White would play simply **7. ♖b1** and then **♘f1** and **♖ba1**.

7. ♖fa1 ♗c8 **8. ♘f1 f5?!** An attempt at counterplay. **9. exf5 exf5** **10. ♖a4 ♖e8** **11. ♘d2 ♘c5**
 Other continuations also fail to save the game. **12. ♘xc5 bxc5** **13. ♖c4 ♖e5** **14. ♗a4 a6** Or **14... ♗b6**
15. ♖xc5 ♗xa4 **16. ♖xe5 ♗xe5** **17. ♖xa4**.

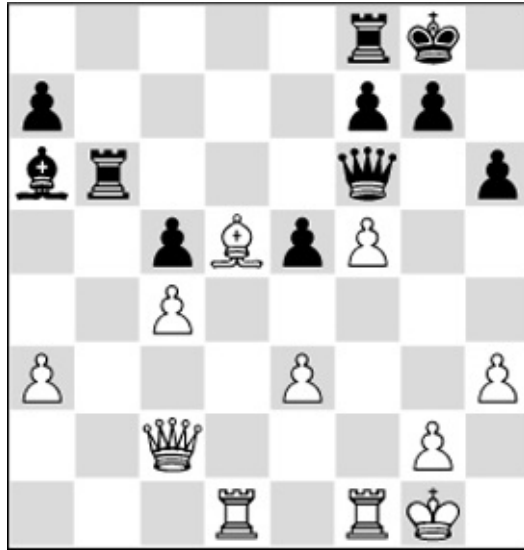
15. ♗xc5! axb5 **16. ♗xb7**

The unfortunate bishop dies, without having taken any real part in the game.

16... ♖xa1 **17. ♖xc8+ ♗f7** **17... ♗f8** **18. ♘b4**. **18. ♗d8+ ♗e7** **19. ♗c6+ ♗d7** **20. ♗xe5+ ♗xc8**
21. ♗xg6 hxg6 **22. ♘c3 ♖b1** **23. ♗f2 b4** **24. ♘g7**

Black resigned.

P76 Botvinnik - Kan Leningrad 1939



The bishop on d5 is much stronger than that on a6. White accurately realises his advantage.

1. ♖b1! Not permitting 1... ♗b7. **1... ♖d8**

«On 1... ♖fb8 there follows 2. ♖xb6 ♖xb6 (2... ♗xb6 is worse because of 3.f6 with the deadly threat of 4. ♗g6) 3. ♗a4 (3. ♖b1 is also good) 3... ♘f8 (3... ♗e7 4.f6 gxf6 5. ♗c2 ♘g7 6. ♖f3 with a strong attack) 4. ♗a5 ♗e7 5.f6 ♖xf6 (5... gxf6 6. ♗e1) 6. ♖xf6 ♗xf6 7. ♗xc5+ ♗e7 8. ♗c6! ♗xa3 9. ♗a8+» (Botvinnik).

2. ♖xb6 axb6 If 2... ♗xb6, then 3. ♖b1 ♗f6 4.e4. **3.e4 ♗c8**

3... b5? 4.cxb5 ♗xb5 5. ♖b1.

4. ♗a4! ♗d7 **5. ♗a7 ♗e8** **6. ♖b1 ♖d6** **7.a4!** ♗h7 **8.a5 bxa5** **9. ♗xa5!** Not 9. ♗xc5 a4. **9... ♖a6**

10. ♗xc5 ♖a2 **11. ♗e3!** Preventing 11... ♗g5. **11... ♗a6** **12. ♖b8 ♗a4** **13. ♗h2 ♖a3**

The attempt to get counterplay with 13... ♗c2 fails to 14. ♗g3 ♖a1 15. ♖xe8 ♗d1 16. ♗g6+! f6g6

17. ♗g8+ ♘h8 18. ♗f7+, mating.

14. ♗c5 ♖a2 **15. ♖a8 ♗xa8** Or 15... ♗c2 16. ♖xa2 ♗xa2 17. ♗e7. **16. ♗xa8 ♖xa8** **17. ♗xe5**

♗c6 **18. ♗c7**

Black resigned.

P77 Smyslov - Petrosian Moscow 1971



Black's bishop on c8 is very bad. By exploiting this, White gradually strengthens his position:

1. ♖g3 ♜d7 2. ♚e3 ♜e8 3. ♜c2 a5 4. a3 ♝a7 5. h4 ♚b8 6. h5 f6

He will have to play this move sooner or later, but now the e6-pawn becomes weak.

7. b4!

So as to deprive Black of counterplay following 7...a4 and then ...b5-b4.

7... ♜f7 8. ♜b3 ♝e8

If 8...axb4 9.axb4 ♜a3, then 10. ♜d3 with the threat 11. ♜xe6.

9. ♚e4 ♚c7 10. ♚c2 ♚b8 11. ♖h4 ♜d8.

«11...f5 fails because of a small combination: 12. ♖gxf5 exf5 13. ♜xf7+ ♚xf7 14. ♚b3+ ♚f6 15. ♜e5 g6 16. hxg6, with an irresistible attack» (Smyslov).

12. ♖g6 ♜c7 13. ♝e3 a4?!

It was better to maintain the tension on the queenside.

14. ♜a2 f5 15. ♖f1 Heading for e5! **15... ♜f4 16. ♝ee1 ♜xg6 17. hxg6 ♚h8 18. ♚e2 ♜g5**

If 18... ♖xg6, then 19. g3 ♜g5 (19... ♜c7 20. ♚f3) 20. d5! cxd5 21. ♜xd5 ♜c7 22. ♜g2 and 23. ♜d6.

19. ♚f3 ♚c8 20. ♚h5 ♚d8 21. ♖h2! ♚f6 22. ♖f3 ♚g8

If 22... ♚xg6, then 23. ♚xg6 ♖xg6 24. ♜xe6 ♜ae7 25. ♜f7! ♜xe1+ 26. ♖xe1!, winning, whilst after 22... ♖xg6? White decides with 23. ♖e5! ♚h7 24. ♖xc6.

23. ♖e5

Complete domination.

23... ♝c7 24. g3 f4 25. ♜b1 ♝d8 26. ♚g2 ♝dc8

The sealed move. Black resigned without resuming, as he has no defence against ♜d3-f3 and ♜e1-e4.

Chapter 11 – Bishop against knight

P78 Karpov - Smyslov Moscow 1981



1.h4 ♖ f8

Better was 1...♘a4!? 2.♙f6 ♘b6, getting rid of the powerful bishop.

2.♚f6 ♗e4 Not 2...♙e5 because of 3.♘xf7+ ♖fx7 4.♖d8+.

3.♚d4 ♗c5 4.h5 ♗d7 5.hxg6 hxg6 6.♖g3 ♚e5 7.♖xg6+ ♙h7 8.♖g3! ♗f6 9.♚h4+
Black resigned.

P79 Pirc - Bogatyrchuk Moscow 1935



Black is better because of the weakness of e3 and especially, the fact that the knight lacks secure outposts. Black's plan is to play on the g-file and if appropriate, to advance the h-pawn. **1.♚f4 ♖f6 2.♖hf1 ♖dg8 3.g3 ♖g4 4.♚xe5 ♖xe5 5.e4 ♖f4?** After 5...♖f8! Black retains the advantage, whereas now the chances even out.

6.gxf4 exf4 7.♖f2 ♖f8 8.♖df1 ♖h4 9.♚d2 ♖h5 10.b3 ♗h3 11.♖g1 ♗g4 12.♗e2 ♗xe2 13.♚xe2 ♖h3 14.♖g5 ♖e3+ 15.♚d2 ♖xe4 16.♖xh5 ♖e5 17.♖xe5 dxe5 18.♚d3 ♚c7 19.♚e4 ♚d6 20.h4 ♖h8 21.♖h2 ♖h5

1/2-1/2

P80 Geller - Najdorf Zurich 1953



1. ♖xb6! Beginning the battle for the square d5. After 1. ♜xa6 ♘c4 Black has a good game.

1... ♕xb6 2. ♖e2 ♜a8 3. ♕h2 0-0 4. ♜f1 ♜a7 5. ♜fa1 ♜fa8 6. ♜1a2 After tying the black forces to the defence of the pawn on a6, White transfers the knight from b3 to e3, to seize the d5-square and obtain an 'eternal knight'.

6... ♖d8 7. ♗a5 ♜c8 8. ♗c4 ♕c6 9. ♗e3 a5 10. ♜c4 ♕a6 11. b3 ♖b6 12. ♜xc8+ ♕xc8 13. ♗ed5 ♗xd5 14. ♗xd5 ♕c5 15. ♜a1 ♕f2 If 15...a4, then 16. ♖g4! axb3 (16... ♖f2 17. f6 ♖g3+ 18. ♖xg3 hxg3+ 19. ♗xg3 axb3 20. ♜xa7 ♗xa7 21. cxb3) 17. f6 g6 18. ♖xh4, mating.

16. ♕xf2 ♖xf2 17. ♜f1 ♖d4 18. c3 ♖c5 19. g4! The king must be freed. **19... hxg3+ 20. ♕xg3 ♜b7 21. ♜b1 f6 22. ♕f3 ♕f7 23. ♕e2 ♜b8 24. b4 g6 25. ♕d3**

White could win more quickly by 25. fxg6+! ♕xg6 26. bxc5 ♜xb1 27. c6 ♜b8 28. c7 ♜h8 29. c8 ♖ ♜xc8 30. ♘e7+.

25... gxf5 26. exf5 axb4 27. cxb4 ♖d4 28. ♜c1 ♕g7 29. ♜c7+ ♕h6 30. ♕e4 ♕g5 31. ♜h7 ♖f2 32. ♜g7+ ♕h4 33. ♕f3 ♖e1 34. ♕g2 ♜f8 35. b5 ♖a5 36. b6 ♖xb6 37. ♗xb6 ♜b8 38. ♜g4+ ♕h5 39. ♗d5

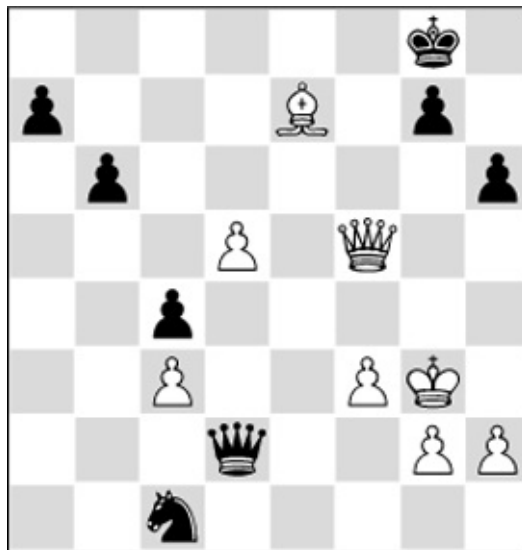
1-0

P81 Fischer - Petrosian Belgrade 1970



Black's position is hopeless. **1. ♖f5 ♗d8** Or 1... ♜cf8 2. ♜fe1+ ♘d8 3. ♜ad1. **2. ♜ae1 ♘c5+ 3. ♗h1 ♜f8** Stronger is 3... ♜c6 4. ♗e5 ♗d6 – Petrosian. **4. ♖e5! ♜c7 4... ♗c7 5. ♗xd5+! 5.b4! ♖c6 6.c4! dxc4 7. ♗f5 ♜ff7 8. ♜d1+ ♜fd7 8... ♘d7 9. ♜fe1. 9. ♗xd7 ♜xd7 10. ♖b8+ ♗e7 10... ♗c8 11. ♜xd7+ ♘xd7 12. ♗d6. 11. ♜de1+**
 Black resigned.

P82 Smyslov - Petrosian Zurich 1953



White wins in a study-like way: **1.d6** The tempting zwischenzug 1. ♗e6+ ♘h8 2.d6 even loses: 2... ♘e2+ 3. ♘g4 ♗f4+ 4. ♘h5 ♗xh2+.
1... ♖e1+ 2. ♗g4 2. ♘h3? ♘d3 3.d7 ♘f2+ 4. ♘g3 ♘d1+, perpetual check. 2... ♗d3 3. ♖d5+ ♗h7 4.d7 ♖e5! 5. ♖xd3+?
 Not 5.d8 ♗ ♘f2+ 6. ♘h4 ♗xh2#, nor 5. ♗xe5 ♘xe5+, but White wins after 5. ♗d6!! ♘f2+ 6. ♘h4 ♗g5+ 7. ♘h5.
5...cxd3 6.d8 ♖ ♖e2 7. ♗h3 d2 8. ♖d7 d1 ♖ 9. ♖f5+
 Draw.

P83 Bogoljubow - Rubinstein Stockholm 1920



The position is roughly equal.

1... ♖fe8 2. ♘b6 ♚d6 3. ♘a4 ♜e7 4. ♘c5 ♜de8 5. ♜f1 ♞f7 6. ♜f4 ♚h8 7. ♚f2 ♞g8 8. h4 h6 9. ♜gf3 ♞h7 10. g4 ♞g6 11. ♜g3 ♚d5 12. g5?

White is trying to win, but this leads to his defeat. He could maintain the balance with 12. ♘h2.

12... fxg5 13. hxg5 h5 14. ♜f8+? Here, too, 14. ♘h2 is better. **14... ♚h7 15. ♜xe8 ♜xe8 16. ♚f3 ♚c4! 17. ♘d7 ♚xb4 18. ♘e5 ♜f8 19. ♚e2 ♚xa5 20. ♜h3 ♚a1+ 21. ♚h2 ♚f1 22. ♚xf1 ♜xf1 23. ♘d7 ♞f5**

White resigned.

P84 Unzicker - Fischer Varna 1962



White controls the square d5, but his position is inferior, because the knight on b3 is out of play.

1. ♘d5 ♘xd5 2. ♚xd5 ♜a4! 3. c3 ♚a6 4. h3 ♜c8 5. ♜fe1 h6 6. ♚h2 ♞g5 7. g3? Leads to defeat. Better is 7. ♜ad1.

7... ♚a7 8. ♚g2 ♜a2 9. ♚f1 ♜xc3!

Now after 10. ♜xa2 there follows 10... ♜f3+ 11. ♘e2 ♜f2+ 12. ♘d3 ♚xa2 13. ♜a1 ♚xb2 14. ♜a8+ ♘h7.

White resigned.

P85 Timman - Larsen Montreal 1979



White can play for a win, without taking any risk.

1. ♖c2 ♘d5 2. ♘b4 ♘d7

Not 2... ♙h1+ 3. ♘e2 ♙xh3 4. ♘b3+.

3. ♖b3+ ♙g6 3... ♘f6? 4. ♙f8+ ♘e5 5. ♙f4#. 4. ♘e4+ ♙f6 5. ♘h4+ ♙g6 6. ♘e4+ ♙f6 7. ♘g2 ♘c7?

The decisive mistake. After 7...g5 the king gets a lot of freedom, and Black can still resist.

8. ♘f4+ ♙e7 9. ♘b4+ ♙d8 10. ♘xb7 ♙d3 11. ♘b4 c5 12. ♘c4 ♙xc4 13. ♖xc4 ♘e8 14. ♘f3 ♙c7 15. a5 ♘d6 16. ♖d5 ♙b8 17. ♘f4 ♙a7 18. ♘e5 ♘b5 19. ♖c4 ♙a6 20. ♘d5 ♙xa5 21. ♘xc5 ♘c3 22. ♖d5 ♘d1 23. f4 ♘f2 24. ♘d4 ♙b4 25. ♖f3 ♘xh3 26. ♘e3 g5 27. f5 g4 28. ♖xg4 ♘g5 29. ♘d4 ♙b3 30. ♖h5 ♙c2 31. f6 ♙d2 32. f7 ♘e6+ 33. ♘e5 ♘f8 34. ♘d6

Black resigned.

P86 Olafsson - Simagin Moscow 1959



1...e5! A long-planned blow. From this moment, Black plays against the bad bishop on g2.

2. ♖f6+

2.fxe5 ♜xe5 is bad, but a better line was 2.♜c3 ♘xd5 3.♝xd5 exf4 4.e5, opening up the bishop.

2... ♚h8 3. ♚c3 The alternative was the variation 3.♞xe8 exd4 4.♞f6 ♜g7 5.♞d5 ♘xd5 6.exd5 ♝de8 7.♞f2 with approximate equality.

3... ♚e7 4. ♖d5 ♘xd5 5. ♝xd5 f6 6.f5 On 6.♜xa5 there would follow 6... ♝a8 7.♜b6 ♝a6! and 8... ♝xa2.

6... ♚c7 7. ♝cd1 ♚b6 8. ♚h1 g5!

Ruling out any opening of the game on the kingside.

9. ♚d2 ♝f7 10. ♝xd6 ♝xd6 11. ♚xd6 ♚b4!

Black has more than sufficient compensation for the pawn.

12.b3 ♚g7 Creating the threat of 13... ♝d7. **13. ♚d8 a4 14.bxa4 ♚xc4 15. ♚a5 ♚c2!**

Reminding White of the weakness of his back rank.

16. ♚d2 ♚xa4 17. ♝c1 ♝d7 18. ♚e2 ♚a3 19. ♝b1 ♚c3 20. ♝d1 ♖d3 21. ♝f1 ♖c5 22. ♚g4 ♝d3 23. ♚h5

The try 23.♞f3 ♝e3! 24.h4 ♞xe4! 25.♞xe4 ♝xg3 leads only to immediate defeat.

23... ♚d4 24. ♚e8 ♚d6 25. ♞f3 ♝d2 26.a4 b6 27. ♝b1 ♖d3 28. ♞g2 After 28.♝xb6 there is 28... ♞f2+ 29.♞g1 ♞h3+ 30.♞h1 ♝d1+! 31.♞g2 ♞f4+! 32.gxf4 ♜d2+ 33.♞h3 g4+! 34.♞xg4 ♜e3+ with mate.

28... ♖f2+ 29. ♚g1 ♖g4 30.h4 ♝xg2+ 31. ♚xg2 ♚d2+

White resigned.

P87 Kramnik - Jussupow Dortmund 1998



White's position is a little better on account of the open position of the enemy king, although all of Black's pieces are active. Kramnik brings his bishop into the game.

1. ♖a4! c3?

Black also loses after 1... ♜b1 2. ♜xb1 ♝xf2+ 3. ♔h1 ♝f3+ 4. ♔h2 ♝f2+ 5. ♔h3 ♘xf4+ 6. gxf4 ♝f3+ 7. ♔h2 ♝f2+ 8. ♔h1 ♝f3+ 9. ♔g1 ♝g3+ 10. ♔f1, and 1... ♘xf2 2. ♜xf2 ♝a1+ 3. ♔g2 ♝xa4 4. ♝e5+, and 1... ♜b2 2. ♝e7+ ♔h8 (2... ♔g8 3. ♖d7!) 3. ♝f8+ ♔h7 4. f5. The only way to continue the fight was 1... ♜f8 2. ♖e8 ♝f6 (2... ♜f6? 3. ♝e7+ ♔g8 4. ♖c6!) 3. ♝xc4 ♘xf2 4. ♖d7 ♝d6 5. ♜xf2 ♝xd7 6. ♝xa6.

2. ♖c2! ♜b2 3. ♔e7+ ♔g8 4. ♔e2! ♘xf4 After any other knight retreat, 5. ♝e8+ decides. **5. gxf4 ♔f7 6. ♜d1**

Black resigned.

P88 Nimzowitsch - Janowski Carlsbad 1907



The position is roughly equal. White has an outside passed pawn, but a passive bishop.

1... ♖bc7 2. ♙f5 ♜b8 3. ♜d4 ♜e7 3... ♜xb3 4. ♜xd5!

4. ♜xe7 ♜xe7 5. b4 ♜e5 6. ♙g4 ♜a8 7. f4 ♜a1+ 8. ♚h2 ♜c7? Black could hold after 8... ♜xg4+ 9. hxg4 ♜e6 with ideas of perpetual check.

9. ♙f3 ♜d6 10. ♙xd5 ♜e7 11. ♙f3 g6

The time has come for the realisation of an advantage, which is sufficient for victory.

12. ♜c3 ♜b1 13. ♜c4 ♜g7 14. ♜e5 ♜e1 15. ♜xe7 ♜xe7 16. b5 ♜e6 17. ♜c6 ♞d7 18. ♙d5 ♜f6 19. ♜g3 ♞b6 20. ♙b3 ♞d7 21. ♜xf6 ♜xf6 22. ♜f3 ♜e7 23. ♜e3 f6 24. ♜d4 ♜d6 25. ♙d1 ♞b6 26. ♙f3 ♞c8 27. h4 ♞e7 28. ♙e4 g5 29. fxg5 fxg5 30. hxg5 hxg5 31. b6 g4 32. b7 ♜c7 33. ♜e5 g3 34. ♜f4 ♞g8 35. ♜xg3 ♞f6 36. ♙f3 ♞d7 37. ♜f4 ♜d6 38. ♜f5 ♜e7 39. ♙c6 ♞b8 40. ♙b5

Black resigned.

P89 Botvinnik - Bednarski Palma de Mallorca 1967



1.g5!

Fixing the bishop and opening the h3-c8 diagonal.

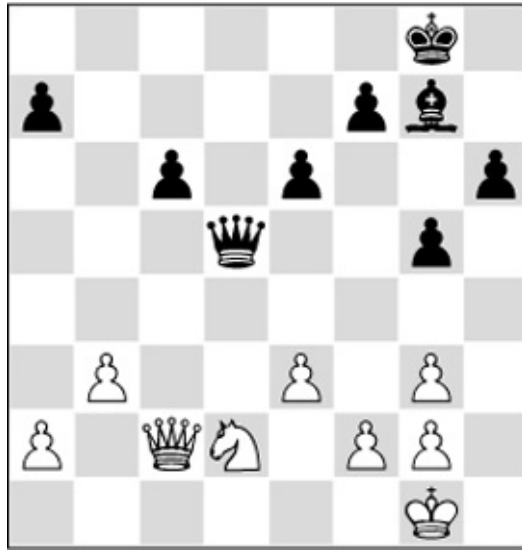
1... ♖f8 2. ♔h4 ♖f4 3. ♕g3 ♖f8 4. ♕g4 ♖f5 5. ♕h3 ♗e7

Black loses after 5... ♗xg5 6. ♘xg5 ♖xg5 7. ♖c8+ ♜f7 8. ♖d7+ ♜f8 9. ♖d8+.

6. ♘g3 ♖xg5 7. ♕e6+ ♔f8 8. ♕c8+ ♔f7 9. ♖h8 ♜xh8 10. ♕xh8 ♖xg3 11. ♕f2 ♖g5 12. ♕c8

Black resigned.

P90 Jussupow - Anand Wijk aan Zee 1994



White's position is better on account of the weak pawns on a7 and c6; in addition, the long-range bishop on g7 is simply firing into the air.

1.g4! ♔f8

1...f5 2.e4!

2.♘c4 f5 3.f3! ♖f6 4.♔f2 ♔g7 5.♔f1 ♖d8 6.e4! fxe4 7.fxe4 ♔c5

7...♗d4 8.♗b2.

8.♗f2 ♔e7 9.♔d4+ ♔g8 10.♔e2 ♖b6!? 11.♘xb6 axb6 12.♔xb6 ♔a3 13.♔d8+ ♔f7 14.♔d2 ♔e8 15.♔f3 c5?

Having obtained definite chances in the shape of his active queen, Black loses them in a surprising way. Better was 15...♗f8+!

16.♔d6!

The roles are reversed. The black queen is offside, and this decides matters.

16...♔f7 17.♔d7+ ♔f6 18.♔d8+ ♔f7 19.e5 ♔a6 20.♔d7+ ♔g8 21.♔e3 ♔xa2 22.♔xe6+ ♔f8 23.♔xh6+ ♔e8 24.♔e6+ ♔f8 25.♔f5+ ♔e8 26.♔c8+ ♔f7 27.♔d7+ ♔f8 28.♔d8+ ♔f7 29.♔d5+

Black resigned.

Index of Games

Chapter 1 - The attack on the king

Morphy - Ernest Morphy, New Orleans 1850	14
Steinitz - Winawer, Paris 1867	14
Chigorin - Steinitz, Havana 1892	15
Euwe - Landau, Amsterdam 1939	15
Tal - Hecht, Varna 1962	16
Milov - Meijers, Zwolle 2003	17
Nimzowitsch - Tarrasch, St Petersburg 1914	17
Schlechter - Wolf, Ostend 1905	18
Steinitz - Lasker, London 1899	18
Tal - Vasiukov, Kiev 1964/65	19
Capablanca - Kan, Moscow 1935	19
Botvinnik - Sozin, Novgorod 1929	20
Paulsen - Morphy, New York 1857	21
Lasker - Pirc, Moscow 1935	21
Pillsbury - Lasker, St Petersburg 1895	22
Amateur - Steinitz, London 1869	23
Botvinnik - Keres, The Hague-Moscow 1948	23
Neumann - Blackburne, Dundee 1868	24
Teichmann - Chigorin, Cambridge Springs 1904	24
Capablanca - Janowsky, San Sebastian 1911	25
Timofeev - Dvoirys, Belgorod 2010	25
Byrne - Fischer, New York 1963/64	26
Corzo y Principe - Capablanca, Havana 1913	27
Botvinnik - Vidmar, Nottingham 1936	27
Tal - Spassky, Tilburg 1980	28
Smyslov - Liberzon, Riga 1968	29
Bogoljubow - Mieses, Baden-Baden 1925	29
Stein - Furman, Moscow 1969	30
Chiburdanidze - Dvoirys, Tallinn 1980	31
Karpov - Dorfman, Moscow 1976	31
Fischer - Rubinetti, Palma de Mallorca 1970	32
Stein - Tal, Moscow 1961	33
Tal - Larsen, Bled 1965	33
Kupreichik - Tal, Sochi 1970	34
Kasparov - Salov, Barcelona 1989	35
Panchenko - Psakhis, Vilnius 1987	35
Tringov - Clarke, Munich 1958	36

Chapter 2 - Defence

Capablanca - Alekhine, Buenos Aires 1927	43
Kortchnoi - Karpov, Merano 1981	43
Spassky - Karpov, Tilburg 1983	44
Bareev - Dreev, Sochi 1982	44
Kasparov - Topalov, Novgorod 1997	45
Bakulin - Dvoretzky, Moscow 1974	45
Karpov - Kasparov, Moscow 1985	45
Endgame study by Vitaly Chekhover, 1947	46
A.Petrosian - Hazai, Schilde 1970	46
Smyslov - Hübner, Velden 1983	47
Byrne - Taimanov, Leningrad 1973	47
Andrianov - Wojtkiewicz, Sochi 1980	47
Maroczy - Rubinstein, Karlsbad 1907	48
Tal - Aronin, Moscow 1957	48
Manic - Blau, Lugano 1984	49
Kramnik - Kasparov, Linares 1994	49
Steinitz - Lasker, Montreal 1894	49
Marjanovic - Panchenko, Tbilisi 1973	50
Spraggett - A.Sokolov, Saint John 1988	51
Bisguier - Stein, Stockholm 1962	51
Karpov - Polugaevsky, Moscow 1974	51
Suetin - Kortchnoi, Leningrad 1967	52
Polugaevsky - Panchenko, Sochi 1981	52
Short - Kasparov, Amsterdam 1996	53
Nimzowitsch - Berger, London 1927	53
Diez del Corral - Petrosian, Palma de Mallorca 1969	54
Ravinsky - Kotov, Leningrad 1949	54
Ivanovic - Sveshnikov, Krk 1976	54
Sokolsky - Romanovsky, Soviet Union 1930	55
Ilyin-Zhenevsky - Lasker, Moscow 1925	55
Bronstein - Polugaevsky, Moscow 1967	56
Filip - Kortchnoi, Bucharest 1954	56
Kortchnoi - Sax, Wijk aan Zee (rapid) 1991	57
Khalifman - Salov, Wijk aan Zee 1991	57
Nikolic - Arencibia Rodriguez, Yerevan 1996	58
Bronstein - Lisitsin, Leningrad 1947	58
Kholmov - Taimanov, Tbilisi 1959	59
Levenfish - Ragozin, Moscow 1936	59
Voloshin - Korzhunov, Correspondence game 1968-71	60
Kramnik - Shirov, Linares 1994	60
Schlechter - Lasker, Vienna/Berlin 1910	61
Nevednichy - Panchenko, Bucharest 1994	62
Timman - Lautier, Wijk aan Zee 1994	62
Nikolic - Mecking, Sao Paulo 1991	62
Van Wely - Karpov, Cap d'Agde 1996	63
Xie Jun - Taimanov, Copenhagen 1997	63
Landa - Timofeev, Taganrog 2011	64

Chapter 3 - Counterplay

Shipov - Polugaevsky, Yalta 1962	71
Taimanov - Larsen, Vinkovci 1970	71
Balanel - Szabo, Moscow 1956	72
Alekhine - Rubinstein, Vilnius 1912	72
Geller - Euwe, Zurich 1953	73
Vidmar - Euwe, Nottingham 1936	73
Dieks - Marjanovic, Manila 1974	74
Kupreichik - Tukmakov, Ashkhabad 1978	74
Olafsson - Tal, Bled/Belgrade 1959	75
Geller - Panchenko, Moscow 1982	76
Topalov - Gelfand, Novgorod 1997	76
Timman - Kortchnoi, Brussels 1991	77

Chapter 4 - Prophylaxis

Schlechter - Nimzowitsch, Karlsbad 1907	82
Ahues - Nimzowitsch, Kecskemet 1927	82
Johner - Nimzowitsch, Dresden 1926	83
Thomas - Rubinstein, Baden-Baden 1925	84
Sämisch - Alekhine, Dresden 1926	85
Flamberg - Alekhine, Mannheim 1914	86
Browne - Keres, Vancouver 1975	86
Bronstein - Petrosian, Amsterdam 1956	87
Kasparov - Petrosian, Banja Luka 1979	87
Vaganian - Beliavsky, Moscow 1988	88
Balashov - Jussupow, Minsk (rapid) 1982	88
Titov - Yudasin, Kostroma 1985	89
Gurgenidze - Polugaevsky, Tbilisi 1956	89
Zakharov - Dvoretzky, Ordzhonikidze 1978	90
Vaganian - Dvoretzky, Yerevan 1975	90
Spassky - Petrosian, Moscow 1966	90
Stein - Petrosian, Moscow 1961	91
Bareev - Dolmatov, Kiev 1986	92
Polovodin - Panchenko, Moscow 1981	92
Cuartas - Panchenko, Prague 1982	93
Karpov - Kasparov, Moscow 1985	93
Shirov - Polgar, Tilburg 1996	94
Ivanchuk - Topalov, Novgorod 1996	95

Chapter 5 - Realising an advantage

Reshevsky - Geller, Zurich 1953	100
Jussupow - Panchenko, Kiev 1984	100
Panchenko - Ubilava, Beltsi 1979	101
Karpov - Kortchnoi, Baguio 1978	101

Botvinnik - Bronstein, Moscow 1951	102
Botvinnik - Euwe, Leningrad 1934	102
Panchenko - Westerinen, Las Palmas 1978	103
Panchenko - Ruban, Smolensk 1986	103
Meister - Rumiantsev, Rostov-on-Don 1981	104
Kholmov - Jakobsen, Kislovodsk 1972	105
Polovodin - Zigurds Lanka, Riga 1980	105
Glek - Lazarev, Porto San Gorgio 1997	105
Steinitz - Von Bardeleben, Hastings 1895	107
Rajkovic - Muse, Athens 1985	107
Kramnik - Serper, Dortmund 1993	108
Alexandrov - V.Popov, St Petersburg 1996	108
Petrosian - Kortchnoi, Curacao 1962	109
Jussupow - Hübner, Tilburg 1987	109
Petrosian - Smyslov, Moscow 1961	110
Panchenko - Novikov, Pavlodar 1987	110
Kramnik - Ulibin, Chalkidiki 1992	111
Zatulovskaya - Chiburdanidze, Lvov 1977	112
Kotov - Pilnik, Stockholm 1952	112
Botvinnik - Zagoriansky, Sverdlovsk 1943	113
Kasparov - Kharitonov, Moscow 1988	113
Kasparov - Petrosian, Bugojno 1982	114
Tunik - Dreev, Gorki 1989	114
Bareev - Manninen, Yerevan 1996	114
Lputian - Sadler, Lucerne 1997	115
Petrosian - Golombek, Stockholm 1952	116
Andersson - Gheorghiu, Moscow 1982	116
Smyslov - Benko, Szolnok 1975	117
Rublevsky - Spraggett, Groningen 1997	117
Geller - Suba, Moscow 1986	118
Rubinstein - Mikenas, Prague 1931	118
Petrosian - Botvinnik, Moscow 1963	118
Nikolic - Short, Moscow 1994	119
Karpov - Timman, Bugojno 1986	120
Lautier - Shirov, Belgrade 1997	120
Botvinnik - Smyslov, Moscow 1958	121
Kortchnoi - Spassky, Palma de Mallorca 1968	121
Smyslov - Van der Wiel, Reggio Emilia 1986/87	122
Bareev - Shirov, Linares 1994	122
Psakhis - Romanishin, Frunze 1981	123
Beliavsky - Salov, Moscow 1988	123
Rublevsky - Christiansen, Lucerne 1997	123

Chapter 6 - Equal positions

Bogoljubow - Capablanca, Bad Kissingen 1928	129
Reshevsky - Smyslov, Radio match USA-USSR 1945	129

Alekhine - Feigins, Kemerl 1937	130
Karpov - Jussupow, Bugojno 1986	131
Karpov - Kortchnoi, Merano 1981	132
Yakovich - Polovodin, Kolontaevo 1994	132
Geller - Fischer, Palma de Mallorca 1970	133
Giorgadze - Panchenko, Aktiubinsk 1985	135
Smagin - Ivanchuk, Pinsk 1986	135

Chapter 7 - The battle of the major pieces

Sveshnikov - Karasev, Minsk 1976	138
Seirawan - Kir.Georgiev, Dubai 1986	138
Alekhine - Lokvenc, Prague 1943	139
Novikov - Giorgadze, Lvov 1990	140
Salov - Topalov, Madrid 1996	140
Pirc - Stahlberg, Amsterdam 1950	141
Petrosian - Portisch, Biel play-off 1976	141
Polugaevsky - Bronstein, Tallinn 1965	142
Stahlberg - Alekhine, Zurich 1934	142
Polugaevsky - Partos, Biel 1985	143
Andersson - Ricardi, Rio de Janeiro 1985	144
Gaprindashvili - Erenska-Radzewska, Jajce 1981	144
Alekhine - Keres, Netherlands AVRO 1938	144
Torre - Romanishin, Biel 1988	145
Short - Hübner, Wijk aan Zee 1986	146
Panchenko - Glianets, Kazan 1995	146
Geller - Tukmakov, Yerevan 1982	147
Karpov - Quinteros, Lucerne 1982	148
Petrosian - Gulko, Yerevan 1975	148

Chapter 8 - Two minor pieces against a rook

Mednis - Peelen, Lugano 1986	154
Kortchnoi - Karpov, Baguio 1978	154
Panchenko - Vaisser, Sochi 1983	155
Réti - Bogoljubow, Bad Kissingen 1928	156
Razuvaev - Kirov, Sofia 1981	157
Kasparov - Seirawan, Thessaloniki 1988	157
Morovic Fernandez - Jussupow, Tunis 1985	158
Beliavsky - Panchenko, Sukhumi 1971	159
Short - Tempone, Mexico 1981	159
Yurtaev - D.Frolov, Tømsk 1998	160
Byvshev - Furman, Kiev 1954	160
Nikolic - Miles, Zagreb 1987	161
Kasimdzhanov - Vul, Cappelle la Grande 1998	162
Kovacevic - Armas, Thessaloniki 1988	162
Kholmov - Co.Ionescu, Baile Herculane 1984	163

A.Sokolov - A.Kuzmin, Sochi 1982	164
Alexandrov - Timofeev, Dubai 2003	164

Chapter 9 - Opposite-coloured bishops with many pieces on the board

Kamsky - Kasparov, Manila 1992	167
Ghinda - Kindermann, Thessaloniki 1984	167
Nunn - Van der Wiel, Wijk aan Zee 1982	168
Kasparov - Karpov, New York/Lyon 1990	169
Karpov - Kasparov, Moscow 1985	170
Yudasin - Sagalchik, Kemerovo 1995	170
Kasparov - Olafsson, Dubai 1986	171
Prasad - Sax, Subotica 1987	171
Filip - Pachman, Prague 1953	172
Spielmann - Romanovsky, Moscow 1935	172
Jussupow - Miles, Bugojno 1986	173

Chapter 10 - Same-coloured bishops

Lasker - Capablanca, Moscow 1935	178
Rubinstein - Canal, Rogaska Slatina 1929	179
Karpov - Lautier, Biel 1992	179
Alekhine - Bogoljubow, Germany/Netherlands 1929	180
Gligoric - Smyslov, Bled/Belgrade 1959	181
Sokolsky - Shagalovich, Belorussia 1959	181
Karpov - Kasparov, Belfort 1988	182
Tarnowski - Botvinnik, Leipzig 1960	183
Karpov - Uhlmann, Madrid 1973	183
Portisch - Ljubojevic, Moscow 1977	184
Panchenko - Zhdanov, Kiev 1983	184
Gelfand - Topalov, Novgorod 1997	185

Chapter 11 - Bishop versus knight

Botvinnik - Smyslov, Moscow 1954	188
Fischer - Spassky, Reykjavik 1972	188
Uhlmann - Kottnauer, Tel-Aviv 1964	189
Gligoric - Portisch, Zagreb 1965	189
Kasparov - Hübner, Brussels 1986	190
Capablanca - Lasker, Havana 1921	190
Rubinstein - Tarrasch, Carlsbad 1923	191
Botvinnik - Chekhover, Leningrad 1938	191
Karpov - Gavrikov, Moscow 1988	192
Kharitonov - Gusev, Gomel 1983	192
Hickl - Seger, Altenkirchen 1999	193
Smyslov - Rudakovsky, Moscow 1945	193
Boleslavsky - Lisitsin, Leningrad 1956	194

Karpov - Dolmatov, Amsterdam 1980	194
Polgar - Anand, Wijk aan Zee 1998	194
Adams - Almasi, Dortmund 1998	195
Glorigic - Szabo, Hamburg 1965	195
Euwe - Reshevsky, The Hague/Moscow 1948	196

Chapter 12 - Sample games and endings

Kotov - Boleslavsky, Moscow 1945	200
Padevsky - Kholmov, Dresden 1956	200
Kramnik - Anand, Belgrade 1997	201
Tiviakov - Salov, Madrid 1994	201
Polugaevsky - Torre, London 1984	202
Svidler - Malaniuk, Maikop 1998	202
Rubinstein - Duras, Karlsbad 1911	203
Botvinnik - Ostojic, Belgrade 1969	203
Petrosian - Schweber, Stockholm 1962	204
Karpov - Unzicker, Nice 1974	204
Karpov - Spassky, Montreal 1979	205
Fischer - Spassky, Belgrade 1992	205
Kasparov - Karpov, London/Leningrad 1986	206
Kramnik - Topalov, Novgorod 1997	206
Jussupow - Rubinetti, Toluca 1982	207
Karpov - Petrosian, Tilburg 1982	207
Kotov - Eliskases, Stockholm 1952	207
Karpov - Kramnik, Vienna 1996	208
Boleslavsky - Tal, Moscow 1957	208
Capablanca - Alekhine, Buenos Aires 1927	209
Tal - Karpov, Leningrad 1973	210
Kasparov - Karpov, London/Leningrad 1986	211
Estrin - Boleslavsky, Moscow 1964	211
Matulovic - Botvinnik, Belgrade 1970	212
Geller - Hort, Skopje 1968	212
Benjamin - Zviagintsev, Groningen 1997/98	213

Solutions

E1 Problem by Adolf Anderssen 1842	214
E2 Bogoljubow - Spielmann, Stockholm 1919	214
E3 Steinitz - Paulsen, Baden-Baden 1870	214
E4 Gunsberg - Chigorin, Havana 1890	214
E5 Tarrasch - Schlechter, Monte Carlo 1903	215
E6 Bronstein - Keres, Gothenburg 1955	215
E7 Rubinstein - Teichmann, Vienna 1908	215
E8 Tarrasch - Walbrodt, Hastings 1895	215
E9 Rubinstein - Hromadka, Mährisch Ostrau 1923	216
E10 Fischer - Panno, Buenos Aires 1970	216

E11 Smyslov - Oll Rostov-on-Don 1993	216
E12 Capablanca - Chajes, New York 1913	216
E13 Schlechter - Gunsberg, Monte Carlo 1901	216
E14 Bronstein - Keene, Teesside 1975	217
E15 Tal - Tolush, Moscow 1957	217
E16 Tal - Leonov, Riga 1949	217
E17 Kuindzhi - Jansa, Lviv 1961	217
E18 Rodriguez - Chaviano, Cuba 2000	218
P1 Steinitz - Chigorin, by telegraph, 1890	218
P2 Botvinnik - Chekhover Moscow 1935	218
P3 Smyslov - Ribli London 1983	219
P4 Tartakower - Euwe, Venice 1948	219
P5 Tal - Smyslov, Bled/Zagreb/Belgrade 1959	220
P6 Morphy - Löwenthal, London 1858	220
P7 Spassky - Bronstein, Leningrad 1960	220
P8 Rogoff - Fuller, Bognor Regis 1969	221
P9 Geller - Grigorian, Moscow 1973	221
P10 Adams - Sadler, Dublin 1993	221
E19 Gavrikov - Yakovich, Kiev 1986	222
E20 Jussupow - Dolmatov, Wijk aan Zee 1991	222
E21 Kamsky - Anand, Las Palmas 1995	222
E22 Study by Gleb Zakhodyakin 1930	223
E23 Keres - Smyslov, Zurich 1953	223
E24 Chigorin - Tarrasch, St Petersburg 1893	223
E25 Capablanca - Molina, Buenos Aires 1911	223
E26 Zaitsev - Shamkovich, Voronezh 1959	224
E27 V.Scherbakov - Furman, Moscow 1955	224
E28 Grechkin - Geller, Sverdlovsk 1951	224
E29 Buturin - Voskanian Moscow 1962	224
E30 Randviir - Flohr, Parnu 1947	225
E31 Smyslov - Polugaevsky, Moscow 1961	225
E32 Karpov - Hübner, Leningrad 1973	225
E33 Landa - Timofeev, Tomsk 2006	225
P11 Botvinnik - Smyslov, Moscow 1954	226
P12 Karpov - Polugaevsky, Moscow 1973	226
P13 Fischer - Spassky, Sveti Stefan/Belgrade 1992	226
P14 Tal - Keres, Moscow 1959	226
P15 Zhuravlev - Panchenko, Sochi 1977	227
P16 Liss - Smirin, Tel Aviv 1999	227
E34 Balashov - Polugaevsky, Manila 1976	227
E35 Najdorf - Polugaevsky, Mar del Plata 1971	228
E36 Gligoric - Fischer, Bled 1961	228
E37 Anand - Kasparov, Dos Hermanas 1996	228
E38 Yakovich - Sadler, Køge 1997	228
E39 Andreev - Lutikov, USSR 1949	229
P17 Vajda - Kotov, Moscow-Budapest 1949	229
P18 Konstantinopolsky - Veltmander, Tartu 1950	229

P19 Tal - Smyslov, Leningrad 1977	230
P20 Uhlmann - Fischer, Siegen 1970	230
P21 Tal - Bhend, Zurich 1959	230
P22 Polugaevsky - Torre, Manila 1976	231
P23 Nijboer - Anand, Wijk aan Zee 1998	231
P24 Sakharov - Kholmov, Kiev 1964	231
P25 Tal - Portisch, Niksic 1983	232
E40 Skembris - Torre, Lucerne 1982	232
E41 Geller - Spassky, Riga 1965	232
E42 Lerner - Lukin, USSR 1977	233
E43 Alekhine - Asztalos, Kecskemet 1927	233
E44 Kortchnoi - Jussupow, Lone Pine 1981	233
E45 Jussupow - Van der Wiel, Lucerne 1982	234
E46 Petrosian - Gufeld, Leningrad 1960	234
E47 Vaganian - Timman, London 1984	234
E48 Nevednichy - Panchenko, Bucharest 1994	234
E49 Hübner - Smyslov, Tilburg 1982	235
E50 Johner - Rubinstein, Teplitz-Schönau 1922	235
E51 Lerner - Panchenko, Beltsi 1979	235
E52 Galkin - Timofeev, Moscow 2011	235
E53 Alekhine - Lasker, Paris 1913	236
E54 Kobalia - Chepukaitis, St Petersburg 1997	236
E55 Anand - Polgar, Dortmund 1994	236
E56 Petrosian - Ivkov, Hamburg 1965	237
E57 Polgar - Tiviakov, Madrid 1994	237
E58 Kamsky - Anand, Dos Hermanas 1996	237
E59 Kramnik - Beliavsky, Belgrade 1995	237
E60 Ivanchuk - Nenashev, Frunze 1988	238
E61 Sadler - Dreev, Groningen 1997/98	238
E62 Mateo - Popchev, Prokuplje 1987	238
P26 Kramnik - Kamsky, Linares 1993	238
P27 Motwani - Adams, Moscow 1994	239
P28 Ivanchuk - Ehlvest, Yerevan 1996	239
P29 Kasparov - Short, Amsterdam 1994	239
P30 Taimanov - Sanchez, Stockholm 1952	240
P31 Eliskases - Prins, Stockholm 1952	240
P32 Chernin - Dlugy, Tunis 1985	241
P33 Karpov - Miles, Oslo 1984	241
P34 Polugaevsky - Biyiasis, Petropolis 1973	242
P35 Polugaevsky - Veltmander, Saratov 1953	242
P36 Andersson - Gruenfeld, Lucerne 1982	242
P37 Petrosian - Fischer, Belgrade 1970	243
P38 Kasparov - Petrosian, Niksic 1983	243
P39 Kasparov - Karpov, London/Leningrad 1986	244
P40 Torre - Karpov, Bad Lauterberg 1977	244
P41 Boleslavsky - Zurakhov, Kiev 1958	245
P42 Alekhine - Euwe, The Netherlands 1937	245

P43 Flores - Smyslov, Santiago 1965	246
E63 Lowcki - Tartakower, Jurata 1937	246
E64 Lobron - Spraggett, Wijk aan Zee 1985	246
E65 Gligoric - Averbakh, Titovo Uzice 1966	247
E66 Kuznetsov - Sakharov, USSR 1961	247
E67 Stein - Kholmov, Tbilisi 1967	247
E68 Androvitzky - Kozma, Vigrú 1970	248
E69 Study by Henri Rinck 1926	248
E70 Ermenkov - Sax, Warsaw 1969	248
E71 Gaprindashvili - Veröci, Belgrade 1974	248
E72 Study by Bernhard Horwitz 1862	248
E73 Slobodjan - Bruch, Altenkirchen 1999	249
E74 Nunn - Portisch, Budapest 1987	249
E75 Study by Giambattista Lolli 1763	249
E76 Bogatirev - Zagorovsky, USSR 1947	249
E77 Winants - Kasparov, Brussels 1987	249
E78 Karaklaic - Carnic, Subotica 1999	250
P44 Ruzele - Smirin, USSR 1986	250
P45 Chandler - Langeweg, Amsterdam 1984	250
P46 Galliamova - Umanskaya, Elista 1997	250
P47 Ghinda - Ungureanu, Bucharest 1978	251
P48 Kasparov - Karpov, London/Leningrad 1986	251
P49 Vyzhmanavin - Bareev, Lviv 1990	251
P50 Alekhine - Colle, Baden-Baden 1925	252
P51 Mikhalchishin - Filipenko, Ordzhonikidze 1978	252
P52 Taimanov - Mikhalchishin, Baku 1983	252
P53 Suetin - Jansa, Sochi 1980	253
P54 Romanishin - Gulko, Leningrad 1974	253
P55 Jakubowski - Umansky, Poland 1998	253
P56 Gavrikov - Piesina, Beltsi 1981	253
P57 Hübner - Karpov, Tilburg 1977	254
P58 Farago - Jansa, Sochi 1980	254
P59 Dus-Khotimirsky - Kotov, Moscow 1941	255
P60 Karpov - Kasparov, Moscow 1985	255
P61 Stetsko - Gipslis, Moscow 1975	256
P62 Karpov - Smyslov, Linares 1987	256
P63 Sax - Kortchnoi, Wijk aan Zee 1991	257
P64 Kasparov - Karpov, New York/Lyon 1990	257
P65 Kamsky - Anand, Sanghi Nagar 1994	258
E79 Alekhine - Rubinstein, Moscow 1910	258
E80 Yakubovich - Simagin, Moscow 1936	258
E81 Lilienthal - Aronin, Moscow 1948	258
E82 Corden - Littlewood, Hastings 1969/70	259
E83 Portisch - Petrosian, Palma de Mallorca 1974	259
P66 Karpov - Hübner, Montreal 1979	259
P67 Karpov - Byrne, Hastings 1971/72	259
P68 Timman - Salov, St John 1988	260

P69 Khuzman - Kasparov, Tel Aviv 1998	260
P70 Gheorghiu - Grigorov, Prague 1985	260
P71 Lein - Lapienis, Gladenbach 1999	260
P72 Dementiev - Kholmov, Riga 1970	261
P73 Alekhine - Bogoljubow, The Netherlands 1929	261
P74 Alekhine - Flohr, Bled 1931	262
P75 Petrosian - Spassky, Moscow 1969	262
P76 Botvinnik - Kan, Leningrad 1939	262
P77 Smyslov - Petrosian, Moscow 1971	263
P78 Karpov - Smyslov, Moscow 1981	264
P79 Pirc - Bogatyrchuk, Moscow 1935	264
P80 Geller - Najdorf, Zurich 1953	264
P81 Fischer - Petrosian, Belgrade 1970	265
P82 Smyslov - Petrosian, Zurich 1953	265
P83 Bogoljubow - Rubinstein, Stockholm 1920	265
P84 Unzicker - Fischer, Varna 1962	265
P85 Timman - Larsen, Montreal 1979	266
P86 Olafsson - Simagin, Moscow 1959	266
P87 Kramnik - Jussupow, Dortmund 1998	267
P88 Nimzowitsch - Janowski, Carlsbad 1907	267
P89 Botvinnik - Bednarski, Palma de Mallorca 1967	267
P90 Jussupow - Anand, Wijk aan Zee 1994	268